

ANCIENT INDIAN TRADITION & MYTHOLOGY

TRANSLATED BY
A BOARD OF SCHOLARS

EDITED BY
Dr. G. P. BHATT

VOLUME 30

ANCIENT INDIAN TRADITION AND MYTHOLOGY SERIES

[PURĀṆAS IN TRANSLATION]

VOLUMES

ŚIVA 1-4

LIṄGA 5-6

BHĀGAVATA 7-11

GARUḌA 12-14

NĀRADA 15-19

KŪRMA 20-21

BRAHMĀṆḌA 22-26

AGNI 27-30

VARĀHA 31-32

BRAHMA 33-36

VOLUMES UNDER PREPARATION

BHAVIṢYA

BRAHMAVAIVARTA

DEVĪBHĀGAVATA

KĀLIKĀ

MĀRKAṆḌEYA

MATSYA

PADMA

SKANDA

VĀMANA

VĀYU

VIṢṆU

VIṢṆUDHARMOTTARA

THE
AGNI PURĀNA
PART IV

TRANSLATED AND ANNOTATED BY
N. GANGADHARAN

MOTILAL BANARSIDASS • DELHI

UNESCO • PARIS

MOTILAL BANARSIDASS
Bungalow Road, Jawahar Nagar, Delhi 110 007

Branches

Chowk, Varanasi 221 001

Ashok Rajpath, Patna 800 004

120 Royapettah High Road, Mylapore, Madras 600 004

© **MOTILAL BANARSIDASS**

ISBN: 81-208-0306-x

UNESCO COLLECTION OF REPRESENTATIVE WORKS—Indian Series

*This book has been accepted in the Indian Translation
Series of the Unesco Collection of Representative
Works jointly sponsored by the United Nations
Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization
(UNESCO) and the Government of India.*

✱

PRINTED IN INDIA

**BY JAINENDRA PRAKASH JAIN AT SHRI JAINENDRA PRESS, A-45 NARAINA
INDUSTRIAL AREA, PHASE I, NEW DELHI 110 028 AND PUBLISHED BY
NARENDRA PRAKASH JAIN FOR MOTILAL BANARSIDASS, DELHI 110 007.**

PUBLISHER'S NOTE

The purest gems lie hidden in the bottom of the ocean or in the depth of rocks. One has to dive into the ocean or delve into the rocks to find them out. Similarly, truth lies concealed in the language which with the passage of time has become obsolete. Man has to learn that language before he discovers that truth.

But he has neither the means nor the leisure to embark on that course. We have, therefore, planned to help him acquire knowledge by an easier course. We have started the series of Ancient Indian Tradition and Mythology in English Translation. Our goal is to universalize knowledge through the most popular international medium of expression. The publication of the Purāṇas in English Translation is a step towards that goal.

PREFACE

This thirtieth volume in the series on *Ancient Indian Tradition and Mythology* forms the fourth and last part of the *Agni Purāṇa*. It contains the English translation of chapters 312-383.

The project of this series was envisaged in 1970 by the late Lala Sundar Lal Jain of Messers Motilal Banarsidass. Thirty-six volumes of the series, including the present one, have so far been published and others are in progress. With the release of this volume complete sets of the translation of ten Mahā-purāṇas, viz. Agni, Bhāgavata, Brahma, Brahmāṇḍa, Garuḍa, Kūṣma, Liṅga, Nāṭada, Śiva and Varāha are now available to the interested readers.

Two attractive and very useful features of this Part of the Agni Purāṇa are: (1) a new Introduction supplementing the one added to Part I and giving additional information about the subject matter discussed in the various chapters of the Purāṇa and its salient points and thus rendering superfluous any attempt to give a summary of the contents of the present Part here, and (2) also a detailed Index covering all the four parts of the Purāṇa.

It is our pleasant duty to put on record our sincere thanks to Dr. R.N. Dandekar and the UNESCO authorities for their kind encouragement and valuable help which render this work more useful than it would otherwise have been. We are extremely grateful to Dr. Gangadharan of the Sanskrit Department, University of Madras, for translating the text and contributing the Introduction as well as the Index. We are also thankful to all those who have been helpful in our project.

—Editor

327. The greatness of establishing a <i>liṅga</i> and worship with the accessories	899
328. The rules of prosody	901
329. An abridgement of rules of prosody relating to the Vedic metres	902
330. An abridgement of the rules of metres	902
331. Metres of different kinds	905
332. The metres of un-equal characteristics in the four quarters	908
333. Description of metres having equal characteristics in the alternate quarters	910
334. Description of metres having similar characteristics in the four quarters	911
335. The tabular representation of long and short vowels of different metres	915
336. Description of phonetics	915
337. Description of the characteristics of a <i>kāvya</i>	918
338. Description of the different types of drama	921
339. Description of the sentiments, emotions, hero etc.	923
340. Description of diction and mode	927
341. Description of the actions and movements of the limbs	928
342. Definition of dramatic representation	930
343. Definition of the embellishment of words	933
344. Description of the embellishment of sense	939
345. The embellishments of sound and sense	942
346. Investigation into poetic excellences	944
347. Investigation into poetic blemishes	946
348. List of mono-syllabic words	950
349. The <i>pratyāhāras</i> and fundamental rules in grammar	953
350. The forms of completed euphonic combinations	954
351. Perfected forms of inflection in the nouns	957
352. Narration of the finished forms of the substantives in the feminine	966
353. The finished forms of substantives in the neuter	968

354. The relation between a noun and a verb in a sentence	970
355. Different kinds of compounds	973
356. The rules governing the formation of <i>taddhita</i> (secondary nominal bases)	976
357. The formation of the primary nominal bases by adding primary affixes known as <i>uṇādi</i> , beginning with affix <i>u</i>	980
358. The completed form of the verbs after adding the conjugational signs etc.	981
359. The finished forms after adding the <i>kṛt</i> affixes (primary affixes added to verbs)	985
360. The synonyms of group of words denoting the celestial region and the nether world	986
361. The indeclinables	996
362. Words having many meanings	1001
363. The words denoting earth, city, forest and herbs	1005
364. Words denoting men and four classes of men	1013
365. Words relating to the class of brahmins	1017
366. Words relating to <i>kṣatriya</i> , <i>vaiśyas</i> and other classes	1018
367. The class of words dependent on the substantives for their genders	1024
368. Constant dissolution, occasional and total dissolution	1028
369. The description of absolute dissolution and the process of creation	1030
370. The constituent parts of a body	1034
371. The description of hells	1037
372. The major and minor religious observances (<i>yama-s</i> and <i>niyama-s</i>)	1041
373. Description of <i>āsanas</i> (different physical postures) and control of breath	1044
374. Contemplation	1046
375. Fixing-up of the mind in the object of contemplation	1049
376. Deep meditation (<i>samādhi</i>)	1051
377. Knowledge of Brahman	1055

378. Knowledge of Brahman	1057
379. Knowledge of Brahman again	1059
380. Knowledge of non-dual Brahman	1062
381. The essence of the <i>Bhagavadgītā</i>	1068
382. The <i>Yamagītā</i>	1073
383. The glorification of the <i>Agnipurāṇa</i>	1077
INDEX	1085

ABBREVIATIONS

Common and self-evident abbreviations such as Ch(s)—Chapter(s), p—page, pp—pages, V—Verse, VV—Verses, Ftn—footnote, Hist. Ind. Philo.—History of Indian Philosophy are not included in this list.

ABORI	<i>Annals of the Bhandarkar Oriental Research Institute, Poona</i>
AGP	S. M. Ali's <i>The Geography of Purāṇas</i> , PPH, New Delhi
AIHT	<i>Ancient Indian Historical Tradition</i> , F. E. Pargiter, Motilal Banarsidass (MLBD), Delhi
AITM	<i>Ancient Indian Tradition and Mythology Series</i> , MLBD, Delhi
AP	<i>Agni Purāṇa</i> , Guru Mandal Edition (GM), Calcutta, 1957
Arch.S.Rep.	Archaeological Survey Report
AV	<i>Atharva Veda</i> , Svādhyāya Mandal, Aundh
Bd. P.	<i>Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa</i> , MLBD, Delhi
BG	<i>Bhagavadgītā</i>
Bh. P.	<i>Bhāgavata Purāṇa</i> , Bhagavat Vidyapeeth, Ahmedabad
Br.	<i>Brāhmaṇa</i> (preceded by name such as ātapatha)
BS. P.	<i>Bhaviṣya Purāṇa</i> , Vishnu Shastri Bapat, Wai
BV. P.	<i>Brahma Vaivarta Purāṇa</i> , GM, 1955-57
CC	<i>Caturvarga Cintāmaṇi</i> by Hemādri
CVS	<i>Caraka Vyūha Sūtra</i> by Śaunaka; Com. by Mahidāsa
DB	<i>Devi Bhāgavata</i> , GM
De or	<i>The Geographical Dictionary of Ancient and Mediaeval India</i> , N. L. De, Oriental Reprint, Delhi, 1971
CDAMI	
Dh. S.	<i>Dharma Sūtra</i> (preceded by the author's name such as Gautama)
ERE	<i>Encyclopaedia of Religio. and Ethics</i> by Hastings
GP	<i>Garuḍa Purāṇa</i> , ed. R. S. Bhattacharya, Chowkhamba, Varanasi

GS	<i>Gṛhya Sūtra</i> (preceded by the name of the author such as Āpastamba)
HD	<i>History of Dharma Śāstra</i> , P. V. Kane, G. O. S.
IA	<i>The Indian Antiquary</i>
IHQ	<i>The Indian Historical Quarterly</i>
JP	<i>Purāṇa</i> (Journal of the Kashiraj Trust), Varanasi
KA	<i>Kauṭilya Arthasāstra</i>
KP	<i>Kūrma Purāṇa</i> , Veṅkaṭeśvara Press Edn., Bombay; also Kashiraj Trust Edn., Varanasi
LP	<i>Līṅga Purāṇa</i> , GM, 1960; also MLBD, Delhi
Manu.	<i>Manusmṛti</i>
Mbh.	<i>Mahābhārata</i> , Gītā Press, Gorakhpur, VS 2014
MkP	<i>Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa</i>
MN	<i>Mahābhārata Nāmānukramaṇi</i> , Gītā Press, Gorakhpur, VS 2016
MtP	<i>Matsya Purāṇa</i> , GM, 1954
MW	Monier Williams' <i>Sanskrit-English Dictionary</i> , MLBD, Delhi
NP	<i>Nāradiya</i> or <i>Nārada Purāṇa</i> , Veṅkaṭeśvara Press, Bombay
PCK	<i>Bhāratavarṣiya Prācīna Caritrakośa</i> , Siddheshwar Shastri, Poona
Pd.P.	<i>Padma Purāṇa</i> , GM, 1957-59
PE	<i>Purāṇic Encyclopaedia</i> , V. Mani, English version, MLBD, Delhi
PR or PRHRC	<i>Puranic Records on Hindu Rites and Customs</i> , R. C. Hazra, Calcutta, 1948
RV	<i>Ṛg-Veda</i> , Svādhyāya Mandal, Aundh
Śat.Br.	<i>Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa</i>
SC or SMC	<i>Smṛti Candrikā</i> by Devanna Bhaṭṭa
SEP	<i>Studies in Epics and Purāṇas</i> , A.D. Pusalkar, Bharatiya Vidya Bhavan (BVB), Bombay

INTRODUCTION

In the introduction to the first part of this translation, the origin of the *Purāṇas*, the definition of the term and the five topics that the *Purāṇas* were expected to cover, the number and sequence of the *Purāṇas*, their date of composition and classification into different groups were explained in detail.

The *Purāṇas* themselves and the modern scholars as well have made attempts to classify the *Purāṇas* into different groups on the basis of their subject matter.¹ On account of the varied nature of their contents, the *Garuḍapurāṇa*, the *Agnipurāṇa* and the *Naradapurāṇa* were classified as *Purāṇas* of an encyclopaedic nature.

The traditional list of the *Purāṇas* found in the *Viṣṇupurāṇa*, places the *Agnipurāṇa* as the eighth in order. The text printed by the Venkatesvara Steam Press, Bombay has 383 chapters whereas the text printed by others has 382 chapters. This is because the former contains an additional chapter numbered 135 dealing with *Saṅgrāmaśāstra*.

This *Purāṇa* as it is available to us now has been shown² to be a spurious one composed between 700 and 1000 A.D. on the basis of the materials on *dharma* incorporated therein. The *alaṅkāra* section also indicates the influence of various schools of *alaṅkāraśāstra* upto Bhoja's times and may be deemed to have been included around 9th century, and the genuine *Āgneyapurāṇa* with the name of *Vahnipurāṇa* is counted as an *Upapurāṇa*. Yet it is an invaluable piece of document throwing light on the culture of that period. Although the text itself gives the number of verses as 12000 (ch. 272, vv. 10-11), Bhāgavata, BV. & Padma as 15400, Skanda and Matsya as 11600, the text as in the

1. See Dr. N. Gangadharan, *Līṅgapurāṇa – A Study*, pp. 49-50.

2. R. C. Hazra, *PRHRC*, pp. 134-40.

present translation has about 9650 verses¹ besides some collection of tantric syllables not put in the metrical form.

Besides the five topics that a *Purāṇa* should deal with, according to the definition, this *Purāṇa* contains many other topics, some legitimately following from the five topics and others of varied nature. The subject matter coming under these topics reflect the cream of the culture of the particular period and serves as a guide to understand the same. This *Purāṇa* deals with varied topics such as (a brief description of) the manifestations of Viṣṇu (and) summary of the epics, *smṛti* material, *mantra* and *tantra*, physiognomy, political expediency, medicine, equinology, veterinary science, science relating to elephants, metrics, poetics, grammar, lexicography, archery and lapidary science.

As only a brief indication of these topics is given in the Introduction to the First Part a detailed survey is made now pointing out the sources wherever possible.

*The Pañcalakṣaṇa (five topics)*²

It was pointed out³ in the Introduction to the First Part that this *Purāṇa* satisfies very meagrely the five-topics definition made applicable to a *Purāṇa*.

We find a theistic Sāṅkhya theory of evolution adopted by this *Purāṇa*. Though the theory of evolution of the universe from Prakṛti and Puruṣa is adopted, Lord Viṣṇu is described as the main force behind all creation. The creation is described as the sport of lord Viṣṇu as in the Vedānta. Viṣṇu enters Prakṛti and Puruṣa and agitates them. *Avyaktu* precedes the principle of *mahat*. *Ahaṅkāra* comes forth from *mahat*. Then come into being the *vaikārikas*, the *taijasa* and *tāmasa*. Ether, the sound-principle, wind, the principle of touch, fire, the colour-principle, water, the taste-principle and earth, the smell-principle came into being from the *rājasa ahaṅkāra*. The five *tanmātras*—sound, touch, light, taste and smell evolved from the *tāmasa ahaṅkāra*.

1. The number given on p. xxii in the Introduction to Part I may be corrected.

2. See pp. xvi-xviii, Introduction to Part I.

3. *Ibid.*

The organs of sense came into being from the *taijasa ahankāra*. The ten celestials and mind came forth from the *vaikārika ahankāra*. Then the self-born Brahmā became desirous of creating different beings. He first created water. Hence water is referred to as *nārāṇ*. Since the Lord had His abode in the water, He was designated as Nārāyaṇa.

The seed deposited by Brahmā in the water developed as the golden egg. Brahmā was born of his own accord from that. After living a year in that, Brahmā divided that egg into two—heaven and earth, and the Lord created the sky between them. The ten quarters supported the earth floating on the waters. Being desirous of creation, the Lord of beings created time, mind, speech, desire, anger, attachment and other counterparts. From lightning he created thunder and clouds, rainbow and birds. After creating Indra, he created the Vedic hymns. The higher and lower beings were created from the arms. He then created Sanatkumāra and Rudra from anger. He then created the seven sages, Marīci, Atri, Aṅgiras, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu and Vasistha. Having divided his body into two, he became a male with one half and a female with the other (known as Śatarūpā).

The different stages of creation : After having given an account of creation, the *Purāṇa* furnishes some details relating to the various stages of creation. The primary creation consists of the creation of *mahat*, *tanmātras*, the *vaikārikas*, namely, the *mukhya-sarga*, the *tiṛyaksrotas*, the *ūrdhvasrotas*, the *arīāksrotas*, the *anugraha* and the *Kaumāra*.

Intellect is the first creation of Brahmā. The subtle principles are then created. They are known as the elements. The evolutes known as sense-organs are then created. These are known as the primary creation. The fourth is the creation of the immobile things known as the main. The creation of the lower order refers to the creation of animals, birds etc. Then proceeds the sixth creation—higher orders, the celestials. Man is described as the seventh creation, referred to as the middle order. The eighth is the creation of impassionate divinities. These latter five are said to be subject to transformation. The ninth is the creation of Sanatkumāra and others. These

are the nine creations of Brahmā which are the main constituents of the universe.

Mythological aspect of creation : In keeping with the Purāṇic tradition of describing the secondary creation, the Purāṇa describes the mythological aspect of creation. These accounts fall under four heads : (i) Svāyambhuva Manu and his progeny, (ii) Dakṣa and his progeny, (iii) Kaśyapa and his progeny, and (iv) the overlordship of different regions. These are described in chs. 18 & 19.

The female half known as Śatarūpā of ascetic disposition had two sons Priyavrata and Uttānapāda and a beautiful daughter¹ from Svāyambhuva Manu. Uttānapāda had two wives Suruci and Sunīti. Uttama was born as his son through Suruci and Dhruva through Sunīti. Dhruva practised austerities for gaining fame and attained an excellent position. Dhruva had two sons Śiṣṭi and Bhavya through his wife Śambhu. Śiṣṭi had five sons through Succhāyā. Ripu, the eldest among them had Cākṣuṣa through his wife Brhatī. Cākṣuṣa begot Manu through Puṣkarinī (also known as Vīriṇī) (daughter of Vīraṇa Prajāpati). Manu had ten excellent sons through Naḍvalā. Ūru, the eldest among them got through Āgneyī six sons, Aṅga and others. Aṅga through Sunīthā got Vena. As Vena was cruel, he was killed by the sages. They churned his right hand and Pṛthu was born from it. He was the most important king who brought peace and prosperity for his subjects. Hence the earth was known as Pṛthvī. Then in line of succession were born Antardhāna and Prācīnabarhis. To Prācīnabarhis were born ten sons known as Pracetas through Savarṇā. They were proficient in archery. They did severe penance, remaining in the waters of the ocean for ten thousand years. Having gained the status of a progenitor and pleased Viṣṇu, they came out of the waters. They found the earth and sky overspread with trees. They burnt them down. Beholding that, Soma, the king of the plants approached them and requested them to renounce their anger, offering the excellent maiden Mārīṣā born to the nymph Pramlocā and the ascetic Kaṇḍu and nourished by him. The Pracetas married her and Dakṣa was born to them.

1. The Purāṇa does not give her name. She is referred to as Devahūti in Bh. P.

Dakṣa created mentally the immovable and movable objects, bipeds, quadrupeds, and then the sixty maidens of whom he gave ten to Dharma, thirteen to Kaśyapa, twenty-seven to Soma, four to Ariṣṭanemi, two to Bahuputra and two to Aṅgiras. Different beings were born from them. Among these, the two wives of Kaśyapa were Aditi and Diti. The twelve Ādityas—Viṣṇu, Śakra etc. were born through Aditi and the two demons Hiranyākṣa and Hiranyakaśipu and the demoness Simhikā were born through Diti. Among the sons of Hiranyakaśipu, Prahrāda was a great devotee of Lord Viṣṇu. Virocana was born from Prahrāda and Bali was born from Virocana. Bāṇa was the eldest among the hundred sons of Bali. He propitiated Lord Śiva and gained a boon.

Tāmrā, one of the wives of Kaśyapa, had six daughters, viz. Kākī, Śyenī, Bhāsī, Gṛdhrīkā, Śuci and Sugrīvā. Different birds and animals were born from them. From other wives of Kaśyapa were born other kinds of birds and animals. Innumerable are their offsprings. Diti, who had lost her offspring, propitiated Kaśyapa, desirous of getting a son capable of destroying Indra. When she had gained her desire, Indra waiting for an opportunity when she was impure, destroyed the embryo. They became celestials known as Maruts, fiftyone in number.

Overlordship of different regions

After having installed Pṛthu as the ruler (of the earth), Lord Viṣṇu set apart different regions for others such as the Moon, Varuṇa, Vaiśravaṇa, Viṣṇu, Pāvaka, Vāsava, Dakṣa, Prahlāda, Yama, Hara, Himavat, Citraratha, Vāsuki, Takṣaka, Garuḍa, Airāvata, bull, tiger, Plakṣa, Uccaiṣravas, Sudhanvan, Śankhapād, Ketumat and Hiranyabomaka. This we find in ch. 19, verses 22 to 23. Then it describes the progeny of Viṣṇu, Muñi and others through Khyati, Sambhūti and others.

Dissolution

This *Purāṇa* devotes two chapters (369 and 369) to describe the process of dissolution. Dissolution is said to be of four kinds—*nitya*, *naimittika*, *prākṛta* and *ātyantika* (continuous dissolution taking place daily, the dissolution that occurs at the end of a

kalpa period, the dissolution of everything being burnt by fire, and the absolute dissolution).

The *naimittika* dissolution is first described. Hardly any life remains on the earth. For a hundred years it does not rain. The seven rays of the sun cause evaporation of all waters. All animals perish for want of food and drink. Viṣṇu takes his abode in the seven rays of the sun and drinks the water of the oceans as well as the water inside the earth and the nether region. The seven rays finally grow in intensity and get transformed into seven suns. Then the three worlds together with the nether regions are reduced to ashes. The surface of the earth also gets changed and appears like the back of a tortoise. After all things have been burnt, clouds gather from the breath of Viṣṇu. They pour down perpetual showers of rain and the fire that has been raging for a hundred years is put out. When the water rises to the level of the region of the seven sages (Great Bear), the final storm arises from the breath of Lord Hari and the clouds get dispersed by the storm. God Hari lies down on the surface of the water and is praised by the sages and the realised souls.

The *prākṛta* dissolution takes place as follows: The different modifications of *mahat* get dissolved one after the other. First the earth with its attribute *gandha* gets dissolved into water, water with *rasa*, into light and then fire alone persists in the universe. In its turn wind destroys the suns with their attributes of colour and light. Wind together with its attribute touch gets destroyed by *ākāśa* (ether). *Ākāśa* gets merged in the universal space together with the material principles. *Mahat* consumes the universal space together with its attribute of egoism. Puruṣa, the pure consciousness and Prakṛti get finally merged in the Supreme Soul.

The *ātyantika* dissolution means the merger of the individual souls with the absolute Brahman. This is gained by knowledge and renunciation of the world. Agony is two-fold: (1) pertaining to body, and (2) pertaining to mind. The first one is manifold. After the death of a person, the individual soul discards the dead body and assumes the *ātivāhika* body that is taken to a region to suffer for his deeds. The god of death prescribes the nature of punishment or rebirth. Then the text describes

heaven and hell and the nature of suffering of the soul which cannot be brought under the head of spiritual dissolution.

Genealogical lists in the Agni-purāṇa

The genealogical lists in the *Agni-purāṇa* are late compilations, just like those in the *Garuḍa-purāṇa* and the *Bhāgavata-purāṇa*. They do not reproduce any of the old verses of *Vāyupurāṇa*, *Brahmāṇḍa-purāṇa* etc. The genealogies are restated in fresh verses. The narration here gives mere pedigree without any allusions. The *Agni-purāṇa* follows the tradition set by the *Matsya-purāṇa* regarding the Aikṣvākus and the common tradition for other dynasties. Following the general Purāṇic view Manu is described as the originator of the two ancient dynasties—Solar and Lunar. He is given as fifth in descent from Lord Viṣṇu. The *Agni-purāṇa* gives the number of the sons of Manu as eight whereas the *Brahmapurāṇa* gives it as nine and the *Viṣṇu-purāṇa*, *Matsya-purāṇa* and the *Padma-purāṇa* give it as ten by splitting the name Nābhāgodiṣṭa as Nābhāga and Diṣṭa in the *Viṣṇu-purāṇa* and adding Iṭu as the eldest in the *Matsya-* and *Padma-purāṇas*.

The *Agni-purāṇa* speaks of Ilā as the daughter of Manu and summarises the episode relating to her metamorphosis without going into the details. Beginning with the description of the Solar race in ch. 273, it describes the Lunar race, the dynasty of Yadu, the lineages of Aṅga and Puru in the succeeding chapters concluding in ch. 278. The *Purāṇas* refer to two branches of the Solar dynasty—(1) the line of Ikṣvāku and (2) the line of Śaryāti (sons of Manu). The lineage of Ikṣvāku, the eldest son of Manu, is briefly narrated in the *Agni-purāṇa* (ch. 273, verses 18-39). The list of descendents of *Purūravas* representing the Lunar race is given in ch. 274, verses 12 to 23. The genealogy of the Yādavas beginning with Yadu is given in ch. 275 proceeding upto the progeny of Balarāma and Kṛṣṇa. The account in the *Agni-purāṇa* does not speak about the kings of the period after the Bhārata war, which we commonly find in the other *Purāṇas* as the kings of the future.

The Manu-periods

This *Purāṇa* devotes only one chapter (ch. 150) to describe the fourteen Manu periods, the sons of Manus and the respec-

tive gods, sages and Indras during their period. While this subject has been dealt with in detail in the *Purāṇas* like Vāyu, the narration here is brief. Svāyambhuva Manu is the first Manu. For the sake of humanity, laws were codified by him. The names of other Manus are Svārociṣa, Uttama, Tāmasa, Raivata, Cākṣuṣa, Vaivasvata (the present Manu), Sāvarṇi, Dakṣasāvarṇi, Brahmasāvarṇi, Dharmasāvarṇi, Rudrasāvarṇi, Raucya and Bhautya.

Bhuvanakoś

Chs. 107 and 108 describe the different worlds, the earth and continents. The greatness of sacred spots such as the river Gaṅgā, Prayāga, Vārāṇasī, the river Narmadā and Gayā are described in chs. 109—14, followed by a detailed account of the mode of making a pilgrimage to Gayā in chs. 115 and 116 and the performance of ancestral rites in ch. 117. Then follows a description of Bhārata (country), the different continents and the extent of the universe in chs. 118-20. A list of the different hells and the nature of torments therein is given in ch. 371.

Material on dharma

In conformity with the contents of most of the *Purāṇas*, a considerable space has been devoted to matters relating to *dharma*. This material we find in chs. 151—212, 227, 252—72. We find here description of the duties laid down for different castes, the duties of men belonging to different stages of life, rules relating to marriage, codes of conduct, pollution and purification, the merits of offering libation and the performance of good deeds, propitiation of the planets, different kinds of major sins and expiations for them, the vows to be practised on the different lunar days, on week days, in different asterisms, in different months and seasons and rules and regulations relating to vows and gifts of varied nature.

In this section we also get a reference to the names of the twenty writers on *dharma* such as Manu, Viṣṇu, Yājñavalkya, Hārīta, Atri, Yamā, Aṅgīras, Vasiṣṭha, Dakṣa, Saṁvarta, Śātātapa, Parāśara, Āpastamba, Uśanas, Vyāsa, Kātyāyana,

Brhaspati, Gotama, Śaṅkha and Likhita. In the above matter the *Agnipurāṇa* has based the account of the four stages of life on the *Manusmṛti*, even borrowing verses at times. Besides the above the *Purāṇa* also mentions the forty-eight *saṃskāras* such as *Garbhādhānu*, *Puṃsavana* etc. Chs. 253-58 describing the administration of justice, debts and their repayments, rules relating to disputes, different kinds of ordeals, procedure for division of properties, settlement of disputes relating to the boundaries of fields and punishment for making defamatory speeches and committing other offences are mostly based on the *Yājñavalkyasmṛti*.

The subsequent chs. 259—72 describe the application of the mantras of the different *Vedas* and different kinds of worship to ward off bad effects of portents etc. and they are narrated by Puṣkara.

Other philosophical concepts

Although all the schools of philosophy were developed by the time the *Agnipurāṇa* was compiled, we find here a gist of only a few systems, such as Yoga and Vedānta. Besides the meagre Sāṅkhya account of evolution which we have already noticed, these philosophical ideas are dealt with in chs. 372-382. Beginning with an exposition of the eight constituents of *Yoga* such as *yama*, *niyama* (and the like), the text explains knowledge relating to Brahman, summarises the *Bhagavadgītā* and concludes with a *Yamagitā* spoken by Yama to Naciketas. Although the exposition on principles of *Yoga* is a summary of those given in the sūtras of Patañjali, we find here an orientation of the same to establish the unity of the individual soul and Brahman.

Though there is no direct reference to the Vedānta system as such, it deals at length with the fundamental doctrine of identity of the individual soul and the supreme soul avoiding all sorts of discussions relating to technical matters. The *Advaita* viewpoint is illustrated by means of two episodes in ch. 380.

Gītā material in the Purāṇa : Bhagavadgītā

The knowledge and utilisation of the *Bhagavadgītā* by the

Purāṇas goes without saying. Dr. Raghavan has made¹ a comprehensive survey of the *Gītā* thought and expression as found in other parts of the *Mahābhārata*, the *Purāṇa* and *Upapurāṇa* literature. The *Agnipurāṇa* epitomises the *Bhagavadgītā* in 58 verses in ch. 381 and describes the *Yamagītā* in 37 verses in ch. 382. The following table shows how the *Agnipurāṇa* has utilised the *Bhagavadgītā* material:

Bhagavadgītā		Agnipurāṇa	
Ch.	Verse	Ch. 381	Verse
II	11a, 62, 63, 69	2a, 3, 4a, 5b, 6a	
III	17b, 18a, 28	6b, 7a, 7b, 8a	
V	10	9b, 10a	
VI	29	10b, 11a	
	41b	11b	
	40b	12a	
VII	14	12b, 13a	
	16, 17a	13b, 14a	
VIII	3-6	14b, 17a	
	10b	17b	
	13a	18a	
XIII	1, 2b	20a, 20b	
	5-17	21-33	
	24, 25	34, 35	
XIV	17	36	
	23b	37a	
	25	37b	
XV	1	38	
XVI	6a	39a	
	2-3	39b	
	7b, 21	40	
XVII	7b, 8, 9, 10, 11b,	41-46	
	12, 14, 16		
	20-22	47	
	23a	48a	
XVIII	5	48b	
	12, 14	49, 51	
	20-25	52-53a	
	26-28,	53b, 54-57a	
	30-35, 46		

1. See *Journal of Oriental Research*, Madras, II, pp. 86-122. See also Intro. to Part I, p. xxi of the translation of Agnip.

Besides the above, ch. 19 is an imitation of the Vibhūtiyoga chapter (number 10) of the Bhagavadgītā.

Yamagītā

The *Yamagītā* (ch. 382) mentioned as having been expounded by Yama to Naciketas contains also the doctrines of teachers such as Kapila, Pāñcaśikha, Gaṅgāviṣṇu, Janaka, Jaigīṣavya and others. Here we find references to the merits of devotion to Viṣṇu which confer the earthly benefits as well as release from this mundane existence. Lord Viṣṇu is regarded as the chief force behind all creation. The expositions of the teachers lay stress on the following: Self-realisation is much more beneficial than gratifying one's senses. Equanimity towards all the beings and shedding all desires is the greatest good. True knowledge consists of having the correct perspective of birth, youth and old age. One gets the ultimate good by discharging the duties as laid down in the Vedas. The renunciation of all desires leads one to Brahman.

The manifestations of Viṣṇu and the narration of the epics

After the introductory first chapter, the *Purāṇa* describes the ten manifestations of Lord Viṣṇu in chs. 2 to 16. Giving a brief account of His manifestations as a Fish, Tortoise, Boar, Man-lion and Dwarf, it elaborates the story of Rāma in chs. 5—11 and that of Kṛṣṇa in ch. 12 and describes the origin of the Kauravas and Pāṇdavas in ch. 13. The story of the Mahābhārata is narrated in chs. 14 and 15. Then the *Purāṇa* describes the manifestations as Buddha and Kalki in ch. 16. Later in ch. 17 we find a description of the characteristic features of the images representing the ten manifestations of Lord Viṣṇu while dealing with those of the images of different gods. We have a description of the different manifestations of Lord Viṣṇu again in ch. 276. Here there is a reference to these manifestations as upholding dharma in the battles of the celestials against the demons. There were twelve such battles which resulted in events like the churning of the ocean, the destruction of Andhaka, the killing of the demon Vṛtra, the conquering of the deadly poison *hālāhala* etc.

Political expediency

Political expediency is described in chs. 220 to 242 preceded by two chapters describing the mode of performing the coronation of a king and the sacred syllables for the coronation. These occur in two versions here, the first one as expounded by Puṣkara and the second one as by Rāma. While the first version is a summary of the *Matsyapurāṇa* chs. 215—227, the second version is an adaptation from the *Nitisāra* of Kāmandaka. Sometime, even verses or lines are reproduced *verbatim*. The version by Puṣkara deals with the coronation ceremony, the requisites of those in the service of a king, the code of conduct for the servants, the building of a fort with the residence of the king within, the steps to be taken for providing security to the king as well as women, the duties of a king in general and towards women in the harem, the means of conciliation, the code of criminal laws, military expedition indicating the propitious periods for the same, good and bad auguries, the political expedients used by a king, the daily duties of a king, the rites preceding the march of a king and a hymn in praise of goddess Śrī (Lakṣmī) for the sake of success in battles and general welfare.

The version narrated by Rāma contains the general ethics, the seven constituents of a kingdom, viz. king, ministry, kingdom, fort, treasury, army and allies—helpful to one another, the duties of a king, priest and servants, the six expedients to be employed by a king, the importance of having a good counsel, four kinds of upāyas and the statesmanship of a king while making a military expedition explaining some of the different arrays of the army. An array is said to have seven parts such as chest, sides, wings, centre, back (hip), rear and the edge. It describes arravs such as *guru*, *bhoga* and *daṇḍa* and their modifications. Certain religious rites relating to a king's expedition and consecration of the umbrella and other royal insignia are described in chs. 268 and 269.

*

Physiognomy and characteristic features of royal fan, bow, sword etc.

In continuation of the previous section the *Purāṇa* describes the good and bad effects of the characteristic features of men and

women in chs. 243 and 244. The next chapter deals with the characteristics of royal fan, bow and sword. The handle of a royal fan should be made of gold. A royal umbrella should be made of the feathers of particular birds only. It should be circular and white. The seat of a king should be made by using the wood of *kṣīra* tree. Then the text describes in detail the characteristic features of different parts of a bow. The arrows may be made of iron, bamboo or reeds.

The science of archery, the use of other weapons, riding horses and elephants and thirty-two kinds of military art are dealt with in chs. 249 to 252. In the first two chapters here we find details about the different postures adopted in archery and practical hints for striking a target. The next chapter describes the method of making a noose and its use. The subsequent chapter opens with an enumeration of thirty-two kinds of employment of a sword, eleven ways of manipulating a noose and explains the use of weapons such as *tomara*, *gadā* and the like for specific purposes.

Ch. 246 gives the names of different kinds of gems and points out the characteristic features of an auspicious diamond for being worn by a king. It then describes briefly the excellent varieties of other gems also.

Alaṅkāraśāstra

The various elements constituting a *kāvya* such as characteristics of a *kāvya*, the sentiments, the literary diction, the embellishments of words and sense, and the literary merits and blemishes have been dealt with in chs. 337, 339-40, 343-47. The *Purāṇa* has taken this material from the *Nāṭyaśāstra* of Bharata and *Kāvyādarśa* of Daṇḍin.

After defining *kāvya*, the text gives the classification of *kāvya* as *gadya*, *padya* and *miśra* with their further divisions. The poetic embellishments are divided into those of words, of sense and mixed, with their further sub-divisions. The embellishments of sense are divided into eight categories : *Svarūpa* (natural state), *Sādrśya* (similitude), *Utpreksā* (poetic fancy), *Atiśaya* (exaggeration), *Vibhāvanā* (effect taking place without the cause), *Virodha* (contradiction), *Hetu* (reason) and *Sama* (evenness of description). Following Daṇḍin *Upamā*

(simile) is divided into sixteen varieties. The embellishments of words are the following nine: *Chāyā*, *Mudrā*, *Ukti*, *Yukti*, *Gumphanā*, *Vākovākya*, *Anuprāsa*, *Citra* and *Duṣkara*. Among these the first six varieties are in fact different modes of expressions and cannot be termed as *alaṅkāras*. That is why only the last three are normally referred to as embellishments of words in rhetorics. Most probably the purāṇic text represents a different tradition. The *Purāṇa* treats *Yamaka* as a variety of *Anuprāsa*. The *Purāṇa* refers to the number of varieties of *Yamaka* as ten, but actually names only eight. *Anuprāsa* is said to be of five kinds. *Citra* is divided into seven varieties and *Duṣkara* into three. After defining the mixed variety of embellishments, the *Purāṇa* gives six sub-divisions which are actually treated as *Guṇas* by writers on rhetorics like Daṇḍin and Vāmana.

Guṇas (merits) are classified as *Sāmānya* and *Vīṣeṣa* and described as enhancing the beauty and sweetness of a description, imparting lustre to its theme. *Doṣas* (blemishes) are treated elaborately. They are said to be seven as associated with *vaktā*, *vācaka* and *vācya*. These are again sub-divided. *Ritis* (style) are divided into four: *Pāñcālī*, *Gauḍī*, *Vaidarbhi* and *Lāṭī*, adding the last one to the three given by Vāmana in his *Kāvyālaṅkārasūtravṛtti*. These *ritis* have probably got these names from their use in a particular region. The *Purāṇa* makes a passing reference to the four *Vṛttis* used in dramatic compositions and discusses only the first two. They are mainly dependent on the action of drama and not upon the words or style thereof and are thus distinguished from *Ritis*.

Sentiments (Rasas)

Rasa is traced to the Supreme Reality, the very embodiment of *Ānanda*. *Ahaṅkāra* and *Abhimāna* proceed from that. The latter gives rise to *Rati*. The other sentiments arise from *Rati*. *Rāga*, *Taiṣṇya*, *Avaṣṭambha* and *Saṅkoca* are produced from that giving rise to the four sentiments *Śṛṅgāra*, *Raudra*, *Vira* and *Bibhatsa*. Each one of these sentiments gives rise to *Hāsyā*, *Karūṇa*, *Adbhuta* and *Bhayānaka* respectively. Although the theory of *Rasa* propounded by the *Purāṇa* agrees with the view of Bhoja, there

is this difference that according to the latter *Śṛṅgāra* is the only sentiment and others proceed from it.

Concept of Dhvani

Though the principle of *dhvani* as envisaged by Ānandavaradhana is not recorded in the *Agnīpurāṇa*, we can say that the concept is not entirely unknown to it. The constituents of literature are *dhvani* (sound), *vāṇi* (import), *pada* (word) and *vākya* (sentence). The *Purāṇa* (ch. 345) includes *Abhivyakti* among the embellishments of words. While explaining this term, the text has discussed the different powers of words to indicate different senses. In that context, all expressions are divided into *Śruti* and *Ākṣepa*. *Abhidhā* and *Lakṣaṇā* are brought under the first category and *Dhvani* is included in the second. *Dhvani* is defined as the flashing of the sense not got by mere hearing. The word and sense make their own import secondary, giving primary importance to that got by means of *Dhvani*. Thus the definition here is not very much different from that given in *Dhvanyāloka*. But the *Purāṇa* treats this as an embellishment and includes it in *Ākṣepa*, *Samāvokti*, *Apahṛiti* and *Paryāyokta* (ch. 345, v. 18).

Dramaturgy in the Agnīpurāṇa

The topics relating to dramaturgy are : the characteristics of a hero and heroine, the movement of limbs at the commencement of a dance and exposition of acting (chs. 338 and 341-42). The subject is not dealt with in detail and the other important topics are merely summed up. They are: the purpose of drama, namely, the attainment of the three-fold objective of human existence, twentyseven types of drama without making any distinction such as *Rūpaka* and *Uparūpaka*, the plot together with the two movements (*Sāmānya* and *Viśeṣa*) associated with it, thirty-two kinds of introductions such as *Nāndi* etc., the prologue giving information about the poet's ancestry divided into three classes based on how the stage-director introduces the play, sources of the plot—old treatises or poet's creative genius, and mere listing of the five elements (*artha-prakṛti*) such as *bija* etc., five motions (*ceṣṭā*) such as

prārambha etc. and five junctures (*sandhi*) such as *mukha* etc., the time and place of action of a drama, blemishes such as disclosing a thing at an improper time and inclusion of absurdities in the plot, the characteristics of hero and heroine etc. and the actions and movements of various parts in dancing and acting.

The last item in the above is described in two chapters (chs. 341-42). The *Purāṇa* does not discuss all the points and it merely refers to different technical terms, explaining some of them. This material has been drawn from the *Nāṭyaśāstra* of Bharata. Thus this *Purāṇa* has assimilated divergent views relating to different schools of *Alaṅkāraśāstra* from the originator Bharata down to Bhoja. Hence it is appropriate to assign a post-9th century date to this section of the *Purāṇa*.

Medical science including equinology etc.

The *Agnipurāṇa* in chs. 279-86 deals with various topics relating to the science of medicine such as medicines, diseases and properties of medicinal preparations most probably borrowed from the works of Suśruta, Caraka and other early writers on medicine. The text begins with a desire of the Fire-god to describe the science of medicine as expounded by Dhanvantari to Suśruta. The *Purāṇa* groups together diseases under four heads, viz. organic, mental, extraneous and functional. Fever and leprosy fall under the first head of ailments. Anger, envy etc. are classified as mental derangements. The third variety denotes the diseases owing their origin to some extraneous cause. The last variety consists of items such as thirst, inflammatory fever etc. It is explained how the three humours in the body—wind, phlegm and bile—get deranged on account of the food eaten by us and give rise to various diseases. Hence one should take care to eat food appropriate to the season and that too with moderation. One should take a drug which has an opposite action to nullify the effects of excessive production of a particular humour.

Drugs are divided into two classes, stimulating and soothing. The *Purāṇa* describes (ch. 281) the preparation of herbal extracts. In order to have a healthy life, a man should have the three physical functions—eating, sleeping and coition—

without abstaining from or indulging excessively in anyone of them. The remedial measures fall under five heads, viz. juice, cakes of poultices, distilled extracts, cold juice and fresh extracts (decoction). The text also explains the principle and benefits of massaging and doing physical exercises in the proper way.

The next chapter (ch. 282) describes horticulture dealing with the planting of different kinds of trees, rules of watering them and methods to get good fruits and flowers. Chs. 285-6 describe different kinds of recipes for various ailments as well as for longevity.

Elephant lore and equinology

The *Purāṇa* describes through the mouth of Pālakāpya the treatment of the diseases of elephants in ch. 287. It begins with the narration of the good and bad features of elephants and then deals with the treatment of their diseases. This ch. is an adaptation from the work of Pālakāpya. Ch. 291 describes the propitiatory rites for curing the ailments of elephants. Equinology is dealt with in chs. 288 to 290, Dhanvantari and Śālihotra being the interlocutors. Beginning with a description of the diseases of horses and the management of horses, it explains the remedial measures and the propitiatory rites for curing their ailments. The chapters relating to their diseases and treatment are obviously based on the work of Śālihotra. The *Purāṇa* (ch. 292) explains the greatness of cows and the need for attending to their welfare. The merits of cow's urine, feces, milk and *rocana* are explained. The *Purāṇa* suggests a feed for making the cows yield profuse milk.

Prosody

The *Prāṇa* describes prosody that was expounded by Piṅgala and makes a summary of the eight chapters of *Chandassūtra* of Piṅgala in chs. 328-335. The first chapter here in three verses explains the *gaṇas* (formed by permutation of long and short vowels). The second and third chapters explain the Vedic metres briefly. This is continued in the next chapter also. Then the secular metres are described. Ten varieties of *Āryā*, six varieties of *Vaitāliya*, five varieties of *Mātrāsamaka*, two varie-

ties of *Śikhā* and *Tūlikā* are described. Metres in Sanskrit are divided into three groups, viz. *Sama* (all the quarters having the same characteristics), *Ardhasama* (two halves similar in all respects) and *Viśama* (two halves not equal). Ch. 332 summarises part of a chapter of *Piṅgalasūtra* dealing with the third category. The second and first categories are dealt with in order in the subsequent two chapters. The last chapter has very briefly summarised the *prastāra* method dealt with by Piṅgala. On the whole the *sūtras* of Piṅgala have been put in metrical form with the readings being incorrect sometimes and at times some metres having been omitted. In the translation the incorrect readings have been corrected as far as possible on the basis of Piṅgala's work.

Phonetics

This topic is dealt with in ch. 336 in 21 verses. Although there is no mention that this is a summary of *Śikṣā* ascribed to Pāṇini, most of the verses here agree with the text of Pāṇini. The total number of letters is given as either sixty-three or sixty-four. They are classified into twenty-one vowels, twenty-five consonants, eight semivowels, four twin sounds such as the nasal, *anusvāra*, *visarga*, *ḥa*, *pa* and *la*. The origin of sound is explained. The letters are divided differently into five classes on the basis of the places of articulation. The text lays emphasis on correct pronunciation of letters to avoid incurring sin.

Grammar

We find this topic described in this *Purāṇa* in chs. 349-59, having Skanda as the interlocutor for the first eight chs., and Kumāra for the rest. This is obviously a summary of the *Kaumāra Vyākaraṇa* or *Kātantra* of Sarvavarman. The topics dealt with are: the *Pratyāhāras* and their formation, rules of combination of vowels and consonants, finished forms of inflections in nouns, substantives in the feminine and neuter gender, the relation between a noun and a verb in a sentence (*kāraka*), different kinds of compounds, the formation of secondary nominal bases (*taddhitas*), the formation of primary nominal bases (*uṇādis*), verbal terminations and formation by adding primary

affixes (*kr̥ts*) to verbs. Thus this summary covers all the important topics relating to grammar and it helps to understand a system of grammar different from Pāṇini. Whereas the text gives only the completed euphonic combinations, I have given (under ch. 350) in the translation the individual words which have been combined. Similarly under compounds also (ch. 355) I have given the individual words which have been compounded.

Lexicography

This section in *Agnipurāṇa* comprising chs. 360 to 367 does not mention the name of Amarasimha or his work *Nāmaliṅgānuśāsana* (*Amarakośa*). But it is a summary of the different sections of the lexicographical work of Amarasimha giving words pertaining to the celestial region and nether world, indeclinables, words having many meanings, words denoting earth, city, forest and herbs, words denoting men and their four classes, words relating to the class of brahmin and other castes and words dependent on substantives for their genders. The summary is very unsystematic. After giving a summary of the first *kāṇḍa* of *Amarakośa*, the *Purāṇa* jumps to the middle of the second *kāṇḍa* and after giving extracts from *kāṇḍa* three returns to the second *kāṇḍa* again.

Tāntric material

The *Purāṇa* has much material relating to *Tantra* such as description of various *maṇḍalas*, *cakras* and *mantras* relating to different gods and goddesses, Kubjikā, incantations of different kinds to remove evil effects of diseases and to destroy enemies. Besides the chapters bearing the influence of the Tāntric practices, there are many other chapters dealing with the worship of various deities bearing a tinge of Tāntricism. The mystic syllables like *ham*, *hrim* etc. are profusely used. The preparation of the altar, *mantras*, *mudrās*, *dikṣā* of various types, mystic *maṇḍalas*, investiture of images with sacred threads, consecration of temples, making the images of different gods etc. bear the stamp of the tāntric practices. A perusal of this translation will show that chs. 21 to 106, 140 to 149 and 300

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND TWELVE

The occasions for the use of the Tvaritā-mantra and the benefits

Fire-god said:

1-3. I shall describe the application of the (Tvaritā) Vidyā that would bring about success in matters pertaining to *dharma* and fulfil worldly desires. One who knows the *mantra* divided and spread over nine squares in the regular and reverse order as a whole and divided in combination with *karṇā-vikarṇa*(?) and then by their parts combined in the different triangular forms together with the image of the Goddess would know the *mantras* that confer success as well as the manifold external applications.

4-10. The mantras are manifold in different scriptures. It is difficult to find (the description of) their application therein. The first would be long. It is not described in the early hours of the morning. (The *mantras*) having a single letter, two letters and three letters would be applied. (The mystic diagram) should be divided by four lines each drawn horizontally and vertically. Thus there would be nine chambers. These (letters) should be established in the central region clockwise and then the order is split. One who finds the order by means of combination of the order that votary would have all the desired things in his folded hands. The three worlds would be at his feet. He would get the earth consisting of nine sections. The votary should write the principle of Śiva all around on the skull or on a rag (got) from the cremation ground after he has come out. The name should then be written on it at the centre or on the pericarp. It should then be fumigated with the burning charcoal of *khādira* (tree). Then a piece of birch-bark should be held under the feet. (By this process) one would be able to bring under his control the entire universe together with the movable and immovable things in seven days.

11-12. (Otherwise) the name (of the enemy) should be written inside a thunderbolt (shaped) diagram drawn inside (a circle

having) twelve spokes sanctified with (the principle of) Sadāśiva ('always auspicious'). (Alternatively) (the name should be written) on a wall, or a plank or a stone slab with turmeric. There would be paralysis of the face, the arrest of movement and the arrest (of the movement) of the army.

13-17. A wiseman should write (the name of the adversary) with poison and blood inside a diagram of a club in the middle of a hexagon on a skull in the cremation ground and add (the principle of) the Goddess. This would kill the enemy struck in the cremation ground in no time. It will also ruin the kingdom. The name of the enemy should be written on a disc. The Goddess should be invoked on the blades of the disc. The enemy would be destroyed by means of his name. A person should write the principal letter (of the *mantra*) of Tārṁśya in the middle part of the sword. Then the name of the enemy should be written with the ashes (collected) from the cremation ground. One would be able to win a country. One should strike with the ashes of a dead person. (The *mantra* of) Śiva should be used in creating dessionion, division and death. The *Tāraka* and *Netra* (*mantras*) should be employed in propitiatory and nourishing (rites).

18-21. This is the application (known as) *dahanādi* (capable of) captivating even Śākinī (an attendant of Goddess Durgā). (The diagram) having the Vāruṇī (*mantra*) at the centre and endowed with Vakraṭuṇḍa (bent tusk) would no doubt destroy the diseases such as leprosy and the like. Repeating the Karālī (*mantra*) set up (as spreading) from the middle and ending with the northern direction would guard one's own amulet. The same should be coupled with the principle of Śiva and directed against the opponent. Then it should be located in (the directions) beginning with the west. This would destroy sufferings due to fever. (If the location is done) commencing with the north and ending with the middle, it would cause heaviness in the body. (If it is done) beginning with the east and ending with the middle, it would make (the body) light in a moment.

22-25. After having written this on the *bhūrja* leaf (with resin) endowed with the marks of thunderbolt, one should add the principal letters of the *mantra*. This would offer protection to the bodies etc. If it is encircled by engraved gold, this amulet

would annihilate death. The same worn (on the body) would (remove) obstacles, sins and subdue enemies. (It) would (also) confer good fortune and longevity. No doubt, it would give victory in gambling and battle even if the army of Indra (is to be fought against). This amulet is one like the (gem) *cintāmaṇi* and would confer progeny on barren women. One would be able to conquer other kingdoms, (recover one's own) kingdom and gain sovereignty over the earth. By repeating (the syllables) *phaṭ*, *strīm*, *kṣe*, *hūm* a lakh (number of times), one would gain control over the *yakṣas* (semi-divine beings) and others.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND THIRTEEN

The mantras relating to the worship of different gods

Fire-god said:

1-2. I shall describe the mode of worshipping (lord) Vināyaka (the lord of obstacles). One should first worship the energy of the pedestal. One should worship the eight (things) such as the virtue and the like on the stem. The pericarp, filaments etc. (of a lotus) and a lotus representing the three qualities (should be worshipped). Then (the Goddesses) Jvālīnī, Nandā, Suyāśā, Ugrā, Tejovatī and Vindhyavāsīnī should be worshipped.

3-6. (The different) forms of Gaṇapati should then be worshipped (as follows): "Victory to *gaṇa*" would be for the heart. (Obeisance) to one having single tusk that is strong (is) for the head. (Obeisance) to the one having immovable ears (is) for the tuft. (Obeisance) to the elephant-faced (is) for the armour. The assignment should end with '*hūm phaṭ*'. (Then the following) eight (forms of Gaṇapati should be worshipped): Mahodara (big-bellied), Daṇḍahasta (one that holds the club in the hand), Jaya (victorious), Gaṇādhipa (lord of the Gaṇas), Gaṇanāyaka (leader of the Gaṇas), Gaṇeśvara (lord of the Gaṇas), Vakratuṇḍa (one having bent trunk) and Ekadanta (one having single tusk) should be worshipped in the east (and other directions); one that is fierce, Lambodara (big-bellied), Gajavaktra (having

elephant face), Vikaṭanāmā (known as dreadful) and Vighna-nāśana (the destroyer of obstacles) should be worshipped in the east (adding the syllable) *hūm*. Dhūmravarṇa (grey-coloured), Mahendra and others (should be worshipped) outside (the diagram). This is the mode of worshipping the lord of obstacles.

7-12. I shall describe the mode of worshipping (Goddess) Tripurā. (One should worship first) Asitāṅga (black-coloured one), Ruru, Caṇḍa (wrathful), Krodha (angry one), Unmatta (intoxicated), Kapālī (one wielding the human skull), Bhīṣaṇa (the dreadful one), Saṁhāra (the destroyer) and Bhairava (the terrible one) in order. (The Goddesses) Brāhmī, Hrasvā, Bhairavā, Brahmāṇī, Śaṇmukhā and Dīrghā (should be worshipped). The four celebrates—Samayaputra, Yoginīputra, Siddhaputra and Kulaputra should be worshipped in (the angular points such as) the south-east and others. Hetuka, Kṣetrapāla, Tripurānta, Dvitiyaka, Agnivetāla, Agnijihva, Karālī, Kāmalocana, Ekapāda and Bhīmākṣa should be meditated as the seat of the pretas and worshipped with (the *mantras*) *aiṁ* and *kṣeṁ*. Goddess Tripurā, seated on a lotus seat, holding a book and offering protection (with the right hand) and a garland and conferring boons with the left hand (should be worshipped with) the two *mantras* *aiṁ*, and *om*. The location in the heart etc. is also done with the principal *mantra*. It is a perfect net (that yields) the desired (result).

13-16. The name (of the enemy) should be written at the centre of (a diagram of) an eight-petalled (lotus drawn) on the ground. (Or it should be written) on a piece of cloth at the cremation ground with a charcoal from the cremation ground. Or an image (of the enemy) should be made with charcoal of the funeral pyre ground well. After contemplation (the incantation) should be placed inside the stomach (of the image) and it should be bound with blue thread. Then there would be the magic incantation. *Om*, obeisance ! O Fortunate One ! Jvālāmālīnī (one having the flames as a garland) ! One surrounded by flocks of eagles ! Oblations. A person who goes to the battle after repeating (this) *mantra* would become victorious. *Om*, *śrīṁ* *hrīṁ*, *klīṁ* obeisance to Śrī. One has to worship Goddess Ghṛṇīnī belonging to the sun on a square (drawn) in (the directions)

commencing with the north. (Goddesses) Ādityā, Prabhāvatī, Hemādri, Madhurā and Śrī (should be propitiated). *Om*, *hrīm* obeisance to Gaurī. This *mantra* of (Goddess) Gaurī would yield all things when (it is used) for doing oblation, meditation, repetition and worship.

17-20. A person who prays to the Goddess of red complexion, having four arms and holding a noose and conferring boons with the right hand and holding a goad and offering protection (with the left hand), after contemplation of Her form, would live for a hundred years. He would be a wiseman. There would not be fear due to thieves and enemies. An angry person would become graceful by drinking the water charmed with the *mantra* in the battle. A collyrium or mark (made with the same) would make one get poesy at the tip of his tongue. The repetition of that (*mantra*) at the time of coition would captivate (the concerned person). (One would captivate a person) by looking at the genital organ after the repetition of the (*mantra*). (A person would be captivated) by the touch (after the repetition of the same). One would accomplish all things by doing oblation with sesamum. A person who eats food that has been charmed seven times (with the above) would always (get) fortune.

21-22. This (*mantra*) is a form of Ardhanārīśa (hermaphrodite form of lord Śiva), as well as (Goddess) Lakṣmī, (lord) Viṣṇu and others. One has to repeat (the *mantras* of Goddesses) Anaṅgarūpā, Madanāturā, Pavanavegā, Bhuvanapālā, Sarvasiddhidā, Anaṅgamadanā and Anaṅgamekhalā for (gaining) fortune.

23-24. (The syllable) *hrīm*, the vowels and (the letters) *ka* etc. should be written at the centre and on the petals of a lotus or on a hexagon or on a pot. (A person that looks at women after doing thus) would captivate the women. *Om*, *hrīm*, *chūṁ*, O Nityaklinnā (ever moist) ! O Madadravā (one who exudes intoxicating fluid) ! *Om*, *Om*. This principal *mantra* after location on the six limbs (the two shanks, two arms, head and middle) (and then written) on red-coloured triangle (and worn on the body) would have great power to melt (the heart), make happy and agitate.

25-26. (Goddess) Nityā (should be worshipped) at the centre as well as (the angular points such as) the north-east to-

gether with the noose, goad, skull, the wish-yielding tree, lute and red-coloured (?). (Goddesses) Nityā, Abhayā, Maṅgalā, Navavīrā, Maṅgalā(?), Durbhagā, Manonmanī and Drāvā should be worshipped in the (directions) commencing with the east.

27-28. *Om, hrīm* obeisance to Anaṅga¹ (without a body). *Om, hrīm, hrīm*, obeisance to Smara (one that makes one to remember), (obeisance) to Manmatha (one that agitates the mind), to Māra and to Kāma. The five (forms of God of love) should be contemplated as holding a noose, goad, bow and arrows and as in the union of Rati (Goddess of love) (and her companions) Virati (non-attachment), Priti (pleasure), Vipriti (displeasure), Mati (thought), Dhṛti (firmness), Vidhṛti (fickle-mindedness), and Puṣṭi (nourishment). *Om, chaṁ*, O Nityaklinnā (ever moist) ! Madadravā (exuding intoxicating liquid) ! *Om, Om, a, ā, i, ī, u, ū, ṛ, ṝ, l, ḷ, e, ai, o, au, am, aḥ, ka, kha, ga, gha, ṇa, ca, cha, ja, jha, ṇa, ṭa, ṭha, ḍ, ḍha, ṇa, ta, tha, da, dha, na, pa, pha, ba, bha, ma, ya, ra, la, va, śa, ṣa, sa, ha, kṣa*. *Om, chaṁ* oblations to Nityaklinnā and Madadravā, The energy of support and the lotus (should be worshipped) on the lion and the Goddess in the heart and other (limbs). *Om, hrīm*, Gaurī (white coloured) ! The consort of Rudra (Śiva) ! Yogesvarī (mistress of faculties) ! *Hūm, phaṭ* oblations. .

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FOURTEEN

Mantras relating to the worship of Goddess Tvaritā

Fire-god said :

1-3. *Om, hrīm, hrūm, khe, che, kṣaḥ, strim, hrūm, kṣe, hrīm, phaṭ* obeisance to (Goddess) Tvaritā. After doing the *nyāsa* (location of the *mantra*) (Goddess) Tvaritā possessing two or eight arms should be worshipped. The energy of support and lotus (should be worshipped) in (a diagram of) a lion and the Goddess and the heart etc. (should also be worshipped). Gāyatrī (per-

1. This and the following four names denote the God of love.

sonification of the *mantra*) should be worshipped in a circle in the east (and other directions) (showing) the *prāṇitā* (*mudrā*). (The Goddesses) Hūmkārā, Khecari, Caṇḍā, Chedanī and Kṣepaṇī (should also be worshipped). Hūmkārā, Kṣemakārī and Phaṭkāri should be worshipped at the centre. Jayā and Vijayā (should be worshipped) at the entrance. The servant (should be worshipped) in front of them.

4-10. (One should do) oblations with sesamum with (the repetition of) the *vyāhṛtis* in order to get all things. Obeisance to Ananta¹ ! Oblations. Obeisance to Kalikā ! Svadhā. Oblations to King Vāsuki. Vauṣaṭ to Śaṅkha-pāla. Vaṣaṭ to Takṣaka always. Obeisance to Mahāpadma. Oblations to Karkoṭanāga *phaṭ*. Obeisance to Padma. (The diagram of) *nigraha-cakra* (the magic circle that causes obstruction) should be drawn on one's clothes, or a piece of cloth or on the body, or the birch-bark (leaf) or on a slab or on staffs. The name of the *sādhya* (the object to be accomplished, namely, the enemy) (should be written) in the middle chamber and (the syllables) *om*, *hrim*, *kṣm* on the chambers on the east and other (directions). The thorns and Kālarātrikā (should be written) in the north-east, west etc. and (lord) Yama (the lord of death) outside. (The following mystic couplet should be written on the other chambers):

Kālināravamālī kālināmākṣamālīni
māmodetat tadomomā rakṣata sva sva bhā' ṣa vā
yamapāṭaṭayāmaya maṭamo ṭaṭamo ṭamā
vāmo bhūrivabhūmeyā ṭaṭarīśvaśvari ṭaṭa.

(The syllable) *vaṁ* (should be located) outside the chamber of lord Yama and (the syllable) *taṁ* that has the potency to kill.

11-12. (The above verse should be written) with crow's quill at the cremation ground or the junction of four roads with a mixture of lamp soot, the resin of neem, marrow, blood, poison, charcoal, and piṅgaladhārā (?) and placed under a pitcher. Otherwise it should be placed in an ant-hill. The spell (placed) under a *bibhitaka* tree is capable of destroying all the enemies.

13-16. The *anugraha-cakra* (a circular figure that confers

1. This and the following are the names of different serpents.

grace) should be written on a white leaf or on the *bhūrja* (bark) with shellac or saffron or red sandal. The name (of the enemy) should be written in the central chamber on the earth and the wall. (The *mantra*) *Om hamsa* and the *paṭṭiṣa* (a kind of spear) should be written in the region of the west. The charm of (Goddess) Lakṣmī and Śiva and others should be written in the north-west etc. in order. (The mystic verse is) :

śrīḥ sāmamomā sā śrīḥ sānau yājñe jñeyā nausā
mātṛā līlā lālī vāmā yājñe jñeyā nausā māvā

Śighrā (should be worshipped) outside where the six '*līlā*' (is placed). The pitcher is also (placed) outside. Śighrā is outside where *jñeyā* is placed. (The syllable) *raṁ* is in the different direction. The pitcher would be outside.

17. The wheel of lotus on a lotus (figure) would conquer death, convey (a person) to heaven and (give) firmness. It is the foremost appeasing rite among such rites. It confers fortune etc.

18-22. (In the wheel known as) Rudra, there should be chambers of the number of Rudras (i.e. eleven). That (*mantra*) should be written therein beginning with the syllable *om* and ending with *hrūṁ phaṭ*, the first letters of the *vidyā* being written at the end. This is known as the *pratyaṅgirā* which accomplishes all the desired objects. In (a circle having) eighty-one chambers, the first letters (of the *vidyā*) (should be located) such that they would be from the beginning to the end and the name (of the enemy should be added) ending with *vaṣaṭ*. This is (known as) a different *pratyaṅgirā* (*vidyā*) which would accomplish all tasks. The *nigraha* and *anugraha* (obstruction and grace) circles should be drawn to have sixty-four chambers. This is (known as) *amṛti vidyā* (reviving). (The syllables) *krīm saḥ hūṁ* with the name (of the enemy) at the centre and the syllable *phaṭ* at the beginning (written) on a leaf should be encircled by three syllables of *hrīm*. This (charm) worn with (a mark of) a pitcher will kill all enemies and yield all things. If (this *mantra*) is repeated in the ear letter by letter or as a *daṇḍaka* (a group of letters), it would destroy poison.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FIFTEEN

Narration of mantras relating to paralysing, captivating etc.

Fire-god said :

1. I shall describe to you (the *mantras* and acts) relating to paralysing, stupefying, captivating, ruining the enemy, neutralising the (effects of) poison and diseases and causing the death (of an enemy).

2-4. A twice-born should draw (the figure of) a tortoise of six inches (length) on a birch-bark by (the act of) *tādāna* and then locate the *mantra* on the face and four feet. The syllable *krīm* should be written on the four feet, the syllable *hrīm* at the centre of the face, the *vidyā* (*mantras*) on the belly and (the name of) the person concerned on the back. After having encircled it with the *mālāmantras* (garland of letters), it should be placed over a brick. It should then be covered with the back of a tortoise and then charmed with the *karāla* (*mantra*).

5-8. After having worshipped the great tortoise (manifestation of Viṣṇu), (the votary) should sprinkle water on the feet (of that form). After having thought of the enemy, (the votary) should kick seven times (on the ground) with the left foot (of the tortoise). It would cause paralysis to the enemy. One should assume a terrible form by having change in the complexion of the face and write the garland of *mantras*. *Om* ! One who paralyses the face of the enemy ! An embodiment of desire ! One that stands with arm discharging an arrow ! *Hrīm phēm*, *Phetkārīṇī* ! Paralyse (2¹) the face of my enemies given by the gods ! Paralyse (2) the face of all my enemies ! *Om*, *hūm*, *phēm*, *Phetkārīṇī* ! Oblations ! *Phaṭ* ! After having written the *mantra*, one would gain great strength at the end of its repetition. One should draw (the figure of) a tree and the trident on the right hand with the left hand. The *mantra* of lord Aghora (a form of Śiva) should then be written. One would paralyse the enemies in the battle. *Om*, obeisance to the Fortunate One ! O Bhagāmālīnī ! Agitate (2) ! Throb ! O Nityaklinnā ! melt (2), *hūm saḥ* ! Embodiment of the syllable *krīm* ! Oblations. One who wears a mask with the resin with (the repetition of) this (*mantra*) would stupefy the world.

1. The figure indicates repetition of the preceding word.

9-13a. *Om, phem, hūm, phaṣ Phatkāriṇi ! Hrim*, burn (2), stupefy (2) the three worlds. O Guhyakālikā ! Oblations. One would captivate the king and others by making a (fore-head) mark with this (*mantra*). The dust (under the feet) of a donkey mixed with the *sūṭaka*¹ fluid and the menstrual blood of a woman should be thrown on the bed (of a person) in the night. This would cause enmity. The hoof and horn of a cow, the hoof of a horse and the head of a serpent (charmed as before and) thrown into the house (of a person) would cause the ruin of the enemy. The root of the yellow *karavīra* together with mustard (would be potent) to cause death. The blood of a serpent and a musk-rat together with *karavīra* would also produce similar result. A lizard, bee, crab and scorpion are ground well and thrown into oil. One who anoints with that (oil) would get leprosy. *Om* (obeisance) to the nine planets. Conquer (2) my enemies. Kill (2) (them). *Ām, soṃ, maṃ, buṃ, cuṃ, om, śaṃ, vāṃ, keṃ, om* oblations.

13b-14. After having worshipped (the planets) with hundreds of *arka* (flowers), this should be placed in a cremation ground. The planets should be drawn on a birch-bark or in an image for the ruin of the enemies. *Om* Kuñjarī, Brahmāṇī! *Om* Mañjarī, Māheśvarī! *Om* Vetālī, Kaumārī! *Om* Kālī, Vaiṣṇavī! *Om* Aghorā, Vārāhī! *Om* Vetālī, Indrāṇī, Urvaśī! *Om* Vetālī, Caṇḍikā! *Om* Jayāṇī, Yakṣiṇī! O Nine Mothers ! eh ! Seize (2) my foe. After having written the name of the enemy on a birch-bark, if it is worshipped in the cremation ground, (the foe) would die.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SIXTEEN

Narration of different kinds of mantras

Fire-god said :

1-5. The syllable *hūm* is at the beginning. Then the letters *khe, ca, che*, and the *visarga* that is outside the group of conson-

1. The discharge at the time of the birth of a child.

ants (are added). It ends with *strīm*, *hūm*, *kṣepa* and *phaṭ*. This *vidyā* is known as subduing all things. It also destroys the poisons of serpents. *Om*, *khe*, *che* should be practised to revive a person bitten by a deadly serpent. *Om*, *hūm*, *ke*, *kṣaḥ* should be used to destroy poison and enemies. *Strīm*, *hūm*, *phaṭ* is (the *mantra*) to be used for conquering sins and diseases etc. *Khe*, *cha* is the application for removing evil obstacles. The application of *hūm*, *strīm*, *om* would captivate women. The application of *khe*, *strīm*, *khe*, *cha* should be used for captivating and conquest. *Aīm*, *hrīm*, *srīm*, *sphēm*, *kaim*, *kṣaum*, Bhagavati! Ambikā! Kubjikā! *sphēm*, *om*, *bham*, *taṁ* subjugate. Obeisance to Aghora on the face! *Brām*, *brām*, *kili*, *kili*, *vicā*, *sphaum*, *hem*, *sphūm*, *śraum*, *hrīm*, *aim*, *srīm*. This *vidyā* of Kubjikā is known to accomplish all the things. I shall describe to you again the *mantras* narrated by (lord) Īśa (Śiva) to (lord) Skanda.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SEVENTEEN

The different kinds of mantras of Śiva

The Lord said:

1. (The *mantras*) of Śiva are divided into eight kinds, such as *sakala* (endowed with parts), *niṣkata* (without parts), *śūnya* (void), *kalāḍhya* (abounding in parts), *khamalaṅkṛta* (adorning the sky), *kṣapaṇa* (suppressing), *kṣaya* (destroying) and *śiva* (benevolent). The letters which lay inside and belong to (the regions of) the throat and lips (should be present in them).

2. O Guha (name of Kumāra, son of Śiva and Pārvatī)! There are eight kinds of the benevolent (*mantra*) known as *para* (supreme). The form of the word Sadāśiva is efficacious for accomplishing all things.

3-8a. (The forms) of the vowels are Amṛta, Amśumat, Indu, Īśvara, Ugra, Ūhaka, Ekapāda, Oja and Auśadha. Amśumat (among these) is capable of subjugating. (The forms) of the letters *ka* to *kṣa* are: Kāmadeva, Śikhaṇḍī, Gaṇeśa, Kāla, Śaṅkara, Ekanetra, Dvinetra, Trisikha, Dīrghabāhuka, Ekapād, Arddha-

candra, Balapa, Yoginīpriya, Śaktīśvara, Mahāgranthi, Tarpaka, Sthāṇu, Dantura, Nidhīśa, Nandī, Padma, Śākinīpriya, Mukha-bimba, Bhīṣaṇa, Kṛtānta, Prāṇa, Tejasvī, Śakra, Udadhi, Śrīkaṇṭha, Simha, Śaśāṁka, Viśvarūpa and Narasiṁha (representing) *kṣa*.

8b-11a. (The syllable of) Viśvarūpa should be made to be pervaded by the syllables of Sūrya (Sun). After having coupled the syllable of Śaśī (Moon) with Amśumat, (the syllable of) Īśāna pervaded by (the syllable of) Ojas should first be raised up. (Among the above names), the third should be known as (Tat)Purusa, the fifth as Dakṣiṇa, the seventh as Vāmadeva, the next one as Sadyojāta and the ninth as coupled with the *rasa* (*bija*). This is known as the *brahmapañcaka* (the five brahmans).

11b-14. All the mantras begin with the syllable *om* and end with (the name in) the fourth case and obeisance. (The first one is presided over by) Sadyojāta. The second one is the heart together with the subordinate one. The fourth should be known as the head known by the name Īśvara. Ūhaka should be known as the tuft endowed with Viśvarūpa. Its *mantra* is known to be the eighth. The eye is considered as the tenth. O Śikhidhvaja (Kumāra, having peacock as the banner) ! The weapon is said to be the Moon known as Śiva. Obeisance, oblation, *vauṣaṭ*, *hūm* and *phaṭka* is the order.

15-17. I shall describe the *prāsāda mantra* (the benevolent one) relating to the heart etc. belonging to *phaṭka*. One should raise the (syllable) known as Rudra from Īśāna adorned with Amśu that remains above the group in the region of head pervaded by Auṣadha. It has half-crescent *nāda* (nasal sound) upwards having two dots in the middle. Viśvarūpa is at the end bent thrice. This is the *prāsāda mantra* capable of accomplishing all the things.

18-21a. After having raised the syllables of the tuft ending with the syllable *phaṭ* placed on the half crescent, it is known as Kāmadeva that flows (and is verily) the great Pāśupata weapon that destroys all evils. I have described the *prāsāda* (*mantra*) endowed with parts. I will describe (the *mantra*) without parts now. (This consists of) Auṣadha, Viśvarūpa, Rudra, orb of Sun, coupled with *nāda* of the form of half-moon, without designa-

tion and bent. The *niṣkala* (*mantra*) confers enjoyment and emancipation. It is always benevolent because it is endowed with five parts.

21b-31. (The *mantras*) that are void (consist of) *Amṣumat*, *Viśvarūpa* and divested of *Brahmāṅga* (class of letters). Its form is the essence. It destroys obstacles when worshipped by boys and ignorant men. *Amṣumat* coupled with *Viśvarūpa* and situated over the *Ūhaka* is the *mantra* known as *kalāḍhya* (fully endowed with parts). It is always used in the worship in the same way as the *mantra* with parts. The *khamalaṅkṛta* consists of *Narasimha* (*mantras*) situated in *Kṛtānta* pervading above the radiant life force, coupled with *Amṣumat* and pervaded by *Ūhaka* above and below. It is composed of half-moon *nāda* adorned by *Brahmā* and *Viṣṇu*. The *Udadhi* (*mantras*) and *Narasimha* should be divided with the vowels of *Sūrya*. The other subsidiary rites should be done as before. The first letter is that which is known as *Ojas*, coupled with *Amṣumat* that is to be raised. The foremost among the second letter is the *Amṣumat* pervaded by *Amṣu*. Similarly the *Amṣumat* (pervading) the *Īśvara* is capable of conferring emancipation. The *Ūhakas* are pervaded by *Amṣu* and (followed by) *Varuṇa*, *Prāṇa* and *Taijasa* (syllables). It is known as the fifth one. The next one is the *Kṛtānta*. The *Amṣumat* (coupled with) *Udaka* and *Prāṇa* is raised as the seventh one. The *Padma* is pervaded by *Indu*. The *Nandīśa* is coupled with *Ekapāda*. The first one is added at the end. (That is known) as *Kṣapaṇakṛta* consisting of ten syllables. The third, fifth and seventh would number half of it. The *Sadyojāta* would be the ninth, the *hṛd* and other (*mantras*) (taken) from the second. The *mantras* consisting of the (above said) ten syllables should end with *phaṭ*. This *astra* (*mantra*) should be raised.

32-34. The subordinate *mantras* (in the above) should be coupled with obeisance. It is not done in any other way. From the second to the eighth are considered as the *Vidyēśvaras* (the lords of the *mantras*)—*Ananteśa*, *Sūkṣma*, *Śivottama* the third, *Ekamūrti*, *Ekarūpa*, *Trimūrti* the next one, *Śrīkaṇṭha* and *Śikhaṇḍī* are known to be the eight *Vidyēśvaras*. The ends of the *mantras* from that of *Śikhaṇḍī* to the end of *Ananta* are said to be the embodied form.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND EIGHTEEN

The mode of worshipping Gaṇapati, accomplishing all things

The Lord said :

1-2. The Viśvarūpa (syllable) should be raised and placed above the Tejas. Then the Narasimha and Kṛtānta are placed below one below the other. The *praṇava* (*om*) should be placed below that and the Udaka below that. The Amśumat that remains in the Viśvamūrti, the letter of the throat and lip region and the *praṇava* (*om*) (should be below that).

3. The first four letters should end with obeisance. It should then be coupled as before with the *aṅgamantras* adding also the syllables of Sūrya and Viśvarūpa, the cause.

4. The syllable *om* should be raised first and the luminous form without a second one should be repeated. The Ghoraghoratara (terrible one) (should be repeated). That form should then be remembered.

5-6. After having made the *caṣa* sound twice, the (syllable) *om* should be repeated. Then one has to repeat twice 'burn' and then twice 'vama'. After having stated 'kill' twice, one should repeat *hūm phaṣ* at the end. This would be the *mantra* of the weapon for (lord) Aghora. I shall describe the *gāyatri* (*mantra*) (sacred to the same deity) now—"We know the true self of (lord) Maheśa. We meditate on the supreme god. May that auspicious god kindle our (mind) to that." This *gāyatri* (*mantra*) is capable of accomplishing all things.

7-14. One has to worship (lord) Gaṇa (Gaṇapati) when one sets on a journey or in battle etc. for prosperity. One has to draw (the figure of a lotus having three petals inside a triangle on a fourth part of a square place divided into twelve chambers. On its back (back of the lotus) steps and pathway (should be drawn) having (the mark of) a horse on (each) petal. There should be silken cloth for footrest together with eight lotuses having three petals. The platform should be made above that measuring a fourth part. (The figure) should have a door containing (a figure of) a lotus. The side door from the chamber should be made pale. The circle drawn with doors and side-doors would destroy obstacles. The central lotus should

be red. The lotuses outside that should (also be red). The pathway should be made white. The doors (should be coloured) as one wishes. The pericarp as well as the filaments would be yellow in colour. This circle is known as destroying obstacles. (Lord) Gaṇapati should be worshipped. The first name would be that of (lord) Śiva together with Indra and others. The head is struck with Tatpuruṣa. *Om* is the first (syllable) with obeisance at the end.

15. (The gods) Gaja (elephant), Gajaśirṣa (elephant-headed), Gāṅgeya (son of Gaṅgā), Gaṇanāyaka (lord of the Gaṇas), Trirāvartta (turned round thrice), Gaganaga (one who travels in the sky), Gopati (a leader) (should be worshipped) in the first row.

16-22. Vicitrāṁśa (one possessing strange characteristics), Mahākāya (one having a big body), Lamboṣṭa (having a hanging lip), Lambakarṇaka (one having drooping ears), Lambodara (big-bellied), Mahābhāga (very fortunate one), Vikṛta (having strange appearance), Pārvatī-priya (one who is dear to Pārvatī), Bhayāvaha (frightening), Bhadra (auspicious), Bhagaṇa (the cluster of asterisms), Bhayasūdana (one that destroys fear) are the twelve (to be worshipped) on the ten rows. Devatrāsa (frightening the celestials) (should be worshipped) on the west. Mahānāda (one having a great sound), Bhāsvara (one having lustre), Vighnarāja (lord of obstacles), Gaṇādhipa (lord of the Gaṇas), Udbhaṭa (the pre-eminent one), Svanābha (self-originating), Aṇḍa (wreath), Mahāśuṇḍa (one having a big trunk), Bhīmaka (the terrible), Manmatha (captivating the mind), Madhusūda (the destroyer of Madhu), Sundara (beautiful one), and Bhāvapuṣṭaka (one that nourishes one's thoughts) (should be worshipped). (Lord) Brahmeśvara (lord of Brahmā), Brāhma, Manovṛtti (mental attitude), Samlaya (well-absorbed), Laya (absorption), Dūtya-priya (fond of being a messenger), Laulya (extremely desirous), Vikarṇa (having a strange ear), Vatsala (affectionate), Kṛtānta (the destroyer) and Kāladāṇḍa (death) (should be worshipped) on the north. A sacrificial pitcher should be worshipped as before. The *mantra* should be repeated ten thousand times. Oblation should be done one-tenth of that number. When the other (*mantras*) are repeated oblations should be made ten times.

After having performed the final oblation, one should do the consecration. One would accomplish everything. A person should honour the preceptor by (giving) land, cows, horse, elephant, clothes and other articles.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND NINETEEN

Mode of worshipping Vāgīśvari (Goddess of speech)

The Lord said :

1. I shall describe the worship of (Goddess) Vāgīśvari (Goddess of speech) in a circle. The *mantra* (made up of syllable of) Ūhaka together with (that of) Kāla added with the letters (would be the *mantra* for the Goddess).

2-4. O Niṣāda (hunter) (denotes Kumāra) ! The *mantra* (for Goddess Vāgīśvari) should be used like that of the Moon and Sun. No letter need be assigned. One should contemplate (the Goddess) as having the complexion of jasmine and moon, embodying the fifty letters¹ (of the alphabet), adorned with garlands of pearls and flowers, (holding the postures of hand) offering boons and protection and holding books and possessing three eyes. One should repeat the garland of letters from 'a' to 'kṣa' remembering as pervading (the body of the Goddess) upto the tip of the head and the ends of the shoulders.

5-10. The preceptor should make a circle for the sake of initiating (the disciple) in a *mantra*. A lotus (figure) that is good (for the worship of the Goddess) should have twelve tips divided into two parts. One should make ready the pathway and steps. There should be eight lotuses on the cross-road. The pathway and steps should be provided outside also. There should be doors in two squares. Similarly the side-doors, the construction of angular points and two strips of cloth should be done. The nine lotuses (should be) white. The pericarp of the lotus (should have) the hue of gold. The filaments should be variegat-

1. The letters *a* to *kṣa* of the Sanskrit language.

ed. The angular points should be filled with red (-coloured substance). The inner space between the lines of the sky (should be painted) black. The doors should be of the measure of the elephant of Indra. (Goddess) Sarasvatī (should be contemplated) at the centre of the (above) lotus. (Goddess) Vāgīśī (should be contemplated) on the eastern lotus. (Goddesses) Hṛllekhā, Citravāgīśī, Gāyatrī, Viśvarūpā, Śāṅkarī, Rati and Dhṛti (should also be worshipped). (The syllable) *hrīm* and the respective syllables (should be worshipped) in the east and other (directions). (The Goddess) should be contemplated as (Goddess) Sarasvatī. Oblations (should be done) with clarified butter from the milk of a tawny cow. One would then become a Saṁskṛta and Prākṛta poet and one who is well-versed in the science of poesy and other things.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND TWENTY

The different mystic diagrams

The Lord said :

1-5a. O Guha¹ ! I shall describe to you the Sarvato-bhadraka² (that which confers good from all sides). A wiseman should worship the favourite Goddess of energy on the east at (the time of) the equinox. Then he should hold the thread east-west having the middle point between (the asterisms) Citrā and Svāti and mark at its centre after causing it to move gently. Two points on the north and south should be marked from its middle point. The two points should be brought in line with the middle point after having moved (the string) gently north-south. The junctions of angular points should be marked such that one would have one hundred and fifty divisions. Thus a quadrangle would be formed by causing the four lines to move gently. The auspicious Bhadrā diagram should be drawn in that.

1. denotes Kumāra, son of Śiva and Pārvatī.

2. a kind of mystical diagram.

5b-8a. (The quadrangle) should be divided into eight squares. The pathways and doorways should be made in two squares each. The cupola should be proportionate to the measure of the lotus. The excellent angular joints should be formed by turning round two squares. The lotus should be (painted) white, the pericarp yellow, the filaments variegated, the pathway red and the door having the hue of Lokeśa (Lord of the world). The angular point (should be) red. (This is the lotus to be drawn) in the case of a daily rite. Listen to me ! (I shall describe the mode of drawing) a lotus for an occasional (rite).

8b-9. There are two varieties of lotus (diagrams), (the diagram) that does not touch and (the diagram) that touches, which confer enjoyment and emancipation. That which does not touch (is intended) for those who desire for release (from worldly existence). That which touches is of three (kinds)—young one, middle one and old. (These three) yield the fruits and perfection according to their respective names.

10-14. Lines should be drawn in the different directions as well as the directions in between in the place for the lotus. Five circles should be drawn (having dimensions) equal to that of the lotus. There should be nine lotuses around the pericarp in the first (circle). The second (circle) should have twentyfour pericarps. There should be a union of petals, the tip of the petal resembling the temple of an elephant. The fifth should be of the form of the sky. This is known as contiguous (type of) lotus. In the unctiguous one, the tip of the petal should be divided into four from the bottom. After having discarded two parts, a petal should be set with one-eighth of the remaining. The petal should be anointed with the line at the union from the base. This would be *Vṛddha* class on the left and right.

15-17a. In the alternative one should whirl round from the middle of the union to form a semi-circle. The two unions and the foremost line (should be made into circles). This would form a young type of lotus. One should turn it from behind with half the measure of the union line. This lotus having pointed tip known as youthful class is capable of conferring enjoyment and emancipation. The *bāla* class of lotus is known as of two kinds—*mukta* and *vṛddha* useful in subjugating (one's enemy) etc.

17b-22. A ground measuring nine cubits should be made ready as having nine central points with parts possessing *mantras*. A lotus (should be drawn) at the centre having a banner at the centre and a door proportionate in size to that of the lotus. Leaving its neck portion and the adjacent parts, a pathway should be made outside. The pathway should have five parts. There should be ten parts around that. Lotuses (should be drawn) in the eight directions and the directions in between. The lotus at the entrance should have a pathway. A pathway of five foot (breadth) adorns outside that. The door and the neck (should measure) like that of the lotus. The frontal and neck (should measure) a foot. The cupola should be made a foot. There should be three doors in the (different) directions. The angular joints will have three chambers. Two chambers would bear the mark of a mace. The central lotus (should be) white (and other lotuses should be) yellow, red, blue, whitish yellow, smoky, red and yellow conferring emancipation.

23-24a. One should worship Śiva, Viṣṇu and others in the eight lotuses on the east etc. After having worshipped Indra and others at the centre of the edifice, the weapons in the lotuses and (lord) Viṣṇu and others in the external pathway, one would get (the fruits of performing) the *atvamedha* (sacrifice).

24b-30a. One should draw a great circle in connection with the investiture of the sacred thread on the idol etc. A piece of ground (measuring) eight cubits should be divided into eight chambers. There should be a lotus in two chambers at the centre and the pathway in one chamber. Eight blue lotuses should be marked in the different directions and the spaces in between. Thirty blue lotuses without the union of petals (should be drawn) measuring the same size as the central lotus. There should be a pathway behind occupying a chamber. There should be (the figure of) *svastika*-s above that. As before the pathway outside should be in eight (chambers) divided into twenty parts having (the figure of) *svastikas* in two chambers. The doors and the boundaries should be proportionate to the lotus. The angular point, the pathway and the lotus in the circle should be red, yellow and blue respectively. O Guha ! the *svastika* (figure) etc. of varied colour are capable of fulfilling all the desires.

30b-33. (The circle having) five lotuses should measure five cubits. It should be wholly divided into ten parts. The pathway (should occupy) two chambers of the lotus, and the tablet (in one chamber). There should be four lotuses at the cardinal points. There should be a pathway on the rear in one chamber or two chambers. The doors should be endowed with boundaries and adjacent spaces. There should be a lotus at the centre. In this circle consisting of five lotuses, (the lotus) in the east (is) white and yellow, the lotus in the south (is) of the hue of lapis lazuli, the lotus in the west (is) of the colour of jasmine, the lotus in the north (is) of the colour of a conch and all the rest of varied colour.

34-37. I shall describe a circle of ten cubits which yields all the desires. It should be a four-sided one divided into ten parts. The door would occupy two chambers. As (described) earlier (there should be) a lotus at the centre. I shall now describe (the circle known as) the destroyer of obstacles. After having made (ready) a place (measuring) four cubits, a circle measuring two arms length (should be drawn). The pathway (should measure) only a cubit. It should be made to contain many figures of *svastika*. The doors should measure a cubit. There should be circle containing lotus (figures) in the cardinal points. Five white coloured lotuses (should be drawn). God without any attributes should be worshipped at the centre. The heart (and other limbs) (should be worshipped) in the east and other directions. The weapons should be worshipped in the directions in between (these directions).

38-41. As before the five Brahmins (forms of Śiva should be worshipped). I shall describe the support of intellect. A place should be divided into hundred parts and a lotus (should be drawn) in fifteen parts. (Figures) of eight *lingas* should be drawn in the (eight) directions. The girdle should occupy a part and the boundary would be in two chambers. The preceptor should provide decorative festoons etc. making use of his creative thinking.¹ There are one thousand four-hundred and forty circles for the gods Hari, Śambhu and Sun and the goddess.

1. Verse number 40 is cryptic and has not been translated.

42-48. Listen to me ! I shall describe the decorations and marks to be made in (a place) divided into seventy (parts). Fifteen, one, three and five (chambers) in the cardinal points should be erased. The temple of *līṅga* should be made above in two chambers on the sides. A lotus should be drawn in two chambers at the centre. A lotus should be drawn in one chamber on either side of the *līṅga*. By destroying the six lines of the decorations the remaining (would form lines) for (lord) Hari. After having erased the two squares above, it is said to form the auspicious *aṣṭaka* (having eight parts) of (lord) Hari. It is decorated by erasing four lines and possessing beam like (lines). Then the lotus for a seat is made in twentyfive (chambers). After having retained two chambers on each side, the eight secondary decorations (are made). The diagram sacred to the goddess is big at the centre and small above. There should be a lotus at the centre in nine chambers and four chambers in the cardinal points. The remaining thirteen chambers form a circle resting on one's intellect. That one having one hundred and sixty petals based on one's intellect (is intended) for Hara (Śiva) and others.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND TWENTY . ONE

The appeasing rites relating to Aghorāstra

The Lord said:

1. (The propitiatory) rite for the weapons has to be done first. It is capable of yielding the results in all actions. The weapons relating to (lord) Śiva and others should be worshipped at the centre. The thunderbolt and others (weapons) (should be worshipped) from the east onwards in order.

2. One would gain victory in battle etc. by worshipping five discs in (a place measuring) ten cubits. In the worship of the planets the Sun (has to be worshipped) at the centre and the Moon and others (planets) in the east and other directions.

3-4. All the planets (would be beneficial) as if they are in

the eleventh house, by their worship. I shall describe (the rite of) appeasing the weapons that would destroy all the portents, remedy the baneful influences of planets and crush the epidemics and enemies. One should repeat (the *mantra* sacred to) the weapon of Aghora¹ that would burn the impediments.

5-6. (The repetition of the *mantra*) a lakh times would destroy (the baneful influences of) the planets. (One should do) oblations with sesamum (to nullify) portents. (In the case of portents occurring) in the sky one should do (oblation or repetition) half a lakh times which would destroy the portents. It is beneficial to do oblation with ghee a lakh times in the case of portents relating to the earth. All types of portents are nullified by doing oblation with ghee and *guggulu* (fragrant gum-resin).

7. There is no doubt that diseases (get cured) by performing oblation with *dūrvā* (grass), unbroken rice and clarified butter and bad dreams get destroyed (by doing oblation) one thousand times.

8. The evil effects of the planets would get nullified (by doing oblation) with ghee mixed with *japā* (flower) ten thousand times. Oblation performed with ghee ten thousand times would appease the afflictions due to Vināyaka (an evil spirit).

9-10. The spirits and goblins would be appeased by (the oblation of) *guggulu* ten thousand times. (One would get good results) by offering oblations with *dūrvā* (grass), clarified butter and unbroken rice when a giant tree falls down or a serpent or a heron perches on the house or while one enters the forests etc. One would get good results by offering oblations with sesamum and clarified butter when a portent or earthquake occurs.

11-12a. (Oblations done) with *guggulu* ten thousand times would be beneficial if the trees ooze out blood. Oblations made with sesamum and clarified butter half a lakh times (would be beneficial) when (the trees) bear flowers and fruits in improper season, (when there is) unrest in the country, (when enemies) invade the country and epidemics affect the bipeds etc.

1. One of the five forms of Śiva.

12b-13a. It is said that rite of appeasement should be done ten thousand times in order to appease the epidemics in elephants, in order to strengthen the tusk of the female elephants and when the elephants are found rutting.

13b.-14a. When there is a miscarriage of the foetus at an improper time, or when the child perishes after birth, or when the children are born deformed or when one undertakes a journey, one should do oblations ten thousand times.

14b-15a. Oblations done with sesamum and clarified butter one lakh times would yield excellent results, half that number (would yield) medium results and a quarter of that number (would yield) poor results.

15b-c. Similar to the repetition (of the *mantra*) oblation done (with the *mantra*) would confer victory in battle. One should repeat (the *mantra* of) the weapon of Aghora after making the (mental) location (of the *mantra* on the limbs) and contemplating the excellent five-faced (lord).¹

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND TWENTYTWO

The appeasing rite employing the mantra of the weapon of Paśupati

The Lord said:

1. I shall describe first the appeasing rite and repetition with (the *mantra*) of the weapon of Paśupati. If it is repeated with *phat* at the end it would remove one's misfortune. *Om* ! Obeisance to the lord ! to great lord of the flock ! to one possessing matchless prowess and strength ! to one having fifteen eyes ! to the person having varied forms ! to one who is armed with different kinds of weapons ! to one having blood besmeared all over the body ! to one who is blended with a mass of collyrium ! to one who is fond of the cremation ground and goblins ! to one who removes all impediments ! to one who confers all perfec-

1. Aghora is one of the five faces of lord Śiva; the other faces are : Iṣāna, Tatpuruṣa, Vāmadeva and Sadyojāta.

tions ! to one who is gracious to the devotees ! to one who has innumerable faces, arms and feet ! to the one who has attained perfection ! to one who frightens the goblins ! to one who causes commotion in Śākinī (female attendant on goddess Durgā) ! to the person who controls the diseases ! to one who destroys the sins ! to one who has the Sun, Moon and Fire as the (three) eyes ! to one who is the armour of (lord) Viṣṇu ! to one who (holds) the sword and thunderbolt in the hand ! to one who has the club of Yama and the noose of Varuṇa (the lord of the West and upholder of moral law) ! to the one holding the trident of Rudra ! to the person who has the burning tongue ! to the person who drives away all diseases ! to one who controls the plants ! to one who annihilates the malicious serpents ! *Om phaṭ* to the black and brown ! *Phaṭ* to the person having the sound *hūm* as the weapon ! *Phaṭ* to one holding the thunderbolt in the hand ! *Phaṭ* to the spear ! *Phaṭ* to the club ! *Phaṭ* to Yama ! *Phaṭ* to the sword ! *Phaṭ* to lord of north-west ! *Phaṭ* to Varuṇa ! *Phaṭ* to the noose ! *Phaṭ* to the banner ! *Phaṭ* to the goad ! *Phaṭ* to the mace ! *Phaṭ* to Kubera (lord of wealth) ! *Phaṭ* to the trident ! *Phaṭ* to the hammer ! *Phaṭ* to the disc ! *Phaṭ* to the lotus ! *Phaṭ* to the serpent weapon ! *Phaṭ* to Īśāna ! *Phaṭ* to the club weapon (called *kheṭaka*) ! *Phaṭ* to the headless trunk ! *Phaṭ* to the weapon, the headless trunk ! *Phaṭ* to the weapon, the skeleton ! *Phaṭ* to the weapon, the feather of a peacock ! *Phaṭ* to the weapon, the sharp knife ! *Phaṭ* to the weapon Brahmāstra ! *Phaṭ* to the weapon Śaktyastra ! *Phaṭ* to the weapon of the Gaṇa (attendant of lord Śiva) ! *Phaṭ* to the accomplished weapon ! *Phaṭ* to the weapon *pilipiccha* ! *Phaṭ* to the weapon of the Gandharva (semi-divine being) ! *Phaṭ* to the weapon of *mūrvā* (a kind of grass from which strings and girdles of *ksatriyas* are made) ! *Phaṭ* to the weapon of the right ! *Phaṭ* to the left ! *Phaṭ* to the weapon of the west ! *Phaṭ* to the weapon of *mantra* ! *Phaṭ* to the weapon of Śākinī (female attendant of Goddess Durgā) ! *Phaṭ* to the weapon of yoginī (another female attendant of Goddess Durgā) ! *Phaṭ* to the weapon, the club ! *Phaṭ* to the weapon, the great club ! *Phaṭ* to the weapon, the serpent ! *Phaṭ* to the weapon of Śiva ! *Phaṭ* to the weapon of Īśāna ! *Phaṭ* to the weapon of (Tat) puruṣa ! *Phaṭ* to the weapon of Aghora ! *Phaṭ* to the weapon of Vāmadeva !

Phaṭ to the weapon of Sadyojāta! *Phaṭ* to the weapon of the heart! *Phaṭ* to the great weapon! *Phaṭ* to the weapon of Garuḍa (vulture vehicle of lord Viṣṇu)! *Phaṭ* to the weapon of the demons! *Phaṭ* to the weapon of the Dānavas (demons, progeny of Danu)! *Phaṭ* to the weapon of the man-lion form (of Viṣṇu)! *Phaṭ* to the weapon of Tvaṣṭṛ (a celestial god)! *Phaṭ* to all the weapons! *naḥ phaṭ!* *vaḥ phaṭ!* *paḥ phaṭ!* *phaḥ phaṭ!* *maḥ phaṭ!* *śriḥ phaṭ!* *hrai phaṭ!* (region) *bhūḥ phaṭ!* (region) *bhuvaḥ phaṭ!* (region) *svaḥ phaṭ!* (region) *mahaḥ phaṭ!* (region) *janaḥ phaṭ!* (region) *tapāḥ phaṭ!* *Phaṭ* all worlds! *Phaṭ* all nether worlds! *Phaṭ* all principles! *Phaṭ* all life forces! *Phaṭ* all nerves! *Phaṭ* all causes! *Phaṭ* all the Gods! *hrīm phaṭ!* *śrīm phaṭ!* *hrūm phaṭ!* *srūm phaṭ!* *ām phaṭ!* *lām phaṭ!* *Phaṭ* to indifference (for worldly pleasures)! *Phaṭ* to the weapon of illusion! *Phaṭ* to the weapon of desire! *Phaṭ* to the weapon of the guardian of the field! *Phaṭ* to the weapon, the sound *hūm!* *Phaṭ* to the weapon of the Sun! *Phaṭ* to the weapon of the Moon! *Phaṭ* to the weapon of lord of obstacles! *Gaum gaum phaṭ!* *Khrom Khraum phaṭ!* *Hrom hraum phaṭ!* Cause to roam about (2) *phaṭ!* Burn (2) *phaṭ!* Cover (2) *phaṭ!* Uproot (2) *phaṭ!* Threaten (2) *phaṭ!* Revive (2) *phaṭ!* Drive away (2) *phaṭ!* Destroy all misfortunes *phaṭ!*

2-3. The repetition (of the above) even once would destroy all the impediments. One would destroy all the portents by repeating hundred times and would be victorious in the battle etc. One would accomplish even that one could not accomplish by doing oblation with ghee and *guggulu* (fragrant gum-resin). One would have all (kinds of) peace by reading this weapon of (lord) Paśupati (lord of flock of beings).

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND TWENTYTHREE

The mantra of the weapons of Aghora and the six constituents

The Lord said:

1-2. Death, diseases and other things are controlled by (the repetition of) the *mantra* "Om hrūm haṁsa". One has to bring

into effect appeasement and nourishment by doing a lakh of oblations with *dūrvā* (grass). O Six-faced one¹ ! Appeasement of portents, (un-natural flowering of) the trees and those relating to gods, sky and the earth (could be done) with (the repetition of) the *praṇava* (*om*) or *māyā*² (*mantra*). “*Om* ! obeisance ! O Ganges ! Kāli ! Kāli (one having dark complexion) ! Mahākāli ! Mahākāli (the great dark-complexioned one) ! One who eats flesh and blood ! One having red and black face ! Bring the men under control ! Oblation ! *Om* !

3-5a. After having repeated (the mantra) one lakh times and offering oblations one-tenth (of that number) one would become the accomplisher of all tasks. One would subjugate Śakra (Indra, the chief of the celestials). One need not say about (its influence on) the mortals. This *mantra* is capable of making (the votary) invisible, captivating and paralysing (others). It brings the enemies under control and confuses the intellectual faculties of the enemies. This mystic learning is the Kāmadhenu (wish-yielding divine cow) when repeated seven times.

5b-6. I shall describe the foremost formula which would captivate enemies, thieves and others. One should remember (this formula) revered by (lord) Hara (Śiva) in the case of all kinds of great apprehensions. After having repeated one lakh times (one should do) oblation with sesamum which would accomplish (the task). Listen (to me) ! (I shall describe the formula of) deliverance: *Om* ! The plough-bearer ! The trident-bearer ! Come ! Protect me with the truths of (gods) Brahmā, Viṣṇu and Rudra ! Oblations to Lord of speech !

7-9. (Goddess) Śivā (consort of Śiva) is known as Durgā because (She) saves (people) from adversity. *Om* ! Fierce hearer of the skull ! Gnash the teeth ! Gnash ! Destroy (2) Mysterious one ! *Phaṭ Hriṃ* ! The rice grains should be consecrated with this excellent formula after repeating thirty times and given to thieves. (It would establish their) innocence if the chewed cud ejected (by them) is white. *Om* ! One having glowing eyes ! One shining with dark-brown matted hair ! One who drives away !

1. denotes Kumāra, son of lord Śiva and Pārvatī.

2. the letters ā, i, ī, u, ṛ, ṝ, kha, ma, ya, kṣa, hr̥h, kṣh

One who frightens the three worlds ! Cut (2) ! Roam about (2) ! Attract (2) ! Break (2) ! Twist (2) ! Burn (2) ! Cook (2) ! Thus Rudra, who accomplishes, makes known ! I shall bring back the person possessed by spirit even if he has gone to the heaven, region of the gods or sporting in the summit ! Accept (2) the offering I am giving ! Oblations ! After having offered the victim to the guardian of the ground and (the performance of the rite) of locating the planets, (the enemy) would be subjugated. The enemies would get destroyed. The enemy forces would be routed in the battle.

10-13. One would nullify three kinds of poisons by the location of the *hamsabija*.¹ After having made equal proportion of *aguru*, sandal, *kuṣṭha*, saffron, *nāgakeśara*, *nakha* and *devadāru* and mixing with honey, one should fumigate the clothes etc. of an ill. This would bring good result in discussion, charms, adorning women and quarrels. (The same fumigation) is consecrated with *māyāmantra*² in the case of selection of a bride and for fortune. A person who looks at a person after wearing a mark on the forehead with the yellow pigment (got from a cow), *nāgaṇuṣṭha*, saffron and arsenic (and uttering the syllable) *hrīm* would subjugate him.

14-17. Pulverised *śatāvārī* drunk with milk would help (a man) to get a male child. Pulverised *nāgakeśara* boiled with ghee would also help (a man) to get a male child. Similarly one would get a male child by drinking the seeds of *pīṣa*. *Om* ! O Cāmuṇḍā ! Rise up ! Make (this person) yawn (2) . Charm (2) ! Subjugate this person (2) ! Oblation ! This is the twentysixth formula that is accomplished. After having (made an image) of the lady (to be subjugated) with the earth (got) from the banks of a river and writing the name on an *arka* leaf with the juice of the *uṣmatta* (plant) and having urinated, (the formula) should be repeated. Then the lady would be subjugated.

Om, *kṣum*, *saḥ*, *vaṣaṭ*. This formula (known as) the great conqueror of death gives nourishment when repeated and used for doing the oblation.

1. The letters *ma*, *ya*, *ra*, *sa* and *ha*

2. containing the letter *hrīm* etc.

Om, hamsaḥ, hrūṁ, hrūṁ, sa, hraḥ, saum, skaiḥ consisting of eight syllables (is known as) a formula that revives the dead and brings victory in battle.

18-21. The formulae beginning with *Īśāna* and others confer virtues, pleasures etc. (Lord) *Īśāna* (Śiva) is the lord of all formulae, lord of all beings. He is the lord of Brahmā. May that Brahman, (lord) Śiva always be benevolent to me! *Om* I know (the lord) Tatpuruṣa. I meditate on (lord) Mahādeva (the great god). Hence that Rudra incite us. *Om* obeisance to those who are not fierce, to those who are fierce, to those who are most fierce and to all the manifestations of Rudras. *Om* obeisance to Vāmadeva! Obeisance to the seniormost! Obeisance to the most excellent! Obeisance to Rudra! Obeisance to Kāla (time)! Obeisance to Kalavikarana! Obeisance to Balavikaraṇa! Obeisance to the strong one! Obeisance to one who controls strength! Obeisance to one who controls all the beings! Obeisance to one who disturbs the mind! *Om* I resort to (lord) Sad-*yojāta*! Obeisance to *Sadyojāta*!

On the lord of the beings (2)! On the lord of eternal being! Be manifest in me. Obeisance to the god proceeded from the eternal being.

I shall describe the six formulae which are accessories to the five Brahman (formulae). *Om*! Obeisance to the Supreme! to the grantor of desires! to the Supreme lord! to the lord of communion! to the lord produced out of communion! to the doer of all things! Do (2)! True (2)! Lord of beings (2)! One manifest from the eternal beings! Vāmadeva! Doer of all things! Destroyer of sins! Always benevolent! One who is pleased! Obeisance to you! Oblations.

(The formula of) the heart, which yields all things, consists of seventy letters. *Om*! Śiva! Obeisance to Śiva! Śiva! *Om*! Oblations to the glowing (energy) in the heart is (the formula for) the tuft. *Om*! One who is verily of the nature of benevolence! One possessing great splendour! Omniscient! O Lord! Turn round! One who is most fierce! One having a dark armour! Obeisance! One having a great armour! Bind (2) the heart by the command of Śiva! Whirl round (2)! Pulverise! One who holds the subtle thunderbolt! One who has the strong

noose ! One whose strong body bears the bow and thunderbolt !
You enter my body and paralyse all the evil forces (2) ! *Hūm* !

The armour consists of one hundred and five letters. *Om* !
To the Vigour (of the lord) ! *Om* ! Make the eyes quiver (2) !
One having subtle form (2) ! Pierce (2) ! Pierce intensely (2) !
Cover (2) ! Vomit (2) ! Kill (2) ! *Hūm, phat* (is the) weapon
of Aghora.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND TWENTYFOUR

Appeasing rite for lord Śiva

The Lord said:

1-3. I shall describe the appeasing rite for Śiva which is preceded by the collection of formulae of Aghora. It is the lord of seven crores (of formulae). It is fierce. It is capable of destroying sins such as killing a brahmin etc. It is the abode of both excellent as well as ordinary achievements. It destroys portents pertaining to the celestial region, sky and earth. It devours poisons, spirits and goblins. It confers all the desires. It is an expiation destroying a host of sins. It destroys misfortune and difficulties.

4-7. After having located Ekavīra, the five faces should always be contemplated. (The face should be contemplated as) white in (the rites of) appeasement and nourishment, red in (the rites of) subjugation, yellow in (the rites of) paralysing, smoky in (the rites of) *uccāṭana* (a kind of charm for expulsion) and black in (the rites of) attracting (a person). One should worship the thirty-two letters for confounding (an enemy). The formula should be repeated thirty lakh times and the oblation should be done one-tenth (of that number). Gum resin mixed with *amṛtā* would accomplish all things. There is no other formula superior to the Aghora formula that would give enjoyment and emancipation. (By this repetition) one who is not a religious student would become a religious student and one who has not had his ablution after completing studies would have that.

8. The weapon of Aghora and Aghora are the two excellent formulae. One who repeats (the formulae) or does oblation (with them) or worships would rout the army of the enemy in the battle.

9-13. I shall describe (the rite of) appeasement of Rudra which is beneficial and which accomplishes all the desires. For the sake of progeny, for removing the malignant influences of the planets, for removing poison and curing diseases, for controlling famine and epidemics, for removing (the effect of) bad dreams, for gaining army and kingdom, for the destruction of enemies (it should be performed). When trees bear flowers untimely and for controlling all spirits (the formula should be used). (The word) obeisance should be used for worship, ending with oblation for making the oblation, the syllable *vaṣaṭ* for strengthening and *vausaṭ* for nourishment. In the place of 'ca' letter two times, the union of that class (of names) is made.

Om ! Obeisance to Rudra and to you and to the bull. (Obeisance) to one who does not leave, to unborn one, to the prime entity, to the worshipful, to *Īśāna* and to one possessing valour. (The following) five (are worshipped) in the north. (Obeisance) to the omnipresent, to the dreadful one, to one having distorted features, one who does not have any change in the form.

(Worship is made) for the sake of removal in (the principle of) *kāla* and water in the south-western direction.

Obeisance to *Ekapiṅgala*, to *Śvetapiṅgala* (and) to *Kṛṣṇapiṅgala*. Obeisance to *Madhupīṅgala*. (Obeisance) to *Madhupīṅgala* in self-restraint. (Obeisance) to *Ananta*, to *Ārdra*, to *Śuṣka* (dry) and to *Payogaṇa* in the principle of *kāla* (time). To the dreadful one, to the most dreadful one in the two principles of *māyā* (illusion). To the thousand-headed one, to the thousand-mouthed one, to the thousand-handed and footed one and to the thousand *līṅga* in the principle of learning. One should locate on the right petal from thousand-eyed. To *Ekajaṭā*, *Dvijaṭā*, *Viṣaṭā*, to the form of *Svāhā*, to the form of *Svadhā*, to the form of *vaṣaṭ*, to the six Rudras. O *Guha* ! these are situated in the leaf of fire in the principle of *Īśa*. To the lord of goblins, to the lord of beings, to the lord of *Umā* and to the lord of

time. The six are to be worshipped in the eastern petals in the principle called Sadāśiva. To Umā, bearing a dreadful form, *Om* ! do (2), Ruhiṇi (2) ! You are Rudra, God of the celestials, Viśākha ! Kill (2), burn (2), cook (2), churn (2), *turu* (2), *aru* (2), and *suru* (2). Remember the appeasement of Rudra. O Kṛṣṇapīṅgala ! Obeisance to the lord of the universe, the lord of the untimely goblins. (Goddess) Umā and (god) Maheśvara should be worshipped in the pericarp in the principle of Śiva. *Om* to one pervading the sky, to the form of the sky, to omnipresent Śiva, to the endless, to one without anyone to govern, one who is not resorted, to Śiva. These nine terms are said to pervade the sky in the principle of Śiva. Obeisance to the eternal one ! to the one seated on the yogic altar ! to the eternal *yogin* ! to the person having contemplation as food ! *Om* obeisance to Śiva ! Lord of all (beings) ! One having Īśāna as the head ! One having Tatpuruṣa and others as the five face ! O Guha ! The five chambers on the eastern petal in the principle of *sat* should be worshipped ! To one having Aghora as the heart ! To one having Vāmadeva as the secret organ ! To one embodied as Sadyojāta ! *Om* obeisance ! To one extremely secret ! To one who conceals ! To one who does not have death ! To one who presides over death ! To one of the form of radiance ! in the leaf (presided over) by Fire, in the principle of oblation ! in the principle of knowledge ! in the south ! To the supreme lord ! To the sentient and insentient ! To the sky-pervading one ! The splendour of the prime splendour ! in the principle of illusion in the south-east ! in the principle of time in the west ! *Om*, *dhr*, *dhṛ*, *nāna*, *vām*, *varṇ* ! Deathless one ! Born of death ! Benevolent one ! The supreme soul ! Great god ! Master of good feelings ! Great splendour ! Presiding deity of *yoga* ! Release, release, churn, churn ! *Om* ! O Sarva (everything) (2) ! *Om* Bhava (The source) (2) ! One who bestows happiness on all beings ! In the son of Wind (god) and in the man of restraint in the north ! One who is manifest in the presence of all ! One who is above Brahmā, Viṣṇu and Rudra ! One who is not worshipped ! One who is not worshipped ! One who is not extolled ! The witness (2) ! Come ! Come ! O Sun ! O Fire (2) ! O Knowledge (2) ! Sound ! Subtle one (2) ! Benevolent one (2) ! Giver of

all things (2) ! *Om* ! Obeisance to Śiva. *Om* obeisance to Śiva. *Om* ! Obeisance. One should worship, offer oblation and repeat (the above formula) in the *prākṛta* principle in the north-east. It would remedy all afflictions due to planets, diseases and incantations and accomplish all things.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND TWENTYFIVE

*The benefits of wearing the rosary beads and the counting
of the formulae with them*

The Lord said :

1-3. One should wear a garland of rosary beads even or uneven (in number) and firm. One may wear beads having single face, three or five faces or as available. Beads having two, four or six faces, unbroken and having sharp thorns are commendable. One should wear the four-faced (bead) on the right hand and the tuft etc. (By this) one not observing celibacy would become a celibate, and a person not observing religious ablution would get the vow fulfilled. Otherwise one should wear a golden ring after having worshipped with the formula of Śiva.

4-7a (They are divided into four) classes (*gocaras*) : *Śiva*, *Śikhā*, *Jyoti* and *Sāvitra*. *Gocara* means the family. A person who has been initiated is to be known from that. The *Prājāpatya*, *Mahipāla*, *Kapota* and *Granthika* (belong) to the *Śiva* (class of beads). The *Kuṭilas*, *Vetālas*, *Padmas* and *Hamsas* (belong) to the *Śikhā* class (of beads). The *Dhṛtarāṣṭras*, *Bakas*, *Kākas* and *Gopālas* belong to (the class of beads) known as *Jyoti*. The *Kuṭikas*, *Sāraṭhas*, *Guṭikās* and *Daṇḍins* (belong) to the family of *Sāvitrī*. Thus there are four varieties in each one of these (classes).

7b-13. I shall describe the constituents of the formulae by which the formula would yield perfection. The formula should be written on the ground omitting the *kūṭa* and *ṣaṇḍa* (class of letters). The component letters of the formula should be separa-

ted (one by one) and the nasal sound should be added separately. (The letters) in the name of the votary should be separated. The letters (in the name) of the votary should be added at the beginning and end of the formula. (These letters) from the name (of the votary) should be reckoned as *siddha* (successful), *sādhya* (capable of being accomplished), *susiddha* (successful easily) and *ari* (hostile). A formula having the *siddha* (letters) at the beginning and end would give hundred percent results immediately. (A formula having) *susiddha* (letters) at the beginning and end should be deemed (to have the same result) as the *siddha* (letters). (A votary) should avoid at a distance the *ari* (letters) at the beginning and end. The *siddha* and *susiddha* (formulae) should be used for (rites of) same nature and the *ari* and *sādhya* (should also be used) similarly. The presence of thousands of hostile (letters) in the middle would not be a defect in a formula having *siddha* (letters) at the beginning and end.

14-17a. In the well-known formulae such as *māyā*¹, *prasāda*² and *praṇava*³, there are no divisions. The formula presided over by Brahmā (is known) as Brahmadevī. Those known as *viṣṇava* (pertaining to Viṣṇu) are sacred to Viṣṇu. The formulae of Rudra are called Viras. Those pertaining to Indra are dear to Īśvara. Those presided over by the serpents would make the serpents motionless. Those relating to the Yakṣas (a kind of semi-divine beings) are fond of ornaments. Those sacred to the Gandharvas are excessively (fond of) music etc. Those relating to the demons are dreadful. (The formulae) of the goblins are covered by filth. One should examine a formula and then impart (it).

17b-20a. (There are) formulae beginning with one letter and ending with *phaṭ* upto those having fifty letters. The formula (known as) *bālā* consists of twenty letters. That (known as) Rudra consists of twentytwo (letters). The formulae having more than that number upto three hundred (letters) are known as *vriddha* (expanded). The letters beginning with *a* and ending

1. See p. 888 fn. 2.

2. the syllables *ham*, *haum*.

3. the syllable *om*.

with *ha* represent the white and dark fortnights. Among the ten vowels omitting the *anusvāra* (nasal sound) and *visarga* (aspirated sound) the shorter (vowels) represent the phases of the white fortnight and the longer ones those of the dark fortnight.

20b-21. (The incantations) for peace etc. (should be practised) when (the Sun) has risen. Those for subjugation (should be done) when (the Sun) is on the move. The incantation for creating dissension (should be practised) when (the Sun) has completed the revolution at the twilight periods and those for stupefaction (done) at sunset. The spells for peace (should be practised) when (the wind) flows through the *Iḍā* (one of the arteries) and those for attracting (a person) (should be done) when (the wind flows) through the *piṅgalā* (one of the arteries).

22-23. (Charms) for destruction and driving away (and such other results) (should be practised) at the time of the equinox. The incantations are thus of five kinds. The principle of earth (remains) on the lower part of the lip, lustre above, water in between, ether on the sides, wind outside and the great lord pervading everywhere. One has to practise the spell for paralysing in the earth (principle), appeasement in water, subjugation etc. in (the principle of) light, (spell) for driving away (a man) in (the principle of) wind and the auspicious moment in (the principle of) ether.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND TWETYSIX

*Description of the mode of worshipping Goddess Gauri for
gaining enjoyment, emancipation etc.*

The Lord said :

1. I shall describe the (mode of) worship of *Umā* (consort of *Śiva*) for fortune and conferring enjoyment and emancipation. (I shall also describe) the meditation of the formula, the

mystic diagram, the *mudrā*¹ and the oblation which are the means (for the same).

2-6a. After having drawn Citrabhānu (Bhairava form of Śiva), Śiva and Kāla together with Great Energy, Idā (one of the arteries) is drawn together with the lord and the modification. The second (circle) should have the door and words which please (goddess) Gaurī (synonym of Umā). The principal formula of (goddess) Gaurī should be made to end with fourth case (dative). *Om, hrīm, sah, sau m* obeisance to Gaurī (is the formula). Six inches should be endowed with the three letters appropriate to the group. The seat (should be spread out) with *praṇava* (syllable *om*) and the image (of the goddess) with (the formula of) the heart. The syllables of water, time and Śiva in the formula should be raised. The life (syllable) should be endowed with long vowels and (location on) the six parts of the body (should be made). (The consecration of) the seat should be made with the *praṇava* and the consecration of the image with the formula of the heart.

6b-7. O Child! Thus I have described to you (according to) the Yāmala. I shall explain to you (according to) the Ekavīra now. The basic syllable consisting of those of (lord) Śiva and the goddess devoid (of the syllables) of heart are spread out endowed with the order of creation with (the syllables of) *vahnī*,² *māyā*³ and *līṣānu*.⁴

8-10a. (The goddess) *Gaurī* should be worshipped in (an image made of) gold, silver, wood or stone. In the alternative (the goddess may be worshipped) in Her unmanifest form in five balls at the centre and the (four) angular points. (The goddesses) *Lalitā*, *Subhagā*, *Gaurī* and *Kṣobhāṇī* (should be worshipped) in order beginning with the south-east. (The goddesses) *Vāmā*, *Jyesthā*, *Kriyā* and *Jñānā* should be worshipped in the circle beginning with the east. The unmanifest form of (lord) Śiva (should be worshipped) on the left side together with the pedestal.

1. Holding the fingers interlocked in a particular position representing different things.

2. the syllable *f*.

3. See p. 888 fn 2.

4. the syllables *pa*, *ra* and *ram*.

10b-13. (In the worship of the manifest form of the goddess) (the goddess should be worshipped) as manifest with two eyes, the syllable *om* (containing the three letters), pure and being present with (lord) Śaṅkara (Śiva). Two lotus seats (should be provided). (She may be endowed) with two arms or four arms. She may be riding a lion or wolf or have eight or eighteen hands. (She may be wearing) a garland and rosary beads. (She may wear) a bunch of lotuses on the neck. She may be holding an arrow or bow with the right hand and a book, betel-leaf, club, offering protection and a *kamaṇḍalu* (waterpot) with the left hand. One should place in each one of these (hands) Gaṇeśa, mirror and an arrow.

14-19. In the alternative (the goddess) should be made in Her manifest and unmanifest form. The deity is invoked on the pedestal by (showing) the *padma mudrā* (posture of the hands formed as a lotus). It is said that *liṅga mudrā* (posture representing the *liṅga* shape) is for (invoking) (lord) Śiva. For (invoking) both, the *āvāhani mudrā* (invocation posture) (is to be used). The posture for invoking the goddess is *yonī* (female generative organ). The mystic diagram (for the worship should be) a square. A lotus having three petals occupying the central four chambers should be made within that square. A triangle in two squares in the middle and a half crescent in double that space (should be made) in order. The entrance should be double that as well as double that of the approach to the door. (There should be) three doors in each one of the three directions. In the alternative (the goddess) may be worshipped on a *bhadraka* (lotus diagram) or on the ground after having established (the goddess) and worshipped Her with the five things got from a cow and the five sweet things. (A votary) should offer red flowers and offer hundred oblations with the five sweet things and clarified butter facing the north. Then the final oblation (should be made). (The votary) would accomplish all the desired things. After having offered a victim, three or eight girls should be fed. The offering made to the goddess should be given to the devotees of Śiva and should not be taken by oneself.

20-22a. (By this worship) one desirous of getting a daughter would get a daughter, a person not having a son would get a son, an unfortunate woman (would get) fortune and the king

(would get) a kingdom and victory in battle. By (repeating the formula of the goddess) eight lakh times, a votary (would get) efficacy of speech and the gods would come under his control. (The votary) should not eat without offering (to the goddess). One should worship with the left hand especially on the eighth, fourteenth and the third (lunar days).

22b-26. I shall describe the worship of (lord) Mrtyuñjaya (the conqueror of death; a synonym of Śiva). (The god) should be worshipped inside a pitcher. The *pranava* (the syllable *om*) should be used for the oblation. The lustre of the god would be had by this (method). The basic formula (should be) ending with *rausat*. (The votary) should show the *kumbhamudrā* (posture of the fingers representing a pitcher). Oblations should be made with milk, *dūrvā* (grass), clarified butter, *amṛtā*, *punarnavā*, sweet porridge and cake. The formula should be repeated ten thousand times. (The god should be contemplated as) having four faces and four arms, holding pitchers in two hands and offering boons and protection by two (others). (The god) should be (mentally) bathed with the *kumbhamudrā*. One who partakes the auspicious herbs sanctified with the formula would have healthy life, fortune and long life. When contemplated, He would destroy untimely death and when worshipped (would confer) wonderful results.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND TWENTYSEVEN

*The greatness of establishing a līṅga
and worship with the accessories*

The Lord said:

1-5. The austerities are completed after having worshipped Satya and others, the presiding deities of austere observances. Ariṣṭa, the lord of the thread (of a rosary) is capable of nullifying misfortune. (A string) having golden and gem (beads) (confers) fortune (A string) (containing beads made of) great conches is for causing death. (A rosary) (containing) conch-shells is for a charm (while) that one (having) pearl beads increases

progeny. (A rosary having) crystal (beads) confers fortune. (A rosary having) *rudrākṣa* confers emancipation. A *rudrākṣa* of the size of a *dhātri* fruit is excellent. The mental repetition (may be done) with the central bead or without the central bead in the string. The repetition should be done using the ring finger and the thumb. While doing so one should not cross the central bead. When the rosary has fallen down by mistake, one should repeat (the formula) two hundred times.

6-7a. A bell possesses (the sounds of) all the instruments. Hence sounding it confers wealth. The *liṅga* (the emblem denoting lord Śiva) and the abode (of the deity) should be cleansed with cow-dung, cow's urine, earth from the ant-hill, ashes and water.

7b-10a. O Skanda ! The formula 'Obeisance to (lord) Śiva' is capable of accomplishing all things. These five syllables are commended in the *Vedas*. The six syllables¹ are commended in the world. Lord Śambhu (Śiva) is present at the end of 'Om' like the seed of a (holy) fig tree as a seal. It is known that 'Obeisance to Śiva' is the designation of Īśāna and others in order. One would acquire the collection of formulae by repeating the six syllables. 'Om obeisance to Śiva' is the excellent formula.

10b-12. (The votary) should worship the *liṅga* with this (formula) since (lord) Śiva dwells in the *liṅga* for the sake of conferring His favour on the people and since He is the conferrer of virtues, desires, wealth and emancipation. A person who does not worship the *liṅga* does not become a fit person to get virtues etc. One would get enjoyment and emancipation by worshipping the *liṅga*. Hence one should worship (Him) so long as he lives. One should never eat without worshipping Him. It is better to discard one's life (than not to worship Him).

13. (One would become) Rudra by worshipping Rudra, Viṣṇu by worshipping Viṣṇu, Sūrya by worshipping Sūrya and the goddess etc. by worshipping the goddess.

14. One would acquire a crore times more benefits by establishing the *liṅga* than what one would acquire by doing sacrificial rites, penances and offering gifts, visiting sacred places and reading the *Vedas*.

1. The five syllables with the syllable *om*.

15. One who worships the earthen *liṅga* during the three twilights with *bilva*, would redeem one hundred and eleven generations of his family and would attain heaven.

16. A person should build a temple according to his capacity. The small or big (temple) (built) by a poor or a rich person would have equal benefit.

17. On account of the transitory nature of one's life one should set apart two parts (of his wealth) for the sake of virtuous deeds and one part of the wealth for maintaining his life.

18. A person who builds a temple would redeem twentyone generations of his family and gain wealth. One would get manifold benefits (by building a temple) with earth, wood, brick and stone etc.

19. A person who builds a temple of God with eight bricks, would reach heaven. Even one who builds a temple with dust in sport would acquire wealth.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND TWENTYEIGHT

The rules of prosody

Fire-god said :

1-3. I shall describe¹ (the rules of) prosody in order as laid down by Piṅgala making use of the basic letters. There are eight *gaṇas* (classes), viz. *magana*, *nagaṇa*, *bhagaṇa*, *yagaṇa*, *jagaṇa*, *ragaṇa*, *sagaṇa* and *tagaṇa* made up of the letters *ma*, *na*, *bha*, *ya*, *ja*, *ra*, *sa* and *ta*. Each one of these *gaṇas* is formed by three syllabic instances. All the three syllables may be long or short or the first or middle or final syllable may be long or short. A syllable is long or short according as the vowel at the end is long or short. A short vowel becomes long when it is followed by a nasal sound or *visarga* (aspirated sound) or a conjunct

1. The *Purāṇa* summaries very briefly and does not give a clear definition. Hence the translation has been rendered in such a way as to make it clear.

consonant or a *jihvāmūliya*¹ or a *upadhmnāniya*². Thus the gaṇas are eight according to tradition.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND TWENTYNINE*

An abridgement of rules of prosody relating to the Vedic metres

Fire-god said :

1. The Gāyatrī and the Goddess are of equal (number of) letters in the section on metres. It would have fifteen letters. (The metre called) Prajāpati (consists of) eight letters.

2. (The metre) Gāyatrī (used) in the *Yajurveda* (consists of) six letters and that in the *Sāmaveda* would have twelve letters. It would have eighteen letters in the *Ṛgveda*. Two more letters are added in the *Sāmaveda*.

3. The fourth quarter in the *Ṛgveda* and all the quarters in the Prajāpati would get lengthened. There would be increase of one syllable each in the rest. The Āsurī would drop one (letter).

4. (The metres) Uṣṇik, Anuṣṭubh, Bṛhatī, Pañkti, Triṣṭubh and Jagatī should be known as gradually (increasing). All these Gāyatrīs (are known as) Brahma.

5. If groups of three (of the above) are added each one would be the name (of the metres) of the *Ṛgveda* and *Yajurveda*. They should be written in a square of sixty-four chambers.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND THIRTY**

An abridgement of the rules of metres

Fire-god said :

1. When a quarter does not have the sufficient letters it has to be filled with *iya* etc. The Gāyatrīs are known to have

1. A term applied to the *visarga* before *k* and *kh* and also to *r*, *l* and the gutturals.

2. The *visarga* before the letters *p* and *ph*.

*This chapter sums up second chapter of Piṅgala.

**This chapter sums up the third chapter of Piṅgala.

eight in a quarter. The Jagatī (would have) twelve in a quarter. Virāṭ is said to have ten.

2-5a. The Triṣṭubh has eleven letters in a quarter. There are also others having Ekapāda¹ (one foot) etc. (Gāyatra metre) consists of four feet, six letters in each foot. In some places it has seven letters. The Pratiṣṭhā (gāyatrī) has three feet (having eight, seven and six letters respectively). Vardhamāna consists of three feet having six, eight and eight letters respectively. (The Pratiṣṭhā gāyatrī) has three feet having six, eight and seven letters. The Nāgīgāyatrī (consists of) three feet having nine, nine and six (syllables) respectively. Vārāhī (would have) six, nine and nine (letters). The third one (Virāṭ gāyatrī) having two feet (would have) twelve and eight (syllables) and that having three feet (would have) same syllables as Triṣṭubh (ie., eleven syllables each).

5b. The Uṣṇik metre is described in the Vedas (as having) eight syllables in two feet (and twelve syllables in the third foot).

6-7a. (The variety of) Uṣṇik (known as) Kakub (would have) three feet (consisting of) eight, twelve and eight letters. Pura-uṣṇik would have three feet having twelve, eight and eight letters. the Paro-uṣṇik would be the next (having eight, eight and twelve syllables). A metre with four feet (having seven syllables is also Uṣṇik).

7b-8a. (The metre) with eight letters in each one of the four feet would be Anuṣṭup. It may have three feet also sometimes. It may have eight, twelve and twelve letters. If the middle and end (of a Jagatī is a Gāyatra it is also Anuṣṭup).

8b-11. Bṛhatī would be one foot Jagatī and three feet Gāyatrī. (If the first Jāgata foot is) third (and others Gāyatrī) it is Pathyā (Bṛhatī). (If the first Jāgata foot is) second (and others Gāyatrī) it is Nyāṅkusāriṇī (Bṛhatī). The same is known as Skandho-grivī according to Krauṣṭuki. The same is known as Urobṛhatī according to Yāska. (If the Jāgatī foot is) at the end (and the rest are Gāyatra) it is Upariṣṭād-bṛhatī. (If the same Jāgatī foot is) at the beginning (and the rest are Gāyatra) it is Purastād-bṛhatī. In some (texts) there would be four feet

1. one foot, two feet etc.

with nine syllables each (also known as *Bṛhatī*). In some places (it would have eight letters. *Mahābṛhatī* is constituted of three *Jāgati* feet. The same is *Satobṛhatī* according to *Bhaṇḍila*¹.

12. If the first two of the four feet (are *Jagatī* and the other two *Gāyatrī*) it is *Paṅkti*. (Another variety of *Paṅkti*) is *Sataḥpaṅkti*.² Even if it is in reverse order (it is *Sataḥpaṅkti*)³. (If the first two feet are *Jagatī*) it is *Prastāra-paṅkti*. (If the *Jagatī* occurs) in the last two feet it is *Āstāra-paṅkti*.

13. The *Akṣarapaṅkti* consists of four feet having five letters in each half of each foot. *Padapaṅkti* consists of five feet (having five letters in each). (If the first foot has) four letters, (the second) six letters and the last three (five letters) (it is also *Padapaṅkti*).

14. It would be *Jagatī-paṅkti* if it has six (*Gāyatrī*) feet (and *Pathyā-paṅkti*) if it has five feet. It is said to be *Jyotiṣmatī Jagatī* if it has one foot (*Gāyatrī* and the other three) *Trīṣṭubh*.

15. The *Purastād-Jyotiḥ* (*trīṣṭup*) consists of (*Gāyatrī*) in the first (the remaining three being *Trīṣṭup*). The *Madhya-Jyotiḥ* consists of (*Gāyatrī*) in the middle (and *Trīṣṭup* preceding and succeeding). *Upariṣṭājyotiḥ* (consists of three *Trīṣṭups* and a *Gāyatrī*) at the end.

16. It is known as *Śaṅkumatī* (*gāyatrī*) (if it has one foot having five letters and three having six letters). *Kakudmatī* (consists of) six (letters in one foot and the usual number in other feet). (The metre) would be (known as) *Pipilikama-dhyamā* if it has (eight letters in the first and third and three in the middle) in the three feet.

17. If the case is otherwise (i.e. it has few letters in the first and the third and many in the middle) it is (known as) *Yavamadhyā*. It is known as *Nicṛt* if (a *Gāyatrī* having twenty-four letters) has one letter less. If the same (*Gāyatrī*) has two letters less it would be *Virāṭ*.

18-22. If (the *Gāyatrī*) has two additional letters it would be *Svarāṭ*. In case of doubt (in the case of metre having twenty-

1. The *Chandaḥ Sūtra* III. 36 reads as *Tāṇḍin*.

2. having first and third as *Jagatī*.

3. i.e., having first and third feet *Gāyatrī* and the rest *Jagatī*.

six letters whether it is Gāyatrī Svarāṭ or Uṣṇik Svarāṭ), it should be decided on the basis of the first foot. The deities of the metres are : Fire-god, Sun, Soma, Bṛhaspati (preceptor of the celestials), Varuṇa (lord of ocean and morality), Moon, and Viśvedevas. The musical notes *ṣaḍja*, *ṛṣabha*, *gāndhāra*, *madhyama*, *pañcama*, *dhaivata*, *niṣāda* (should duly be associated with the metres). (The metres beginning with Gāyatrī are) duly white, variegated, tawny, black, blue, red and white. The compositions are of the colour of *gorocanā* (yellow pigment got from a cow). The metre called Jyotiḥ is black (coloured). The *gotras* (of the metres beginning with the Gāyatrī) are said to be Agniveśya, Kāśyapa, Gautama, Āṅgirasa, Bhārgava, Kauśika and Vāsiṣṭha.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND THIRTYONE

*Metres of different kinds**

Fire-god said :

1. (The metre) Utkṛti consists of one hundred and four letters. One should drop four letters (step by step) (and get other metres). They would respectively be metres *abh sam*, *vi*, *ān* and *pra* etc. (prefixed) to Kṛti separately.

2. Then (there would be metres) such as Kṛti, Atidhṛti, Dhṛti, Atyaṣṭi, Aṣṭi, Atiśakvarī, Śakvarī, Atijagatī and Jagatī.

3-4. The metres described hereafter are classical. The Vedic metres beginning with Triṣṭup (in the Vedas) (would be noticed in the same way in the classical). Triṣṭup, Pañkti, Bṛhatī, Anuṣṭup, Uṣṇik and Gāyatrī are said (to be the metres). Supratiṣṭhā (twenty letters), Pratiṣṭhā (sixteen letters), Madhyā (twelve letters), Atyuktā (eight letters) and Uktā (four letters): thus each one has lesser (number of) letters.

5. The fourth part (of a Gāyatrī having twentyfour letters) would be a foot. The Gaṇacchandas¹ is described now.

*This chapter sums up the fourth chapter of Piṅgala.

1. See ch. 328. vv. 1-3.

The *gaṇas* are made up of four syllables. They may be a *guru* (long syllable) at the beginning, middle or end or two long syllables (or four short syllables).

6. Four syllabic instants and five *gaṇas* (groups) are said to be the characteristics of the *Āryā* (metre). When there are seven and a half *gaṇas* in one half (of a verse) it is *Āryā*. The other half also (would be similar). (In the *Āryā* the odd are not *jagaṇa* (having long syllable in the middle)).

7. The sixth (*gaṇa*) would be a *jagaṇa*. (The sixth) may be having all short syllables. When it has all short syllables the foot begins with the second word. (When it is long syllable in the middle or all short syllables) and the seventh (is all short) (the foot begins with) the first (letter). If in the second (half), the fifth (*gaṇa* be all short) (the foot begins with the first letter of the first half).

8. If in the second half the sixth (*gaṇa*) (be either long in the middle or all short), the short vowel (is introduced). The variety of *Āryā* is known as *Pathyā* if it has three *gaṇas* (in a foot) in the last half and first.

9. *Vipulā* (is the next variety) (having no pause in the three *gaṇas* in the last or first half or both). *Capalā* is that where the second and the fourth (*gaṇas*) are long in the middle, (the first is long at the end, the third is two long syllables, the fifth long at the beginning and the rest as usual). *Mukhapūrvikā* has the characteristics of *Capalā* in the first half.

10. In the *Jaghanacapalā*, (there are the characteristics of *Capalā*) in the second half. *Mahācapalā* (has the characteristics of *Capalā*) in both (the halves). *Gīti* is that where the first half is similar.

11. *Upagīti* is that where the second half is similar. *Udgīti* is said to have the order reversed. *Āryāgīti* (has) eight *gaṇas* in the (first) half. The metres regulated by prosodial instants (are described) now.

12. *Vaitāliya* (metre) has seven (syllabic instants) in the first and the second quarter and sixteen *lakṣaras* (one *mātrā* syllables) in the second and fourth and there should be *ra*, *la* and

ga at the end of both the foot. (If the Vaitāliya) has an additional long syllable (it is known as) Aupacchandasaka¹.

13-15. The Pāṭalikā² has *bhagaṇa* (and two long syllables) at the end in addition to the above (characteristics). (The *lakāra*) that has not been described so far (in the above should not be mixed) with the next. The second and third foot in the above should not be employed separately. Prācyavṛtti is shown (now). When in the second and fourth feet, the first *lakāra* gets mixed up, it is (Prācyavṛtti). If the first *lakāra* gets mixed up with the third in the first and the third feet, it is Udīcyavṛtti. If the above characteristics are found together in the same it is Pravṛttaka. When all the feet (in the Vaitāliya) have the characteristics of the first and third (letters), it would be Cāruhāsinī. When all the four feet possess the characteristics of the second and fourth (letters), it would be Aparāntikā.

16. It is said to be Mātrāsamaka when there are sixteen *lakāras* (one *mātrā* syllable) ending in *guru*. (At the end one of the two is made *guru* and the ninth is a *lakāra*).³ When there are twelve *lakāras* and the ninth (retains its own form in a quarter) (it is called) Vānavāsikā.

17. (Where in all the four quarters) the fifth and the eighth (are *lakāras* and the rest as laid down) (it is) Viśloka. Where the ninth *lakāra* remains as also the fifth and eighth it is Citrā. If it gets mixed with the next (i.e. the tenth) it is Upacitrā. Pādākulaka is the next (metre).

18-19. (Where there are sixteen *lakāras* in a quarter it is known as) Gītyāryā. (When the two halves of Gītyāryā) are reversed (i.e. one half is all short and the other half is all long) it is Śikhā. When the first half is all short (and second half is all long) it is Jyoti. When the first half is all long (and the second half is all short) it is Saumyā. Cūlikā is said to be having (twenty-nine *lakāras* in the first half and) thirty one (in the second half) and a long syllable at the end. The number of syllables should be deducted from the number of *mātrās* so that the remainder would be *gurus* (long). The number of *gurus*

1. The Purāṇa reading *Gopuccham* is obviously incorrect.

2. The Chandassūtra reads Āpātalikā.

3. The text in the Purāṇa is corrupt.

(long) should be subtracted from the total number of *mātrās* so that the remaining would be *laghu* (short).¹

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND THIRTYTWO*

The metres of un-equal characteristics in the four quarters

Fire-god said :

1. I shall describe the equal, half equal and unequal (metres), the three (divisions) of the classical metres. (The equal metres have the same characteristics in all the four quarters, the half-equal in two quarters and the unequal have different characteristics in all the four). The number of half-equal metres are arrived at by multiplying the number of equal metres with the same number.

2. (The number of) unequal metres (is got by multiplying the number of half-equal metres with the same number). (The number of pure half-equal metres is got by) deducting (the number of the equal metres) from the number (of half equal metres). (The metre is known as) Samāṇī where it ends with a long and short syllable. The Pramāṇī (metre) ends with a short and long syllable. The Vitānaka is different from the above (two).

3. It would be Vaktra metre (by adding four syllables) at the beginning of a quarter (of an Anuṣṭup). (In it after) the first (syllable) there should not be *sagaṇa* and *nagaṇa*² (and *repha* in the second and fourth quarters). (One may use) some other *gaṇas* except the above. The *yagaṇa* should come after the fourth (syllable of a quarter). In the Pathyāvakra (metre), *jagaṇa* (comes after the fourth syllable) in the second and fourth quarters.

4. According to others, it is Pathyā metre when it has the

1. The Purāṇa reading is corrupt here.

*This chapter corresponds to Piṅgala ch. V. Sūtras 1-31.

2. See ch. 328. vv 1-3 for the *gaṇas*.

characteristics contrary to the above. It is *Capalā*, if there is *nagaṇa* after the fourth letter in the first and third quarters. It is *Vipulā*, when *yagaṇa* is everywhere in the second and fourth quarters and the seventh syllable is short. According to Saitava (ācārya)¹, the seventh syllable should be short in all the quarters.

5. If there is *bhagaṇa* or *nagaṇa* or *tagaṇa* (instead of *yagaṇa* in the first and third quarters after the fourth syllable), it is *Vipulā*. Many varieties of the *Cakra* class have been described. When four letters are added to each one of the quarters, the metre is *Padacaturūrdhvam*.

6. The metre is *Āpiḍa*, if there are two long syllables at the end (of each one of the quarters). If two long syllables occur at the beginning (of each one of the quarters), it is *Pratyāpiḍa*.²

7-8. In the *Āpiḍa*, when the first (*pāda*) is interchanged (with the second) it is *Mañjarī*, (when interchanged with the third) it is *Lavali*³ and (when interchanged with the fourth) it is *Amṛtadhārā*. *Udgatā* is described now.⁴ It has (ten syllables)—*sa (gaṇa)*, *ja (gaṇa)*, *sa (gaṇa)* and *la (ghu)* (in the first quarter) (ten syllables)—*na (gaṇa)*, *sa (gaṇa)*, *ja (gaṇa)* and *ga* (long syllable) (in the second quarter) (eleven syllables)—*bha (gaṇa)*, *na (gaṇa)*, *ja (gaṇa)* and *la* (short syllable) (in the third quarter) (thirteen syllables)—*sa (gaṇa)*, *ja (gaṇa)*, *sa (gaṇa)*, *ja (gaṇa)* and *ga* (long syllable). When (in *Udgatā*), the third (quarter) has (ten syllables)—*ra (gaṇa)*, *nu (gaṇa)*, *bh (gaṇa)* and *ga* (long syllable) it is *Saurabha*. *Lalita* (consists of) two *na (gaṇas)* and two *sa (gaṇas)* (in the third quarter) (in *Udgatā*).

9. *Upasthitapracupita*⁵ has *ma, sa, ja* and *bha (gaṇas)* and two *gas* (in the first quarter), *sa, na, ja* and *ra (gaṇas)* and *ga* (in the second quarter), two *na, sa (gaṇas)* (in the third) and three *nas, ja* and two *ja (gaṇas)* (in the fourth).

1. The Purāṇic reading is corrupt.

2. The text wrongly reads *gaṇādika* instead of *gaṇādaḥ*.

3. The text wrongly reads *Lavaṇi*.

4. The text reads wrong.

5. The text is corrupt.

10. In Upasthitapracupita, when there are two *nas*, *sa*, two *nas*, *na* again and two *sas* in the third quarter, it is Vardhamāna. Śuddhaviṛāḍārṣabha¹ is said to have *ta*, *ja*, and *ra* (*gaṇas*) (in the third quarter) (in the Upasthitapracupita). Then I shall describe the half-equal metres.

CHAPTEF THREE HUNDRED AND THIRTYTHREE*

Description of metres having equal characteristics in the alternate quarters

Fire-god said:

1. The metre Upacitraka (consists of) three *sas*, *la*, and two *gas* (in the first quarter), three *bhas* and two *gas* (in the second) (and the third and the fourth like the first and second). Drutamadhya is said to have three *bhas* and two *gas* (in the first quarter), *na*, two *jas* and *ya* (in the second quarter) (and the third and fourth like the first and second quarters).

2. Vegavati has three *sas* and *ga* (in the first quarter), three *bhas* and two *gas* (in the second). Bhadravirāt has *ta*, *jas*, *ra* and *gas* (in the first quarter), and *ma*, *sa*, *ja* and two *gas* (in the second quarter).

3. (When the first quarter) has *sa*, *ja*, *sa* and *ga* and (the second quarter) has *bha*, *ra*, *na* and two *gas* it is Ketumatī. Ākhyānikī has two *tas*, *ja* and two *gas* (in the first quarter) and *ja*, *ta*, *ja* and two *gas* (in the second quarter).

4. Viparītākhyānikī has *ja*, *ta*, *ja* and two *gas* (in the first quarter) and *ta*, *ta*, *ja* and two *gas* (in the second quarter). Hariṇaplutā² has three *sas*, *la* and *ga* (in the first quarter), *na*, *bha*, *bha* and *ra* (in the second quarter).

5-6. Aparavaktra³ consists of two *nas*, *ra*, *la* and *ga* (in the

1. The text is corrupt.

*This chapter corresponds to Piṅgala ch. V, sūtras 32-45.

2. The Purāṇa wrongly gives Hariṇavallabhā.

3. The Purāṇa reads Aparākramam.

first quarter) and *na, ja, ja* and *ra* (in the second quarter). (Puṣpitāgrā¹ has two *nas, ra* and *ya* (in the first quarter) and *na, ja, ja, ra* and *ga* (in the second quarter). Yavamati² has *ra, ja, ra* and *ja* (in the first quarter) and *ja, ra, ja* and *ra* (in the second quarter). Śikhā consists of twentyeight (short letters) and a long syllable at the end (in the first quarter) and thirty letters and a long syllable at the end in the second quarter. (The third and fourth quarters are also similar.) (The metre) Khañja has got the characteristics reversed. Metres of similar characteristics (in the four quarters) are described now.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND THIRTYFOUR*

Description of metres having similar characteristics in all the four quarters:

Fire-god said:

1. Yati (caesura) is said to be the break or pause (at the end of a quarter). (The metre) Tanumadhyā (has) *ta* and *ya* (in a quarter). Kumāralalitā³ has *ja*, two *sas* and *ga* (in a quarter) (the pause occurring at the end of every three and four syllables). Citrapadā is known to have two *bhas* and two *gas* (in a quarter).

2. Vidyunmālā has two *mas* and two *gas* (in a quarter). (The pause occurs after every four syllables.) Māṇavakakṛḍita would be had with *pha, ta, la* and *ga*. (The pause occurs after every four syllables.) Halamukhī has *ra, na* and *sa* (in a quarter). (The pause occurs after three and six syllables.)

3. Bhujāṅgaśīśusuta has two *nas* and *ma* (in a quarter). (The pause occurs after seventh and second syllables.) Haṁsa-ruta⁴ consists of *ma, na* and two *gas* (in a quarter). Śuddhavarāṭ

1. The Purāṇa reads Puṣpitā.

2. The Purāṇa reads Panamati.

*This corresponds to Piṅgala chs. VI, VII and VIII, Sūtras 1-19.

3. The Purāṇa is corrupt.

4. The text is very corrupt.

has *ma*, *sa*, *ja* and *ga* in every quarter. (The pause occurs at the end of a quarter.)

4. Paṇava has *ma*, *na*, *ya* and *ga* (in every quarter). (The pause occurs after every five syllables.) Mayūrasārīṇī has *ra*, *ja*, *ra* and *ga* (in every quarter). (The pause occurs at the end of a quarter.) Mattā has *ma*, *bha*, *sa* and *ga* (in a quarter). (The pause occurs after fourth and sixth syllables.) Upasthitā¹ has *ta*, *ja*, *ja* and *ga* (in a quarter). (The pause occurs after every second and eighth syllables.)

5. Rukmīvatī has *bha*, *ma*, *sa* and *ga* (in a quarter). (The pause occurs at the end of a quarter.) Indravajrā has two *tas*, *ja* and two *gas* (in a quarter). (The pause comes at the end of a quarter.) Upendravajrā consists of *ja*, *ta*, *ja* and two *gas*. (The pause occurs at the end of a quarter.) Mixed varieties are formed by (Indravajrā and Upendravajrā) coming alternatively at the beginning and end.

6-7. Dodhaka has three *bhas* and two *gas*. Śālinī consists of *ma*, *ta*, *ta* and two *gas*. The pause occurs after every four and seven syllables. Vātormī consists of *ma*, *bha*, *ta* and two *gas*. (The pause occurs after) every fourth and seventh syllables. Bhramaravilasitā has *ma*, *bha*, *na*, *la* and *ga*. (The pause occurs) after fourth and seventh syllables. Rathoddhatā has *ra*, *na*, *ra*, *la* and *ga*.

8. Svāgatā has *ra*, *na*, *bha* and two *gas*. Vṛntā has two *nas*, *sa* and two *gas*. Śyenī consists of *ra*, *ja*, *ra*, *la* and *ga*. Ramyā² has *ja*, *ra*, *ja* and two *gas*.

9. (The metres belonging to) the Jagatī³ (class are now described). Varṇasasthā consists of *ja*, *ta*, *ja*, and *ra*. Indravarnśā has two *tas*, *ja* and *ra*. Toṭaka is said to have four *sas*.

10-11. Drutavilambitā would be with *na*, *bha*, *bha*, and *ra*. Puṭa has two *nas*, *ma* and *ya*. (The pause occurs after) the eighth and fourth syllables. Jaloddhatagati consists of *ja*, *sa*, *ja* and *sa*. (The pause occurs) after every sixth syllable. (The metre) Tata is said to have two *nas*, *ma* and *ra*. Kusumavicitra has *na*, *ya*, *na* and *ya*. Cañcalākṣikā⁴ would have *na*, *na* *ra* and *ra*.

1. The reading in the text is wrong.

2. Pingalacchandās VI. 32 reads Vilāsinī.

3. having twelve syllables in a quarter.

4. The Purāṇa reads Calāmbikā.

12. Bhujaṅgaprayāta has four *ya* (*gaṇas*). Sragviṇī has four *ra* (*gaṇas*). Pramitākṣarā has *sa*, *ja* and two *sas*. Kāntot-pīḍā has *bha*, *ma*, *sa* and *ma*.

13. Vaiśvadevī consists of two *mas* and two *yas*. (The pause occurs after the fifth and seventh¹ syllables.) Navamālinī consists of *na*, *ja*, *bha* and *ya* in each quarter. The Atijagatī (metres) are described now.

14. Praharṣiṇī² has *ma*, *na*, *ja*, *ra* and *ga*. The pause is after the third and tenth (syllables). Rucirā has *ja*, *bha*, *sa*, *ja* and *ga*. It has pause after the fourth and ninth (syllables).

15-16. Mattamayūra consists of *ma*, *ta*, *ya*, *sa* and *ga*. The pause is after the fourth and ninth (syllables). Gaurī has three *nas*, *sa* and *ga*. Asambādha has *ma*, *ta*, *na*, *sa* and *ga*. It has pause after the fifth and ninth syllables. Aparājītā would have two *nas*, *ra*, *sa*, *la* and *ga*. (It has pause after every seven syllables.)

17. Praharāṇakalitā³ (has two *nas*, *bha*, *na*, *la* and *ga*). Vasantatilakā contains *ta*, *bha*, two *jas* and two *gas*. It is Simhonnatā (according to) the sage (Kaśyapa). It is Uddharṣiṇī according to Saitava.

18-20. Candrāvartā has four *nas* and *sa*. The same is (known as) Mālā, if it has the pause after sixth and ninth letters. The same would be Maṇiḡuṇanikarā (if it has pause after the eighth and seventh syllables). Mālinī has two *nas*, *ma* and two *yas*. The pause is after the eighth and seventh (syllables). Ṛṣabhagajavilasita⁴ has *bha*, *ra*, three *nas* and *ga*. The pause is after seventh and ninth (syllables). Śikharīṇī (has *ya*, *ma*, *na*, *sa*, *bha*, *la* and *ga*). Pṛthvī consists of *ja*, *sa*, *ja*, *sa*, *ya*, *la* and *ga*. It has pause after the eighth and ninth syllables. Thus they have been described by Piṅgala before.

21. It would be Vamśapatrapatita, (if a quarter has) *bha*, *ra*, *na*, *bha*, *na*, *la* and *ga*. The pause occurs after the tenth (and seventh syllables). Hariṇī has *na*, *sa*, *ma*, *ra*, *sa*, *la* and *ga*. It has pause after every sixth, fourth and seventh (syllables).

22-23. Mandākrāntā has *ma*, *bha*, *na*, *ta*, *ta* and two *gas*. It

1. The Purāṇa wrongly reads *aṅga* denoting six.

2. The Purāṇic text is corrupt.

3. The Purāṇa has not defined this metre.

4. The text is corrupt.

2-3. (The letters) *ya* and others (the semi-vowels and sibilants) are known to be eight. The twin sounds are four in number—such as the nasal sound, *visarga*, *ḷa*, *ḥa*. The letter *i* is known as (produced) by touching light. It is a protracted sound.

4. (The origin of the letters is described now.) The soul together with the internal organs and those in the abdomen and throat contacts the intellect and joins the mind with a desire to speak.

5. The mind impels the bodily fire, which urges the air to move. The air moving with the chest produces the sound (called) *mandra*.

6. The Gāyatra metre at the time of morning ablution is recited in that (sound). (The air) moving in the throat gives rise to the (sound) *madhyama* that which is associated with Triṣṭubh for the midday ablution.

7-8. The air that reaches the head produces the (sound) *tārā* fit for reciting Jagatī for the third (evening) ablution. The same wind moving upwards strikes against the head, reaches the mouth and produces the letters. These are divided into five (groups) on the basis of the articulation, period (of utterance), place (of articulation), efforts (to utter) and the sense conveyed.

9. Chest, throat, head, root of the tongue, teeth, nose, upper lip and palate are the eight places (of articulation) of the letters.

10. The articulation of the sibilants (*ś*, *ṣ*, *s* and *h*) are of eight kinds such as innate nature, expansion, *śa*, *ṣa*, *ra*, *jihvāmūla* (the *visarga* before *k* and *kh*) and *upadhmaniya* (the *visarga* before *p* and *ph*).

11. The letters *u* and the like are excellent for combining compositions of metrical nature. The vowels at the end should be known to be of similar nature. Whatever else remain are the explicit sibilants.

12-13. A man incurs sin by pronouncing (letters) from wrong places (of articulation), by inauspicious and defective articulation. Similarly a person incurs merits. A person who employs good sounds, well articulated, according to the treatises and acquired from auspicious sources with a clean mouth shines in the (world of) Brahmā.

14. A person should not use harsh and indistinct letters, nasals, labials excessively with stammering and split tongue.

15. The letters should be uttered in such a way that they are not indistinct and are not mutilated. A person rejoices in the world of Brahmā by employing the letters properly.

16. The sounds are (divided into) three classes (such as) *udātta* (accentuated), *anudātta* (grave accent) and *svarita* (intermediate). They are distinguished as short, long and protracted on the basis of the period (of their pronunciation).

17-18. The letters *a* and *ku*¹ are from the throat, *i* and *cu* are from the palate, *u* and *pu* are the labials, the letters *r*, *ṛu*, *ra* and *ṣa* are the cerebrals, and *l*, *lu*, *la* and *ṣa* are the dentals. The sound *hvaḥ* is said to be from the root of the tongue. Learned men remember *vaḥ* as labio-dental. (The sounds) *e* and *ai* are gutturo-palatials. *O* and *au* are remembered to belong to the gutturo-labials.

19. The gutturals *a*, *ā*, *i*, *e* etc. would have half a *mātrā* value. (The letters) which share the places of articulation are known to be not capable of being combined.

20. The vowels (are known to be) produced not by touch and the letters *ya* etc. by partial touch. These are known to be consonants not produced by touch. The other consonants are produced by touch. I shall explain the important among them. (The letters) *aṁ* and *aḥ* are nasals. (The letters) *ha*, *jha* and *ṣa* are known to have the bellowing sound.

21. The letters *ya* etc. possess partial sound. *Kha*, *ṣṭa* etc. are aspirated. The *cara* is known to have little aspiration. This is said to be long.

1. The letters *ku*, *cu*, *ṛu*, *lu*, *pu* stand for the four letters in the respective group.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND THIRTYSEVEN

Description of the characteristics of a kāvya

Fire-god said :

1. I shall describe the embellishments of poetry and drama and the like. The constituents of speech are sound, word, letters and sentence.

2. Whereas the three are obtained in the sentences of the treatises (śāstra) and epics, word is predominant in the treatises and the meaning is dominant in the epics.

3-5a. *Kāvya* is different from these two because the power of denotation is dominant (there). It is difficult to be born as a man in this world and (acquiring) knowledge is more difficult. Being a poet is still difficult. Poetic genius, originality of ideas and power of discrimination are still more difficult. The entire *śāstra* sought by people who are not learned does not materialise.

5b-6. The collection of letters falls into groups such as primary letters, secondary, the aspirated and the fourth. Words (are divided into two) on the basis of distinction as nouns and verbs. Sentence in brief is a series of words possessing a delightful sense.

7. *Kāvya* is that where literary embellishments are displayed and which possesses literary merits and is free from blemishes. The sources of (poetry) are the *Vedas* and the world. A *kāvya* not originated from the above sources could be understood from the import of the words.

8. Saṁskṛta (language) is for the gods and others. There are three varieties of Prākṛta for men. *Kāvya* etc. are known to be of three kinds—prose, poetry and mixed.

9. Prose is (defined as) unmetrical combination of words. It is divided into three: Cūrṇaka, Utkalikā and Gandhivṛtta.

10. What is known as Cūrṇaka has short compounds and does not have very soft words. (The same) with long compounds would be Utkalikā

11. Gandhivṛtta would have medium arrangement of words and absence of very difficult compounds. (It possesses) semblance of metrical form.

12. The prose *kāvya* is said to be divided into five—Ākhyāyikā, Kathā, Khaṇḍakathā, Parikathā and Kathānikā.

13-15a. It is known to be Ākhyāyikā where there is an eulogistic account of the ancestors of the author, a detailed description of the abduction of maidens, fight, separation and other calamities. It should be replete with *riti* (diction), *ṛtti* (style) and *pravṛtti* (power of words). Its story is divided into Ucchvāsas (chapters). It should contain Cūrṇaka type of prose at the end. It may (employ) Vaktra or Aparavaktra (metre).

15b-17. It is designated as Kathā where the poet briefly praises his ancestors in metrical composition, where there is another episode while introducing the main theme. There would not be any division. Sometimes there would be (divisions called) *lambakas*. Khaṇḍakathā is contained in Kathā in *catuṣpadi* (verses in four lines). Parikathā (is a combination of the characteristics of the two (Kathā and Ākhyāyikā).

18-19 The hero is known to be a minister, merchant or a brahmin. Pathos should be known (to be the sentiment) of the two. Love in separation is of four kinds. The first one is not obtained (here). It follows the story. Parikathā is known so because of its mixed characteristics of Kathā and Ākhyāyikā.

20. Kathānikā (is defined as beginning with) the (sentiment of) terror embodying sentiment of love and (sentiment of) wonder at the end. It is accomplished with good sense and is free from bombastic (expressions).

21-23a. Padya is (a metrical composition) of four lines. It is divided into two—Vṛtta and Jāti. Vṛtta beginning with Ukthā and ending with Utkṛti is regulated by the number of letters. Jāti is that where the syllabic instants are counted according to Kāśyapa. According to Piṅgala Vṛttas (are divided) into three—equal (quarters), half-equal and unequal. It is the ship of knowledge for those desirous of crossing the deep ocean of *Kāvya*.

23b-27. The family of poetry (consists of) Mahākāvya, Kalāpa, Paryābandha, Viśeṣaka, Kulaka, Mukta, and Kośa. A Mahākāvya is divided into *sargas* (cantos) and is begun with Sanskrit and those of similar nature are not avoided. The equivalent (Prākṛta) does not become a blemish. The theme has its

origin from historical incidents or other real incidents. It may describe council of states, sending of emissaries and marching (of soldiers) in battle-array. It should not be very elaborate. It should be composed in equal (*sama*) (metres) such as Śakvarī, Atijagatī, Atiśakvarī, Triṣṭubh, Puṣpitāgrā and Vaktra. Mukta describes different incidents not having short cantos.

28-29a. (One canto may be composed) in the Atiśakvarī and Aṣṭī (metres), another in mixed metres, whereas some other canto (may be composed) in the Mātrā. The last canto (may be employed) for praiseworthy (matter). This optional rule is very much condemned. Hence good people do not respect it especially.

29b-32. (Poetry) should be adorned with description of cities, seas, mountains, seasons, (the rise of) the moon and sun, hermitages, trees, gardens, sports in the water, drinking bouts and amorous dalliances, sending of female emissaries, the accounts of unchaste women, darkness, pleasant breeze and delineation of other *vibhāvas* (condition that produces a state of mind). It should contain all styles, power of words, *bhāvas* (states of mind), dictions, sentiments, qualities and embellishments. That is why (it is called) a Mahākāvya and its composer a great poet.

33. The sentiment is its very life even though verbal ingenuity may be predominant here. (It gains) a body from the sentiments in the eloquent expressions being accomplished with special efforts.

34-36. The fruit of the all-pervading fourfold object of human existence has been explained through the medium of the hero. Kalāpa is composed in the same metre throughout and is soft on account of the Kaiśikī vṛtti (style). Here the sentiment is incipient love and sojourn abroad. It is Viśeṣaka when it contains (mention of) attainment etc. and (is composed) in Sanskrit or any other (language). Kulaka would have many couplets. It (is also known as) chained. Mukta consists of single verses and is capable of gaining the admiration of good people.

37-38. Kōṭa is full of elegant verses of great poets. It is

divided into (sections called) Vrajyās¹ pleasing to the learned men. Where there is power comparable to splendour and in which there is a difference of the metre in a canto, (it is known as) the mixed. It is known to be (divided into) two—Vapu and Prakirṇaka. Prakirṇaka can be heard (read) and represented on the stage by all kinds of expressions.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND THIRTYEIGHT

Description of the different types of drama

Fire-god said :

1-4a. (Drama consists of) twentyseven types—Nāṭaka, Prakaraṇa, Ḍima, Ihāmrga, Samavakāra, Prahasana, Vyāyoga, Bhāṇa, Vīthi, Aṅka, Troṭaka, Nāṭikā, Saṭṭaka, Śilpaka, Kārṇa, Durmallikā, Prasthāna, Bhāṇikā, Bhāṇi, Goṣṭhī, Halliśaka, Kāvya, Śrigadita, Nāṭyarāsaka, Rāsaka, Ullāpyaka and Preṅkhana.

4b-7a. The general and particular (are) the two courses for the characteristics (of a drama). The general (relates) to all topics. The other one exists in certain (topics). After the preliminary function (relating to the drama) is finished, the two (come into operation). The general (relates) to both place and time, sentiments, emotions, excitants and ensuants, gesticulations, act and position because they pervade all through. The particular is to be employed as the occasion (arises) and the general is described first.

7b-10a. Drama is said to be the means of attaining the three-fold ends of life. The preliminary function is its instrument and course of action in the proper way. There are thirtytwo components beginning with benediction. Salutation to gods, praise of preceptors, and the blessings etc. of cow, brahmins, kings and others are sung. The stage-director (is introduced) after the benediction. This is set in (all) the dramas.

1. The text wrongly reads Brahṁā.

10b-11a. (The poet) should indicate the following five—the successive order of the teachers, the praise of the lineage, the power of the poet, the relation and the purpose of the *kāvya*.

11b-17a. It should be known by learned men as the Prologue (Āmukha) in which an actress or a jester or an attendant converses with the stage-director using charming expressions befitting the purpose with mutual objections or doubts relating to the subject matter. It is also (known as) Prastāvanā. Pravṛttaka, Kathodghāta and Prayogātīśaya are the three divisions of Āmukha arising in the elements of the germ (of the plot). It is known as Pravṛttaka where the stage-director describes the timely entrance of a character with reference to the time that has commenced. It is said to be Kathodghāta (opening of the story) in which the characters enter taking up the remark or the sense of a remark of the stage-director. It is said to be Prayogātīśaya (superseding of a performance) in which the stage-director describes a particular contrivance in the midst of the proceedings and a character enters thereafter.

17b-18. The incident is said to be the body of the dramas and others. 'Established' and 'Fancied' are known to be its two kinds. The 'Established' is found in the scriptures and the 'Fancied' is the creation of the poet.

19-20. The Arthaprakṛtis (the leading sources in a drama) are five—the germ, drop, episode, an intervening episode and denouement. The endeavour is also of five kinds—the beginning, effort, prospect of attainment, certainty of attainment and attainment of fruit in order.

21. The opening, progression, development, pause and conclusion are also the five junctures in order.

22. That which is described only a little spreads in many ways and which ends with the fruit is said to be the germ.

23. That is said to be the opening in which there is the germination of the germ giving rise to various matters and sentiments conforming to the body of the poetic composition.

24-25. The composition of the desired theme, continuity of the narrative, interest in the representation, concealment of that which should be concealed, narration as a wonderful thing and making explicit the thing that is to be made explicit—(These are the objects of the components of the juncture). The

poetic composition (bereft of the divisions of the juncture) is not excellent in the same way as a crippled person.

26-27. Even a little incident does not occur without (reference to) the place and time. Hence the place is described (now) because of the employment of these two (in a drama). Bhârata is among the countries and the three *yugas* beginning with the Kṛtayuga with reference to time. There is no rise of happiness or grief without these two for beings anywhere. And contextual narration of creation and others while (describing) creation does not become a defect.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND THIRTYNINE

Description of the sentiments, emotions, hero etc.

Fire-god said :

1-2. The Supreme Brahman, who is imperishable, eternal, unborn and mighty is said to be the single consciousness, effulgence and Supreme Being in philosophy. Bliss is natural to him. Sometimes it is manifested. The manifestation of this is called consciousness, charm and sentiment.

3. Its first modification is known as self-consciousness. Conceit (is produced) then and the three worlds get exhausted in that.

4. Pleasure (proceeds) from conceit and th's attains gratification on account of (contact with) the transitory (feelings) etc. in general and is declared as the (sentiment of) love.

5-9a. Comic (sentiment) and others which are verily its other varieties, whose characteristics are exhibited by their respective special permanent moods by being expanded by the qualities such as goodness, have their origin from the Supreme Soul. The erotic (sentiment) is produced from attachment. The (sentiment of) wrath is born from fierceness. The heroic (sentiment) is born from haughtiness. (The sentiment of) disgust is said to be originated from revulsion. The comic (sentiment) is

produced from the erotic (sentiment). The sentiment of pathos (is) from fury. (The sentiment of) wonder arises from heroism. (The sentiment of) fright would be from disgust. Among the sentiments of love, humour, pathos, fury, heroism, fright, disgust, wonder and tranquillity, four sentiments are self-developed (as described above).

9b-11. The goddess of speech does not shine without sentiment like the goddess of wealth without renunciation. The poet alone is the creator in the boundless course of poetry. The universe changes in the way (he) likes. If the poet is impassioned in his poetry, the world becomes verily full of sentiment. If the poet is detached, indeed it becomes manifested as devoid of sentiment.

12-13a. There is no (poetic) sentiment devoid of emotion. There is no emotion devoid of sentiment. (The poets) bring into being the sentiments and the sentiments are being produced by these (emotions), (namely), the eight permanent emotions beginning with love, stupor and the like and the transient emotions.

13b-15. Love is said to be the feeling of happiness in respect of (the object) agreeable to the mind. Laughter is said to be the expansion of the mind through mirth etc. (People) describe fear as mental affliction (arising) from seeing a picture etc. Disgust is censure of things which bring misfortune. Wonder is the expansion of the mind (arising) from seeing things pre-eminent.

16-22. The eight (transient emotions) such as stupor (are) from goodness, passion and ignorance. Stupor is a resistance of effort (paralysed state) brought about by excessive fear or love. Perspiration is water from the body originating from internal agitation accompanied by fatigue and attachment. The internal horripilation (is) the heaving of the body (caused) by joy etc. Broken speech originates from joy etc. and hoarse voice (is caused) by fear etc. Grief is said to be the distress of the mind (caused) by the destruction of the desired (thing) etc. Anger is the awakening of fierceness resembling contradiction. Enthusiasm is said to be the sense of gaining the desired goal. Trembling is declared as the stupefaction arising from the agitation of the mind. Change of colour is the reverse of splendour arising

from grief etc. Tear is known as the water from the eyes produced by sorrow, happiness etc. Loss of consciousness is the cessation of (the working) of the sense-organs due to fasting etc. The depression of the mind arising from indifference (to worldly things) is said to be despair. Debility (is) physical languor from mental suffering and the like from the body.

23. Indifference arises from dependence on doubt. Envy is jealousy. Intoxication (is) the infatuation of the mind arising from the use of wine etc.

24. Weariness (is) exhaustion arising from the inner body caused by excess of work. Aversion of the mind towards acts such as love etc. is said to be indolence.

25. Miserable state is due to deviation from goodness. Thought is contemplation of objects. Perplexion is said to be not finding the mode of doing (a thing).

26. Recollection would be the reflection of an enjoyed thing. Opinion (is) ascertainment of purpose brought about by knowledge of reality.

27. Bashfulness (is) certain shrinking of the mind arising from passion and the like. Fickleness would be unsteadiness. Joy is the pleasure of the mind.

28. Excitement is the distress of the soul caused by the hope of remedy. The loss of intellect in those to be done is said to be stupidity.

29. Equanimity is the elevation in wealth on the attainment of the desired end. Pride is contempt for others and attitude of supremacy of the self.

30. Impediment caused by fate and the like in respect of the desired object is despondency. An unsteady condition caused by desire when the desired end has not been gained is longing.

31. Absent-mindedness (is) immobile condition causing benumbing of the senses and the mind. Terror (is) repeated surprise in the mind (caused) by opposition and the like in war.

32. Intolerance (is) non-pacification of anger. Awakening (is) the rise of consciousness. Dissimulation is the concealment coming under the range of gesture and appearance.

33. Harshness of vehement verbal attack arising from anger is known to be fierceness. Conjecture is examination

and determination. Disease (is) the impediment of the mind and body.

34. Madness (is) incoherent utterances and the like caused by passion and the like. Tranquility (is) the cessation of passion of the mind by means of the knowledge of reality and the like.

35-38. The emotions and sentiments should be employed by poets in poetry and the like in which (the emotions of) love and the like are developed. (The means) by which they are developed is known as excitant. It is of two kinds—supporting and enhancing. The supportive excitant is that on which the group of emotions such as love subsists. It is produced through (the medium of) the hero and the like. The hero is known to be of four types—brave and noble-minded, brave and haughty, brave and sportive and brave and tranquil. (The hero is also classified as) faithful, gallant, sly and saucy (on the basis of his relationship with one heroine or more).

39-40. Comrade (Piṭhamarda), Companion (Vita) and Jester (Vidūṣaka) are the three minor heroes who help the hero in love as pleasure companions. The comrade is without resource. The companion is beautiful and belongs to the same country. The jester is the provider of mirth. The heroes and heroines (are of) eight (types) (as described in verse 37).

41. According to Kauśika, (the heroine may be) one's own or belonging to another or remarried, and general but not remarried. Thus there are many types.

42. The enhancing excitants are those which excite the feelings in the subsisting excitants by (means of) different kinds of refinement.

43. The sixtyfour (fine) arts are divided into two according as they begin with action or music. Jugglery, memory, and perhaps jester and the aids to jester (are included) in these.

44-45. The ensuant is known to be only the exertion of the mind, speech, intellect and the body arising from recollection, desire, hatred and effort of the learned and caused by the excited and accomplished emotions of the supportive excitant. Moreover this is experienced and certainly arises (after love etc.) and hence defined here.

46. The exertion of mind is said to be characterised by the occupation of the mind. This is also known to be twofold as relating to men or women.

47. Those relating to men are eight—beauty, vivacity, grace, steadiness, equanimity, gallantry, magnanimity and dignity.

48. Beauty (prevails) in contempt for inferiors and emulation of superiors. (It is) heroism. (It is) the cause of dexterity and the like. Beauty occurs in mental virtue in the same way as a house becomes beautiful.

49-50. The excitants of women are said to be (of) twelve (kinds)—(primary indication of) emotion, its manifestation (a little), its decided manifestation, brilliance, loveliness, lustre, sweetness, heroism, boldness, generosity, firmness and gravity. The primary indication of emotion arises from a little of joy and the little manifestation is the sportive indication of emotion.

51-54. The exertion of speech would be the appropriateness of speech. It is indeed (of) twelve (kinds): conversation, excessive utterance, sorrowful speech, repeated speech, question and answer, evasion, sending a message, expounding, pointing out truth, description of something else, instruction and dissimulating (speech). This process is for the understanding. It is said to be the exertion of good intellect. It has three divisions, namely, diction, mode, and perseverance.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FORTY

Description of diction and mode

Fire-god said:

1. Diction (is essential) for a good knowledge of speech. It is of four kinds—Pāñcālī, Gauḍadeśīyā, Vaidarbhī and Lāṭaja (respectively belonging to the regions Pāñ āla, Gauḍa, Vidarbha and Lāṭa).

2-4. The Pāñcālī is endowed with metaphorical expression. (It is) soft (and has) shorter compounds. The Gauḍiyā is a loose composition having long compounds and not having many metaphorical expressions. The Vaidarbhī is not a very soft composition. It is devoid of metaphorical expressions and is free from compounds. The Lāṭiyā (is) a clear composition not having too many compounds. This is also devoid of much metaphorical expressions.

5. The mode is uneven in the actions (of a drama). It has been established as fourfold—Bhāratī, Ārabhaṭī, Kauśikī and Sātvatī.

6. The diction Bhāratī is said to be known so because it was formulated by Bharata. It is predominantly verbal, (consists) generally (of actions) of men but also of women and has expressions in Prākṛta.

7-9. Bhāratī has four components: Vithī, Prahasana and Prastāvanā of the drama and the like. The sub-divisions of Vithī are thirteen: Udghāṭaka, Lapitā¹, the second, Asatpralāpa, Vākśrenī², Nālikā, Vipāṇa, Vyāhāra, Trimata, Chala, Avaskandita³, Gaṇḍa, Mṛdava and Añcita⁴, the thirteenth.

10. Prahasana is the speech ridiculing the ascetics and the like. Ārabhaṭī is known to be abounding in trickery, witchcraft, war and the like. (It is of the varieties) Sañkṣiptaka, Avapāta and Vastūthāpana.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FORTYONE

Description of the actions and movements of the limbs

Fire-god said:

1. The exertion of the body is regarded as the particular gesture relating to the limbs and subordinate limbs and as their action. The former generally relates to women.

1. The amended*reading is Avalagita.
2. The amended reading is Vāgveṇī.
3. The amended reading is Avasyandita.
4. The printed text wrongly reads ucita.

2-5a. It is (divided) into twelve¹—sportiveness, playful gesture, cessation (of care in dress etc.), amorous play or movement, amorous agitation consisting of laughter, weeping, etc., involuntary expression of affection towards the lover, repulse of lover's caresses, indifference towards a beloved object (*bibboka*), that which arises from tenderness (*lalita*), affected by passion or emotion, pleasure-giving pastime and amorous sport. Sportiveness (is) the imitation of the gesture of the beloved person in a hidden abode. Playful gesture is said by good people as exhibiting some peculiarities a little. *Kīlākīñcita* is the combination of laughter, weeping and the like. *Bibboka* is some kind of perturbation. *Lalita* arises from tenderness.

5b-6a. The head, hand, chest, side, loin and foot (are) successively (known) as the limbs and the creeper-like (tender) eyebrows and the like as the minor limbs.

6b-7a. (There cannot be) the use of the limbs and minor limbs without the exertion born of effort. It is straight and indirect sometimes.

7b-9a. The head is known (to move) in thirteen ways—trembling, shaking, gentle shaking (*dhūta*), violent shaking (*vidhūta*), excessive movement (*parivāhita*), agitated, tossed, graceful, contracted, turned round, raised upwards, bent downwards and rolling.

9b. The movement of the eyebrow should be known as sevenfold (such as) lowering, knitting etc.

10. The glance (is said) to be threefold as being related to the sentiment, the permanent (feeling) and the transitory (feeling). It is divided into thirtysix kinds, among which eight arise from sentiments.

11. The function of the pupil is ninefold—moving, rolling and the like. (The actions of) the nose are known to be six. (Those of) respiration are said to be nine.

12. The actions of the lower lip are of six kinds. The actions of the chin are of seven kinds. Those of the face beginning with perturbation are of six kinds. (The actions of) the neck are known as of nine kinds.

1. The text explains only five among these.

13-19a. The hand is employed as unfolded and folded by the character. One banner, three banners, scissor-edge, half-moon, opening up, parrot-beak, fist, pinnacle, wood-apple, club-edged (?), needle-pointed, lotus bud, snake-hood, deer-head, *kāṅgulaka*, *alapadma*, round pillow, bee, swan-mouth, swan-wing, pincers, blossom, spider and cock are the twentyfour of the unfolded hands. Those of the folded hands are thirteen—slightly folded or open pigeon, crab, *svastika*, *kaṣakavardhamāna*¹, *asaṅga*², *niṣadha*, swing, flower-casket, crocodile, elephant tusk, *bahistambha*³ and *vardhamāna*.

19b-20. The chest may be of five kinds, such as a little curved and straight⁴ etc. The belly is threefold—not very slender, slender⁵ and full. The actions of the sides are five. The actions of the shank are also five. The action of the feet in dance and the like in a drama is known to be manifold.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FORTYTWO

Definition of dramatic representation

Fire-god said:

1-2. Dramatic representation should be known by learned men as carrying forward the sense (of the drama). It arises in four ways resting on internal feeling, speech, limbs and bringing out (the feeling). Stupor and the like are the internal (feeling). The speech is the beginning of speech. That relating to the limbs is the exertion of the body. The internal feeling is the operation of the exertion of the intellect.

3. The employment of sentiment and the like arising from

1. The text reads *kaṣaka* and *vardhamāna*. Cf. NS IX. 8-10 reading these two as one.

2. *utsaṅga* (lap) Cf. NS IX.

3. Cf. NS IX. given as *avahittha* (dissemination of internal feeling)

4. The text wrongly reads *nartana*. Cf. NS IX.

5. The text reads *khaṇḍa* for *khalla* in NS X.

conceit are being described now. Independence of all kinds (of gesticulation) is meaningless without this.

4. The erotic (sentiment) is said to be twofold, namely, love in union and love in separation. Both these are again twofold, namely, concealed and manifest.

5. The erotic (sentiment) known as love in separation is fourfold—incipient love, jealous anger, sojourn abroad and pathos.

6. The other kind is different from these in four ways and has the characteristic of increased enjoyment. But it does not surpass the former.

7. It arises in men and women. Love accomplishes it. All internal emotions except the change of colour and loss of consciousness (are) in it.

8-9a. The erotic (sentiment) thrives (aided) by piety, wealth, pleasure and emancipation on particular supportive (excitants) and (becomes) uninterrupted by their peculiarities. The erotic (sentiment) should be known as twofold consisting (of the mode) of speech and the act of decoration.

9b-11a. The comic (sentiment) is said to be fourfold¹—*smita*, smile in which the teeth are not visible, *hasita*, in which the tips of the teeth are slightly visible and the eyes are dilated, *vihasita*, that is sonorous, *upahasita*, that is crooked², *apahasita*³, that is with sound and *atihāsita*, that is without sound.

11b-12. The sentiment known as pathos is of three kinds—arising from violation of virtue and originating from loss of wealth. While sorrow is the permanent (emotion), pleasure is considered the dominant (emotion) of the former two (sentiments of erotic and comic).

13. The sentiment of wrath is threefold—by means of limbs, dress and speech. Its accomplishing factors are anger, perspiration, horripilation and trembling.

14. The heroic (sentiment) is threefold—heroic in libera-

1. The *purāṇa* mentions only four divisions but defines six as in *NS VI*. 51-52.

2. The *purāṇa* wrongly reads *jihva* instead of *jihma*.

3. Wrongly printed as *pāpahasita*.

lity, heroic in virtue and heroic in battle. Enthusiasm is said to be the cause of its accomplishment.

15. The sentiment called terror which arises at the commencement (of an action), follows the heroic (sentiment) only. Fear is its accomplishing factor.

16-17a. (The sentiment of) disgust is said to be twofold—agitating and distressing. The agitating (type) would arise on account of stink¹ and the like and the distressing (type) by means of blood and the like. Aversion gives rise to it and the *sāttvika* element recedes in it.

17b-19a. The elements which add beauty to poetic compositions are said to be the embellishments. These embellishments are threefold—(tending to embellish) word, meaning and both. Rhetoricians declare those which are capable of embellishing word by means of proficiency and the like as embellishments of word.

19b-21. The nine, namely, *chāyā*, *mudrā*, *ukti*, *yukti*, *gumphaṇā*, *vākovākya*, *anuprāsa*, *citra* and *duṣkara* should be known as the embellishments of words because of the absence of commixture. There, *chāyā* (reflection) is the imitation of the utterance of others. It is again fourfold—imitation of popular saying, clever speech, childish utterance and intoxicated raving² (*matla*).

22. The proverb (*ābhāṇaka*) is a popular saying and they are common to all. That which follows the proverb is said to be the *lokoctichāyā* by the wisemen.

23. The clever are the cultured. Expert knowledge of fine arts is culture. That which delineates it is said to be the *Cheko-ktichāyā* by poets.

24. All understand childish speech as the utterance of the ignorant. The imitation of the childish speech hence merely imitates this kind of speech.

25. The vulgar speech of the intoxicated is similarly (composed of) confused letters. That which is similar to this is called *mattoctichāyā* which even surpasses the intoxicated speech.

26. That which exhibits the power of the poet in its particular purpose (is called) *mudrā* because it affords pleasure. This is also (known as) repose in our opinion.

1. Text wrongly reads *pluti* instead of *pūti*.

2. The textual reading is wrong.

27. That is said to be *ukti* (expression) in which some reasonable sense pleases the heart of good people because of some precept relating to the affairs of the world.

28. *Ukti* (expression) is sixfold—injunction and prohibition, restricted and unrestricted, and alternative and exclusive.

29-30. Combination is termed so by the wisemen because of its being made for connecting the two, word and sense, which are mutually unconnected. It is sixfold—inflected word, meaning of inflected word, sentence, meaning of sentence, context and amplification.

31. Stringing is the practice of composition within the scope of a word, meaning and their order. It is threefold based on imitation of word, succession of meaning and regular arrangement.

32-33. *Vākuvākya* is a sentence containing question and answer. It is twofold on the basis of the classification as straight speech and crooked speech. The first of these is natural speech. It would be of two kinds according as it is preceded by a question or not. But, crooked speech is intonation or occurs by indirect speech. Hence it is twofold.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FORTYTHREE

Definition of the embellishment of words

Fire-god said:

1-2. Alliteration is the repetition of letters in (inflected) word and sentence. The class of letters of repetition is twofold—single letter and many letters. Five kinds of mode are produced from the repetition of a single letter—sweet, soft, mature, graceful and harsh.

3-4. The consonant letters of the sweet (*madhurāvṛtti*) should occur below the last letters of the (respective) consonant classes: the letters *ra* and *ṇa* should be separated by short vowels, coupled with letter *na* and should be joined with hard aspirates and sibilants. The *varga-varṇas* (letters *ka, ca, ṣa, ta* and *pa*) should

not be repeated in more than five ways. They are not to be followed by short syllables.

5. The soft one abounds in (the use of) *ra*¹ and *la*. In the mature one, (the letters) *pa, ṇa* and (other) consonants are joined with (the letter) *ra* at the head. But neither the cerebral nor the fifth (letters of the consonants are joined).

6-10a. The remaining (letters) would be present in the graceful one. The harsh one is said to be that in which the sibilants are joined with the very same letters. There is abundant repetition of vowels excepting the letter *a*. The *anusvāra* and *visarga* are also constant in harshness. The sibilants are combined with *ra*. (The letters) *a* and *ha* are also abundantly joined for harshness. (They are also joined with) the semi-vowels, *na* and *ma*². Otherwise, if the conjunct is a hindrance, a hard consonant (is used) as the first letter for harshness. But the fifth one is not favoured. The harsh one is employed in censure and imitation of words.

10b-11a. *Karṇāṭi*, *Kauntali*, *Kaunti*, *Vāmanāsikā*³, *Drāvāṇi*⁴ and *Mādhavi*⁵ (are) respectively (characterised) by the semivowels and sibilants.

11b-17. That which has repetition of many letters conveying different meanings is *yamaka*. It is of two kinds—contiguous and non-contiguous. The contiguous one (has the letters) in close succession. The non-contiguous one (has the letters repeated) with intervals. These two become fourfold on account of two kinds of differences in the position (of the letters) and the (metrical) foot. (The first kind is) of seven varieties according (as *yamaka* occurs) in one, two and three at the beginning, beginning of the foot, in the middle and at the end (of the metrical feet). The other kind occurs in six ways when the commencement of one, two or three metrical feet is similar in each successive foot with reference to each preceding one. The third (variety)

1. The printed text reads *va*.
2. The reading *antasthābhinnamābhyāśca* in the printed text has been changed to *antasthābhinnamābhyāśca*.
3. The correct reading seems to be *Vāmanāsikā*.
4. Obviously wrong reading for *Drāviḍi*.
5. Obviously wrong reading for *Mādhavi*.

is threefold (according as *yamaka*) occurs at the beginning, in the middle and at the end of (the metrical) foot. Other *yamakas* are many. The prominent ten are : *pāḍāntayamaka*, *kāñciyamaka*, *saṃsargayamaka*¹, *vikrāntayamaka*, *pāḍādiyamaka*, *āmreḍita*, *caturvyazasita* and *mālāyamaka*.

18. The repetition of a word is twofold according as it is independent or dependent on others. Thus men know the repetition of words which have different purposes.

19. The compounded (repetition) arises from the compounding of two repeated words. The un compounded (repetition) arises from the absence of compounding between the two words from dissolving the compounds in one part of the metrical foot.

20. The repetition of a sentence is said to be possible in this way. Alliteration is thus the foremost among the embellishments by virtue of its fitness though being short in the middle.

21. That alliteration, where the similarity of sound is enjoyed by means of any *vr̥tti* (mode), having uninterrupted sequence of words, is charming.

22-23a. *Citra* (picturesque *Kāvyā*) is said to be a composition of words exciting curiosity in a learned assembly. It is of seven different varieties--*Praśna*, *Praheḷikā*, *Gupta*, *Cyuta*, *Datta*, *Cyuta* and *Datta* combined and *Samasyā* arising from union of different meanings.

23b-24. That is *Praśna* (query) in which a reply is given having similar arrangement of letters. It is twofold according to the difference of reply to the question asked by one or two. The query asked by one, again, is indeed twofold according as it is compounded or un compounded.

25-26a. *Praheḷikā* (riddle) consists of words having even two meanings concealed. It has two kinds—verbal and meaningful. The meaningful arises from the comprehension of meaning and the verbal from the knowledge of word. *Praheḷika* is said to be of six kinds.

26b-27a. That is *Gupta* (concealed) in which even a part of a sentence remains concealed and the resultant meaning for which there is expectancy by that part is not wholly true. It (is) also (called) *Gūḍha* (covert).

1. Obviously wrong reading for *saṃudgayamaka*.

27b-28. Where there is the appearance of a different sense by means of dropping a part of a sentence etc. and there is expectancy raised by that part, it is known as *Cyuta* (dropped). It is fourfold arising from the dropping of the vowel, consonant, *bindu* (*anusvāra*) and *visarga*.

29. That is said to be *Datta* (added) in which a second sense is suggested, even though a part of the sentence is given. Its varieties are considered to be the same as in the previous by means of vowels and the like.

30. It is said to be *Cyutadatta* (dropped and added) in which there arises a different sense even when another letter is inserted in the place of the removed syllable.

31. That is *Samasyā* (union) in which one verse involves good puns and is composed of various verse fragments. (It arises) from the blending of the composition of others and of one's own.

32-33a. *Duṣkara* (difficult) is that (which is) constructed with very great difficulty, indicating poet's ability and producing great delight in clever persons in spite of tastelessness. It is threefold from *niyama* (restraint), *vidarbha*¹ (variation) and *bandha* (structure).

33b-34a. *Niyama* (restraint) is considered to be the fulfilment of promise of the poet, who is delighted for his composition. It is threefold according as it (is regulated) by position, vowel and consonant.

34b-35a. *Vikalpa* (variation) is so called from the reverse and natural order (of letters). The reverse and natural order arises from word as well as sense.

35b-37a. The skillful composition (of different kinds) of the forms of various well-known objects by means of arrangement of letters repeated in many ways is said to be *bandha* (structure). It is (divided into) eight (varieties)—*Gomūtrikā*, *Ardhabhramaṇa*, *Sarvatobhadra*, *Ambuja*, *Cakra*, *Cakrābjaka*, *Daṇḍa* and *Muraja*.

37b-39a. (*Gomūtrikā*) would have similar alternate syllables in each metrical foot in each half (of a verse). *Gomū-*

1. Obviously *vikalpa*. See verse 34b.

trikā (zigzagging like the cow's urine) is twofold—the first kind is said to be *Aśvapada* (horse foot) by others. The last kind of *Gomūtrikā* is also called *Dhenu* (cow) and *Jālabandha* (net structure). An arrangement of these is made by two halves and by half metrical feet.

39b-47. That is indeed *Sarvatobhadra* (good in every direction) where (i) the letters (are arranged) one below the other in successive order, (ii) the letters are arranged one below the other up to the fourth feet, and (iii) (the letters are arranged) from the fourth foot onwards the half foot in the reverse order. It is threefold—*Sarasīruha* (lotus), *Catuṣpatra* (four-petalled) and *Viṅghna*, both of which are four-petalled. The uppermost (letters) of the first foot are the letters of the three feet. They occur indeed at the end of all feet. The last two letters of the preceding foot are at the beginning of the succeeding foot in the reverse order. The last two letters of the last foot (are in the same order) at the beginning of the first foot. This would be in (the lotus of) four petals. But there would be three letters in the lotus of eight petals. On the other hand, it is alternate, if it is a single letter, in (the lotus of) sixteen petals. A series of letters in the form of the petals should be drawn above the pericarp in the lotus of four petals and then made to enter the pericarp. One letter should be written in the pericarp and letters two at a time in the cardinal and intermediate (points) in the lotus of eight petals. The entrance and exit (of letters) should be made in the cardinal (points). The insertion of similar syllables (is done) in the middle of dissimilar letters occurring in the rows of petals on all sides in the lotus of sixteen petals.

48-52. *Cakra* (wheel) is twofold—consisting of four spokes and six spokes. The first one among these has the first and fifth letters in the quarter of the first half as similar. The fourth and eighth letters of the odd and even foot are in order in its northern, eastern, southern and western¹ spokes. The four halves of the (two) feet should be in the nave. Its first letter should be taken as far as the last spoke, the remaining two feet (being)

1. The text is wrong. It has been corrected as *tasyodakprāgavakpratyagaruṣu*

in the circumference. It is said to be the *Byhat-cakra* (big wheel), if the third letter at the end of the fourth foot and the first two letters are similar, if the tenth letters of the three feet are similar, if there are six letters at its beginning and end and if (a letter) is separated by two letters in the last foot.

53-54. (The two) feet are written one by one gradually in the two front spokes. But the tenth letter should be drawn in the nave and the fourth foot in the circumference. The first, last and tenth letters of the verse are similar. The first and the last (letters) of the two even feet (are also similar). The first, fourth and fifth letters of the first and fourth feet are similar.

55-58. If the third (foot) is produced by reversing the second and the petals are arranged, it is the *Daṇḍa* (staff). (It is known as) *Cakrābhya* (lotus-wheel), if the second and seventh (letters) are similar in the first petal of a composition, (if) the succeeding two petals are similar by the two second (letters in each), (if) the second, sixth, fourth and fifth letters are similar in the two halves, (if) the first and the last feet, the seventh letters of the extreme halves are also similar. Then one should arrange the fourth and fifth similar (letters) in order. Similarly the two fourth (similar letters) of the *krama* feet at the end of the petals should be arranged.¹

59-61. The first and the last of the two halves are similar in *Muraja* (drum). The letter occurs in the half-foot according to the natural or reverse (order). *Muraja* (drum) shape is obtained thus. The last is set in such a way that the fourth becomes the first*

62. The second (variety of) *Cakra* (circle) is accomplished with *Śārdūlavikriḍita*.² The *Gomūtrikā* (*bandha*) (is composed) in all the metres. But other *bandhas* (are set) in *Anuṣṭubh*.³

63. If the names of the poet and the poetic composition are not found in these, friends become delighted and enemies also do not feel depressed.

64-65. The arrow, bow, sky, sword, club, lance, meeting

1. This line is not intelligible.

*Verses 60-61 are cryptic and the idea conveyed is not clear.

2. Metre consisting of *ma, sa, ja, sa, ta, ta* (*gaṇas*) and *ga*.

3. Consisting of eight syllables.

place of two, three or four¹ roads, thunderbolt, mace, goad, chariotwheel, food of the elephant, pond and knife are (the different) *bandhas* (patterns in which verses are composed). Others (*bandhas*) should be known by the wisemen similarly.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FORTYFOUR

Description of the embellishment of sense

Fire-god said :

1-2a. The embellishment of sense is said to be the beautifying of senses. Even the beauty of words is not charming without that. The goddess of speech is just like a widow without the embellishment of sense.

2b-3a. It is of eight kinds—*svarūpam* (natural form), *sādrśyam* (similarity), *utprekṣā* (fancy), *atīśaya* (exaggeration), *vibhāvanā* (imagination), *virodha* (contradiction), *hetu* (cause) and *samam* (evenness).

3b-4. The very nature of things is said to be the natural form. It is said to be twofold such as, innate and adventitious. The innate (is) natural and the adventitious is occasional.

5. Similarity is (the presence of) common attributes. It is indeed fourfold : *Upamā* (simile), *Rūpakam* (metaphor), *Sahokti* (description of the common action of two different objects as coexisting) and *Arthāntaranyāsa* (corroboration).

6-9a. It is named as *Upamā* (simile), in which, there exists a standard of comparison and a subject of comparison. The course of affairs proceeds by taking even a slight identity and the separate entity exists although possessing internal similitude. It is of two kinds—by compounding or not compounding the counter-parts (of comparison). The compounded (arises) from the compounding of the correlated expression and the latter is otherwise. The compounded is threefold—by (the compound

1. The reading *dvicatuṣka* seems to have sense instead of *dvicaturtha* in the text.

ing of) the word indicative of simile, (of) the word (expressive) of the subject of comparison and (of) both of these. The last one is of three kinds.

9b. Eighteen kinds of simile are distinguished.

10. The *Dharma* (attribute) and *Vastu* (object)-*upamā* is that where the common attribute is expressed or implied, (depending) on the prominence of *dharma* (attribute) or *vastu* (object).

11-12. Where the two (objects) having the (common) attribute are compared reciprocally, it would be *Parasparopamā* (mutual simile). When their (comparison) is reversal of what is well known, it would be *Viparitopamā* (reversed simile). *Niyamopamā* (restrictive simile) is that in which (the resemblance) is restricted (to one excluding others). *Aniyamopamā* (unrestrictive simile) would be from (the resemblance found) in others as well.

13-14. *Samuccayopamā* (cumulative simile) consists of the mention of multitude of other attributes. When difference is indicated in spite of similarity of many attributes, it is (known as) *Vyatirekopamā* (simile of contrast), because distinction is spoken of. It is the *Bahūpamā* (multiple simile) in which there is comparison with many similar (objects).

15. When the attributes are different for each standard of comparison it is indeed *Māloṇopamā* (garland of simile). If comparison is made by modifying the standard of comparison, (it is known as) *Vikriyopamā* (simile of modification).

16. That is well known as the *Adbhutopamā* (hypothetical simile) in which comparison is made by the poet by superimposing something non-existent in all the three worlds on the standard of comparison.

17. It is *Mohopamā* (illusive simile) in which, the subject of comparison is declared as identical with the standard of comparison, after imposing the standard of comparison on the subject of comparison. (It has) a mistaken statement.

18. *Saṁśayopamā* (simile by doubt) (arises) from the uncertainty of the real nature of both the entities having common attributes. *Niścayopamā* (determinative simile) (arises) from determining the subject of comparison after having doubted it.

19. *Vākyārthopamā* (simile of the sense of the sentence) arises from a comparison of verily the meaning of the sentences. *Asādhāraṇopamā* (absolute simile), (which is) extraordinary, (occurs) when there is a comparison of a thing with itself.

20. When a subject of comparison is (a standard of comparison) of another it is considered as *Anyasyopamā* (simile of another). It is (known as) *Gamanopamā*¹ (simile of succession) when the subject of comparison of a thing becomes the standard of comparison of another in regular succession.

21. *Upamā* (simile) is again known to be of five kinds : praise, censure, fancied, similar and little similar.

22-23a. It is known by the name *Rūpaka* (metaphor), in which the subject of comparison is identified with the standard of comparison after the perception of the similarity of attributes. Or, *Rūpaka* is indeed *Upamā* itself in which the difference (between the standard and subject of comparison) is concealed.

23b. *Sahokti* (connected description) (arises) from the description (of objects) having similar attributes as being simultaneous.

24a. *Arthāntaranyāsa* (corroboration) arises when there is a posterior similarity (of a preceding statement to the succeeding one).

24b-25a. It is said to be *Utprekṣā* (poetic fancy) where the condition of a sentient being or otherwise, which occurs in one way, is conceived (as occurring) differently.

25b-26a. It is named as *Atiśayokti* (hyperbole) wherein the attribute of an object, that has passed beyond ordinary limits, is described. It is twofold on the basis of possibility and impossibility.

26b-27a. That is said to be *Viśeṣokti* (special utterance) where the imperfection in the quality, genus, action and the like (of an object) are perceived just for the purpose of showing (its) speciality.

27b-28a. That is *Vibhāvanā* (presumption) where a different cause or naturalness is presumed excluding a well known cause.

1. The printed text wrongly reads *Gaganopamā*.

28b-29a. It is said to be *Virodha* (contradiction) where there is realisation, by adjustment, of congruity between two incongruous things, with a previous contradiction.

29b-32. *Hetu* (cause) is that which accomplishes the object desired to be accomplished. It is produced in two (ways) such as *kāraṇa* (efficient) and *jñāpaka* (indicative). The efficient cause occurs before and (the other) after the production of an effect. These two kinds known as the precedent and antecedent arise from the controlling relation of cause and effect or identity. There is difference in the indicative one such as the perception of a flooding river. The rule of inseparable connection arises from the perception of inseparable connection.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FORTYFIVE

The embellishments of sound and sense

Fire-god said :

1. An embellishment of both sound and sense adorns the two simultaneously just as a necklace laid in one place (adorns both) the breast and neck of a woman.

2. Six varieties of it are explicitly in existence, namely, *Prasasti*, *Kānti*, *Aucitya*, *Saṅkṣepa*, *Yāvadarthatā* and *Abhivyaṅgi*.

3-4a. *Prasasti* (eulogy) (is) skillful speech (employed) for the act of melting the subtle (heart) as if it is subservient. It is of two kinds on account of the distinction as *Premokti* and *Stuti*. A friendly speech and a panegyric are the synonyms of *Premokti* and *Stuti* (respectively).

4b-5a. *Kānti* (loveliness) (is) the fitness of the expressed (sense) and the expressive (word) agreeable to all the minds. (In that) the diction is befitting the theme and the mode to the sentiment.

5b. The propriety arises from strong and soft compositions.

6. *Saṅkṣepa* (brevity) (is) the comprehension of many meanings by means of few expressive words. *Yāvadarthatā*

(correspondence) is neither deficiency nor excess of the word and the theme respectively.

7-9a. *Abhivyakti* (manifestation) (is) explicitness. It has also two (sub) divisions, *Śruti* and *Ākṣepa*. *Śruti* (direct hearing) is the word that gives up its own meaning. It is of two kinds—*Naimittiki* (occasional) and *Pāribhāṣiki* (technical). Technicality is convention. Hence arises the Technical. (The two) are again each divided as *Mukhyā* (primary) and *Aupacāriki* (metaphorical).

9b-10a. That is Metaphorical by which a word whose function deviates from its own primary sense expresses, for certain reason, a sense which is not primary.

10b-12a. It is Indicatory and Qualitative by association with indication and qualities (respectively). Indication is said to be the apprehension (of a secondary sense) always associated with the expressed sense. Indication is regarded as fivefold arising from connection with the primary sense, proximity, cohesion, contrariety and association through action.

12b-13. The Qualitative (is) endless in view of the endlessness of qualities in accordance with the desire of the speaker. It is known here as *Samādhi* (transference) in which the attribute of one object is transferred to another by a person complying with worldly limits.

14-16. That is *Ākṣepa* (interdiction), on account of which the vital essence not available from direct hearing (of the word) becomes manifest. It is also (known as) *Dhṛni* (suggestion), since it is implied by suggestion by means of word and sense, where the (suggested) sense (appears) by subordinating¹ its own (expressed sense). That is said to be *Ākṣepa* (interdiction) where there is an apparent denial of the desired sense in order to convey something special.² Again, this (is known as) *Aprastutastotra*³ (indirect praise) where there is a praise of another object deviating from the object on hand.

17. Because of brevity of expression that is termed by the wise as *Samāsokti* (brevity of speech), where another object

1. The reading is taken as *upasarjanam* in ste 1 of *upārjanam*.

2. The reading should be *vīṣeṣa* instead of *vīṣeṣo*.

3. The textual reading *atra stutam stotram* is obviously incorrect.

having common characteristics is suggested, when one object is described.

18. *Apahnuti* (concealment) (consists of) conveying another sense by concealing something. That is *Paryāyokta* (periphrasis) which is stated in a different way. Hence *Dhwani* (suggestion) is, indeed, *the name* of any one of these.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FORTYSIX

Investigation into poetic excellences

Fire-god said :

1. Poetry, even though embellished, does not produce pleasure, if it is devoid of *gunas* (excellences). A necklace would only be burdensome to women, if their bodies are not beautiful.

2. It cannot be said that excellence would only be the absence of defect.¹ Excellences such as *Śleṣa* (coalescence) and the like and defects such as *Gūḍhārtha* (obscurity of sense) and the like have been distinguished from one another.

3. An excellence is that which confers great charm to poetry. It exists in two forms such as general and particular.

4. That which is common to all² is considered to be the general. The general (excellence) is threefold relating to word, sense and both.

5-6a. The excellence (of word) is that which relates to the word, the body of the poetry³. The excellences of the word are sevenfold, namely, *Śleṣa* (coalescence), *Lālitya* (smoothness), *Gāmbhīrya* (depth), *Saukumārya* (softness), *Udāratā* (richness of expression), *Satī* (purity) and *Yaugiki* (derivative).

6b. That is said to be Coalescence in which there is a closely coalesced arrangement of words.

1. The reading *doṣa bhāva* has been corrected as *doṣābhāva*.

2. Probably the Ritis.

3. The reading *kāvyaśarīram* is better than *kāvyaṃ śarīraṃ*.

7. Smoothness is declared as that in which a letter that is already combined in the words by means of (substitution such as) *guṇa*, *ādeśa* and the like is never euphonically combined.

8. The wise name it as Depth which is a composition chiselled by special characteristics and which contains elevated words; others (name) the same as *Suśabdatā* (grammatical correctness).

9. Softness consists of words mostly of unharsh letters. Elevatedness consists of elevated words and is endowed with praiseworthy epithets.

10. Splendidness (*Ojas*) (is) abundance of compounds. It is the life of prose etc.¹ From the Highest Being to a clump of grass, manliness (comes) by *ojas* alone.

11-12. That is said to be the Excellence of Sense² which brings out the excellence of a described object by whichsoever word. There are six varieties of it, viz., *Mādhurya* (tranquility), *Saṁvidhāna* (contrivance), *Komalatvaṁ* (softness), *Udārātā* (elegance), *Praudhī* (maturity) and *Sāmayikatva* (being conventional).

13. The gravity of appearance even in anger (and) deep state of composure is Tranquility. Contrivance (consists of) the effort for the accomplishment of an expected object.

14. An arrangement of words free from rigidity appearing after setting aside laxity (of structure) is (known as) Softness.

15. The excessive gracefulness of intention which indicates the characteristic of the disposition of being aimed at explicitly is the Elegance of *Guṇa*.

16. That is declared Maturity in which there are mature reasonings impregnated with logical reasonings bringing about accomplishment of what is intended.

17. The apprehension of the sense in the demonstrated conclusion³ of something independent or dependent (is known as) 'Being Conventional'.

1. The text wrongly reads as *padya*.

2. *arthaguṇa* seems to be better than the reading *artha guṇa*.

3. The reading *rāddhāntaḥ samayo mataḥ* seems to be better than *bāhyāntaḥ samayogataḥ* of the printed text.

18-19a. That which embellishes both word and sense is known by the name 'the Excellence of Both'. *Prasāda* (lucidity), *Saubhāgya* (loveliness), *Yathāsankhya* (relative enumeration), *Praśastatā* (praiseworthiness), *Pāka* (ripeness) and *Rāga* (tint) are its six (varieties) divulged in their manifoldness by the wise.

19b-20. Lucidity is glorified as consisting of words possessing very well-known sense. That which, when expressed, suggests some eminent attribute, is declared by the wise as *Saubhāgya* (loveliness) or *Udāratva* (elegance).

21-22a. *Yathāsankhya* (is) Relative Enumeration extended to similar things. Praiseworthiness is the description of even a terrible object by means of a word not terrible, when there is an occasion.

22b-23. A certain high maturity is said to be Ripeness. It is of four kinds, viz., as the ripeness of grape and that of coconut water etc. That is indeed the ripeness of grape in which there is sweetness both at the beginning and the end.

24-25. It is glorified as Tint which is a special characteristic for the purpose of poetic composition. It excels even the natural grace (when) put to constant practice. It is again of three varieties : yellow, saffron and indigo. That which is within the range of its own characteristics is to be recognised as the particular (Excellence).

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FORTYSEVEN

Investigation into poetic blemishes

Fire-god said:

1. Blemish causes distaste in the refined men. It is sevenfold as applied to one, two and three of the speaker, the denoter and the denoted.

2-3. The speaker is certainly the poet therein. He is also known to be fourfold: suspicious, insolent, ignorant and learned. The denoter is that which affects the meaning on the ground

(for employment) and technicality. Its subdivisions are two: word and sentence. The characteristics of both have been stated.

4. Grammatical incorrectness and reconditeness are the only two defects of word. Wisemen know grammatical incorrectness as repugnance to the science of word.

5-6a. Reconditeness is said to be the non-employment by the well-versed. It is fivefold: *Chāndasatva* (Vedic usage), *Aviśpaṣṭatva* (lack of clarity), *Kaṣṭatva* (unpleasantness), *Asāmayikatva* (not being conventional) and *Grāmyatva* (vulgarity).

6b-9. *Chāndasatva* is that which is not found in the spoken language. Lack of clarity arises from lack of understanding. Obscurity of meaning, Perversion of meaning and Ambiguity are varieties of Lack of clarity. It is known as obscurity of meaning in which the sense is understood with difficulty. Perversion of meaning again is wrong perception of the meaning of a word other than that intended. Non-conformity to established meaning and Incapability (of expressing the intended meaning) approach this only. Ambiguity is said to be the doubtful nature of the expressed (meaning).

10-11a. Without causing distress to good people, faultiness attaches to unpleasantness which comprises difficult pronunciation. Not being conventional consists of deviation from convention. The sages named it *Nejā*.

11b-12. Vulgarity is the damaging apprehension of a low meaning. It is threefold: arising from the expression of an intended vulgar sense, recollection (of the same) and from close resemblance (of an expression) with the word expressive (of that sense).

13. Defect of meaning is twofold: general and particular. The blemish that relates to many is said to be the general.

14. The general (impurities) are five, namely, *Kriyābhrāmṣa* (dropping of the verb), *Kāṛakabhramṣa* (dropping of the case-endings), *Viśandhi* (lack of euphonic combination), *Punaruktatā* (tautology) and *Vyastasambandhatā* (confused connection).

15. The dropping of the verb is the absence of the verb. Dropping of the case-endings again is the absence of cases begin-

ning with the subject. Lack of euphonic combination is the deficiency of the same.

16. It is twofold: deficient euphonic combination or repugnant. The repugnance of euphonic combination (arises) from difficulty in reading or from the appearance of a different sense.

17-18. The continued repetition of an expression is Tautology. It is also twofold: repetition of sense and repetition of word. The repetition of sense is also twofold: by making use of a chosen word and by means of a different word. In the repetition of a word, a word is repeated and not the sense.

19-21. The confused connection (is) improper connection that arises from the intervention (of a word). It is, indeed, threefold—arising from the implication of a different connection, from the occurrence of a different connection and in the absence of both of them, from internal intervention. Each one of these is, again, twofold by means of the intervention of a word or a sentence. Of the word and the sentence, the meaning¹ is what is expressed, because it is intended to be conveyed. The expressed is divided into two, viz. already-developed or yet-to-be-developed.

22-23. The incapability of the cause is the state of causing obstacle to the intended. (It occurs in the following forms): inconclusiveness, contrariety, absence of invariable concomitance, being liable for a valid opposite argument, union of untimely reason, non-existence in the subject, non-existence in similar instance and existence in contrary instance.

24. The eleven kinds of meaninglessness do not become painful to those who are competent in poetry. They do not become defects in difficult compositions.

25. Obscurity of meaning does not make the knowers of defects in difficult compositions feel distress. Vulgarity does not annoy by being admitted by people (in general) and in technical works.

26. There is no blemish in the dropping of the verb because (the ellipsis) of the verb could be supplied. The dropping of

1. The correct reading is *vācyamartho*.

the case (becomes possible) when the case is supplied by means of implication.

27. Non-occurrence of euphonic combination does not affect in the (case of a) *piagrhya*¹ (vowel). Absence of disagreeable euphonic combination that arises from difficulty in reading does not become unpleasant in harsh utterances and the like.

28-29a. The repetition of a word and confused connection are good in alliteration. It is not a defect in understanding the sense. It is also not tarnished by (the defects) such as the inversion of order and the like of the case ending, number and gender. There is no distress for the wise in these.

29b. There is difference in number between the standard of comparison and the object of comparison there.

30-33. The right practice of the poets is glorified as the (poetic) convention, where there is (comparison) of many with one and one with many, which is good. It is twofold: general and particular, similar to excellence. That which is well known from the absence of dispute among famous knowers of established truth is considered as the general convention of poets. According as all the knowers of truth or only a few agree faultlessly, the general is twofold. The other (namely, the particular), arises from defective doctrine, such as the error of some people.

34-35a. Some sage has the knowledge of reasoning. Some (has) transitory (consciousness) of the created beings. Some (has) self-manifestation² of knowledge. Similarly, there is grossness of known objects and uncertainty of words for the Arhats (Jains).

35b-36a. The Śaivas (devotees of Śiva), Vaiṣnavas (devotees of Viṣṇu), Sauras (devotees of Sun god), who know the established truth, opine that Brahman is the cause of the world. (The cause is associated) with Pradhāna (Primordial) for the Sāṅkhyas.³

36b-40. It is said to be the particular, in this world of speech, that people moving together and perceiving mutually,

1. That which is not governed by the rules of *sandhi* or euphony and is permitted to be written and pronounced separately.

2. The reading *svapradāśatā* seems to be better.

3. The followers of the Sāṅkhya philosophy, promulgated by Sage Kapila.

fasten upon. This being divided, is also known as twofold, according as being accepted as unreal and being non-accepted as real. That which gets affected by the means of knowledge such as perception and the like, is known as the unreal. That is to be accepted by the poet as the manifestation of knowledge. That alone which accomplishes an action with purpose, is (taken to be) the highest truth, out of ignorance. Brahman alone is the real, the highest truth, from knowledge. (Lord) Viṣṇu is the cause of creation and the like. He is embodied of words and embellishments. Knowledge is Parā (superior) and Aparā (inferior). One is released from birth by knowing it.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FORTYEIGHT

List of mono-syllabic words

Fire-god said:

1-2. I shall describe the mono-syllabic (words) ending with the letters (of the alphabet). (The letter) “a” (denotes) (lord) Viṣṇu and negation. ‘Ā’ (means) Brahmā, a sentence as well as a boundary. ‘Ā’, when used as an interjection would also be (an expression of) anger and affliction. ‘I’ (signifies) (God of) love. ‘Ī’ (denotes) Rati (the wife of God of love) and Lakṣmī (Goddess of wealth and consort of Lord Viṣṇu). ‘U’ (signifies) (lord) Śiva (and) ‘Ū’, the demons and others.

3. ‘R’ (denotes) a word and ‘Ṛ’, (the deity) Aditi (the mother of Āditya). (The letters) ḷ and Ṭ (respectively) (denote) Diti (the mother of the demons) and Guha (son of Śiva and Pārvatī). ‘E’ (denotes) the goddess and ‘ai’ would mean Yoginī (female attendant of the Goddess). ‘O’ (signifies) Brahmā and ‘au’, Maheśvara (Lord Śiva).

4-5. ‘Am’ (denotes) the God of love and, ‘aḥ’ a commendable thing. ‘Ka’ (stands for) Brahmā and others (and) ‘ku’ contemptible thing. (The letter) ‘kham’ signifies void, the senses and a sword. A Gandharva and (lord) Vināyaka (lord of obstacles) (are denoted by the letter) ‘gam’. ‘Go’ (signifies) a song

and the singer. 'Gha' stands for a bell, a small bell and the like and beating. (The letter) 'ña' signifies desire and Bhairava (a terrible form of lord Śiva).

6. 'Ca' (stands for) the wicked (and) stainless. 'Cha' (indicates) division and 'ji', conquering. 'Jam' (denotes) a song and 'jha', commendable. (The letter) 'ña' (signifies) strength and 'taḥ', singing.

7. 'Tha' (denotes) the orb of Moon, (lord) Śiva and tying. 'Da' is regarded (as signifying) Rudra, sound and fear. 'Dha' (denotes) a drum and sound.

8. 'Na' (means) extraction and ascertainment. 'Ta' (signifies) a thief and the inside of the tail. 'Tha' (denotes) eating, 'daḥ', cutting, sustaining and ornamentation.

9. 'Dhaḥ' (signifies) Brahmā and the dhuttūra (flower). 'Na' (stands for) a collection and correct course of action. 'Pa' is known (to denote) a garden. 'Pha' is regarded (as signifying) a squall.

10. 'Pha' (stands for) phūtkāra (blowing with the mouth) and fruitlessness. 'Bi' (denotes) a bird and 'bham', the asterism. 'Mā', would (mean) Goddess of wealth, measure and mother. 'Ta' (stands for) a sacrifice, traveller and a brave person.

11. (The letter) 'raḥ' (denotes) Fire (god), strength and Indra. (The letter) 'la' is said (to denote) the creator. 'Vi' (signifies) separation and 'Va', Varuṇa. 'Śaḥ' (means) lying down and 'sam', happiness.

12. 'Saḥ' (denotes) excellence and 'saḥ', the past. 'Ś' (means) Lakṣmī (the goddess of fortune) and 'sam' is regarded (as representing) locks of hair. 'Ha' (denotes) sustenance and Rudra (a form of Śiva). 'Kṣa' (stands for) the warrior class and regarded as the alphabet (imperishable).

13. (The letter) kṣo (denotes) (lord) Nṛsimha, Hari and the guardians of the land (and entrance). A sacred formula of one syllable (should be deemed as) the deity (itself whom it represents) and it confers enjoyment and emancipation.

14. The formula (running as) 'kṣaum obeisance to Havaśiras¹' confers all knowledge. The letter 'ṛ' and the other letters

1. The horse-headed form assumed by Lord Viṣṇu to rescue the Vedas.

(described above are also) formulae. (They are known as) *māṭṛkāmantras* and are excellent.

15-16. These (deities of the *māṭṛkāmantras*) and the nine Durgās—Bhagavati, Kātyāyanī, Kauśikī, Caṇḍikā, Pracandā, Suranāyikā, Ugrā, Pārvatī and Durgā. *Om*, we may know (the Goddess) Caṇḍikā, let us meditate on the goddess and may (Goddess) Durgā lead our mind to that. Then the worship should be done in the proper way together with the six accessories. The *gaṇa* should be an aspirate.

17-18. Then (the goddesses) Ajitā, Aparājitā, Jayā, Vijayā, Kātyāyanī, Bhadrakālī, Maṅgalā, Siddhi and Revatī and the accomplished (deities) Vatukas should be worshipped. The nine guardian deities Hetuka, Kāpālīka, Ekapāda and Bhīmarūpa (should be worshipped) in the middle.

19-20. *Hriṃ*! O Durgā! (2) Protector! Oblations for the sake of perfection of the formula. Then (goddess) Gaurī, Dharma and others and the female energies (such as) Skanda should be worshipped. Prajñā, Jñānā, Kriyā, Vācā, Vāgīśī, Jvālīnī, Kāminī, Kāmamālā, the energies of Indra and others should be worshipped.

21-23a. “*Om gaṃ* oblations” (is) the basic formula. “*Gaṃ*, obeisance to Gaṇapati (lord of the *Ganas*)” (is) the accessory formula. The six accessory (worship should be done). They are Raktaśukla (red and white), Dantāksa (having axis like tusk), Paraśūtkaṣa (powerful axe), Samodaka (having the sweet ball cake), Gandhādi (fragrance etc.), and Gandhokāya (to the person having a fragrant stick) in order. The elephant (god), the great lord of the Gaṇas (attendants) and having a magnificent incense stick should be worshipped. Oblation to Kūṣmāṇḍa, to the single-tusked one, to the destroyer of the three cities, to the black-teethed one, to one whose dreadful laughter startles (all), to one having elongated nose and face, to one having the lotus in the tusk, to Megholka, to Dhūmolka, to one having curved trunk, to the lord of obstacles, to the fierce and dreadful one, to one having the gait of the elephant of Indra, one having the serpent-lord (Vāsuki) as a necklace, to one bearing the crescent moon, and the lord of the Gaṇas (attendants). After having worshipped with these formulae ending with oblations and with

(the performance of) the oblations with sesamum, one would get wealth.

23b-24a. The formulae may, in the alternative, consist of the letters beginning with *ka* and with the subtle syllable and ending with obeisance separately having two *ras* and two faces and two eyes.

24b. I shall describe now the grammar that was imparted by Skanda to Kātyāyana.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FORTYNINE

The pratyāhāras and fundamental rules in grammar

Skanda said :

1. O Kātyāyana ! I shall describe the essence of grammar that is of the form of perfected words for imparting to the beginners.

2. *Pratyāhāras*¹ etc. are the notations facilitating the function of the treatise, *liun ɪlk, eoñ, aiauc, hayavaraɪ, lañ, ñamañananam jhabhañ, ghaɪhadhaɪ, jabagaɪadaɪ, khaɪhachaɪhathacaɪataɪ, kaɪpaɪ, ɪaɪasaɪ, haɪ* are (the fourteen) *pratyāhāras*. In the enumeration, the consonant at the end is indicatory. The vowel would be (read with) the nasal. The first letter being taking together with the indicative letter at the end, would become the denotative of the letters which occur in between such as *an, eñ, aɪ, jañ, chav, jham, bhaɪ, ak, ik, aɪ, iɪ, jaɪ*, with the letter *na* coming afterwards. (Similarly we have) *aɪ, yaɪ, ñaɪ, ac, ic, aic, ay, may, jhay, khay, jav, jhav, khav, cav, ɪav, aɪ, haɪ, vaɪ, jhuɪ, al, hal, val, ral, jhal* and *al* the *pratyāhāras*.

1. Several letters or affixes are comprehended as one syllable by means of combining the first letter of an aphorism with its final indicative letter or if several aphorisms are comprehended, the final letter of the last member is combined with the first such as *aɪ* etc. denoting *aiuɪ* etc.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FIFTY

The forms of completed euphonic combinations

Skanda said :

1-5. I shall describe the forms of finished combinations¹ (of vowels and consonants). First (I shall describe) the combination of vowels.

daṇḍa	+	agram	=	daṇḍāgram
sā	+	āgatā	=	sāgatā
dadhi	+	idaṁ	=	dadhidaṁ
nadī	+	ihate	=	nadīhate
madhu	+	udakaṁ	=	madhūdakaṁ
pitṛ	+	ṛṣabha	=	pitṛṣabha

The letter 'ṛ' also becomes similar.

(hotṛ	+	lkāra	=	hotṛkāra)
tava	+	idaṁ	=	tavedaṁ
sakala	+	udakaṁ	=	sakalodakaṁ

The following is a half-vowel :

tava	+	lkāra	=	tavalkāra
sā	+	eṣā	=	saiṣā
sā	+	aindrī	=	saindrī
tava	+	odanaṁ	=	tavaudanam
khaṭvā	+	oghaḥ	=	khaṭvaughaḥ

are thus formed

vi	+	asudhiḥ	=	vyasudhiḥ
vasu	+	alañkṛtaṁ	=	vasvalañkṛtam
pitṛ	+	artha	=	pitṛartha
	+	upavana	=	pitṛarthopavana
nai	+	aka	=	nāyaka
lo	+	aka	=	lāvaka
te	+	iha	=	ta iha, tayiha etc.
te	+	atra	=	te'tra
yaḥ	+	atra	=	yo'tra
jale	+	akajam	=	jale'kajam

1. The text gives only the combined forms. The individual words have also been given here for easy comprehension.

(The following do not undergo any change)

aho	+	chi	=	aho chi
a	+	avehi	=	a avehi
i	+	indrakam	=	i indrakam
u	+	uttiṣṭha	=	u uttiṣṭha
kavī	+	etau	=	kavī etau
vāyu	+	etau	=	vāyu etau
vane	+	ime	=	vane ime
amī	+	ete	=	amī ete
yajñabhūte	+	chi	=	yajñabhūte chi
deva	+	imannaya	=	deva imannaya

6-9. I shall describe now the conjunction of the conso-

vāk	+	yataḥ	=	vagyataḥ
ac	+	ekamātrkaḥ	=	ajekamātrkaḥ
ṣaṭ	+	ete	=	ṣaḍete
tat	+	ime	=	tadime
vā	+	ādi	=	vādi (?)
vāk	+	nītiḥ	=	vānnītiḥ
ṣaṭ	+	mukha	=	ṣaṇmukha etc.
vāk	+	manasaṁ	=	vānmanasaṁ
vāk	+	bhāgādiḥ	=	vāgbhāgādiḥ
vāk	+	ślakṣṇaṁ	=	vākślakṣṇaṁ
tat	+	śarīrakam	=	taccharīrakam
tat	+	lunāti	=	tallunāti
tat	+	caret	=	taccaret
kun	+	āste	=	kunṇāste
sugan	+	iha	=	sugaṇṇiha
bhavān	+	caran	=	bhavānścaran
bhavān	+	chātro	=	bhavānśchātro
bhavān	+	ṭikā	=	bhavānṣṭikā
bhavān	+	ṭakaḥ	=	bhavānṣṭakaḥ
bhavān	+	tīrtha	=	bhavānṣtīrtha
bhavān	+	stheyān	=	bhavānṣtheyān
bhavān	+	lekhā	=	bhavānṣlekhā
bhavān	+	jayaḥ	=	bhavānṣjayaḥ
bhavān	+	śete	=	bhavānśchete
bhavān	+	ca śete	=	bhavānścaśete
bhavān	+	śete	=	bhavānśete

bhavān	+	dīnaḥ	=	bhavāṇḍīnaḥ
tvam	+	bhartā	=	tvambhartā
tvam	+	karisyasi	=	tvāṅkarīṣyasi etc.

The conjunctions of *visarga* are known (as follows) :

10-11.	kaḥ	+	chindyāt	=	kaśchindyāt
	kaḥ	+	caret	=	kaścaret
	kaḥ	+	taḥ	=	kaṣṭaḥ
	kaḥ	+	sthaḥ	=	kaṣṭhaḥ
	kaḥ	+	calet	=	kaścalet

(In the following cases the *visarga* becomes the *upadhmān*

kaḥ	+	khanet	=	kaḥṡkhanet
kaḥ	+	karoti	=	kaḥṡkaroti sma
kaḥ	+	paṭhet	=	kaḥṡpaṭhet or
kaḥ	+	phaleta	=	kaḥṡphaleta

(The following may occur in two forms) :

kaḥ	+	śvaśuraḥ	=	kaśśvaśuraḥ (or)
				kaḥ śvaśuraḥ
kaḥ	+	sāvaraḥ	=	kassāvaraḥ or kaḥ
				sāvaraḥ

(In the following cases there is no change) :

kaḥ	+	phaleta	=	kaḥ phaleta
kaḥ	+	śayitā	=	kaḥ śayitā

(The following is an instance of change) :

kaḥ	+	atra yodhaḥ	=	ko'tra yodhaḥ
-----	---	-------------	---	---------------

(The *visarga* is dropped in the following cases)

12-13.	kaḥ	+	uttamaḥ	=	ka uttamaḥ
	devāḥ	+	etc	=	devā etc
	bhoḥ	+	iha	=	bho iha
	sodarāḥ	+	yānti	=	sodarā yānti
	bhago	+	vraja	=	bhago vraja

(In the following the *visarga* becomes *repha* (r) :

supūḥ + sudūḥ + rātriḥ	=	supūḥ sudūrātriḥ
vāyuh + yāti	=	vāyuryāti
punaḥ + nahi	=	punarnahi
punaḥ + eti	=	punareti

(The *visarga* is dropped in the following cases) :

saḥ	+	yāti+iha	=	sa yātiha
eṣaḥ	+	yāti	=	eṣa yāti
kaḥ	+	īśvaraḥ	=	ka īśvaraḥ
jyotiḥ	+	rūpaḥ	=	jyotirūpaḥ

(The following are examples of other kinds of union) :

tava	+	chatram	=	tavacchatram
mlecchadhīḥ	+	chidram	+	= mlecchadhīschidramāc-
		ā	+	chidat chidat

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FIFTYONE

Perfected forms of inflection in the nouns

Skanda said :

1-3. O Kātyāyana ! I shall describe to you the finished forms of inflections. There are two kinds of inflections—*sup* (substantives) and *tiṅ* (verbs). The substantives have seven cases. (The inflections) *su, au, jaś* (constitute) the first (case) (Nominative). *Am, au, śas* (are the inflections of) the second (case) (Accusative). *Ṭā, bhyām, bhis* (are the terminations of) the third (case) (Instrumental). *Ne, bhyām, bhyas* (constitute) the fourth (case) (Dative). *Nasi, bhyām, bhyas* (are the inflections of) the fifth (case) (Ablative). *Nas, os, ām* (are the terminations for) the sixth (case) (Genitive). *Ṇi, os, sup* (are for) the seventh (case) (Locative). These would be added after the uninflected substantives.

4. The substantives are twofold—ending in vowels and ending in consonants. Each one of this would again be threefold : masculine, feminine and neuter.

5-7. The models of these are given. Those which are not mentioned here (follow those) on account of their strength. (Those ending in vowels are to be declined as the following examples). *Vṛkṣaḥ* (tree)¹, *Sarvaḥ* (all), *Pūrvaḥ* (former), *Prathamāḥ* (first), *Dvitiyakaḥ* (second), *Trītiyaḥ* (third), *Khaṇḍapā* (protector of a group), *Vahniḥ* (fire), *Sakhā* (friend), *Patīḥ* (husband), *Aharpatīḥ* (Sun), *Paṭuḥ* (clever), *Grāmaṇī* (chief of the village), *Indra* (the lord of the celestials),

1. The text gives only the nominative singular forms of the substantives in this chapter.

Khalapūḥ (one who sweeps), Mitrabhūḥ (being a friend), Svabhūḥ (an epithet of Brahmā), Suśrīḥ (good fortune), Sudhīḥ (a wiseman), Pitā (father), Bhrātā (brother), Nā (a man), Kartā (doer), Kroṣṭu (a jackal), Napṭr (grandson), Surā (intoxicating drink), Rā (Rai means wealth), Gauḥ (cow), Dyauḥ (heaven), Glauḥ (Moon) (are) examples for the masculine (nouns) ending in vowels.

8-12a. (Examples for substantives ending with the consonants) : Suvāk (good expression or speech), Tvak (skin), Piṣat (a drop of water or any other liquid), Samrāṭ (a paramount sovereign), Janmabhāk (one who has obtained birth), Surāṭ (a good sovereign), Āpaḥ (water), Marut (Wind), Bhavan (becoming), Dīpyan (shining), Bhavān (you) (polite form), Maghavān (Indra) (prosperous), Piban (drinking), Bhagavān (fortunate, hence denotes the lord), Aghavān (a sinner), Arvān (a horse), Vahnimat (possessing fire), Sarvavit (knower of all things), Supṛt (a good army), Susīmā (good boundary), Kuṇḍi (Kuṇḍin denotes Śiva, holding a bowl), Rājā (king), Śvā (horse), Yuvā (youth), Maghavā (Indra), Pūṣā (Sun), Sukarmā (doer of good deeds), Yajvā (sacrificer), Suvarmā (good armour), Sudharmaṇā (council of gods, court-hall of Indra), Aryamā (Sun), Vṛtrahā (Indra, killer of Vṛtra), Panthāḥ (path), Sukakud (good summit) etc. and Pañca (five), Praśān (one who is tranquil), Sutān (one who spreads well), Pañca (five) etc., Sugauḥ (good cow), Surāḥ (one who is wealthy) and Supūḥ (good city), Candramāḥ (Moon), Suvacāḥ (good speech), Śreyān (excellent), Vidvān (learned), and Uśanas (the preceptor of the demons), Pecivān (one who has cooked), Gauḥ (cow), Anaḍvān (an ox), Godhuṇ (one who milks a cow), Mitradruh (one who is treacherous to a friend), Śvaliṭ (one who licks like a dog).

12b-19. (Substantives) in the feminine (are) : Jāyā (wife), Jarā (old age), Bālā (young girl), Eḍakā (a ewe), Vṛddhā (old woman), Kṣatriyā (a woman of the Kṣatriya class), Bahurājā (land having many rulers), Bahudāmā (having many garlands) and Bālikā (an^{*} young girl), Māyā (illusion), Kaumudagandhā (smelling like a lily), Sarvā (all), Pūrvā (the preceding one) and Anyā (someone else), Dvitiyā (second one), Tṛtiyā (third one), Buddhi (intellect), Strī (woman), Śrī (Lakṣmī, goddess

of wealth), Nadi (river), Sudhīḥ (wise), Bhavanti (one who becomes), Divyanti (one who shines), Bhāti (one who appears), Bhānti (one who shines), and Yānti (one who goes), Śrīvati (one who hears), Tudatī (tormenting), Kartri (doer), Tudanti (tormenting), Kurvatī (one who is doing), Mahī (earth), Rudhanti (one who is obstructing), Kṛḍatī (one who is playing), Dāntī (one who is restrained), Pālayanti (one who is protecting), and Surāṇī (a celestial woman), Gaurī (having white complexion, denotes consort of Śiva), Putravatī (one who is having a son), Nauḥ (ship or boat), Vadhūḥ (bride), Devatā (deity) and Bhūḥ (earth). Tisra (three) and Dve (two) (both denoting feminine), Kati (how many), Varṣābhūḥ (a female frog), Svasā (sister), Mātā (mother), Varā (excellent), Gauḥ (cow), Nauḥ (ship or boat), Vāk (speech), Tvak (skin), Prācī (east), Avācī (south), Tiraścī (the female of an animal or bird), Samīcī (a doe), Udīcī (north), Śarat (autumn), Vidyut (lightning), Sarit (river), Yoṣit (lady in separation), Agnivit (knower of fire), Sampat (wealth), Dṛṣat (stone), Yā (who), Eṣā (this), Vedavit (knower of the Veda), Samvit (knowledge), Bahvī (many), Rājñī (queen), Tvayā (by you), Mayā (be me), Sīmā (boundary), Pañca (five) etc., Rājī (line or row), Dhūḥ (shaking), Pūḥ (purifying), Diśā (direction), Girā (speech), Catasrah (four), Viduṣī (learned person), Kā (who), Iyam (this), Dik (direction), Dṛk (look), Tādṛśī (that kind). These are chief among (the substantives belonging to) the feminine gender. (I shall describe) the chief among (the substantives belonging to) the neuter.

20-22a. Kuṇḍam (a bowl or pit), Sarvaṁ (all), Somapam Dadhi (curd), Vāri (water), Khalapū (that which sweeps), Madhu (honey), Trapu (tin), Bhartr, Atibhartr, Payaḥ (milk), Puraḥ (city), Prāk (east), Pratyak (?) (backwards), Tiryak (across), Udak (above or nothward), Jagat (world), Jāgrat (awakening state), Śakṛt (excrement), Susampat (good wealth), Sudaṇḍī (good stick), Ahaḥ (day), Kim (what), Idam (this), Śaṭ (six), Sarpīḥ (clarified butter), Śreyaḥ (fortune), Catvāri (four), Adaḥ (that thing). Others are similar to these.

22b-28a. (The inflections of) the first case (Nominative) etc. would come after these uninflected forms. A form of a word which is neither a verbal root (*dhātu*), nor an affix (*pratyaya*) is a nominal base (*prātipadika*). The first case from the nominal

base is employed to denote the subject. The first case (is also employed) in addressing when the agent and the object are mentioned. That which is done (by the agent) is the object (*karma*). Second case (Accusative) is used in the object. That by which something is done is the instrument (*karāṇa*). One who does is the agent (*kartā*). When the object is not specified to be the agent through the verbal affix or suffixes of the *kṛt* and *tad-dhita* type, the third case (Instrumental) is used in (denoting) the instrument and the agent. The fourth case is employed in *sampradāna* (to be given). It is said to be *sampradāna* in which the desire to give is indicated. *Apādāna*, is that from which something moves away or taken away. The fifth case (Ablative) is used (to denote) *apādāna*. The sixth case (Genitive) (is used to denote) one's ownership. The term *adhikarāṇa* is used in the sense of the base (*ādhāra*). The seventh case (Locative) (is used) therein.

28b-29a. Singular is used to denote a single thing. Dual comes in the sense of two things. Plural would occur in the (sense of) many. I shall describe the finished forms (now).

29b-32a. (The following are examples for the Nominative): *Vṛkṣaḥ* (tree), *Sūryaḥ* (Sun), *Ambuvāhaḥ* (cloud), *Arkaḥ* (Sun). The following are the examples for the Vocative): *He Ravi* (O Sun!), *He Dvijātayas* (O twiceborns!), *Viprau* (O Brahmins!). (Then the example for the Accusative): *Gajān* (the elephants). (Then the examples for the Instrumental): *Mahendreṇa* (by Mahendra, the lord of the celestials), *Yamābhyām* (by two Yamas—by the twins), *Analaiḥ kṛtam* (done by Anala, fire plural). *Rāmāya* (for Rāma), *Munivaryābhyām* (for the two excellent sages), *Kebhyaḥ* (for whom, plural) (are examples for the Dative). *Dharmāt* (from Dharma), *Harau ratih¹* (?), *Śarābhyām* (from the two arrows), *Pustakebhyaḥ* (from the books) (are illustrations for the Ablative). *Arthasya* (of the sense), *Īśvarayoḥ* (of the two lords), *Gatiḥ bālānām* (the fate of children) (are for the Genitive). *Sajjane prītiḥ* (pleased in good people), *Harṇsayoḥ* (in the two harṇsas), *Kamaleṣu* (in the lotuses) (are examples for the Locative). In the same way, the words

1. The reading is obviously wrong.

Kāma (God of love), Maheśa (the great lord) and other (words) should be known like (the word) Vṛkṣa (tree).

32b-36a. Sarve (all), Viśve (all or entire or whole), Sarvasmai (for all), Sarvasmāt (from all) and Katara (who or which of two) are regarded (as similar). Sarveṣām (of all), Svam (one's self), Viśvasmin (in the whole). The other forms are like (the word) Vṛkṣa (tree). Similarly Ubhaya (both), Katara (who or which of the two), Katama (who or which of many), Anyatara (one of two) etc. (should be known). Pūrve (all the former), Pūrvāḥ (all the former, feminine), Pūrvasmai (for the former), Pūrvasmāt (from the former), Pūrve (in the former), Pūrvasmin (in the former). The other forms are like that of Sarva. Para (superior), Avara (inferior) as well as Dakṣiṇa (south), Uttara (north), Antara (in between), Aparāḥ (others), Adharaḥ (below) (are to be known) in the same way. Nemāḥ (parts), Prathamāḥ (the first ones), Prathame (in the first one) are like the word Arka (Sun). In the same way (we would have) Caramāḥ (last), Alpa (little), Ardha (half) and the Nema (part) and others.

36b-41a. Dvitiyasmai (or) Dvitiyāya (for the second), Dvitiyasmāt (or) Dvitiyakāt (from the second), Dvitiyasmin (or) Dvitiye (in the second) and Tṛtīya (third) like (the word) Arka (Sun). Somapāḥ (a drinker of Soma) and Somapau (two drinkers of Soma) should be known. Go to Somapāḥ (drinkers of Soma) (or) Somapām (a drinker of Soma). Kīlālapau (two drinkers of a heavenly drink similar to nectar) and Somapāḥ (drinker of Soma), Somapāḥ (drinkers of Soma), Somapēdada (give to a drinker of Soma), Somapābhyām (to two drinkers of Soma), Somapābhyāḥ (to many drinkers of Soma), Somapāḥ (drinker of Soma), Somapau (two drinkers of Soma) (belong to) a group. (The words) such as Kīlālapāḥ (drinkers of a celestial drink) would be similar. Kavīḥ (poet), Agnīḥ (fire) and Arayaḥ (enemies), He kave ! (O poet !), Kavīm (the poet, accusative), Agnī (two fires, accusative), Tān Harin (those Hari-s), Sātyakinā hṛtaṁ (taken by Sātyaki), Ravibhyām (by two Suns), Ravibhiḥ (by the Suns), Dehi vahnaye yaḥ samāgataḥ (Give to Fire who has come), Agneḥ (of fire), Agnyoḥ (of two fires), Agnīnām (of many fires), Kavau (in the poet), Kavyoḥ (in the two poets) and Kaviṣu (in many poets) (are examples for words ending in 'i'). Similarly Susṛtiḥ (good path), Abhrāntiḥ (not an error),

Sukīrtiḥ (good fame) and Sudhṛtiḥ (firmness) (are to be declined).

41b-43a. (Some more examples for words ending in 'i') : Sakhā (a friend), Sakhāyau (two friends), Sakhāyaḥ (many friends). 'He sakhe ! vraja satpatim' (O Friend ! go to a good master), Sakhāyaṁ (the friend), Sakhāyau (the two friends), Sakhīn (the friends) (are accusative forms). Sakhyā gataḥ (gone with the friend). Dada sakhye (give to the friend). Sakhyuḥ (from a friend), Sakhyuḥ (of the friend), Sakhyoḥ (of the two friends). That rest (are formed like) the forms of Kavi (poet). Patyā (by the master), Patye (for the master), Patyuḥ (from the master), Patyuḥ (of the master), Patyoḥ (of the two masters) are like (the word) Agni (fire).

43b. Dvau (two), Dvau (the two), Dvābhyām (by the two), Dvābhyām (for the two), Dvayoḥ (from the two) and Dvayoḥ (of the two) are in the sense of dual.

44. Trayāḥ (three), Trīn (the three), Tribhiḥ (by the three), Tribhyaḥ (for the three), Trayāṇām (of the three) and Triṣu (in the three) (are) in order. Kati (how many) and Kati (how many). The other plural forms are like Kavi (poet) (in the plural).

45. (The word Nī, leader is declined as follows) : Nīḥ (a leader), Niyau (two leaders) and Niyāḥ (many leaders). He nīḥ (O leader !), Niyam (one leader), Niyau (two leaders), Niyāḥ (many leaders). Niyā (by a leader), Nibhyām (by two leaders), Nibhiḥ (by many leaders). Niye (for a leader), Nibhyaḥ (for many leaders). Niyām (of many leaders), Niyi (in a leader) and Niyōḥ (in two leaders).

46-48a. Suśrīḥ (good fortune), Sudhīḥ (good intellect) etc. Grāmaṇīḥ (a leader), pūjayeddharīm (should worship Hari). Grāmaṇyau (the two chiefs), Grāmaṇyaḥ (the many chiefs), Gramaṇyaṁ (the chief, accusative), Grāmaṇyā (by the chief), Grāmaṇibhiḥ (by many chiefs), Grāmaṇyaḥ (of a chief), Grāmaṇyām (in a chief). Words beginning with Senānī (leader of an army) are similarly (declined). Subhūḥ (good land) and Sabhuvau (two good lands). Svayambhuvaḥ (self-born), Svayambhuvaṁ (self-born, accusative), Svayambhuvā (by the self-born), Svayambhuvi (in the self-born). Pratibhuvaḥ (bail or surety) etc. (should be formed) similarly.

48b-49. Khalapūḥ (that which sweeps), Khalapvau (the two which sweep), Śreṣṭhau (that are excellent), Khalapvaṃ (that which sweeps, accusative), and Khalapvi (in a sweeper). (The words) beginning with Śarapūḥ would be in the same way. Kroṣṭhā (a jackal) and Kroṣṭhāraḥ (many jackals), Kroṣṭhūn (the jackals, accusative plural), Kroṣṭhunā or Kroṣṭhrā (by a jackal), Kroṣṭhūnām (of the jackals), Kroṣṭhari (in a jackal) are said to be (formed) thus.

50-52a. Pitā (father), Pitarau (two fathers), Pitarah (many fathers), He pitah (O Father!), Pitarau śubhau (O Auspicious fathers!), Pitṛn (the fathers, accusative), Pituh (from the father), Pituh (of the father), Pitroh (of the two fathers), Pitṛnām (of many fathers), Pitari (in the father) are formed) thus. In the same way Bhrātā (a brother), Jāmātr (son-in-law) and others (words) (are formed). Then Nṛṇām or Nṛṇām (of the men), Kartā (doer), Kartārau (two doers), Kartṛn (many doers, accusative), Kartṛnām (of many doers) and Kartari (in a doer) are thus (formed). Udgātā (a singer of Vedic hymn), Svasā sister, Napṭṛ grandson are known to be like (the word) Pitṛ (father).

52b. Surāḥ (good fortune), Surāyau (dual), Surāyaḥ (plural), Surāyaṃ (accusative), and Surāyi (locative).

53. Gauḥ (a cow), Gāvau (two cows), Gām (accusative), Gāḥ (accusative, plural), Gavā (instrumental), Goḥ (genitive), Gavoh (genitive, dual), Gavām (genitive, plural) and Gavi (in a cow). In the same way Dyauḥ (heaven) and Glauḥ (Moon) and the chief masculine words ending in vowels.

54-57a. Suvāk (good speech), Suvācī (nominative dual), Suvācā (instrumental), Suvāgbhnyām (instrumental, dual), Suvākṣu (locative, plural). Similarly the directions beginning with (east). Prāñ (east), Prāñcī (nominative neuter dual), Prāñcam (to the east) bho vraja (you go). Prāgbhyām (instrumental, dual), Prāgbhiḥ (instrumental, plural), Prācām (genitive), Prācī (locative, singular), Prāñsu and Prāñkṣu (locative, plural). In the same way Udañ or Udicī (north), Samyañ (well), Pratyak (western), Samicī (a doe), Tirī (that which moves horizontally), Tiraśca¹, Sadhryaṃ (a companion, especially

1. Seems to be Tiraścī, denoting a female of any animal.

husband), Viṣvadyaṇ (all-pervading) are known to be like the former. Adadṛyaṇ, Adamuyaṇ, Amumuyaṇ (all meaning going to that) etc. are similar. Adadryoṇic (one who has gone to that direction) and Amudrīcaḥ (one who has gone to that direction) and Adadryābhyāṁ are as before.

57b-59a. Tattvatṛṣṭ (desirous of truth) (nominative), Tattvatṛṣṭau (dual), Tattvatṛṣṭbhyāṁ (with men desirous of Truth) samāgataḥ (one has come together), Tattvatṛṣṭi (in one desirous of truth), Tattvatṛṣṭsu (among those desirous of truth). In the same way Kāṣṭha (wood), Taḍa (?) etc. (are formed). Bhiṣak (a physician), Bhisagbhyāṁ (by two physicians), Bhiṣaji (locative). (The words) such as Jannabhāk (are) then (similarly declined). Marut (wind), Marudbhyāṁ (by two winds), Maruti (in the wind). In the same way (we have) Śatrujit (conqueror of an enemy) etc.

59b-61. Bhavān (you, polite form), Bhavantau (dual), Bhavatām (of you, plural), Bhavan (vocative), Bhavati (in you). Mahān (great), Mahāntau (dual), Mahatām (of great people), Bhagavat (fortunate) etc. In the same way Maghavan (Indra), Maghavantau (dual). Agnicit (one who has kept the sacred fire), Agniciti (locative), Agnicitsu (locative, plural). In the same way Anyat (another), Vedavit (one who knows the scriptures), Tattvavit (knower of truth) etc. (We will have) Vedavidām (in locative singular). In the same way Anyat (some other person). One who knows all is Sarvavit.

62-64. (The word Rājan is declined thus) : Rājā (king), Rājānau (dual), Rājñāḥ (genitive), Rājñi or Rājani (locative), Rājan (vocative). Yajvā (a performer of a sacrifice), Yajvānaḥ (plural) are similar. Karī (an elephant), Daṇḍī (one who holds a stick), Daṇḍinau (dual), Panthāḥ (path), Panthānau (dual), Pathaḥ (plural), Pathibhyāṁ (instrumental, dual) and Pathi (locative) (will be) similar. Manthā (that which churns), Rbhuksāḥ (nominative plural) (Rbhukṣaḥ means Indra) and Pathya (wholesome food) etc. (should be known). Pañca (five), Pañca (accusative), Pañcabhiḥ (instrumental). Pratān (one who spreads well), Pratānau (dual), Pratānbhyāṁ (instrumental, dual), He Pratān (vocative) and Sūsarmaṇaḥ (vocative, those who are happy). (The following is always plural) : Āpaḥ (water) (nominative), Apaḥ (accusative), Adbhiḥ (instrumental). In

the same way *Prasān* (one who is tranquil) and *Prasāni* (locative) also.

65-67. *Kaḥ* (who), *Kena* (by whom) like *Sarva* (all). *Keṣu* (among whom), *Ayaṁ* (this), *Ime* (dual), *Imān* (accusative plural), *Anena* (by this), *Ābhyām* (instrumental, dual), *Ebhiḥ* (instrumental, plural), *Asmai* (dative singular), *Ebhyaḥ* (dative plural), *Svaṁ* (one's own), *Asya* (genitive), *Anayoḥ* (genitive, dual), *Eṣām* (genitive, plural) and *Eṣu* (locative, plural) would be (formed). *Catvāraḥ* (four), *Caturāḥ* (accusative), *Caturṇām* (genitive), *Caturṣu* (locative). *Sugīḥ* (good speech), *Sugīrṣu* (locative, plural), *Sudyauli* (good day), *Sudivau* (dual), *Sudyubhyam* (instrumental dual). *Viṭ* (merchant), *Viṣau* (dual), *Viṣu* (locative, plural). *Yādṛśaḥ* (ablative, singular, from which kind of a thing), *Yādṛgbhyām* (ablative, dual) *Viḍbhyām* (dual in the third, fourth and fifth cases). *Ṣaṭ* (six), *Ṣaṭ* (accusative) *Ṣaṇṇām* (genitive plural), *Ṣaṭsu* (locative, plural).

68-70a. *Suvacāḥ* (eloquent), *Suvacasā* (instrumental), *Suvacobhyām* (instrumental, dual), *He Suvaco* (vocative), *He Uśanan* (*Uśanas* denotes the preceptor of the demons) (vocative), *Uśanā* (instrumental), *Uśanasi* (locative), *Purudaṁśā* (a goose), *Añchā* (a stupid person), *He Vidvan* (O Learned man!), *Vidvān* (nominative) *Viduṣe namaḥ* (obeisance to the learned, dative), *Vidvadbhyām* (instrumental, dative and ablative, dual), *Vidvatsu* (locative, plural). *Babhūvivān* (one that has become). (We have) in the same way, *Pecivān* (one that cooks), *Śreyān* (excellent), *Śreyāṁsau* (nominative, dual), *Śreyasaḥ* (accusative, plural).

70b-73. The following are the forms of *Adas* (that) : *Asau*, *Amū*, *Amī* (nominative, singular, dual and plural), *Amum* and *Amūn* (accusative singular and plural), *Amunā*, *Amībhiḥ* (instrumental singular and plural), *Amuṣmai* (dative), *Amuṣmāt* (ablative), *Amuṣya*, *Amuyoḥ*, *Amiṣām* (genitive singular, dual and plural) and *Amuṣmin* (locative). Similarly (we have) (the forms of *Godhuk*, one who milks the cow): *A* person has come with one who milks the cow. *Godhukṣu* (locative plural). Thus (we have) other (forms). *Mitradrūhaḥ* (one who is treacherous to a friend), *Mitradrugbhyām* (dual instrumental), *Mitradrugbhiḥ* (plural) and *Cittadrūhaḥ* (inimic to the mind)

etc. Svaliṭ (one who licks himself), Svaliḍbhyām (instrumental dual), Svaliḥi (locative). Anaḍvān (nominative of Anaḍuh, a bull), Anaḍutsu (locative plural). These are (the words) ending in the vowels and consonants in the masculine. I shall describe (now) those in the feminine.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FIFTYTWO

Narration of the finished forms of the substantives in the feminine

Skanda said :

1-2. (The following are the forms of feminine nouns ending in *ā*) : Ramā (Lakṣmī, consort of Viṣṇu), Rame, Ramāḥ (the three forms in the nominative) are auspicious. Ramām, Rame, Ramāḥ (the three forms in the accusative), Ramayā, Ramābhyām, Ramābhiḥ (the three forms in the instrumental) (by Ramā) it was made imperishable. Ramāyai, Ramābhyām (are the singular, dual dative). Ramāyāḥ, Ramayoḥ, Ramāṇām (are the three forms in the genitive). Ramāyām and Ramāsu (are the singular and plural forms of the locative). Kalā (fine arts) is similar.

3-4. (The following are also feminine) : Jarā (old age), Jarasau or Jare, Jarasaḥ or Jarāḥ (are the forms in the nominative). Jarām or Jarasām (is the form in the accusative singular), Jarāsu (is the locative plural). Similarly (we have) Sarvā and Sarve (all) (in the nominative singular and dual). Sarvasyā (instrumental), give Sarvasyai (dative) (to all). Sarvasyāḥ (ablative), Sarvasyāḥ (and) Sarvayoḥ (genitive singular and dual). The other forms are like that of Rāma. (The following are always plural) : Dve (two in the nominative), Dve (in the accusative) and Tisraḥ (three in the nominative) and Tisrām (in the genitive).

5-8. (The following are examples of substantives of the feminine ending in 'i') : Buddhiḥ (intellect) (nominative), Buddhya (instrumental), Buddhaya (dative) and Buddhēḥ (abla-

tive and genitive). (The vocative form of *Mati*, mind, is) *He mate*. (The word *Muni*) will have (the forms) like that of *Kavi* (poet) : *Muninām* (genitive) (of the sages). (The following are the forms of the substantives of the feminine ending in *i*) : *Nadiḥ*, *Nadyau* (singular and dual in the nominative). *Nadīm*, *Nadīḥ* (are the singular and plural in the accusative). *Nadyā*, *Nadībhiḥ* (are the singular and plural in the instrumental). *Nadyai* (is dative singular). *Nadyām* and *Nadiṣu* (are the locative singular and plural). Similarly (we have the forms of) *Kumārī* (a young girl), *Jṛmbhaṇī* (yawn) etc. *Śriḥ* (fortune), *Śriyau*, *Śriyaḥ* (are the three forms in the nominative). *Śriyā* (instrumental), *Śriyai* and *Śriye* (dative) (are the other forms). The following are the forms of the word *Strī* (woman) : *Strīm* and *Striyaṁ* (in the nominative singular) and *Strīḥ* or *Striyaḥ* (in the plural), *Striyā* (instrumental), *Striyai* (dative), *Striyāḥ* and *Strinām* (singular and plural in the genitive) and *Striyām* (locative singular). (Similarly) *Grāmaṇyā* (locative singular). (The forms of words ending in 'u' are) : *Dhenvā* (by a cow) and *Dhenave* (dative). (The following are examples for those ending in *ū*) : *Jambū* (the rose apple), *Jambvau* (nominative singular and plural), *Jambuḥ* (accusative singular), Drink the fruits of the *Jambu* (genitive). *Varṣābhvau* (is the nominative dual of *Varṣābhū*, a female frog) and *Punarābhavau* (nominative dual of *Punarābhū*, a widow remarried). *Mātṛḥ* (is the accusative plural of *Mātṛ*, mother ending in *i*). *Gauḥ* (cow), *Nauḥ* (boat) (are examples of words ending in *o*).

9-10. (Now we have examples for words ending in consonants) : *Vāk* (speech) (nominative), *Vācā*, *Vāgbhiḥ* (instrumental singular and plural) and *Vākṣu* (locative plural) and *Sragbhyām* (instrumental dual) and *Sraji*, *Srajoḥ* (locative singular and dual) (for the word *Srak* (garland)). (The forms of the word *Vidvat*, learned, are) *Vidvadbhyām* (dual in the instrumental, dative and ablative) and *Vidvatsu* (locative plural). (The following words ending in *i* take *i*-ending) : *Bhavatī* (respect form), *Bhavantī* (one who is becoming), *Dīvyantī* (shining) *Bhātī* (shining), *Bhāntī* (appearing), *Tudantī* (inflicting pain), *Tudatī*, *Rudatī* (crying), *Rundhatī* (obstructing), the Goddess *Grhyatī* (who is seizing or holding) and *Corayantī* (one that is stealing).

11-12a. (The following are other examples of nouns ending in *t*) : Dṛṣat (stone), Dṛṣadbhyām (instrumental, dative and ablative dual), Dṛṣadi (locative) are the special models. Samit (twig), Samidbhyām (instrumental, dative and ablative dual), Samidhi (locative) (are other examples). (The following are examples for words ending in *n*): Sīmā (boundary) (nominative), Sīmni or Sīmāni (locative). Dāmanībhyām (instrumental etc. from the word Dāman meaning a line or streak). Kakudbhyām (from Kakud, summit). Kā (who) (is a pronoun), Iyam (this) (demonstrative pronoun) and Āsu (locative plural, in them) .

12b-13. (The forms of the word Gīḥ, speech, are as follows) : Gīrbhyām (dual in instrumental, dative and ablative), Gīrā (instrumental) and Gīrṣu (locative plural). (The following are also feminine nouns) : Subhūḥ (good land), Supūḥ (good city), Purā (through a city), Puri (in a city). (The following are the forms of dyo, heaven) : Dyauḥ, Dyubhyām (dual, instrumental etc.), Divi (locative), Dyūṣu (plural). Tādṛśyā (by that kind) (instrumental). That kind of direction etc. Yādṛśyām (in which kind), Yādṛśī (which kind) are similar. Suvacobhyām (with good words), Suvacaḥsu (locative). Asau (that, nominative), Amūṁ (accusative), Amūḥ (plural), Amūbhiḥ (instrumental plural), Amuyā (instrumental singular) and Amuyoḥ (genitive and locative dual) (are the forms of Adas in the feminine) .

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FIFTYTHREE

The finished forms of substantives in the neuter

Skanda said :

1. (The forms) in the neuter (are as follows) : Kim, Ke, Kāni (the three forms in nominative, meaning what). Kim, Ke, Kāni (are the forms in the accusative). Then (the word) Jalām (water). Sarvaṁ (all) (nominative), Sarve (nominative, dual), Pūrva and other (words), Sīmapaṁ (protecting the boundary) (accusative), Sīmapāni (accusative, plural) .

2. (The words ending in 'i' are as follows) : Grāmaṇi, Grāmaṇinī, Grāmaṇī and Grāmaṇīni (are the forms in the nominative of Grāmaṇi, leader). Vāri, Variṇī, Vārīṇi (in the nominative), Variṇām¹ (in the genitive plural) and Vārīṇi (locative singular) are thus (the forms of Vāri, water).

3. (The word Śuci, pure, has two forms in the dative) : Śucaye and Śucine dehi (give). Similarly (the word Mṛdu, soft, has two forms in the instrumental) : Mṛdune and Mṛdave. (The word Trapu, tin has the forms) : Trapu (nominative), Trapuṇi (locative singular) and Trapūṇām (genitive plural). Khalapūni (nominative plural) and Khalapvi (locative singular, forms of Khalapū, a sweeper).

4. Kartṛā (instrumental), Kartṛṇe or Kartre (dative) (are the forms of Kartṛ, doer). Atirī (nominative) and Atirīṇām (genitive plural) (are the forms Atirī, one who goes beyond). Abhini, Abhinīni (are nominative forms of the word denoting performance). Suvacārṇsi (nominative plural, and Suvākṣu (locative plural) (are from Suvāk, good speech).

5. (The relative pronoun) Yad, yat (who), and pronoun Ime (that), Tat (that) (belong to neuter). Karmāṇi (is the plural of Karma, work). Idam, Ime, Imāni (are the forms of Idam, this). Idṛk (this kind), Adaḥ, Amuni, Amūni (in the nominative), Amunā (in the instrumental) and Amiṣu (in the locative plural) (are the forms of Adas, that).

6-9. (The forms of Asmad, I, are) : Aham, Āvām, Vayaṁ (nominative), Mān, Āvām, Asmān (accusative), Ma, āyā, Āvābhyām, Asmābhiḥ (instrumental) done. Mahyaṁ and Asma-bhyam (dative singular and dual), Mat, Āvābhyām, Asmat (ablative). Mama, Āvayoḥ and Asmākaṁ (genitive) ayaṁ putraḥ (This is my, our son). Asmāsu (locative plural). (The forms of Yuṣmad, you, are) : Tvam, Yuvām. Yūyaṁ (nominative) Ijire (praise). Tvām, Yuvām, Yusmān (accusative), Tvayā and Yuṣmābhiḥ (instrumental, singular and plural) are stated (to be the forms). Tubhyaṁ, Yuvābhyām, Yuṣmabhyām (dative), Tvat, Yuvābhyām, Yuṣmat (ablative), Tava, Yuva-yoḥ, Yuṣmākaṁ (genitive) and Tvayi, Yuṣmāsu (locative, singular and plural). These are the characteristics of the

1. Obviously a mistake for Vārīṇām.

language. (The substantives) ending in vowels and consonants have been described.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FIFTYFOUR

Th• relation between a noun and a verb in a sentence

Skanda said :

1. I shall describe the *kāraka* (the relation that exists between a noun and a verb) together with the significance of the inflection (of nouns). (There) is a village. O Great Arka (Sun) ! I salute (lord) Viṣṇu together with Śrī (His consort) here.

2-4. The agent is said to be fivefold : (1) The agent is independent. The composers of the sacred knowledge are respected. (2) The agent gets to that cause when the agent is the doer. The dull headed breaks up himself. The tree cuts itself. (3) The agent expressed is good. The agent not expressed is low. (An example) for the agent not expressed (is) : The dharma is being expounded to the pupil. Listen to me ! (I shall describe) the seven kinds of objects.

5-8a. (The first one is) the desired object such as "An ascetic pays respect to (lord) Hari (Viṣṇu)". (The second one is) the object that is not desired, such as "A person jumps over a serpent repeatedly." "After drinking milk, eat dust" (is an example) for neither desired nor not desired (object of the third kind). (The fourth one consists of) not being told (such as) "The cowherd is milking the cow". (The next one is) the object of the agent such as "Let the preceptor send the disciple to the village". (An example for the sixth variety, namely), the object that is expressed, (is) "Worship is made to (lord) Hari for prosperity". "Make an eulogy to (lord) Hari that yields all (things)" (is an example) for the object that is not expressed, (the seventh variety of object).

8b-9a. The instrument is said to be two kinds—external and internal. A person perceives the form by means of the eye

(in an example for the internal). May a person cut that with a sickle (is an instance of) external.

9b-10. The *sampradāna* (giving) is said to be threefold : (1) *preraka* (sending) a cow to a brahmin, (2) *anumantṛka* (with consent) (such as) "A person gives a servant for the king", (3) *anirākartṛka* (a thing that could not be refused) (such as) "A good person may give flowers to the master."

11. The *apādāna* (that which is being taken away) is said to be twofold : (1) *calaṁ* (moveable) : (A person) has fallen from a running horse and *acalaṁ* (immoveable) : That devotee of Viṣṇu comes from a village.

12-14a. The *adhikaraṇa* (the base) is fourfold : (1) *vyāpaka* (pervading) just as ghee in curd, (2) *aupasṛṣṭika* (juxtaposition) is said (to be the existence of) oil in sesamum for the sake of God, (3) *vaiṣayika* (pertaining to an object) is known (to be) like the monkey may remain on a house (or) a tree, (and) (4) *sāmīpyaka* (proximate) known (to be) like fish in the water and a lion in a forest. (A fifth variety) is known as *aupacārika* (metaphorical) such as the existence of a hamlet on the (river) Ganges.

14b-17. (Now I shall describe the use of different inflections indicating different senses.) The third or the sixth (case) is known (to be used) when (the intention is) not expressed. (Lord) Viṣṇu is worshipped by people, To be gone by him or of him (are examples). The first case (is used) when the agent is expressed. (Accusative is used to denote) object : May a person make obeisance to Hari. The third case (is used to denote) cause (of an action)¹ : May one live for the sake of another. The fourth case is expressive of the purpose for which anything is done² : The water (is) for the three. The fifth case (is indicated) by means of (the words) *pari*, *upa* and *ān* etc.³ in combination. Outside the village this God was strong before. (Other examples)⁴. 'To the east of the village', 'without (lord) Viṣṇu (there is) no emancipation' and 'different from Hari'.

18. There would be either third of fifth case with (the

1. cf. *Pa.* II. 3.

2. See Kale, Higher Skt Gr. 827.

3. It should be *pari*, *apa* and *ān*. See *Pa.* II. 3. 10.

4. See Kale, ib. 840

words) such as Pṛthak, Vinā etc.¹ : different from the village, without sport (with the word) śri (prosperity) (such as) śriyā (instrumental) and śriyaḥ (ablative).

19. There would be second case when combined with *karmapravacanīyas*.² The warriors are inferior to Arjuna (and) near the village are said (to be examples).

20. The fourth case is used with (the particles) *namaḥ* (obeisance), *svāhā* (ablutions), *svadhā*, *svasti* (well-being) and *vaśaḥ* etc.³ : Obeisance to the lord and Farewell to thee. (The fourth case, of an abstract noun (formed from a root may be used) to express the sense of the infinitive (of the same root).⁴

21. (The object governed by an infinitive mood not actually used but implied is put in the fourth case such as) (He) goes for cooking (in order to cook) (*pākāya*). The third case (is used) when accompanied by (the word) *saha*. The third case (is also employed) to express the cause or motive⁵ (or the object or purpose of an action), (to express) some defect in a limb⁶ (of the body) or a characteristic attribute⁷ (indicative of the existence of a particular state).

22-23a. (The following are illustrations for the use of the third case) : The father went with the son (*saha putreṇa*); blind of one eye (*kāṇo 'kṣṇā*); He is Hari (apparent) from his club (*gaḍayā*); The servant may stay on account of the wealth (*arthena*). The seventh case (is used (to denote) the time (of action) and becoming. (The following are the examples) : One would get release (from bondage) when (lord) Viṣṇu is propitiated (*viṣṇau nate*). (He) attained Hari in the spring.

23b-24. (We have the sixth or seventh case in the following instances) : Master of men (or) master among men, lord of men, lord of good people, witness of men (or) witness among

1. See Pa II. 3. 32

2. Prepositions used by themselves and governing nouns are known as *Karmapravacanīyas*. See Pa. II. 3.8.

3. See Pa. II. 3. 16.

4. See Pa. II. 3. 15.

5. See Pa. II. 3.

6. Cf. Pa. II. 3.20.

7. See Pa. II. 3. 21.

men, lord among the cows, born among the cows (or) born of the cows, a heir or son of kings.

25. (When the word *hetu*, cause or object is used in a sentence, that which is the object and the word *hetu* are put in the genitive)¹ : (A person) dwells for the sake of food. A word or object expressing remembrance (is put in the genitive) (such as): Remembers the mother (mātuḥ), the guardian always. (The genitive is used) in the sense of the subject or the object (of the action denoted by the primary nominal bases) : The splitter of water, your action. The genitive (is) not used with past participles (*niṣṭhā*)²

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FIFTYFIVE

Different kinds of compounds

Skanda said :

1. I shall describe the six kinds of compounds. They are again divided into twentyeight kinds. They are twofold being divided as eternal and non-eternal, those which drop (the suffixes) and those which do not drop.

2-3a. (The following are examples of) eternal (compounds): Kumbhakāraḥ (a potter), hemakāraḥ (goldsmith) etc. Rājñāḥ punān or rājapunān (a person with royal autho. y). This also is an eternal compound. Kaṣṭaśritaḥ (kaṣṭena śritaḥ) (joined with difficulty) (is an example of) dropping (the suffix). Kaṇṭhe-kālaḥ etc. (kaṇṭhe+kālaḥ) (black-necked) (are examples) for not dropping (the suffix).

3b-7. Tatpuruṣa (Determinative compound) is of eight kinds. The first one is that where the words when compounded with substantives are placed first. This is the first (variety) of Tatpuruṣa. Pūrvam Kāyasya when (the compound is) dissolved

1. Cf. *Pa.* II. 3. 27.

2. See *Pa.* II. 3. 69.

(becomes) purvakāyaḥ¹ (the upper part of the body), Aparakāyaḥ (lower part of the body), Adharottara-kāyakaḥ (the lower and higher part of the body). Ardham Kaṇyāyāḥ (becomes) Ardhakāṇāḥ (half of a grain). Bhikṣātūryam² (begging alms a fourth time) is also of this type (signifying the whole of which they are parts) (optionally placed first). Āpanna-jīvikāḥ³ (āpanno jīvikām) is similar (in the second case). Adharāśritaḥ (adharam āśritaḥ—one who has resorted to a lower person). Varṣambhogyāḥ (or) Varṣabhogyāḥ (to be enjoyed for a year). (An instance of compounding) with (nouns in) the third case : Dhānyārthaḥ (Dhānyena arthaḥ) (wealth obtained by means grain). (The noun) would be in the fourth case (when compounded with the word *balī*) : Viṣṇubaliḥ (Viṣṇave balīḥ). Vṛkabhītiḥ⁴ (Vṛkāt bhītiḥ, fear from a wolf) (is an example for compounding with a noun in) the fifth case. (An example for) sixth case (is) Rājñāḥ pumān (an officer of a king) (becoming) Rājapumān. Similarly (we have) Vṛkṣaphalam (the fruit of a tree). The seventh case (is used in the following): This one (is) Akṣaśauṇḍa⁵ (Akṣeṣu śauṇḍaḥ) (skilled in dice). Ahitaḥ (not beneficial) (is an example) for Negative Tatpuruṣa.

8-12. Karmadhāraya (appositioned compound) is seven-fold⁶. Nilotpala (*Nilam ca tad utpalam ca*) etc. are known (to be the examples) for compounding the adjective and the noun it qualifies). (1) The qualifying word is placed first or (2) the word that is qualified is placed afterwards. (Words expressive of the persons or things condemned are placed first) : Vaiyākaraṇakhasūciḥ (a bad grammarian) (an example for first kind). Śītoṣṇam (cold and hot) and Dvipadam (two words) (are examples for the second). (3) Expressive of standard of comparison placed as first member : Śaṅkha-pāṇḍara (white as the conch) (*śaṅkhaḥ iva pāṇḍaraḥ*). (4) The standard of comparison

1. See Pa. II. 2. 1. They are not strictly Genitive Tatpuruṣa. But called by some as Prathamā Tatpuruṣa.

2. See Pa. II. 2.3.

3. See Pa. II. 24.

4. See Vārttika under Pa. II. 1. 37.

5. Pa. II. 1. 40.

6. But it is actually six-fold.

placed as the second member : *Puruṣavyāghraḥ* (a man like a tiger) (*puruṣo vyāghraḥ iva*). (5) Words of respect placed first: *Guṇavṛddhiḥ* dissolved as *guṇaḥ iti vṛddhiḥ* (elongation). *Suhṛd* and *Subandhu* (are examples). (6) The word signifying prominence is placed as the first member (*pāda eva padmaṁ = pāda-padmaṁ*). *Bahuvrīhi* (attributive compound) is sevenfold. (The following are examples) for the *Bahuvrīhi* having two words : *ārūḍhabhavanō naraḥ* (A man who has stepped into a house).

13. These brahmins are about ten (ie., nine or eleven). *upadaśāḥ* (= *daśānām samīpe ye santi te*) is (an example of *Bahuvrīhi* having the) numeral as the second member. (Examples of *Bahuvrīhi*) having both (the members) as numerals are such as *dvitrā* (two or three), *dyekatrāya* (two or one or three) men.

14. The particle *saha* (may be compounded) when it becomes the first member. The tree has been pulled out together with its root (*samūla*) (is an example). Those having the characteristic of reciprocity : (a battle in which the warriors fight) seizing each other's hair, (*keśākeśī*) fighting one another with nail (*nakhānakhī*).

15. (A *Bahuvrīhi* compound may be formed) to denote a direction (in between two directions) : *dakṣiṇapūrvā* (the point of direction in between the south and east). A *Dvigu* (having a number as the first member in a compound) is said to be twofold. It becomes singular (when denoting an aggregate), 'having two peaks' 'having five roots'. It is possible in many ways.

16. A *Dvandva* (copulative compound) is twofold *itaretarayoga* and *samāhāra* (the members are treated separately, and an aggregate of the things enumerated constituting a complex (idea). (An example for the first is) *Rudraviṣṇu* (*Rudra* and *Viṣṇu*). (An example for the second is) *Bherīpaṭaha*. (It is always singular.)

17-18. *Avyayibhāva* (compound consisting of two members, the first of which is, mostly, an indeclinable) is said to be of two kinds. An example for one having a noun as the first member (is) : *śākasya mātṛā* (very little vegetable) = *śākaprati*. An example for one with the first member as an indeclinable (is) : *upakumbhaṁ* (near a pot) and *uparathyam* (near a chariot). The compounds are

fourfold on account of the prominence (of one member)—that which has the second member prominent and Dvandva, where both (the members) are prominent. Avyayībhāva has the first member prominent and Bahuvrīhi (in which the importance lies) externally.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FIFTYSIX

*The rules governing the formation of taddhita
(secondary nominal bases)*

Skanda said :

1-4. I shall describe the three kinds of *taddhita*; the general type (will be formed) by using the following affixes)

<i>lac</i> (<i>la</i>)	—	amsalaḥ (having muscular shoulders); vatsalaḥ (compassionate).
<i>ilac</i> (<i>ila</i>)	—	phenila (foamy); picchila (slippery).
<i>śe</i> (<i>śa</i>)	—	lomaśaḥ (hairy, a monkey).
<i>ne</i> (<i>na</i>)	—	pāmanah (sulphur)
<i>aṇ</i> (<i>a</i>)	—	prājña (wise), ārcaka (relating to a worshipper).
<i>urac</i> (<i>ura</i>)	—	forms dantura (having projecting teeth) from danta (tooth).
<i>ra</i>	—	madhura (sweet); suṣira (for a long time). (by adding <i>va</i>) Keśava (having beautiful hair) (is formed) similarly.
<i>ya</i>	—	hiraṇyaṁ (gold)
<i>va</i>	—	Mālava (name of a country)
<i>valaci</i> (<i>vala</i>)	—	rajasvalā (menstruous woman)
<i>inī</i>	—	dhanī (rich); karī and hastī (elephant)
<i>ṭikan</i> (<i>ika</i>)	—	dhanika (rich)
<i>vin</i>	—	payasvī (milky); māvāvi (magician)
<i>yuyuc</i> (<i>yus</i>)	—	Ūrṇāyuh (woolen)
5-8. <i>min</i> (<i>mī</i>)	*	vāgmī (eloquent)
<i>ālac</i> (<i>āla</i>)	—	(vācāla)
and		

<i>āṭac</i>	—	<i>vācāka</i> (eloquent)
<i>ina</i>		<i>phalīnaḥ</i> (fruitful) ; <i>barhiṇaḥ</i> (a peacock) ; <i>kekī</i> (a peacock)
<i>kan</i>		<i>vṛndāraka</i> (venerable or beautiful)
<i>āluc</i>		<i>śītālu</i> = <i>śītaṁ na saḥate</i> (unable to endure cold) ; <i>himālu</i> = <i>himaṁ na saḥate</i> (not able to bear snow)

We would have the form *vātula* from *vāta* (by adding) *ulac*.
an (is used to denote) progeny (such as) *Vāsiṣṭha*, *Kaurava*.
so'sya vāsakaḥ—*Pāñcālaḥ*

tatra vāsaḥ — *Māthuraḥ*

vetti adhīte cāndravyākaraṇam—*Cāndrakaḥ*

- 9-12. *Khañ* (ka) *priyaṅgūnām kṣetram praiyaṅgavīnakam*
iñ (i) — *Dākṣiḥ* (the son of *Dakṣa*) ; *Dāśarathiḥ*
(the son of *Dāśaratha*) .
- lac* — *Nārāyana*
phaṛ — *Āśvāyanaḥ*
yac — *Gārgyaḥ* (son of *Garga*) ; *Vātsyakaḥ* (of the family of *Vātsya*)
- ḍhak* (*eya*) — *Vainateya* (son of *Vinatā*, ie., *Garuḍa*) etc.
- crak* — *Cātakerah*
ḍhak — *Gandheraka*
gha (*iya*) — *kṣatriya* (born in the race of a ruler)
kha (*ina*) — *kulīnaḥ* (born of a good family)
nya (*ya*) — *Kauravya* (a descendant of *Kuru*)
yat — *mūrdhanya* (being in or on the head) ;
mukhya (chief) etc.
— *sugandhiḥ* (good fragrance)
13. *itac* (*ita*) (will be used) for *Tāraka* group¹ (of words)
(in the sense of that is obtained or possessed by) such as 'the sky studded with stars'.
- anam* (*an*) — *kuṇḍodhnī* (a cow with a full udder) ;
puṣpadhanvan (the god of love) ; *sudhanvan* (having an excellent bow) .

1. See Pa. V. 2. 36

14. *cuñcup* (*cuñcu*) — vittacuñcuḥ would be used in the sense of one having wealth.
caṇaḥ (*caṇa*) — keśacaṇaḥ (renowned for the hair)
rūpa — paṭarūpa (in the form of a cloth).
 15-16 *iyas* — it would be paṭīyan (cleverer)
tarap (*tara*) — akṣatara (fairly proficient in dice);
 pacatitarām¹ (cooking fairly well)
tamaḥ (*tama*) — aṭatitamām² (wandering excellently);
 mṛdvitamā (much soft).
kalpaḥ (*kalpa*) — Indrakalpah (equal to Indra); ardhakalpakah (equal to half)
deśiya or *ueśya* — rājadeśīyaḥ (almost a king)
 17. *jātiya* — Paṭujātiya (belonging to an intelligent group)
mātrac (*mātra*) — jānumātram (reaching as far as the knee)
dvayasa — ūrudvayasa (reaching
 (*dvayasa*) upto the thigh)
dadhna (*dadhna*) — ūrudadhna (reaching upto the thigh)
 18. *tayaḥ* (*taya*) — pañcatayah (fivefold)
ṭhak (*ika*) — dauvārikah (door-keeper)

The general suffixes have been described. (I shall describe now) the secondary affixes known as indeclinables.

- 19-20. *tasil* (*tas*) — *yataḥ* is formed (in the sense of) from which.

tral is said (to form) *yatra* (where), *tatra* (there), *adhunā* (is used in the sense of) at that time, and *dān* (is used in) *idānim* (now). *Dā* is used (to form) *sarvadā* (always) together with *sarva*. *hil* (hi) forms *tarhi* in the sense of that time and *karhi*, at which time. *Ha* (is used to form) *iha* (in the sense of) now.

- 21-24a. *thāl* (*ihā*) — *yathā* (when);

tham (*tha*) — *katham* (how).

Let one gather in the eastern direction *astāt* (il) for *pūrva* (śabda).

May the leaders move in the front (*purastāt*). (The word) *sadya* is said (to be used) (in the sense of) same day. *Ut* (is used) for the previous year and *Parut* for (the year) preceding

1. See *Pa. V. 4.1*†

2. See *ibid.*

that *Parāri* is also (used in the same sense). *Aṣaṃ* (is used in the sense of) this year derived from the word *samas*). *Edyavau* and *Paredyavi* would (denote) the next day. *Adya* means today. *Dye* is used in combination as *Pūrvedyuh* and *Edyuh* (the previous day).

24b-27. Let one dwell in the southern direction. *Dakṣiṇāt* and *Dakṣiṇādi* (in the southern direction). May one dwell in the northern direction: *Uttarāt* and *Uttarādi* (in the northern direction). May one dwell above: *Upariṣṭāt*, *Riṣṭati* and *Ūrdhvakāt* (above) (have similar meaning). By adding suffix *āc* we have *dakṣiṇā*. By adding *āhi* we have *dakṣiṇāhi* (in the south) *vaset* (may one dwell). *Dha* in *dvidhā* denotes two ways. When *dhyamuñ* is added to *eke* it becomes *ekadhyam* (thinking in one form only), Likewise *dhamuñ* is added to *dvi* we have *dvaiddham* (to forms) ...¹

28-30. The particles which are secondary suffixes have been described. (I shall describe) the secondary affixes which are abstract nouns. *Paṭor bhāvaḥ* = *paṭutvam* (cleverness) (using) (suffix) *tva*. *Paṭutā* is said (to be by using) *tālic*. By adding *īman* to *pr̥thu* (we have) *pr̥athimā* (extension). *Saukhyam* (happiness) is said to be from *sukha* (by adding) *śyañ*. *Steyam* (theft) (is from) (by adding) *yat* to *stena* (a thief). The state of being a monkey is *kāpēyam*. *Samya* (army) and *pathya* (beneficial) are said (to be formed by adding) *yak* (*ya*). *Āśvam* (relating to a horse), *kaumārakam* (relating to boyhood) and *yauvanam* (relating to youth) (are from) *āñ* (*ā*). *Ācāryakam* (relating to the preceptor) (is) from *kan*. The other secondary suffixes are said (to be formed) in the same way.

1. The next two words are not clear.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FIFTYSEVEN

The formation of the primary nominal bases by adding primary affixes known as uṇādi, beginning with affix u

Kumāra said :

1-2a. The Uṇādis (a kind of primary nominal affixes) are spoken as *pratyayas* (suffixes) added to roots. (The word) *Kāru* (denoting) an artisan (is formed by adding the suffix) *uṇ*. (The other examples are) *jāyuh* (medicine or physician), *māyuh* (meaning) bile, *gomāyuh* (biles in the cow). These *uṇādis* are widely used in the Āyurveda (Indian system of medicine) terminology.

2b-4a. (The other examples are) *āyuh* (life), *svādu* (sweet), *hetu* (cause) etc. *Kimśāruḥ* (means) the beard of a corn. *Kṛkavāku* denotes a cock. *Guru* is the master. *Maru* is (a desert). *Sāyu* is known as a big serpent. *Saru* is said to be a weapon (sword). *Svaru* (denotes) the thunderbolt. *Trapu* (means) *sisam*¹. *Phalgu* is said (to mean) worthless thing.

4b-6. (The following words) are known (to be derived by adding the corresponding suffixes) : *grdhrah* (vulture) (from) *kran*, *mandiram* (an abode) and *timiram* (meaning) darkness (from) *kṛac*, *salilam* (meaning) water and *bhaṇḍila* (meaning) auspicious (from) *ilac*. *Budhaḥ* (meaning) a learned person (from) *kvasu*. (The word) *sibira* (denotes) a concealed position. *Otuḥ* (denotes) a cat (from the suffix) *tun*. (The words) *karnaḥ* (ear), *kāmi* (a lustful person), *gṛham* (house), *bhūḥ* (earth), *vāstu* (the site of a house) and *jaiṇātrakaḥ* (the moon) are known to be *uṇādis* because they denote (objects).

7. (The word) *anaḍvān* (a bull) is from (the root) *vaḥ* (to bear) with *ḍvan*. *Jīva* (life), *aṇava* (ocean) and *auśadha* (herb) convey genus. (The word) *vahni* (fire) is (by adding the suffix) *ni*, *hariṇaḥ* (meaning) a deer (from *inan*) and *kāmi* (one who is lustful) (denotes) a fit person.

8. *Sanḥātā* (a collection); *varūḍa* (mixed caste), *saraṇḍa* (means) an animal, *eraṇḍa* (is a kind of) tree; *sāma* (chant). *nirbhara* (full).

1. But *trapu* denotes tin and *sisam*, lead.

9. (The word) *sphāraṁ* would mean (plenty)... (The words) *cira* (denoting) a bark garment belongs to the same category. (The word) *kātara* (means) timid. But *ugra* (means) fierce. *Javasa* (denotes) grass.

10. *Jagat* (signifies) the earth and *krīānu*, the lustre of the Sun. *Varvara* (means) curled and *dhūrta* (a wicked person). *Catvaram* (denotes) a junction of four roads.

11. *Civara* (is) the dress of a mendicant. *Āditya* is said to be *Mitra* (the Sun). (The word) *putra* (stands for) a son and *pitā*, for father. (The words) *prḍāku* (denotes) a tiger and a scorpion. *Garta* (denotes) a hole. *Bharata* (means) an actor. These are the other *uṇādis*.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FIFTYEIGHT

The completed forms of the verbs after adding the conjugational signs etc.

Kumāra said:

1. I shall describe the terminations (which are added) to the verbs as well as the substitutes in brief. The verbs occur in three forms such as *bhāve* (impersonal), *karmani* (passive) and *kartari* (active).

2. They are known to be transitive and intransitive in the two *padas* (*Ātmanepada* and *Parasmaipada*) in the *ṣ* tive. In the same way the substitutes in the transitive and intransitive.

3. *Laṭ* is the designation for the present tense. *Liṅ* is said to be in the sense of the potential (mood) etc. *Loṭ* (is) for benediction and conditional etc. *Laṅ* (is the designation) for the past not relating to the present day.

4. *Luṅ* (is the name) for the past (Aorist) and *luṭ* for remote past and *luṭ* for immediate (first) future. *Liṅ* (is used) for benediction and *lṛṭ* in the remaining senses. *Lṛṅ* would denote the (second) future.

5. (*Lṛṅ*, conditional) (is used in the sentences) in which the Potential may be used, when the non-performance of action is

implied. The latter nine (are) Ātmanepada (the result of the action accruing to one's self) and the former nine (are) Parasmaipada (the result of the action accruing to another person). *Tip, tas* and *anti* (are the terminations of) the *prathamapurūṣa*.¹

6-7a. *Sip, thas* and *tha* (are the terminations of) the *madhyamaapurūṣa*² and *mīp, vas* and *mas* (for) the *uttamaapurūṣa*³. *Ta, ātām* and *anta* (are) the *prathamapurūṣa* (terminations) in the Ātmanepada, *thās, āthām, dhvam* in the *madhyama* and *i, vahi, mahi* in the *uttama* (in the imperfect). *Bhū* (to be) etc. are known to be the roots.

7b-10a. The following are the important roots belonging to the different conjugations⁴. (The roots) *bhū* (to be), *edh* (to prosper), *pac* (to cook), *nand* (to rejoice), *dhvam*s (to perish), *śams* (to praise) (belong to the first conjugation). *Pad* (to go) (fourth), *ad* (to eat) (second), *śīñ* (to lie down, second), *kriḍ* (to buy) (first), *juhōti* (*hū* to offer in a sacrifice) (third), *jahāti* (*hā* to abandon, third), *dadhāti* (*dhā* to bear, third), *divyati* (*dī* to play or to shine, fourth), *svapiti* (*svap* to sleep, second), *nah* (to tie, fourth), *sunoti* (*su*, to press out juice, fifth), *vas* (to dwell), *tud* (to strike, wound, sixth), *mṛśati* (*mṛś* to touch, sixth), *muñcati* (*muñc* to lose, sixth), *rudh* (to hold up, seventh), *bhuj* (to enjoy, seventh), *tyaj* (to abandon, first), and *tan* (to spread, eighth). (The roots) *man* (to think), *karoti* (*kṛ*, to do), *kriḍati* (*kriḍ*, to play), *vrñ* (to choose), *grah* (to seize), *cur* (*cur*, to steal), *pā* (to drink and protect), *nī* (to carry) and *arc* (to worship) are the important in the *śap*⁵ and other modifications.

10b-13a. In (the root) *bhū* (by adding *tiñ*, we would have *saḥ bhavati* (he becomes), *tau bhavataḥ* (they two become) and *te bhavanti* (they all become). (Similarly we have) you become, you two become and you all become and I become, we two become and we all become. (Similarly in the Ātmanepada), the

1. corresponding to the third person.
2. corresponding to the second person.
3. corresponding to the first person.
4. The roots are divided into ten conjugations known as *bhvādi*, *adādi*, *juhōtyādi*, *divādi*, *svādi*, *tudādi*, *rudhādi*, *tanādi*, *kryādi* and *curādi*.
5. *śap* is the designation of the termination added to the first conjugation.

family prospers, two prosper and (many) prosper. You grow with intellect, (you two) prosper and you all prosper. We two grow with intellect. We all prosper with devotion to (lord) Hari. (He) cooks etc. are as before.

13b-15. One becomes and one enjoys (are examples) for the impersonal forms. The passive (is formed by adding) *yak*. The desiderative form (of root *bhū* is) *bubhūṣati*. Thus in the causal (one) meditates on the lord. In the frequentative (we have the form) *bobhūyate* (Ātmanepada) or *bobhoti* when *yoñ* is dropped (is the form) in the Parasmaipada frequentative. *Putriyati* (treats like a son) on account of desire for children and thus *paṭapaṭāyate* (utters the sound *paṭpat*), *ghaṭayati* (brings about) (are examples) of the desiderative. He causes the figure to be adorned (*bubhūṣayati*) (is the form) in the causal.

16. Bhavet (may become), bhavetām, bhaveyuḥ, bhaveḥ bhavetañ, bhaveta, bhaveyañ, bhaveva, bhavema are (the forms in the three persons in the singular, dual and plural) in the Potential (mood) (in the Parasmaipada).

17. Edheta, edheyātām, edheran (grow or prosper) with the mind and prosperity, edhetāḥ, edheyāthām, edhedhvañ, edheya, edhevahi, edhemahi (are the forms of the Potential moon in the Ātmanepada).

18-19a. Let it be. Bhavatām, bhavantu, bhavatād or bhava, bhavatañ, bhavata, bhavāni, bhavāva, bhavāma (are the forms) in the Imperative mood. Edhatām (may one prosper), edhetām, edhantām (in the third person), edhai (in the first persor. singular) (are the forms of Ātmanepada Imperative). Pacāvahai, pacāmahai (are the forms of Ātmanepada Imperative dual and plural from *pac* to cook).

19b-20. Abhyanandat (felicitated), apacatām (cooked), apacan (they cooked), apacaḥ (you cooked), abhavatañ (you two became), abhavata (you all became), apacañ (I cooked), apacāva (we two cooked), apacāma (we all cooked) (are the examples for the past (imperfect) in the Parasmaipada). Aidhata, aidhetām (third person singular and dual), aidhadhvañ (second person plural), aidhe, aidhāmahi (first person singular and plural) are said to be (the forms in the past tense, Ātmanepada).

21. Abhūt, abhūtām, abhūvan, abhūh and abhūvaṁ (are the forms of the root *bhū* to be or become) in the Aorist. Aidhiṣṭa, Aidhiṣṭām (Men prospered), aidhiṣṭhāh, aidhiṣī (are) thus (the forms of the Aorist Ātmanepada).

22. (The root *bhū* becomes) babhūva, babhūvatuḥ, babhūvuh, babhūvitha, babhūvathuh, babhūva, (babhūva), babhūviva and babhūvima (are the forms) in the Perfect tense (in the Parasmaipada).

23. Pece, pecāte, pecire (cooked) and edhāñcakṛṣe tvaṁ (you prospered), edhāñcakrāthe, pecidhve, pece, pecimahe (are the forms in the Perfect in the Ātmanepada and Periphrastic perfect).

24-25. In the first future (the root *bhū* has the forms) bhavitā, bhavitārau, bhavitāraḥ (will become) Hara and others. Bhavitāsi, bhavitāsthaḥ; bhavitāsmaḥ vayam (we) (are the other forms). Paktā, paktārau, paktāraḥ (are the forms of the root *pac* in the first future third person). You will cook (paktāse) good food. Paktādhve, I will cook (paktāhe), paktāsmahe (we will cook) the porridge for lord Hari (are examples for some of the forms of the root *pac* in the first future Ātmanepada).

26-30. In the benedictive: May there be (bhūyāt) happiness, Hari and Saṅkara bhūyāstām (be benevolent), bhūyāsuḥ they, you bhūyāḥ, you two gods bhūyāstām, you all bhūyāsta, ahaṁ bhūyāsam (May I be), bhūyāsma (we all may be) always (happy). Yakṣiṣṭa, edhiṣiyāstām, yaksīran, edhiṣīya, yaksivahi, edhiṣimahi (are some of the forms of the roots *yaj*, to sacrifice and *edh* to prosper in the Ātmanepada) in the Benedictive. Ayakṣyata, ayakṣeyātām, ayakṣyanta, ayakṣye, ayakṣyethām you two, ayakṣyadhvam, aidhiṣyāvahi, aidhiṣyāmahi we all (are the forms) in the Conditional mood in the Parasmaipada, Ātmanepada. *Bhaviṣyati* would be (the form) in the second future. Edhiṣyāmahe is similar. In the same way vibhāvayisyanti, bobhaviṣyati (frequentative second future) (will become again and again). Ghaṭayet, paṭayet, putriyati, kāmyati (are other forms of nominal verbs and frequentatives).

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND FIFTYNINE

The finished forms after adding the kṛt affixes (primary affixes added to verbs)

Kumāra said:

1-3. The *kṛts* are to be known in all the three forms (such as) the impersonal, passive and active. *Ac*, *lyuṭ* (to form neuter abstract nouns by adding *na*), *ktin* (*ti*) (to form feminine abstract nouns), *ghañ* (added to roots ending in consonants), and *yuc* in the impersonal (are the affixes). (Their examples are) in the *ac*: *vinaya* (modesty), *utkaraḥ* (heap, multitude), *prakaraḥ* (collection, heap), *devaḥ* (lord), *bhadraḥ* (good), *śīkaraḥ* (conferer of prosperity). The form in *lyuṭ* (is) *śobhanaṁ* (auspicious), in *ktin* (*ti*) (the forms are) *vṛddhi* (increase), *stuti* (praise) and *mati* (intellect). (The form) in *ghañ* is *bhāva* (feeling or state), in *yuiṣṭi*—*karuṇā* (doing action), *bhāvunā* (bringing into existence) etc. and in the syllable *a*—(represented) by *cikitsā* (remedy).

4. Then (the affixes) *taṇya* and *aniya* (forming the words) *kartavyam*, *karaṇīyakam* (fit to be done), (the affix) *yat* (to form) *deyam* (ought to be given) and *dhyeyam* (ought to be meditated), in *nyat* (to form) *kāryam* (a work or task) and *kṛtyakāḥ* (work to be done).

5. *Kṛta* and other (affixes) are to be known in the active, and some in the impersonal and passive. (A person) has gone to the village. The village has been reached. The preceptor has been embraced by you.

6. *Śatṛñ* (present participle in the Parasmaipada) and *sānac* (present participle in the Ātmanepada) are *bhavin* (becoming) and *edhamāna* (being prosperous). *Nruh* and *tīc* (are) added to all the roots (to form agents such as) (*bhāvakaḥ* and *bhavitā* (feeling or manifestation and that which is about to become)).

7. (An example) for ending in *kuṇip* (is) *Svayambhūḥ* (self-originated). *Kvas* (*vas*) and *Kānac* (*āna*) (are the affixes) (of the participles) of the perfect (Parasmaipada and Ātmanepada). *Babhūvivat* and *pecivat* (in the Parasmaipada) and *pecānaḥ* and *śraddadhānakaḥ* (in the Ātmanepada) (are the examples).

8. *Kumbhakāra* (a potter) etc. would be (formed by adding the affix) *aṇ*. The *uṇādis* are known to be in the past. *Vāyuḥ* (wind), *pāyuh* (the anus) and *kāru* (artisan) would be (formed from them). These are said to be widely used in the Vedas.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SIXTY

*The synonyms of group of words denoting the celestial region
and the nether world**

Fire-god said:

1. I shall describe to you (the synonyms) of heaven etc. of which lord Hari is the indication. *Svaḥ*, *svargaḥ*, *nākaḥ*, *tridivaḥ*, *dyauḥ*, *triviṣṭapa* are synonyms (denoting heaven).

2-3a. *Devas*, *Vṛndārakas* and *Lekhas* (are the names for the celestials). *Rudra* and others (are) the chief of group of gods. *Vidyādhara*s, *Apsaras*, *Yakṣas*, *Rakṣas*, *Gandharvas*, *Kinnaras*, *Piśācas*, *Guhyakas*, *Siddhas* and *Bhūtas* had celestial origin.

3b. The enemies of the *Devas*, *Asuras* and *Daityas* (born of *Diti*) (are the names of the demons). *Sugataḥ* and *Tathāgataḥ* (denote Buddha).¹

4. *Brahmā*, *Ātmabhūḥ* (self-born), *Surajyeṣṭha* (chief of the *Devas*) (are the synonyms of *Brahmā*). *Viṣṇu*, *Nārāyaṇa* and *Hari* (are the names of *Viṣṇu*). *Revatīśa* (husband of *Revatī*), *Halirāma* (*Rāma* with with plough) (are the words denoting *Balarāma*) (elder brother of *Kṛṣṇa*). *Kāma*, *Pañcaśara* (having five shafts) and *Smara* (are the names of God of love).

5. *Lakṣmī*, *Padmālayā* (having the lotus as abode), and *Padmā* (are the names of Goddess *Lakṣmī*). *Sarva* (all things), *Sarveśvara* (lord of all beings), and *Śiva* (auspicious) (are the

*The Purāṇa summarises the *Amarakośa* in eight chapters. This chapter is an abridgement of the *Kāṇḍa* I, *Svargavarga* 6-79 verses and *Pātālavarga* 239-347 verses.

1. The founder of Buddhism.

names of Śiva). Kaparda is his matted hair. Pināka is the bow (of lord Śiva) also known as Ajagava.

6. His attendants are (known as) Pramathas. Mr̥dāni (compassionate), Caṇḍikā (fierce) and Ambikā (mother) (are the names of Goddess Pārvatī). Dvaimātura¹ (having two mothers) and Gajāśya (having an elephant face) (are the names of lord Gaṇeśa). Senānī (leader of an army), Agnibhū (fire-born) and Guha (reared in a secret place) (are the names of Skanda).

7. Ākhaṇḍala (breaker), Sunāsīra (favourable for the growth of grain), Sūtrāman (guarding well) and Divaspati (lord of the heaven) (are the names of Indra). Pulomajā (daughter of Puloman, a demon), Śacī (powerful) and Indrāṇī are the names of wife (of Indra).

8. His (Indra's) mansion (is known as) Vaijayanta. Jayanta (victorious) (is the name of) Pākaśāsani (son of Pākaśāsana, Indra). Airāvata, Abhramātaṅga (elephantine cloud), Airāvana and Abhramuvallabha (mate of the female elephant of the east) (are the names of the elephant of Indra).

9. Hlādinī (that which delights), Vajra, that it not a feminine (word), Kulīśa, Bhidura (neuter words) and Pavi (masculine) (are the words denoting Indra's club). Indra's chariot is called) Vyomayāna and Vimāna (the vehicle of the sky). (The latter word is) not feminine. Pīyūṣa, Amṛta and Sudhā (denote ambrosia).

10. Sudharmā is the council of gods. Svargaṅgā and Surādīrghikā (denote the celestial Ganges). The celestia¹ women such as Urvaśī and others (are denoted by the words) Svarveśyā and Apsarasah. (Here the latter word is always) feminine and plural.

11-12. Hāhā and Hūhū (are the names of) Gandharvas (semi-divine beings). Agni, Vahni, Dhanañjaya (conqueror of wealth), Jātavedas (knower of all things), Kṛṣṇavartman (whose way is black), Āśrayāśa (consuming everything with which it comes into contact), Pāvaka (purifier), Hiraṇyaretas (having golden seed), Saptārcis (having seven rays), Śukra (white). Āśuśukṣaṇi (shining forth), Śuci (pure) and Appittam (bile of

1. having a natural mother and a step-mother.

water) (are the words denoting fire). *Aurva*, *Vāḍava* and *Vaḍa-vānala* (denote the submarine fire).

13-14. Among the words denoting the flames of fire, *Jvāla* and *Kīla* (are masculine and feminine), *Arcis* (feminine and neuter) and *Heti* and *Śikhā* (are) feminine. *Sphuliṅga* and *Agnikaṇa* (denote a spark of fire). (These words are used) in all the three (genders). *Dharmarāja* (lord of virtue), *Paretarāt* (master of the dead), *Kāla* (the Time), *Antaka* (Destroyer), *Daṇḍadhara* (Wielder of a staff) and *Śrāddhadeva* (lord of the ancestral rite) (are the synonymns of God of Death). *Rākṣasa*, *Kauṇapa* (coming from a corpse), *Asrapa* (blood drinker), *Kravyāda* (flesh eater), *Yātudhāna* and *Nairṛti* (are the words denoting a demon).

15. *Pracetas*, *Varuṇa* and *Pāsī* (having a noose) (denote *Varuṇa*, the upholder of moral laws). *Śvasana* (who breathes), *Sparśana* (who touches), *Anila*, *Sadāgati* (always moving), *Mātariśvan*, *Prāṇa* (life breath), *Marut* and *Samīraṇa* (denote wind).

16. *Java*, *ramha* and *tara* (denote speed). *Iaghu*, *kṣipram*, *aram*, *drutam*, *satvaram*, *capalam*, *tūrṇam*, *avilambitam* and *āśu* (denote haste).

17-18. *Satatam*, *anāratam*, *aśrāntam*, *santatam*, *aviratam*, *anīṣam*, *nityam*, *anavaratam* and *ajasram* (mean eternally). *Atiśaya*, *bhara*, *ativelam*, *bhṛṣam*, *atyartham*, *atimātram*, *udgāḍham*, *nirbharam*, *tivram*, *ekāntam*, *nītāntam*, *gāḍham*, *bāḍham*, and *drḍham* (denote excess).

19. *Guhyakeśa*, *Yakṣarāja* (chief of *Yakṣas*), *Rājaraja* and *Dhanādhipa* (lord of riches) (denote *Kubera*). *Kinnara*, *Kimpuruṣa*, *Turaṅgavadana* (horse-faced) and *Mayu* (denote the *Kinnaras*, a class of semidivine beings).

20. *Nidhi* and *śevadhi* (mean treasure). (Both the words are) masculine. *Vyoma*, *abhram*, *puṣkaram*, *ambaram*, *dya*, *divam*, *antarikṣam* and *kham* (denote the sky).

21-22a. *Kāṣṭhā*, *āśā* and *kakubha* (denote) the direction. *Abhyantara* and *antarāla* mean the interspace (between the heaven and earth). *Cakravāla* and *maṇḍala* (mean a range or orb of things). *Taḍitvān* (having lightning), *vārīda* (giver of water), *megha*, *stanayitnu* (that which makes sound) and *balāhaka* (stand for cloud). *Kādambini* and *meghamālā* (denote a row of clouds). *Stanita* and *garjita* (mean the rumbling of thunder clouds).

22b-23. *Śampā*, *Śatahradā*, *hrādini*, *airāvati*, *kṣaṇaprabhā*, *taḍit*, *saudāmini*, *vidyut*, *cañcalā* and *capalā* (denote lightning).

23b-24. *Sphūrjathuḥ* and *vajranirghoṣa* (mean the peel of thunder). The cessation of rain (is denoted by the word) *avagraha*. *Dhārāsampāta* and *āsāra* (denote incessant rain). *Śikara* (is known to be) drops of water (carried by wind). *Varṣopala* and *karakāḥ* (are the first rain drops falling like a stone). A cloudy day (is known as) *durdinam* (a bad day).

25. *Antardhā*, *vyavadhā* (feminine), *antardhi* (masculine), *apavāraṇam*, *apīdhānam*, *tirodhānam*, *pidhānam*, and *ācchādanam* (mean concealing or covering).

26-27. (The words) *Abja*, *Jaivātṛka*, *Soma*, *Glauḥ*, *Mygāṅka*, *Kālānidhi*, *Vidhu* and *Kumudabandhu* (denote the Moon). *Bimba* and *maṇḍala* (are the words denoting the orb of the moon, the former is) feminine (and the latter is used in) all (the genders). A sixteenth digit (of the moon) is *kalā*. *Bhitta*, *śakala* and *khaṇḍaka* (denote a part). *Candrikā*, *kaumudī* and *jyotsnā* (denote the lustre of the moon). *Prasāda* and *prasannatā* (denote clear lustre).

28-29a. *Lakṣaṇam*, *lakṣmakam* and *cihnam* (stand for a mark). *Śobhā*. *kānti*, *dyuti* and *chari* (denote lustre). *Suśamā* (denotes) exquisite lustre. *Tuṣāra*, *tuhinam*, *himam*, *ava'yāya*, *nihāra*, *prāleyam*, *śiśira* and *himam* denote snow).

29b. *Nakṣatram*, *ṛkṣam*, *bham*, *tārā*, *tārakā* and *uḍu* (denote an asterism). There the last word may also be feminine.

30. *Guru*, *Jiva* and *Āṅgīrasa* (are the words standing for Jupiter). *Uśanas*, *Bhārgava* and *Kavi* (denote Venus). *Vidhantuda* (afflicting Moon) and *Tama* (denote) Rāhu. The rise of the constellations is known to be *lagna*.

31. Sages such as Marici, Atri and others¹ are the seven sages. (They are known collectively as) *Citraśikhaṇḍins*. *Hari-daśva*, *Bradhna*, *Pūṣā*, *Dyumaṇi*, *Mihira* and *Ravi* (denote the Sun).

32-34a. (The halo around the Sun is known as) *pariveṣa*, *paridhi*, *upasūnyakam* and *maṇḍalam*. (The ray of the Sun is denoted by the words) *kirāṇa*, *usra*, *mayūkha*, *aṁsu*, *gabhasti*, *ghṛmi*, *dhṛṣṇi*²,

1. Āṅgīras, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu and Vasiṣṭha are the remaining five.

2. the Amara 210 reads *prṣṇi*.

bhānu, *kara*, *marici*, and *didhiti* where *marici* is feminine and masculine (while) *didhiti* is feminine. (The lustre is denoted by the words) *prabhā*, *ruk*, *ruci*, *twiṣ*, *bhā*, *bhāḥ*, *chavi*, *dyuti*, *dīpti*, *roci* and *śoci*, where the last two are neuter, (while the other words are feminine). (The lustre of the Sun is denoted by the words) *prakāśa*, *dyota* and *ātapa*.

34b-38a. (The words) *koṣṇam*, *kavoṣṇam*, *mandoṣṇam* and *kaduṣṇam* (denote little heat). They take neuter when referring to a quality and take all genders as attributes. Similarly (the words) *tigmam*, *litkṣṇam* and *kharam* (denoting excessive heat) take neuter or all the genders. (The words) *diṣṭa*, *anehā* and *kālaka* (denote time). (The words) *ghasra*, *dinam* and *ahas* (denote day). *Sāyam*, *sandhyā* and *pīṭṭprasūḥ* (denote the evening). *Pratyūṣas*, *aharmukham*, *kalyam*, *uṣas* and *pratyūṣas* (denote dawn). The three twilights (are known as) *prāhṇa* (morning), *aparāhṇa* (evening) are *madhyāhṇa* (midday). Night is denoted by the words) *śarvari*, *yāmi* and *tami*. (The night endowed with darkness is) *tamirā* and (that with moonlight is) *jyotsni*. The night together with the preceding and succeeding days (is known as) *paksiṇi*. The two (words) *ardharātri* and *niśitha* (denote) midnight. *Pradoṣa* and *rajanimukham* (is the period preceding the night).

38b-40. The intervening period between the pratipat (first lunar day) and the fifteenth (lunar day) is *parvan*. There are two fifteenth (days) at the end of each one of the fortnights. *Paurṇamāsi* and *pūrṇimā* (denote the last days of the bright lunar fortnight). (If that full moon) is a digit less (it is known as) *anumati*. If it is full, (it is) *rākā*. *Amāvāsyā*, is being near; *darśa* and *sūryendu-saṅgama* (union of Sun and Moon) (denote the last days of the dark lunar fortnight). If the moon is perceived (on the new moon day), (it is) *sinivāli* and if the same (is seen) a digit less, (it is) *kuhū*.

41-42a. *Samvarta*, *pralaya*, *kalpa*, *kṣaya* and *kalpānta* (denote deluge). (The words) *kalusam*, *vṛjīnam*, *enah*, *agham*, *aṁhaḥ*, *duritam* and *duṣkṛtam* (denote sin). (The words) *dharmam*, *puṇyam*, *śreyas*, *sukṛtam* and *vṛṣa* (denote good deeds). The word *dharmam* (is used) in the masculine and neuter.

42b-43a. (The words) *mut*, *pṛiti*, *pramada*, *harṣa*, *pramoda*, *āmoda*, *sammada*, *ānandathuḥ*, *ānanda*, *śarma*, *sātam* and *sukham* (denote rejoice).

43b-44a. (The words) *svaḥśreyasam*, *śivam*, *bhadram*, *kalyāṇam*, *maṅgalam*, *śubham*, *bhāvukam*, *bhavikam*, *bhavyam*, *kusalam* and *kṣemam* (denote only welfare). (There) *kṣemam* is used in masculine and neuter.

44b. *Daivam*, *diṣṭam*, *bhāgadheyam*, *bhāgyam*, *niyati* and *vidhi* relate to (fruits of) previous birth. (The latter two) are feminine.

45a. *Kṣetrajñā*, *ātman* and *puruṣa* relate to the soul in the body. *Pradhānam* and *prakṛti* (relate to the state in which the three qualities are in the same proportion). (The latter is used) in the feminine.

45b-46a. *Hetu*, *kāraṇam* and *bijam* (denote) cause. But *nidāna* is the primary cause. *Cittam*, *cetas*, *hṛdayam*, *svāntam*, *hṛt*, *mānasam* and *manas* (denote mind).

46b-47a. *Buddhi*, *manīṣā*, *dhiṣaṇā*, *dhiḥ*, *prajñā*, *śeṣi*, *mati*, *prekṣā*, *upalabdhi*, *cit*, *saṃvit*, *pratīpat*, *jñapti* and *cetanā* (denote intellect).

47b-48. The intellect (*dhi*) which possesses retentive power (is known as) *medhā*. *Sanḥkalpa* (resolve) is an activity of mind. *Carcā* (discussion), *Sanḥkhyā* (deliberation) and *vicāraṇā* (inquiry) (relate to examination of an object by means of knowledge). *Vicikitsā* and *saṃśaya* (relate to doubtful knowledge). *Adhyāhāra* (inference), *tarka* (logical reasoning) and *ūha* (conjecture) (relate to logic), *Nirṇaya* and *niścaya* mean conclusive knowledge.

49. (The words) *mūhyādṛṣṭi* and *nāstikatā* (are used to denote knowledge arising from the argument that the other world does not exist). *Bhṛānti*, *mūhyāmati* and *bhrama* (mean false (knowledge)). *Āṅgikāra*, *abhyupagama*, *pratiśraya* and *saṃāśraya* (denote acceptance).

50-51a. Knowledge relating to liberation from mundane existence (is) *jñānam*. (When it is used with reference to architecture and scientific literature, (it is) *vijñānam*. *Mukti*, *kaivalyam*, *nirvāṇam*, *śreyas*, *niḥśreyasam*, *amṛtam*, *mokṣa* and *apavarga* (denote liberation from mundane existence). (The words) *ajñānam*, *avidyā* and *ahammatī* (stand for ignorance). (Among these, the last two words are used) in the feminine.

51b-52a. (The word) *parimala* (is used to denote) fragrance arising from pounding or rubbing which attracts men. That which attracts very much (is known as) *āmōda*. (The words)

surabhi and *ghrāṇatarpaṇa* (denote an object possessing good fragrance).

52b-53. (The words) *śukla*, *śubhra*, *śuci*, *śveta*, *viśada*, *śyeta*, *pāṇḍara*, *avadāta*, *sita*, *gaura*, *valakṣa*, *dhavala*, *arjuna*, *hariṇa*, *pāṇḍura* and *pāṇḍu* (denote white). That which is little white (is denoted by the word) *dhūsara*.

54. (The words) *nila*, *asita*, *śyāma*, *kāla*, *śyāmala* and *mecaka* (denote) black. (The words) *pīta*, *gaura* and *haridrābha* (denote yellow). (The words) *pālāśa*, *harita* and *harit* (mean) the green colour.

55. (The words) *rohita*, *lohita* and *rakta* (denote red colour). (The word) *śoṇa* (denotes) the colour resembling red lotus. Little redness (is denoted by the word) *aruṇa*. (The word) *pāṭala* (stands for) red mixed with white.

56-57a. *Śyāva* and *kapīśa* (denote whitish red). *Dhūmra* and *dhūmala* (denote) red and black mixed. *Kadāra*, *kapila*, *piṅga*, *piśaṅga*, *kadru* and *piṅgala* (denote reddish brown). *Citram*, *kirmīra*, *kalmāśa*, *sabala*, *eta* and *karbura* (denote variegated colours).

57b. (The words) *vyāhāra*, *ukti* and *lapitam* (denote speech). *Apabhraṁśa* (means) a corrupted word.

58. A collection of *tiṅ* (verb) and *subanta* (noun) is a sentence. Or it may be an activity together with the case relation between a noun and a verb. *Itihāsa* is that which has happened in the past. *Purāṇa* has five characteristics.¹

59. *Ākhyāyikā* is a narrative of a past event. *Prabandha* is an imaginary story. *Samāhāra* and *saṅgraha* (denote a collection of stories). *Pravahlikā* and *prahelikā* (are involving conjecture).

60. *Samasyā* is a puzzle that has to be completed. *Smṛti* is a collection of texts (composed for propagating) religious and moral duties. *Ākhyā*, *āhvā* and *abhidhāna* (denote name). *Vārtā* and *vṛttānta* are said (to denote) narration of worldly course of events.

61. (The words) *hūti*, *ākāraṇā* and *āhvānam* (denote calling). *Upaṇyāsa* and *vāṇmukha* (mean beginning of a speech). *Vivāda* and *vyavahāra* (are used in the sense of disputes relating debts,

1. These are: creation, secondary creation, royal genealogies, Manu periods and genealogy of gods and sages.

gifts etc.). (The words) *prativākya* and *uttaram* (are used in the sense of reply).

62. *Upodghāta* and *udāhāra* (are used to denote the thought relating to accomplishment of a contextual object). *Mithyā-bhīṣaṃsanam* and *abhiśāpa* (mean insult or abuse). (The words) *yaśas* and *kīrti* (denote fame). (The words) *praśna*, *prēcchā* and *anuyogaka* (mean a query).

63. (The word) *āmreḍitam* (means) repetition two or three (times). (The words) *kulsā*, *nindā* and *garhanam* (denote censure). (The words) *ābhāṣaṇam* and *ālāpa* would (mean conversation preceded by mutual call). *Pralāpa* is meaningless utterance.

64. *Anulāpa* and *muhurbhāṣa* (mean repeated conversation). *Vilāpa* and *paridevana* denote speech preceded by weeping. *Vipralāpa* and *virodhokti* (denote mutually contradictory utterances). *Samlāpa* is conversation between one another.

65. *Suśralāpa* and *suvacanam* (mean good utterance). *Apalāpa* and *nihnava* (mean veiled statement). *Ruṣati*¹ means inauspicious utterance. *Sanṅatam* and *hrdayaṅgamam* (would denote well-constructed sentence).

66. That which is exceedingly sweet is *sāntvam*. *Abaddham* and *anarthakam* would (mean absurd). *Niṣthuram*² and *paraṣam* (mean harsh utterance). *Aślīlam* and *grāmyam* (mean unrefined utterance). The statement which is pleasing and true (is) *sūnṛtam*.

67-69. *Satyam*, *tathyam*, *ṛtam* and *samyak* (would mean truth). (The words) *nāda*, *nīṣvāna*, *nīsvana*, *āṛava*, *ārāva*, *saṃrāva* and *virāva* (denote ordinary sound). *Marmara* (denotes) the sound made by cloth and leaves. (The sound made) by the ornaments (is) *śiṅṅitam*. *Nikvaṇa* and *kīṛāna* (denote the sound) of a lute. The sound made by birds (is) *vāsitam*. *Kolāhala* and *kalakala* (mean the clear sound made by many). The two (words) *gitam* and *gānam* mean the same (namely, a song). *Pratiśrut* and *pratidhvāna* (mean echo), where the former is feminine. (The sounds such as) *niṣāda* (and the like) arise from stringed instruments and throats (of singers).

1. The printed text wrongly reads *uṣati*.

2. The Purāṇic text mixes this term and the next. This has been corrected on the basis of *Amara*.

70-71. A subtle (sound) is *kākali*. That which is sweet and not explicit is *kala*. *Mandara* is a lofty sound. *Tāra* is a very loud sound. Where there is a resonance and well blending of the (last) three sounds it is said to be *ekatāla*. *Viṇā*, *vallakī* and *vīpañcī* (denote lute). That which is known to have seven strings is *parivādini*.

72. *Viṇā* and other instruments are spread out. *Muraja* and the like are bound. *Vamśa* (flute) and others have holes. An instrument made of bell-metal and the like is *ghanam*.

73. Thus there are four kinds of musical instruments having the appellation *vādītram* and *ātodyam*. *Mrdāṅga* and *Muraja* (are synonyms). *Aṅkyaḥ*, *ālīṅgyaḥ* and *ūrdhva* are different kinds of *Mrdāṅgas*.

74-75a. The drum that is sounded (at first) for the sake of fame (is known as) *Ḍhakkā*. *Bherī* and *Dundubhi* (are synonyms), the former is feminine and the latter masculine.¹ *Āṇaka* and *Paṭaha* (are synonyms). *Jhārjhari*, *Ḍiṇḍima*, *Mardala* and *Paṇava* (are different kinds of percussion instruments).² *Tāla* is the measure of time relating to the performance.

75b. *Laya* is the equal proportion of the performance and time (relating to music, dance etc.) *Tāṇḍavam*, *nāṭyam*, *lāsya* and *nartanam* (are synonyms).

76. *Nrtyam* (dance), *gītam* (singing) and *vādyam* (instrumental), the three (are known collectively as) *tauryatrikam*. The king is known as *Bhaṭṭāraka* and *Deva*. (The queen) who had been anointed is *Devī*.

77-81a. *Śṛṅgāra* (erotic), *utra* (heroic), *karuṇa* (pathos), *adbhuta* (wonder), *hāsyā* (mirth), *bhayānaka* (frightening), *bibhatsa* (disgust) and *raudra* (wrath) are the sentiments. The erotic (is also denoted by the words) *suci* and *ujjvala*. The heroic sentiment (is also known as) *utsāhavaradhana*. *Kāruṇyam*, *karuṇā*, *ghrṇā*, *kṛpā*, *dayā*, *anukampā* and *anukrośa* (denote the sentiment of pathos). *Hasa*, *hāsa* and *hāsyam* (mean the same). *Bibhatsa* (is also known as) *vikṛta*. These two are masculine (when denoting the sentiment). *Vismaya*, *adbhutam*, *āścarya* and *citram* (denote wonder). *Bhairavam*, *dāruṇam*, *bhīṣaṇam*, *bhīṣmam*, *ghoram*, *bhimam*, *bhayānakam*,

1. The textual reading is wrong.

2. The reading *tulya* in the text is not correct; *anya* would be better.

bhayāṅkaram and *pratibhayam* (denote frightening). *Raudra* is *ugra* (terrible). (These fourteen beginning with *adbhuta* are masculine relating to a sentiment.) (Otherwise they take) the three (genders). *Dara*, *trāsa*, *bhitiḥ*, *bhiḥ*, *sādhvasam* and *bhayam* (mean fear).

81b. The change relating to mind is *bhāva*. *Anubhāva* is the expression of the mental change.

82. (The words) *garva*, *abhimāna* and *ahamkāra* (denote pride). *Māna* is elevated thinking. *Anādara*, *paribhava*, *paribhāva* and *tiraskriyā* (mean disrespect).

83. (The words) *vriḍā*, *lajjā*, *trapā* and *hri* (would mean shyness). The desire for wealth (is) *abhidhyānam*¹. (The words) *kautūhalam*, *kautukam*, *kutukam* and *kutūhalam* (denote curiosity).

84. (The words) *vilāsa*, *bibboka*, *cibhrama*, *lalitam*, *helā* and *lilā* denoting the behaviour of women are known as *hāva* produced from erotic state.

85. (The words) *drava*, *keli*, *parihāsa*, *kriḍā* and *lilā* (denote only erotic sport). *Kūrdanam* (means child's play). A burst of laughter with a motive (is) *ācchuritakam*. The same, if little, (is known as) *smitam*.

86. *Adhobhuvanam* and *pātālam* (denote the nether world). (The words) *chidram*, *śvabhram*, *vapā* and *śusi* (denote a hole in general). *Garta* and *araṭa* (denote) a hole or pit in the earth. (The words) *tamisram*, *timiram* and *tama* (denote darkness).

87. (The words) *sarpa*, *ṣṭḍākuḥ*, *bhujaga*, *dantaśūka* and *bileśaya* (denote a serpent). (The words) *ṛṣam*, *kṣeḍa* and *garalam* (mean poison). (The words) *niraya* and *durgati* (mean hell). The latter is feminine.

88. (The words) *payas*, *kilālam*, *amṛtam*, *udakam*, *bhutanam* and *vanam* (are used in the sense of water). *Bhaṅga*, *taraṅga* and *ūrmi* denote waves. *Kallola* and *ullola* (denote mighty waves).

89. (The words) *ṣṛṣanti*, *bindavaḥ* and *ṣṛṣataḥ* (stand for drops of water). (The words) *kūlam*, *rodhas* and *tira(ka)m* (denote banks). That which rises from water is *puṇinam* (sand). (The words) *jambāla*, *pañka* and *hardama* (mean mire).

90-91. The overflow of floods is (denoted by the words)

1. Amara 409 reads 'abhidhyā' meaning desire to covet another's property.

jaloच्चवासह and *parivāhah*. (The words) *kūpakāh* and *vidārakāh* (are pits made in the dry bed of rivers). *Ātara* and *tarapanyam* (are used in the sense of ferry charges). The wooden water-carrier is *droṇi*. *Kaluṣa* and *āvila* are (used to mean) impure and *accha*, pure. (The word) *gabhiṣakam* (denotes deep). *Agādham* (means very deep). (The words) *dāśa* and *kaivarta* (denote a fisherman). *Jambūkas* (bivalve shells) are oysters in the water.

92. *Saugandhika* and *kalhāra* (denote white lotus blossoming in the evening). *Indivara* is a blue lotus. *Utpala* and *kuvalaya* denote blue lotus. *Kumuda* and *kairava* (are used to denote) white (lotus).

93. The root of these lotuses (is) *śālūka*. (The words) *padmam* and *tāmarasam* (denote a lotus). *Nilotpalam* and *kuvalayam* (denote a lily). The red lotus is known as *kokanadam*.

94-95. *Karahāṭa* and *śiphākandam* (denote the root of a lotus). *Kiñjalka* and *kesara* mean the filament, not in feminine.¹ (The words) *khani* and *ākara* (denote the place from where the gems are produced). The former is feminine. *Pāda* and *pratyan-tapārvata* (denote) smaller hills. That which is still nearer to the hill, (is said to be) *upatyakā*. The earth above the hill (is known as) *adhityakā*. The groups of words belonging to the heaven and hell have been described. Listen to me ! I shall describe words having different meaning.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SIXTYONE*

The indeclinables

Fire-god said :

1. (The indeclinable) *ān* is used in the (following) in the sense of a little, pervading, limit and in combination with verbs. (The particle) *ā* known as *pragṛhya* is used in sentences to denote remembrance. (The same with a *visarga*) (denotes) anger and affliction.

1. After summarising the first *Kāṇḍa* of *Amara*, the *Purāṇa* jumps to the middle of the second *Kāṇḍa*.

*The *Purāṇa* summarises in this chapter, from *Amara* III. paṅkti 2814.

2. (The particle) *ku* (is used) in the sense of sin, condemnation and little. *Dhik* (is used in the sense of) disgust and censure. *Ca* (is used) to connect with another, as a collection, union with one another, for connecting mutually independent words with a common word.

3. *Soasti* (is used in the sense of) benediction, well-being and meritorious act. *Ati* (has the sense of) excess and crossing. *Svit* (is used in the sense of) interrogation and doubt. *Tu* (is used to denote) division and limitation.

4. *Sakṛt* (is used in the sense of) together with and once. *Ārāt* (has the sense of) near and far off. (The word) *paścāt* (is used in the sense of) western direction and the end. *Api* (has the sense of collection). *Uta* has the sense of option.

5. *Śaśvat* (is used in the sense of) repetition and together with. *Sākṣāt* (denotes) perception and identity. *Bala* (is used in the following senses) : grief, pity, pleasure, surprise and invitation.

6. *Hanta* (is used to express) rejoice, pity, beginning of a sentence and grief. *Prati* is used according to tradition in (the sense) of a representative both as repetition and as indicative etc.

7. *Iti* (is used in the sense of) cause, context, making explicit etc. and conclusion. *Purastāt* (is used to denote) in the east, at first, before and in front of. *Api* is also (used in the same sense).

8. *Yāvat* and *tāvat* (are used in the sense of) whole, end, measure and determination. *Altha* (is used to express) auspiciousness, continuity, beginning, query and whole.

9. *Vṛthā* (is used to convey) uselessness and devoid of injunction. *Nānā* (conveys) many and both. *Nu* (expresses) query and option. *Anu* (expresses) succession and resemblance.

10. *Nanu* (is used to indicate) query, determination, permission, pacification and invitation. *Api* (is used to denote) censure, collection, query, doubt and conjecture.

11. *Iā* (expresses) comparison and option. *Sāmi* (conveys) half and disgust. *Amā* (denote) togetherness and proximity. *Kam* (means) water and head.

12. *Evam* (is used to convey) simiarity and such and such a manner. *Nūnam* (is used) in logic and determination. *Joṣam*

(is used to mean) silence and happiness. *Kim* (is used to convey) query and disgust.

13. *Nāma* (is used to mean) making explicit, conjecture, anger, approximation and censure. *Alam* conveys (the sense of) ornament, satiety, ability and prevention.

14. *Hūm* (is used to convey) doubt and inquiry. *Samayā* (denotes) proximity and middle. *Punaḥ* (conveys) not being the first and difference. *Niḥ* (expresses) certainty and prohibition.

15. *Purā* would (be used to indicate) continuity, long past, nearness and the future. The three (words) *ūrari*, *ūri* and *urari* (are used in the sense of) expansion and that which is agreed upon.

16. *Svaḥ* (is used in the sense of) heaven and other world. *Kila* (is used in the sense of) tidings and conjecture. (The word) *khalu* (is used to denote) prohibition, verbal embellishment, desire to know and pacification.¹

17. (The word) *abhitāḥ* (is used in the sense of) proximity, both ways, quickness, whole and facing. *Prāduḥ* (is used to convey) name and explicitness. *Mūṭhaḥ* (denotes) between one another and in secrecy.

18. (The word) *tiraḥ* (is used to denote) disappearance and horizontal. (The particle) *hā* (is used to express) pain, anger and grief. *Ahaha* (is used to denote) surprise and grief. (The particle) *hi* (is used to denote) cause and determination.

19. (The words) *çirāya*, *çirārātrāya*, *çirasya* and others (are used) in the sense of long time. *Muhuh*, *punaḥ punaḥ*, *śaśvat*, *abhikṣṇam* and *asakṛt* (again and again) have the same (sense).

20. (The words) *srāk*, *jhaṭiti*, *añjasā*, *ahnāya*, *śapadi*, *drāk* and *mañkṣu* are (used in the sense of) quickness. (The words) *bala-vat*, *suṣṭhu* and *kimuta* (denote) excessive. *Kim*, *kimu* and *uta* (are used in the sense of) option.

21. (The particles) *tu*, *hi*, *ca*, *sma*, *ha* and *va* (are used) for completing a quarter of a verse. *Su* and *ati* (are used to denote) worship (reverence). *Divā* (is used to denote) at day. *Doṣā* and *naktam* (are used in the sense of) night.

22. *Sāci* and *tirgḥ* (are used) in the sense of horizontally. (The words) *pyāṭ*, *pāṭ*, *aṅga*, *he*, *hai* and *bhoḥ* (are used) in the

1. The *Purāṇa* reads wrongly *avasara*.

sense of calling a person. *Samayā*, *nikaṣā* and *hiruk* (have the sense of proximity).

23. *Sahasā* (is used in the sense of) unexpected. *Purah*, *purataḥ* and *agrataḥ* (mean) in front of. *Svāhā*, *śrauṣaḥ*, *vauṣaḥ*, *vaṣaḥ* and *svadhā* (are used) in offering made to the gods.

24. (The words) *kiñcit*, *iṣat* and *manāk* (are used in the sense of) a little. *Pretya* and *amutra* (are used in the sense of) the other world. *Yathā* and *tathā* (convey) similarity. *Aho* and *ho* (indicate) surprise.

25-26. (The words) *tūṣṇīm* and *tūṣṇikam* (are used in the sense of) silence. *Sadyaḥ* and *sapadi* (denote) the present moment. *Diṣṭyā* and *samupajoṣam* (convey) rejoice. (The words) *antare*, *antarā* and *antareṇa* (denote) 'in the middle'. *Prasahya* means 'by force'. The two (words) *sāmpratam* and *sthāne* (convey the sense) appropriate. *Abhikṣṇam* and *śasvat* (mean) eternally.

27. (The words) *nahi*, *a*, *no* and *na* (indicate) non-existence. (The words) *māśma*, *mā* and *alam* (are used in the sense of) restraining. *Cet* and *yadi* (are used to denote) alternative. The two (words) *addhā* and *añjasā* (are employed to convey) truth.

28. *Prāduḥ* and *āviḥ* indicate explicitness. *Om*, *evam* and *paramam* (convey) opinion. (The words) *samantataḥ*, *paritaḥ*, *sarvataḥ* and *viśvak* (convey) all around.

29. *Kāmam* (is used to convey) permission unwillingly granted. An acceptance preceded by jealousy (is indicated by the word) *astu*. (The word *kāmam* is) also (used in the same sense). *Nanu* (indicates) a contrary opinion. *Kaccit* (indicates) affectionate enquiry.

30. (The words) *niḥ samam* and *duḥ samam* (are used to convey) condemned. *Yathāśvam* and *yathāyutham* (convey the sense) of appropriate or befitting. *Mṛṣā* and *mithyā* (indicate) false. *Yathārtham* and *yathātatham* denote truth.

31. (The words) *evam*, *tu*, *punaḥ*, *vai* and *vā* are expressions (indicating) conclusion. *Prāk* (conveys) the thing that has taken place already. The two (words) *nūnam* and *avaśyam* (are used to indicate) certainty.

32. *Samvat* (is used to mean) the year. *Arvāk* (means) below. *Am* and *evam* (convey) approval. *Svayam* (means) by the

self. *Nicaiḥ* (means) low. *Uccaiḥ* (means) great. *Prāyaḥ* (denotes) a great quantity. *Śanaiḥ* (is used in the sense of) slowly.

33. The word *sand* (denotes) eternal. *Bahiḥ* (conveys the meaning) outside. *Sma* (indicates) the past. *Astam* (denotes) invisible. *Asti* (conveys the sense) of reality. *U* is an expression of anger. *Ūm* (indicates) a query. *Ayi* (is an expression of) pacification.

34. *Hām* (is used in) discussion. (The word) *uṣā* (has the sense of) end of the night. *Namaḥ* (conveys) obeisance. *Aṅga* (is used) in the sense of again. *Duṣṭu* (is an expression of) censure and *suṣṭu*, of praise.

35. *Sāyam* (conveys the sense) in the evening. (The words) *prage* and *prātaḥ* (convey the sense) 'in the morning'. *Nikaṣā* (conveys the meaning) nearby. (The word) *parut* (denotes) the last year and *parāri*, the year before the last. *Tati* (denotes the current year).

36. *Adya* (denotes) the present day. (The words) *pūrvedyuḥ* etc. (convey the sense of) the previous day etc. Similarly one should know that (the words *uttaredyuḥ*, *āparedyuḥ*, *adharedyuḥ*, *anyedyuḥ*, *anyataredyuḥ* and *itaredyuḥ* are formed) from *uttara* (tomorrow), *āpara* (some other), *adhara* (the previous), *anya* (some other), *anyatara* (some other next) and *itara* (some other).

37. *Ubhayadyuḥ* and *ubhayedyuḥ* (convey the sense of) both the days. *Paredyavi* (means) on the next day. *Hyah* (denotes) yesterday and *svah*, the day yet to come next. *Paraivaḥ* (denotes) the day after tomorrow.

38. (The words) *tadā* and *tadānim* (denote at that time). *Yugapat* (means) once. *Sarvadā* and *sadā* (mean) always. *Etarhi*, *samprati*, *idānim*, *adhunā* and *sāmpratam* (mean) the present moment.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SIXTYTWO

Words having many meanings

Fire-god said :

1. (The word) *nāka* (is used to denote) the sky and heaven. (The word) *loka* (means) the world and people. *Śloka* (is used to mean) a verse and fame. *Sāyaka* (has the meaning) an arrow and sword.

2. *Ānaka* (denotes) a *bheri* as well as *paṭaha* (two kinds of drums). *Kalaṅka* is a mark as well as a scandal. (The letter) *ka* in the masculine (is used to denote) wind, *Brahmā* and the Sun and *kaṁ* in the neuter (is used to denote) head and water.

3. (The word) *pulāka* (denotes) empty or bad grain, abridgement and rice-water. (The word) *kauṭika* (is used in the sense of) Mahendra, *guggulu* (resin got from cow), owl, serpent and alligator.

4. A monkey and a dog (are denoted by the word) *śālā-vṛka*. *Mānam* is a means of measure. *Sarga* (is used in the sense of) one's nature, natural state, relinquishment, decision, chapter and creation.

5. (The word) *yoga* (is used in the sense of) an armour, means (expedience), contemplation and union. (The word) *bhoga* (has the meaning of) happiness and enjoying the company of a harlot. The word *abja* (is used to denote) conch and moon.

6. *Karaṇa* (denotes) a crow and the cheek of an elephant. *Śipivīṣṭa* (denotes) a leprous person. (The word) *riṣṭa* (is used in the sense of) prosperity, good and bad luck and *ariṣṭa*, good and bad luck.

7. (The word) *vyuṣṭi* (is used in the sense of) a fruit and plenty. (The word) *dr̥ṣṭi* (is used to denote) knowledge, eye and perception. (The word) *niṣṭah* (has the sense of) accomplishing, non-existence and destruction. (The word) *kāṣṭhā* (is used to denote) excellence, state and direction.

8. (The words) *iḍā* and *ilā* (convey the sense of) a cow, earth and speech. *Pragāḍham* (denotes) much and difficult. The word *dr̥ḍha* (means) capable of and stout.

9. *Vyūḍha* (has the meaning) placed in order and firmness. (The word) *Kṛṣṇa* (denotes) Vyāsa, Arjuna and Hari¹. *Pāṇa* (is used to denote) the stake in gambling etc., wages, price and a particular coin.

10. (The word) *guṇa* (is used in the sense of) the bow-string, quality of a substance, (qualities like) *sattva* (goodness), bravery² and treaty etc. (The word) *grāmaṇi* (is used to denote) excellent (person) and leader (in a village).

11. *Tṛṣṇā* (is used to convey) desire and desire to drink. (The word) *vihaṇi* (is used to denote) a merchant's shop. *Tikṣṇam* (is used to mean) poison, battle and iron in the neuter, but in all the three (genders) when (denoting) sharp-edged.³

12. (The word) *pramāṇa* (is used to mean) cause, limit in the *śāstra*, extent and the knower. *Kāraṇa* is the excellent means. It is also (used to denote) the sense-organs. (The word) *iriṇam* (is used to convey) a barren land and a desert.

13. (The word) *yantr* (is used in the sense of) a mahout and a charioteer. (The word) *hetu* (denotes) flame⁴. (The word) *śrutam* (is used to convey) scriptures and accurate knowledge. *Kṛtam* (is used to mean) the (first) *yuga* and enough.

14. *Pratita* (is used to mean) well-known and delight. *Abhijāta* (is used to denote) born in a good family and wise. (The word) *vivikta* (means) pure and devoid of men. *Mūrchita* (means) stupefied and elevated (prosperous).

15. *Artha* (conveys the sense) 'to be expressed', riches, an object, use and end. *Tīrtham* (expresses the sense of) water tank, scriptures, water courses honoured by sages and preceptor.

16. *Kakudaḥ* (is used in the sense of) importance, the insignia of a king and a limb of a bull (hump on the shoulder) in the masculine and neuter. The feminine (word) *saṃvit* (conveys the sense of) knowledge, conversation, a disciplined action, battle and name.

17. (The word) *upaniṣat* (is used in the sense of) *dharma* and secret doctrine (such as) philosophy. (The word) *śarat* (has the

1. This line is not in the *Amara*.

2. The text wrongly reads *sukla* instead of *śaurya*.

3. The printed text wrongly reads *svara* instead of *khara*.

4. Vide *Amara* pañkti 2476. The *Purāṇa* has omitted the other senses: ray of the Sun and weapon.

meaning of) a season and a year. (The word) *padam* (is used in the sense of) endeavour, protection, position, mark, foot and object.

18. (These are used) in all the three (genders): (The word) *svāda* (denotes) favourite and sweet. *Mṛdū* (denotes) not sharp and soft. *Sat* (is used to convey) truth, good people, existence, praiseworthy and respectable.

19. (The word) *vidhi* (is used to denote) an injunction and *Brahmā*. *Praṇidhi* (conveys the meaning of) request and a spy. *Vadhūḥ* (means) wife, son's wife and woman in general. *Sudhā* (denotes) plaster (used in temples etc.), nectar and the milk-hedge plant.

20. (The word) *śraddhā* (denotes) respect and desire. *Paṇḍitamanyaḥ* is one who thinks himself as learned and proud as well. *Brahmabandhu* (is used in the sense of) censure. *Bhānu* means ray as well as Sun.

21. *Grāun* (is used to denote) a hill and a stone. (The word) *pṛthakjana* (denotes) a fool and also a low class man. (The word) *śikharin* (denotes) a tree as well as a mountain. *Tanu* (denotes) the skin and the body.

22. (The word) *yatna* (denotes) soul, firmness, intellect, nature and path of Brahman. *Uttānam* (denotes) effort and remedial act for family. *Vyutthānam* (denotes) rejection.

23. (The word) *niryātana* (is used to denote) revenge, gift and restitution of a deposit. *Vyasanam* (has the sense of) grief, fall and crime due to passion or wrath.

24. Hunting, dice-play, dreaming during the day, accusation, women, intoxication, the triple symphony (dance, music and instrumental music) and strolling about idly are the group of crime arising from passion.

25. Slandering, bravery, offence, hatred, jealousy, extravagance, reprimand and harshness are the eight crimes arising from wrath.

26. *Kaupinam* (is used to denote) a wrong deed, secret and organ of generation. *Maithunam* (is employed in the sense of) relating to union with wife and sexual union. *Pradhānam* (denotes) the supreme spirit and intellect. *Prajñānam* (is used to mean) intellect and mark.

27. *Krandanam* (means) crying and calling. *Varṣma* (denotes) body and extent. *Ārāadhanam* (means) accomplishing, attainment and satisfaction.

28. *Ratnam* (is used to mean) that which is excellent among its own class. *Lakṣma* (is used to denote) a mark and chief. *Kalāpa* (denotes) an ornament, peacock's plumes, quiver and a collection.

29. (The word) *talpam* (is used to denote) bed, an apartment on the roof and woman. *Dimba* (is used the mean) a child and a fool. (The word) *stambha* (is used to denote) a pillar of a building and dull. (The word) *sabhā* (is used to convey the meaning of) an assembly and member of a house.

30. *Rasmi* (is) a ray (of light) as well as rein (of horses etc.). (The word) *dharma* (is used to denote) merit and self-control etc. (The word) *lalāma* (conveys the meaning of) tail, mark (on the forehead of horses etc.), horse, ornament, prominence and banner.

31. (The word) *pratyaya* (is employed in the sense of) subject to control, oath, knowledge, faith and cause. (The word) *saṁaya* (is used to convey) an agreement, practice, time, a dogma and knowledge.

32. (The word) *atyaya* (is used to mean) transgression and crime. *Satyam* (means) an oath and truth. (The word) *viryam* (is used in the sense of) strength, and greatness. *Rūpyam* (is used to mean) praiseworthy form.

33. *Durodara* (is employed to denote) a gambler and *duro-daram* (to denote) the stake in gambling. (The word) *kāntāra* (is used to mean) a great forest or a difficult path, in the masculine and neuter.

34. (The word) *hari* (is used to denote) *Yama* (god of death), *Anila* (wind), *Indra* (ruler of the celestials), *Candra* (Moon), *Arka* (Sun), *Viṣṇu* and a lion etc. (The word) *dara* (is employed to mean) a hole and fear, in the masculine and neuter. (The word) *jaṭhara* (means) hard (besides stomach).

35. *Udāra* (is used to denote) giver and great. *Itara* (means) different as well as low. *Cūḍā* (denotes) crown and hair. The lock of hair (is called) *mauli*.

36. (The word) *bali* (is used to mean) tax, offering etc. (The word) *balam* (is used to denote) an army and firmness.

(The word) *nivṛ* (is employed to mean) the knot on the waist garment of a women and ransom (against the prince etc. held as captive).

37-38a. (The word) *vr̥ṣa* (is used in the following senses) : the scrotum (that discharges semen), rat, excellence, good deed and a bull. (The word) *ākṛṣa* (is used to denote) dice-play, the die and the board for dice-play. (The word) *akṣam* (means) an organ, and in the masculine, the dice, difference in the measure, dispute and the *vibhitaka* (one of the three myrobalans).

38b. (The word) *uṣṇiṣa* (is used to mean) crown etc.¹ *Karṣū* conveys the sense of a small river.

39. (The word) *adhyakṣa* (means) visible and one who presides over. (The word) *vibhāvasu* denotes the Sun and Fire. (The word) *rasa* (is employed to denote) (the sentiments) such as erotic and others, poison, splendour, qualities (such as sweet, sour etc.), passion and juice.

40. (The word) *varcas* (denotes) feces as well as splendour. (The word) *āga* (denotes) sin and crime. (The word) *chandas* (means) poetry and desire. *Sādhiyān* (is used to denote) good as well as strong. *Vyūha* (means) a collection as well as (strength). (The word) *ahiḥ* (denotes) *Vṛtra* as well as a serpent². Fire, Moon and Sun (are referred to as) *tamonudāḥ* (destroyers of darkness).

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SIXTYTHREE

*The words denoting earth, city, forest and herbs**

Fire-god said:

1. I shall describe the words denoting earth, city, forest, herbs and lion etc. (The following words denote the earth) : *bhūḥ*, *anantā*, *kṣamā*, *dhātṛi*, *kṣmā*, *jyā*, *kuḥ* and *dhariṭri*.

1. The crown and the turban. Cf. *Amara Pañkti* 2776.

2. The *Purāṇa* omits this word. Cf. *Amara pañkti* 2812.

*The *Purāṇa* summarises *Amara kāṇḍas* II. 2, II. 3 and II. 5

2. (The words) *mṛt* and *mṛttikā* (denote a piece of earth). Commendable earth (is denoted by the words) *mṛtsā* and *mṛtsnā*. (The land space on the earth is denoted by the words) *jagat*, *viṣṭapam*, *loka*, *bhuvanam* and *jagati*.

3. (The words), *ayanam*, *vartma*, *mārga*, *adhva*, *panthā*, *padavi*, *syti*, *saraṇi*, *paddhati*, *padya*, *vartani* and *ekapadi* (denote a path).

4-6a. (The words) *pūh*, *puri*, *nagari*, *pattanam* and *puṭabhedanam* (denote a town). *Śihāṇiyam* is a big city surrounding big pathways. *Śākhānagaram* is a suburb of a principal city. The suburb where the harlots dwell is *veśa*. *Āpaṇa* and *niṣadyā* (denote) the place for selling goods. *Vipaṇi* and *panyavithikā* (denote) the market street. *Rathyā*, *pratoli* and *viśikhā* (denote) the pathways in the interior of a village. *Caya* and *vapram* (mean the earth dug up from a moat) in the masculine and neuter.

6b. *Prākāra*, *varaṇa* and *śāla* (denote the surrounding fence set up with poles, thorns etc.). A surrounding fence made up at the border (with bamboo, thorns etc.) (is called) *prācinam*.

7-8. *Bhitti* and *kuḍyam* (denote a wall). That wall set with bone etc. inside (is known as) *eḍūkaṁ*. (The words) *vāsa*, *kuṣi*, *śālā* and *sabhā* (denote the assembly hall). *Saṅjavanam* and *catuḥśālā* (is a group of four houses forming a court). *Parnaśālā* and *uṭaja* (not feminine) denote a hermitage. *Caityam* and *āyatanam* (denote a sacrificial hall). *Vājiśālā* and *mandurā* (denote a stable).

9. The dwelling place of the rich (is) *harmyādi*. The place of the gods and kings (is called) *prāsāda*. (The words) *dvāḥ*, *dvāram* and *pratihāra* (denote a door), where the word *dvāḥ* is feminine. *Vitardi* and *vedikā* (mean a fence).

10-11a. (The words) *kapotapālikā* and *viṭaṅkam*, respectively masculine and neuter (denote a pigeonhouse made of wood etc.). *Kapāṭa* and *arara* are synonyms (meaning a door). *Niḥstreṇi* and *adhirohiṇi* (denote steps made with wood etc. for ascending). *Sammārjani* and *śodhani* (mean broom-stick). *Saṅkara* and *avakara* (denote sweepings).

11b-12. (The words) *adri*, *gotra*, *giri* and *grāvā* (denote mountains in general). (The words) *gahanam*, *kānanam* and *vanam* (denote a forest). (The words) *ārāma* and *upavanam* (denote) an

artificial garden (that has been accomplished). The same that is fit for harem (is called) *pramadavanam*.

13. (The words) *vithi*, *āliḥ*, *āvaliḥ*, *paṅktiḥ* and *śreṇi* (denote a row). (The words) *lekhāḥ* and *rājayaḥ* (denote lines). A tree (that is seen) with fruits (produced) from flowers (is) *vānaspatyaḥ*. A tree (that is seen) with fruits not (produced) from flowers (is) *vanaspatiḥ*.

14. Those which end with fruit-bearing (are known as) *ośadhi-s*. (The words) *palāśi*, *druḥ*, *druma* and *agama* (denote a tree). (The words) *sthāṇu*, *dhruva* and *śaṅku* (denote a cut tree). (The word) *sthāṇu* is optionally masculine. (The words) *praphulla*, *utphulla* and *saṃphulla* (mean a flower that has blossomed).

15-16a. (The words) *palāśam*, *chadanam* and *paṇṇam* (denote a leaf). (The words) *idḥnam*, *edhaḥ* and *śamit*, feminine (denote dry wood and grass). *Bodhidruma* and *caladala* (denote the holy fig tree). *Dadhitha*, *grāhi*, *maunatha*, *dadhīphala*, *puṣpaphala* and *dantaśaṭha* (denote the woodapple tree).

16b-17. (The words) *udumbara*, *hemadugdha*, *koridāra* and *dripatraka* (denote *udumbara*). The *saṅtaparṇa* (tree) (is also known as) *viśāladvak*. The *kṛtamāla* (tree is also known as) *suvarṇaka*, *āreṇata*, *vyādhighāta*, *śampālaka* and *cuturaṅgala*.

18. The *Jambira* (tree is also called) *dantaśaṭha*. The *Varuṇa* (tree is also called) *tiktaśāka*. *Punnāga* (tree is also called) *puruṣa*, *tuṅga*, *kesara* and *devavallabha*.

19-20a. *Nimbataru*, *mandāra* and *pārijātaka* (are the other names of) *pāribhadra* (tree). *Vaṇjula* and *cithalṛt* (are the other names of) *timīśa* (tree). *Pitana* and *kapitana* (denote the *āmṛātaka* (tree). (The other names) of *madhūka* (are) *gudapūṣpa* and *madhudruma*.

20b. *Gudaphala* and *sraṅsi* (are the other names of) *pilu*. *Nādeyi* is the other name of *ambhuvelas*.

21. *Śigruḥ*, *tikṣṇagandhaka*, *akṣiśa* and *mocaka* (are the other names of) *śobhāñjana*. If this (*śobhāñjana*) is red (it is called) *madhusigruḥ*. *Ariṣṭa* and *phaniḥ* are synonyms.

22. *Lodhra* (is also called) *gālava*, *śābara*, *tiriṣṭa*, *tilva* and *mārjana*. *Uddālaka* (is also known as) *śeluh*, *śleṣmātaka*, *śita* and *bahuvāraka*.

23. (The other names of) *vikaṅkata* (are) *sruvāṇṛkṣa*, *granthila*

and *vyāghrapāt*. *Tinduka* (is also called) *sphūrjaka* and *kāla* (*skandha*)¹. (The terms) *nādeyi* and *bhūmijambuka* (denote *nāga-raṅga*)².

24. *Kākatindu* and (*kāka*) *piluka* are synonyms. *Kramuka* and *pañjikākhyā* would (denote *lohitalodhra*)³. *Kumbhi* (is also known as) *kaiḍarya* and *kaṭphala*.

25-26a. *Viravṛkṣa*, *aruṣkara* and *agnimukhi* (are the synonyms of) *bhallātaki* in (all the three genders). *Sarjaka*, *pitāsāraka*⁴ and *asana* (are synonyms of) *jiva* (*ka*). *Sarja* and *asvakarṇa* (are synonyms of) *sāli*.⁵ *Arjuna* (tree) (is also called) *virataru*⁶, *indrardruḥ*, and *kakubhaḥ*.

26b-27. *Ingudi* (is also known as) *tāpasataru*. *Sālmali* (is also known as) *mocā*. *Cirabilva*, *naktamāla* and *karaja* (are the other names of) *karāñjaka*. (*Pūtika* is also known as) *prakirya* and *pūti-karaja*. *Markaṣi* and *aṅgāravallari* (are varieties of *karāñja*)⁷.

28. *Rohi*, *plihāśatru* and *dāḍimapuṣpaka* (are synonyms of) *rohitaka*. *Khadira* (is also known as) *gāyatri*, *bālatanaya* and *danta-dhāvana*.

29. *Arimeda* and *viṣkhadira* (denote varieties of bad smelling *khadira*). *Kadara* (denotes) the white *khadira*. (*Eraṇḍa* is also called) *pañcāṅgula*, *vardhamāna*, *cañcu* and *gandharvahastaka*.

30-31a. *Piṇḍitaka* and *maruvaka* (are synonyms of *madana*). *Devadāru* (is also called) *pitadāru*, *dāru* and *pūtikāśṭham*. *Priyaṅgu* (is also known as) *śyāmā*, *mahilāhwayā*, *latā*, *govandani*, *gundrā*, *phalini* and *phali*.

31b-32a. *Śoṇaka* (is also known as) *maṇḍūkapaṇṇa*, *paṭiṇṇa*, *naṣa*, *kaṭvaṅga*, *ṣuṣṭuka*, *syonāka*, *sukanāsa*, *ṛkṣa*, *dirghavarṇta* and *kuṣannaṣa*.

32b. *Pitadru* and *sarala* (are synonyms). *Nicula*, *ambuḍja* and *hijjala* (are the synonyms of a kind of reed).

1. Cf. *Amara paṅkti* 725.

2. Cf. *ibid. paṅkti* 724.

3. Cf. *ibid. paṅkti* 730.

4. The *Purāṇa* wrongly reads *pitāsāla*. Cf. *Amara paṅkti* 735.

5. Cf. *Amara paṅkti* 737. The purāṇic reading is wrong.

6. Cf. *Amara paṅkti* 738.

7. Cf. *Amara paṅkti* 745.

33. *Kākodumbarikā* and *phalguḥ* (are the synonyms of *malayū*. *Aṛiṣṭa*, *picumardaka*¹, *sarvatobhadra* (are synonyms of) *nimba*. *Śīriṣa* (is also known as) *kapitana*.

34-35a. *Va (ba) kula* (is said to be *vañjula*. (*Kapilā*² is also called as) *picchilā* and *agurusimśapā*. *Jayā*, *jayanti* and *tarkāri* (are synonyms of *vaijayantikā*³. *Kaṇikā* (is also known as) *gaṇikārikā*, *śrīparṇam* and *agnimantha*. *Vatsaka* and *girimallikā* (are synonyms of *kuṣaja*).⁴

35b-36. *Kālaskandha* (is a synonym of) *tamāla*. *Taṇḍuliya* (is known as) *alpamāriṣa*. *Sinduvāra* (is also known as) *nirguṇḍi*. The same (*mallikā*) grown in the forest (is known as) *āṣphoṭā*⁵. *Yūthikā* (is also known as) *gaṇikā* and *ambaṣṭhā*. *Navamālikā* (is also known as) *saptalā*.

37. *Atimukta* and *puṇḍraka* (are different varieties of *kunda*).⁶ *Kumāri* (is also known as) *sahā* and *taraṇi*. 'Therein', the red variety is *kurabaka* and the yellow variety is *ṭuruṇṭaka*.

38. The blue *jhinṭi* (is also known as) *bāṇā*. (It is also known as *aiṣi* and *ṛtagala*⁸.) *Jhinṭi* (in general is known as) *saireyaka*. If it is red, it is known as *kurabaka*. If it is yellow, it is known as *sahacarī* (and also as *sahacara*).

39. *Kitava* and *dhūrta* (are the other names of) *dhattūra*. *Rucaka* (is the other name of) *mātuluṅṅaka*. *Samirāṇa*, *maruvaka*, *prasthapuṣpa* and *phaṇijjaka* (are the synonyms of *jambira*).⁹

40-42a. *Kuṭheraka* (is the other name of) *parṇāsa*. *Vasuka* and *āṣphoṭu* (are the synonyms of) *arka*. *Śūamalli* and *pāśupata* (are synonyms). *Uṇḍā*, *vykṣādani*, *jivantikā* and *vykṣaruhā* (are the synonyms of the plant that clings to a tree and grows). *Guḍūci* (has the other names) *tantrikā*, *amṛtā*, *somavallī* and *idhuparṇi*. *Mūrvā* (is also called) *moraṣṭā*, *madhūlikā*, *madhuṛeṇi*, *gokarṇi* and *piluparṇi*.

1. Cf. *Amara pañkti* 773-picumanda.

2. Cf. *ibid. pañkti* 773.

3. Cf. *ibid. pañkti*. 779.

4. Cf. *ibid. pañkti*. 781.

5. The *Puṇḍra* mixes with the previous. Cf. *Amara pañktis* 785 and 788.

6. Cf. *Amara. pañkti* 792.

7. Refers to *amlāna*. Cf. *Amara. pañkti* 796.

8. Cf. *Amara pañkti* 797.

9. Cf. *ibid. pañkti* 806-807.

42b-43. *Pāṭhā* (is also known as) *āmbaṣṭhā*, *viddhakarni*, *pracinā* and *vanatiktikā*. *Kaṣuḥ*, *kaṣumbharā*, *cakrāṅgi* and *śakulādani* (are the names of *kaṣurohiṇi*¹). *Āmaguptā*, *prāvṛṣāyī*² and *kapikacchu* (are the other names of) *markaṭi*.

44. *Apāmārga* (is also known as) *śaikharika*, *pratyakparṇi* and *mayūra*. *Phaṇjikā*³ and *brāhmaṇi* (are the other names of) *bhārgi*. *Dravanti*, *śambari* and *vṛṣā* (are synonyms).

45. *Maṇḍūkapaṇi*, *bhaṇḍiri*, *samaṅgā* and *kālameṣikā* (are synonyms of *mañjiṣṭhā*). *Rodani*, *kacchuiā*, *anantā*, *śamudrāntā* and *durālabhā* (are synonyms of *dhanvaṣā*)⁴.

46. *Prṣiṭparṇi*, *prthakparṇi*, *kalāṣi*, *dhāṇi* and *guhā* (are synonyms). *Nidigdrikā*, *spṛṣi*, *vyāghri*, *kṣudrā* and *duṣṣpṛṣā* (are synonyms).

47. *Avalguja*, *somarāji*, *suvali*, *somavallikā*, *kālameṣi*, *hṛṣṭaphalā* and *pūtiphalā* (are synonyms of) *vākuci*.

48. *Kaṇṭhā*, *uṣanā* and *upakulyā* (are synonyms). *Śreyāvi* and *gajapippalī*⁵ (are synonyms). *Cavyaṁ* and *carikā* (are synonyms). *Kākaciñci*, *guñja* and *kṣṇalā* (are synonyms).

49-50. *Viṣṭā*, *viṣā* and *pratiṣā* (are synonyms). *Vanaṅgāṣṭhā* and *gokṣura* (are synonyms). *Nārāyaṇi* and *śatamūli* (are synonyms). *Kāliyaka*, *haridruḥ*, *dāru*, *pacampacā*, *dāruśuklā*⁶ and *haimavati*⁷ (are synonyms of *parjani*). *Ugragandhā*, *śaḍgṛanthā*, *golomi* and *śataparikā* (are the synonyms of) *vacā*.

51. *Āśphoṭā* and *girikarni* (are synonyms). *Simhāsya*, *vāsaka* and *vṛṣa* (are synonyms). *Madhurikā* (is also called) *misi* and *chatrā*. *Kokilākṣa* (is also known as) *ikṣura* and *kṣura*.

52. *Viḍaṅga* is known as *kṛmighna* (and is used) in the masculine and neuter. *Vajradru* (is also known as) *snuk*, *snuhi* and *sudhā*.⁸ *Mṛdvikā* and *gostani* (are the other names of) *drākṣā*. *Balā* and *vāṭyālakā* (are synonyms).

1. Cf. *Amara paṇkti* 819.

2. *prāvṛṣāyāṇi*. cf. *Amara paṇkti* 821.

3. *Amara paṇkti* 827 reads *hañjikā*.

4. Cf. *Amara paṇkti* 831-832.

5. *karipippalī*. Cf. *Amara paṇkti* 842.

6. *Amara paṇkti* 852 reads *dāru haridrā*.

7. *ibid.* reads *parjani*.

8. *Amara paṇkti* 859 reads *guḍā*.

53. *Kālā* and *masūraṇḍalā* (are synonyms of black triyrt) *Triyrt* (is also known as) *tripuṭā* and *triyrtā*. *Madhukam*, *klitakam*, *yaṣṭimadhukam* and *madhuyaṣṭikā* (are synonyms).

54. *Iksugandhā* (is also known as) *vidāri*, *kṣīṇasukla* and *krōṣṭri*. *Gopi*, *śyāmā*, *śārivā* and *anantā* (are the other names of) *utpalaśārivā*.

55. *Mocā* and *rambhā* (are synonyms of) *kādali*. *Bhaṇṭāki* and *duṣṣṛadhaṇṇi* (are synonyms). *Sālaparṇi* (is also called) *sthirā* and *dhruvā*. *Śīṅgi* and *viṣa* (are the synonyms of the herb) *viṣabha*.

56. *Gāṅgeruki* (is also called) *nāgabālā*. *Muṣa(sa)li* and *tālamūlikā* (are synonyms). *Patolikā* (is also known as) *jyotsni* and *jāla*. *Aṣṭrṅgi* and *śivānikā* (are synonyms).

57. *Lāṅgali* (is also known as) *agruśikhā*. *Tāmbūli* and *nāgavalli* (are synonyms). (The fragrant) *tenukā* (is also called) *hareṇu* and *kauntī*. *Harivā* (is also known as) *diṣyanāgarām*.¹

58. (The other names of) *śatya* (are) *kālānusāvi*, *vyddhā*, *aśmapāṣṣam* and *śitaśvam*. *Murā* (is also known as) *tālaparṇi*, *dailya* and *gandhakūṭi*.

59. *Śukarn* and *barham* (are other names of) *granthiparṇam* (as well as) *balā*.² *Triputā* and *truṭi* (are the synonyms of *sūkṣmailā*)³. *Suā* and *tāmalakī* (are synonyms of *bhūmyāmalakī*). *Haru* and *haṭṭavilāsini* (are synonyms).

60. *Kuṣamaṣam*, *dāśapuram*, *āñcyam* and *paripelavam* (are synonyms). *Jaṣāmāṇsi* (is also known as) *tapasūmi*. *Śpikkā* (is also called) *devi*, *latā* and *laghu*.⁴

61. *Karcūnaka* and *dāviḍaka* (are synonyms). *Gandhamūli* is also known as *śaṭhi*. *Vṛddhadānaka* (is also known as) *ṛkṣagandhā*, *chagalāntrā* and *vegi*.

62. *Raktaphalā*, *bimbikā* and *piluparṇi* (are the other names of) *tuṇḍikeri*. *Cāṅgeri*, *cakrikā*⁵ and *ambaṣṭhā* (are synonyms). *Svarnakṣīri* (is also known as) *himāvati*.

1. This name is not found in *Amara paṇkti* 892.

2. This term is not found in *Amara paṇkti* 913.

3. Cf. *Amara paṇkti* 899.

4. The purāṇic reading *laśūh* is obviously wrong.

5. *Amara paṇkti* 929 reads *cukrikā*.

63. *Sahasravedhi*, *cakra* and *śatavedhi* (are the other names of) *amlavetas*. *Jivanti* (is also known as) *jivanti* and *jivā*. *Bhū(mī)-nimba* (is also called) *kirātaka*.¹

64. *Kūrcasīrṣa* and *madhuraka* (are synonyms). *Candra*, *kapi-ṣṛka*,² *dadrughna* and *eḍagaja* are synonyms. Probably *varṣābhū* and *sobahāriṇi* are also synonyms (?).

65. *Kunandati*, *nikumbhastrā*, *yamāni* and *vārṣikā* (are synonyms).³ *Laṣunam* (is also known as) *gr̥ñjanam*, *aṛiṣṭa*, *mahākanda* and *rasonaka*.

66-67. *Badarā* and *gr̥ṣṭi* (are synonyms of) *vārāhi*. *Vāyasi* (is also known as) *kākamāci*. *Madhurā* (is also known as) *śatapūṣpā*, *śitacchatrā*, *aticchatrā*, *misi*, *avākpuṣpi* and *kāravi*. *Saraṇū*, *prasāraṇi*, *kaṭambharā* and *bhadrabalā* (are synonyms). *Karcūra* and *śaṭi* (are synonyms).

68. *Paṭola* (is also known as) *kulaka* and *tiktaka*. *Kāravella* (is also known as) *kaṭhillaka*. *Kūsmāṇḍaka* (is otherwise called) *karkāru*. *Karkaṭi* (is known as) *urvāruḥ* and (used) in the feminine.

69. *Kaṭutumbi* (is also called) *ikṣvāku*. *Indravāruṇi* (is also known as) *viśālā*. (The other names of) *sūraṇa* (are) *arśoghna* and *kanda*. *Mustaka* and *kuruvindaka* (are synonyms).

70. *Veṇu* (is also called) *vaṁśa*, *tvaksāra*, *karmāra*, *maskara* and *tejana*. *Chatra*, *aticchatra*, *pālagnha*, *mālātrṇaka* and *bhūstṛṇa* (denote different kinds of *jalatṛṇa*).

71a. *Tāla* (is also called) *tṛṇarāja*. *Pūga* (is also called) *ghoṇṭā* and *kramuka*.

71b. *Śārdūla*⁴ and *dvīpi* (are synonyms of) *vyāghra* (tiger). *Haryakṣa*, *kesari* and *hari* (denote a lion).

72. (The words) *kola*, *potri* and *varāha* would (denote a boar). (The words) *koka*, *iḥāmṛga* and *ṣṛka* (denote a wolf). *Lūtā*, *ūrṇanābha*, *tantuvāya* and *markaṭa* (denote a spider).

73. *Vṛścika* and *śūkakiṭa* (scorpion) (are synonyms). *Sāraṅga*⁵ and *tokaka* are synonyms (denoting a *cātaka* bird). *Kṛkavāku* and

1. *kirātatikta*. cf. *Amara pañkti* 934.

2. Corrupt reading for *kāmpilya* and *karkaṣa*. cf. *Amara pañkti* 941-2.

3. The Purāṇic reading is corrupt. Cf. *Amara pañkti* 937-38.

4. The section on animals begins here.

5. From here begins the listing of synonyms of birds.

tāmracūḍa (are synonyms denoting a cock). *Pika* and *kokila* (are synonyms denoting a cuckoo).

74. *Karaṣa* and *ariṣṭa* (denote) a crow. *Baka* and *kahva* denote a crane. *Cakravāka* is also known as *koka* and *cakra*. *Kādamba* and *kalahamsaka* (are synonyms).

75. *Paṭaṅgikā* and *puttikā* (are synonyms denoting different kinds of honey-bees). *Dvirepha*, *puṣpalīṭ*, *bhṛṅga*, *ṣaṭpada*, *bhramara* and *ali* (denote a bee).

76. *Kekī* (denotes a peacock). *Kekā* (denotes) the sound made by a peacock. (The words) *śakuntī*, *śakunī* and *divija* (denote a bird). *Pakṣati* is the base of the wing. It is in the feminine. *Cañcu* and *troṣi* (denote the beak). Both (the words) are feminine.

77-78. (The words) *udḍinam* and *saṇḍinam* (denote) the gait (of birds). *Kulāya* and *niḍam* (denote a nest). They are (used) in the masculine and neuter. *Peṣi*, *koṣa* and *aṇḍa* (denote an egg). If less than two, *aṇḍa* is used in the neuter. (The young one of a bird is denoted by the words) *prthuka*, *sāvaka*, *śīśu*, *ṣota*, *pāka*, *arbhaka* and *ḍimbha*. (The following words denote a collection) : *sandoha*, *vyūhaka*, *gaṇa*, *stoma*, *ogha*, *nikara*, *vrāta*, *nikurambam*, *kadambakam*, *saṅghātaḥ*, *sañcayaḥ* and *vṛndam*. *Puñja*, *rāśi* and *kūṭakam* (are used to denote heap of grains).

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SIXTYFOUR

Words denoting men and the four classes of men

Fire-god said:

1. I shall describe the class of men, brahmins, *kṣatriya-s*, *vaiśya-s* and *sūdra-s*. (The words) *naraḥ*, *pañcajanāḥ*, *martyāḥ* (denote men). (The words) *yoṣit*, *yoṣā*, *abalā* and *radhūḥ* (denote a woman).

2. A person seeking a lover, going to the place indicated (by the lover) (is called) *abhisārikā*. (The words) *kulaṭā*, *pumś-cali* and *asatī* (mean a wanton woman). A nude woman (is called) *koṭavi*.

3. *Kātyāyani* is middle-aged, (wears ochre garment and is without husband)¹. One who lives in other's house (is called) *sairindhri*. (She is independent and proficient in hair dressing etc.).² *Asikui* is not old (and serves the harem). *Mālini* is a woman in her monthly course.

4. *Vāstrī*, *gaṇikā* and *veśyā* (mean a courtesan). Brothers' wives are (mutually known as) *yātara*-s. Husband's sister (is known as) *nanānda*. (The descendants for seven generations are known as) *sapiṇḍa*-s and *sanābhi*-s.

5. (Sisters born of the same womb are called) *samānodaryah*, *sodaryah*, *sagarbhayah* and *sahajāḥ*. (The words) *sagotī*, *bāndhava*, *jñātī*, *bandhu*, *svaḥ* and *svajana* are synonyms (denoting relatives belonging to the same clan).

6. (The words) *dampatī*, *jampatī*, *bhāryāpatī* and *jāyāpatī* (denote the husband and wife). (The outer skin of the embryo is known as) *garbhāśaya*, *jarāyu* and *ulbam*. (The foetus is called) *kalala*, in the neuter.

7. (The words) *garbha* and *bhrūna* are synonyms denoting (the young one in the womb). (The words) *kliba*, *śaṇḍha* (are used to denote) a eunuch. *Uttānaśayā* and *ḍimbā* would (mean a child that sucks milk from the mother's breasts). *Bāla* (boy) (is known to be) *māṇavaka*:

8. (The words) *picaṇḍila* and *brhatkuḥṣī* (mean a person having a big belly). (The word) *abhraṣa* (is used to mean) a *natanā-sika* (one having a flat nose). (A naturally deformed person is denoted by the words) *vikalāṅga* and *apogaṇḍa*. (The words) *ārogyam* (free from illness) would (also be known as) *anāmayaṃ*.

9. (A deaf person is denoted by the words) *eḍa* and *badhira*. (The word) *gaḍula* (is used to denote) a hunch-back. (The word) *kuni* (is used to denote) a person having a maimed hand. (The words) *kṣaya*, *śoṣa* and *yakṣmā* (mean consumption). *Pratī-yāya* and *pinasa* (catarrh) (are synonyms).

10. *Kṣut*, *kṣutam* and *kṣava* (sneezing) (are synonyms). (The word) *kṣut* is feminine. (The words) *kāsa* and *kṣavathu* (meaning cough) are both masculine. *Śoṭha* (swelling) is also known as

1. The purāṇa omits the other characteristics. See *Amara pañkti* 1108.

2. Cf. *Amara pañkti* 1109.

svayathu and *śopha*. *Pādasphoṭa* (sore on the foot) (is also known as) *vipādikā*.

11. *Kilāsam* and *sidhmam* (scab) are synonyms. *Pāma*, *pāmā* and *vicarcikā* (are used to mean) *kacchū* (scab). (The words) *koṭha*, *maṇḍalakam*, *kuṣṭham* and *śvitram* (white leprosy) (are synonyms). *Ar'as* (piles) (is also known as) *durnāmakam*.

12. (The words) *ānāha* and *nibandha* (denote suppression of urine and feces). *Grahapīruḥ* and *prāṇhikā* (denote diarrhoea). (The words) *bijam*, *viryam*, *indriyam* and *suklam* mean semen). (The words) *palalam*, *kraiyam* and *āmīyam* (denote flesh).

13. *Bukkā* and *agramāṁsam* (denote the lotus-shaped flesh in the heart). *Hṛdayam* and *hṛt* (heart, are synonyms. *Īapā* and *rasā* (denote the marrow of the flesh). The artery on the back of the neck (is known as) *manyā*. (The words, *nāḍī*, *dhamanī* and *śīrā* (artery) (are synonyms).

14-15. *Tilukam* and *kloma* (denote lump of flesh). *Mastiṣkam* (is the fluid on the fore-head). *Dūṣikā* (denotes, the rheum of the eyes. *Antra* (intestine) (is also known as, *puritat*. *Pliḥā* and *gulma* (spleen, (are synonyms). (The words, *vasnāsā* (in the masculine and *māyū* (in the feminine) (denote tendon). *Kālakhāṇḍam* and *yakṛt* are synonyms (denoting liver). *Karṣara* and *kapāla* (denote skull), *kapālam* in the neuter. Bones are in general denoted by the words) *kikāsam*, *kulyām* and *asthi*.

16. 'The word, *kaṇḥālā* (denotes) skeleton in the body. (The word) *kaśeruka* (denotes) back-bone. The skull-bone (is called) *karoti*, in the feminine. (The word) *parśukā* denotes the bones on the sides (of the body).

17. The limbs of the body (are denoted by the words) *aṅgam*, *pratika* and *avaṣara*. (The words *śariram*, *varṣma* and *vigraha* (denote a body). *Śroṇi-phalakam* (buttocks) (is also called) *kaṣa* (and that word is, masculine. *Kaṣi*, *śroṇi* and *kakudmati* (hip) (are synonyms).

18. The hinder part of the waist of women (is known as) *nīlamba*, in the neuter. The frontal part is *jaghanam*. The *kūpaka-s* (hollows below the loins) are in the *nīlamba*. (The word is used) in the neuter. (The hollows above the loins are called) *kukundara-s*.

19. The fleshy portions in the hip are called) *sphicau* (*sphic*) and *kaṭiprothau*. (The organ of generation of woman is called)

upastha (because that is near) the two which are to be described now. In the case of women it is (called) *bhagam* and *yoni*. *Śiśna*, *medhra*, *mehanam* and *śepha* (denote penis).

20. (The words) *picaṇḍa*, *kuṣi*, *jaṭharam*, *udaram* and *tundam* (denote belly). *Stana* and *kuca* (mean breast). *Cūcuka* is the tip of breast. (The words) *kroḍam* and *bhujāntaram* denote chest. The word *kroḍam* is not masculine.

21. *Skandha*, *bhujasiras* and *aṃsa* denote shoulder. (The junction of shoulder is known as) *jatru*. (Nail is denoted by the words) *punaḥbhava*, *kararuha*, *nakhara* and *nakha* (used) not in feminine.

22. *Prādesika* is the span of the thumb and the forefinger. *Tālā* is the span of the thumb and the middle finger. *Gokarṇa* is the span of the thumb and the ring finger. The span of the thumb and the little finger is *vitasti* measuring twelve finger breadths.

23. The open hand with the fingers extended (is called) *capēṭa*, *pratala* and *prahasta*. *Ratni* (is the distance) from elbow to the end of closed fist. *Aratni* (is the distance) from elbow to the end of little finger.

24. Neck with threelines (is called) *kambugrivā*. (The words) *avaṭu*, *ghāṭā* and *vṛkāṭikā* (denote the backside of the union of head and neck). *Cibuka* (chin) is below the lips, then the two *gaṇḍa-s* (cheeks), the throat and chin.

25-26. The outer ends of eyes are (called) *apāṅga-s*. *Kaṭākṣa* (is used to denote) the look with *apāṅga*. (The words) *cikura*, *kuntala* and *vāla* (denote hair). (The words) *pratikarma*, *prasādhanaṃ*, *ākalya*, *veṣa* and *nepathyam* (denote) beautification. It is perceivable and is produced by union with a play. *Cūḍāmaṇi* is the crest-jewel. The central gem in a necklace (is called) *tarala*.

27. (The ear-ornament is called) *karnikā* and *tālapatra*. *Lambanam* or *lalantikā* (denote) a long necklace. (The words) *mañjira* and *nūpura* (denote the anklet) on the foot. *Kiṅkiṇi* and *kṣudraghaṇṭikā* (denote a small bell).

28. (The words) *dairghyam*, *dyāma* and *āroha* (are used to denote the length of a cloth etc.). (The words) *pariṇḍha* and *viśalata* (denote the width). *Paṭaccaram* (denotes) a rag. *Saṃvyaṇam* (is the cloth worn) on the shoulder.

29. (The words) *racanā* and *parisyanda* (denote the arrangement of flowers etc.). (The words) *ābhoga* and *paripūrṇatā* (denote the fulfilling of all services). *Samudgaka* and *samputaka* (mean a casket). (The words) *pratigraha* and *patadgraha* (mean a spittoon).

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SIXTYFIVE

Words relating to the class of brahmins

Fire-god said :

1-3. (Words denoting genealogy are) *vaṁśa*, *anuvāya*, *gotram*, *kulam*, *abhijana* and *anvaya*. *Ācārya* is that person who expounds the scriptures. The person who instructs the priests in the sacrifice (is called) *vratī*, *yaṣṭa* and *yajamāna*. *Upākrama* (denotes) the beginning after having known (the course of action). Those having the same preceptors (are called) *satirthyāḥ*. The members of an assembly (are called) *sabhya-s*, *sāmājika-s*, *sabhāsada* and *sabhāstāra-s*. (The priests who officiate in a sacrifices are known as) *ṛtvija-s* and *yājaka-s*. *Adhvaryu* is the priest associated with the *Yajurveda*. *Udgātṛ* is the priest proficient in the *Sāmaveda* and *Hotṛ* in the *R̥gveda*.

4. *Caṣāla* is the wooden ring on the top of a sacrificial post. *Sthaṇḍilam* and *catvaram* are synonyms (denoting the ground made, ready for a sacrifice). The transformation that occurs in milk by the addition of curd is known as *āmikṣā*.

5. Ghee together with curd (is called) *pṛṣadājya*. (The words) *paramānnaṁ* and *pāyasam* (denote cooked rice mixed with milk). The animal that is killed in a sacrifice after being sanctified with formulae (is called) *upākṛta*.

6. (The words) *paramparākam*, *śamanam* and *prokṣaṇam* (convey) the sense of killing. (The words) *pūjā*, *namasyā*, *apaciti*, *saparyā*, *arcā* and *arhaṇā* are synonyms (denoting worship).

7. *Varivasyā*, *śuśrūṣā*, *paricaryā* and *upāsana* (are synonyms meaning mode of worship). (The words) *niyama* and *vratam* (signify religious observance). (They are) not feminine. It consists of the meritorious deeds such as fasting and the like.

8. The first injunction is called *mukhya*. That which in inferior (subordinate) to that (is known as) *anukalpa*. *Kalpa* (the texts laying down injunctions) is known as *vidhi* and *krama*. *Viveka* is the power to distinguish between the world and the spirit.

9. The receiving of instruction in the scriptures after purification is known as *upākaranam*. (An ascetic is denoted by the words) *bhikṣu*, *ṣīrurāt*, *karmuṇḍi*, *pārāśari* and *maskari*.

10. (The sages are in general denoted by the words) *ṛṣi-s* and *satya vacah*. A student who has had the ceremonial bath (is called) *snātaka*. Those who have conquered the sense-organs (are known as) *yatinah* and *yatyayah*.

11. The daily rite which depends on the body as means (is known as) *yama*. But *nyama* is that which depends on external conditions (and is voluntary). The state of *brahman* (is denoted by the words) *brahmabhūyam*, *brahmatvam* and *brahmasāyujyam*.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SIXTYSIX

Words relating to kṣatriyas, vaiśyas and other classes

Fire-god said :

1. (The words denoting the warrior caste are) *mūrdhūbhīṣkta*, *rājanya*, *bāhuja*, *kṣatriya* and *virāt*. A king who is respected by the vassals is known as *adhiśvara*.

2. (A king who holds sway over the entire earth is known as) *cakravarti* and *sārvabhauma*. A king who is different from the above is a *maṇḍaleśvara*. (Minister or counsel is known as) *mantri*, *dhisaciva* and *amātya*. (The chief counsel is known as) *mahāmātra* and *pradhānaka*.

3. A person who attends to disputes (is called) *prāḍvivāka* and *akṣadarśaka*. The man in charge of gold in a royal treasury (is called) *bhaurika*. (The words) *adhyakṣa* and *adhikṛta* are synonyms (denoting a superintendent). The person invested with the charge of the harem (is called) *antarvaṁśika*. (The words) *sauvidalla-s*, *kañcūkin-s*, *sthāpatya-s* and *sauvida-s* (also denote the same).

4-6a. The words *śa (sa) ṇḍa* and *varṣavara* (denote the servants in the harem, who are eunuchs). (The words) *sevaka*, *arthi* and *anujivi* (denote a servant). A ruler of the region other than one's own is a *śatru* (enemy). One who is beyond that region is a *mitram* (friend). A person beyond that is *udāsina* (neutral). A king who is in the rear (of a kingdom) is *pārśvagrāha*.

6b-7. (A spy is denoted by the words) *cara*, *spaśa* and *pranidhi*. The time that is to come is *āyati*. The present time is known as *tatkāla* and *tadātvam*. The fruit accruing in future (is called) *udarka*. (The fear that is caused) by such factors as excessive rains and fire (is) *adr̥ṣṣam*. (The fear that is caused) by one's own kingdom or other (is) *dr̥ṣṣam*.

8. (The words) *bhadrakumbha* and *pūrīakumbha* (are synonyms meaning a pitcher that is full). (A vessel made of gold is called) *bhr̥ṅgāra* and *kanakālukā*. (A rutting elephant is called) *prabhuṇa*, *garjita* and *matta*. (A particle of water splashed by the trunk of an elephant is called) *vamathu* and *kanasikara*.

9. A gaul is known as *śmī*, in the feminine and *aṅku'a*, in the masculine. (The words) *puristoma* and *kutha* (denote) the carpet on the back of an elephant in both (the genders). (A vehicle used by ladies for transport is called) *karnīṣṭha* and *pravahanam*. The words *dolā* (palanquin) and *preṅkhā* (swing, etc. (are used) in the feminine.

10. (The words) *ādhoṇiṇāḥ*, *hastipakāḥ*, *hastyaṇohāḥ* and *niṣādīṇāḥ* (denote mahouts). (Warriors are denoted by the words) *bhātāḥ*, *yodhāḥ* and *yoddhārāḥ*. (The words) *kañcuka* and *vāraṇa*¹ (mean armour). They are not feminine.

11. *Śiṣanya* (is used to denote) *śiṣastra* (helmet). (The words) *tanutram*, *varma* and *daṁśanam* (are used to mean armour). (The words) *āmuḥta*, *pratimuḥta*, *pinaddna* and *apinaddha* (are used to mean a person covered by armour).

12-14. An arrangement of army (for the sake of battle) is *vyūha*. (The words) *cakram* and *anikam* (denote an army). It is not feminine. The *paṭṭi* (consists of) an elephant, a chariot, three cavalymen and five infantry. Three times the constituents of a *paṭṭi* and subsequently in the same way in order would be

1. *Amara paṅkti*. 15 93 reads *varavāṇa*.

senāmukham, gulma, gaṇa, vāhini, pṛtanā, camūḥ anikini, daśānikini and *akṣauhīni*. A bow (is also known as) *kodaṇḍa*, and *iṣvāsa*. The tip (*koṭi*) (of a bow) is known as *aṭani*.

15. The middle of a bow (is called) *lastaka*. (The bowstring is called) *maurvi, jyā, śiñjini* and *guṇa*. (The words) *pṛṣatka, bāṇa, viśikha, ajihmaga, khaga* and *āsuga* (denote an arrow).

16. (The words) *tūṇa, upāsaṅga, tūṇira* and *niṣaṅga* (denote a quiver) both in the masculine and feminine. (The words) *asi, riṣṭi, nistrimśa, karavāla* and *kṛpāṇa* (mean a sword).

17. *Tsaru* is the handle of a sword. *Īli* and *karavālikā* (denote a short sword). The words *kuṭhāra* and *svadhiti* (denote an axe). (The word *kuṭhāra* is used in) both (masculine and feminine). (The words) *churikā* and *asiputrikā* (denote a knife).

18. *Prāsa* is known to be *lunta* (meaning a spear). *Sarvalā* and *tomara* (mean an iron club) (used) in the masculine and neuter. (Bards who sing praises and wake up in the morning are called *vaitālīka-s* and *bodhakara-s*. *Māgadha-s* (are bards in general). *Vandin-s* and *stuti* (*pāṭhaka-s*) (are bards singing in praise of the kings).

19. *Samśaptaka-s* are those who do not turn back from battle. (The words) *patākā, vaijayanti, ketanam* and *dhvajam* (denote a banner). (The word) *dhvajam* (is used) in the masculine and neuter.

20. (A fight with enthusiasm) I first, I first, (is known as) *aham̐pūrvikā*, in the feminine. Where mutual ego is shown (I am capable) it is known as *ahamahamikā*.

21. (The words) *śakti, parākrama, prāṇa, śauryam, sthāma, saha* and *balam* (denote valour). *Mūrcchā, kaśmalam* and *moha* (denote stupefaction). *Avamardana* and *piḍanam* (mean devastation of grains etc. by the invading forces).

22. (The words) *abhyavaskandanam* and *abhyāsādanam* (mean encountering an enemy by trick), *Vijaya* and *jaya* (are synonyms meaning conquest). (The words) *nirvāsanam, samjñāpanam, māraṇam* and *pratighātanam* (mean killing).

23. (The words) *pañcatā, kāladharma, diṣṭānta, pralaya* and *atyaya* would (mean death). (The words) *viś, bhūmiśṛk* and *vaiśya* (denote a tradesman and agriculturist). (The words) *vr̥tti, vartanam* and *jīvanam* (mean livelihood in general).

24. *Kṛṣi* (agriculture) etc. are to be known (as the means of livelihood of a *vaiśya*). (The words) *kusidam* and *ṛddhijivikā* mean existing on interest by lending money). *Uddhāra* (means debt). (The word) *arthaprayoga*¹ (also means *kusida*). *Kaṇiśa* (denotes) the ear of a corn.

25. *Kimśāru* (denotes) the beard of a corn. *Stamba* (means) a bunch of grass etc. (Paddy etc. are denoted by the words) *dhānyam*, *vrihi* and *stambakari*. (The minute particles of straw) are known as *kaṣaṅgara* and *busam*.

26. Blackgram etc. are grains in the form of pods. Barley and other grains are in the form of beards. (Grains such as) *nivāra* are wild grains (*trṇadhānya*). A winnowing basket is also known *prasphoṭanam*.

27. (A sack made of cloth to carry grains is known as) *syūta* and *praseva*. *Kaṇḍola* and *piṣa* (denote a cotainer made of bamboo etc). *Kaṣa* and *kiliṅjaka* (relate to different varieties of reeds). These are similar. *Rasavati*, *pākasthānam* and *mahānasa* (denote a kitchen).

28. The kitchen superintendent (is called) *paurogava*. (Cooks are denoted by the words) *sūpakāra-s*, *vallava-s*, *ārālika-s*, *āndhasika-s* *sūda-s*, *audanika-s* and *guṇa-s*.

29. (A frying pan is denoted by the word, *ambariṣam*, in the neuter and *bhīṣṭra*, in the masculine. (The words) *karkari*, *ālu* and *galantikā* (denote a small pitcher). (A big pitcher is called) *aliṅjara* and *maṇika*. *Suṣavi* (is the name of) black cumin seed.

30. (The words) *ānāla* and *kulmāṣam* (denote a kind of gruel). The words *vāhlika*, *hiṅgu* and *rāmaṣam* (denote *asafoetida*). (The words) *niśā*, *haridrā* and *pitā*, feminine (denote turmeric). (The words) *matsyaṇḍi* and *phāṇṭam* (mean molasses).

31. Transformed milk (is called) *kūrcikā*. (The words) *cikhaṇam*, *maṣṇam* and *snigdham* (denote bland). (Rice parched and flattened is denoted by the words) *prthuḥa* and *cipiṣaka*. Fried and powdered barley (is called) *dhānā*, in the feminine.

32. (The words) *jemanam*, *leha* and *āhāra* (denote food). (The words) *māheyi* and *saurabhi* denote a cow. Those which are yoked (are called) *yugyaḥ*, *prasaṅgyaḥ* and *sākaṣaḥ*.

1. Cf. *Amara paṅkti* 1714. The *Purāṇa* while making an extract mixes the two terms

33. (A cow) that has delivered a calf long time back (is called) *vaṣkayaṇī*, and (one) that has delivered recently (is called) *dhenu*. (The cow) that is attacked by a bull (for mating) (is called) *sandhini*. A barren cow (is called) *vehat*.

34-35. (A person sustaining himself by buying and selling is called) *panyājīva* and *āpaṇika*. A thing left as trust (is called) *upanidhi* and the word is masculine. The words *vipana* and *vikṛaya* (mean sale). The numerals one to eighteen (are to be used) in all the three (genders) and the numerals twenty onwards take only singular always. While counting number two takes the plural. Among them (the numerals) upto ninety are feminine.

36-37. (A unit measuring ten is called a *pañkti*). Successive multiples of a *pañkti* would be hundred, thousand etc. They are measured by *tulāṅguliprastha*¹-s. Five *guṇja*-s (make) one *ādyamāśaka*. Sixteen (*māśa*-s) (make) one *akṣa* (otherwise called) *karṣa*. The word is not feminine. Four *karṣa*-s (would make) one *pala*. An *akṣa* (measure) of gold (is known as) *suvarṇa* and *bista*. A *pala* (measure) of the same (is called) *kuurist*.

38. One hundred *pala*-s (make) one *tulā*. That (word) is feminine. Twenty *tulā*-s would make one *bhāra*. (A *karṣa* measure of silver) is called *kārṣāpaṇa* or *kārṣika*. A *karṣa* (measure) of copper (is known as) *paṇa*.

39-40a. (The words) *dhanyam*, *vittam*, *svāpateyam*, *riktham*, *ṛktham*, *dhanam* and *vasu* (denote wealth). (The words) *ṛiti* and *ārakūṣa* (denote brass). It is not in the feminine. (The words) *sulbam* and *audumbaram* (are synonyms of) *tāmraśam* (brass). *Kālāyasam* and *aya* (are synonyms of) *loha* (iron).

40b. (The words) *kṣāra* and *kāca* (alkali) (are synonyms). (The words) *capala*, *rasa*, *sūta* and *pārada* (are synonyms denoting mercury).

41. The horn of the wild buffalo (is called) *gavalam*. *Trapu* and *piccatam*² (tin) (are synonyms). *Sisakam*³ (denotes lead). (The words) *hiṇḍira*, *abdhikapha* (sea-foam) and *phena* (are

1. *tulā* is explained below; *āṅguli* is fingerbreadth and one *prastha* is equal to thirtytwo *pala*-s explained below.

2. The other equivalents are given in the next verse.

3. The *Purāṇa* wrongly mixes this word with the previous.

synonyms). (The words) *madhūcchiṣṭam* and *sikthakam* (bee-wax) are synonyms.

42. (The words) *raṅgam* and *vaṅgam*¹ (denote tin). (The words) *picu* and *tūla* (mean cotton). *Kunaṭi* (dentoos) *manaḥsilā* (arsenic) (especially the Nepalese variety). *Yavakṣāra* (nitre) would be (known as) *pākya*. (The words) *tvakkṣiri* and *vaṁśa-ro-canā* (denote a medicinal substance got from the bamboo).

43. *Vṛṣalāḥ*, *jaghanyajāḥ* and *śūdrāḥ* (are synonyms) (denoting the fourth class of men). *Caṇḍāla*-s and other low caste men (are known as) mixed (castes). *Kāru* and *śilpi* (denote the artisan). Their union (with those) of their own caste (is called) *śreṇi*, both in (the feminine and masculine).

44. (A painter is denoted by the words) *raṅgā-jiva* and *citrakāra*. (A carpenter is denoted by the words) *lakṣā*, *vardhaki* and *vaṣṭā*. (The words) *nāḍindama* and *svaṇakāra* (denote a goldsmith). (The words) *nāpita* and *antāvasāyi* (denote a barber).

45. (A shepherd is denoted by the words) *jābāla* and *ajājiva*. (A person living by serving the god is called) *devājiva* and *devala*. (Actors are denoted by the words) *jāyājiva*-s and *śailūṣa*-s. (The words) *bhṛtaka* and *bhṛtibhuk* (denote a person living on wages).

46. (A low person is denoted by the words) *vivarna*, *pāmara*, *nica*, *prākṛta*, *prthagjana*, *nihina*, *apasada* and *jālma*. (The words) *dāsera* and *ceṭaka* (are used to denote) a servant.

47. (The words) *paṭu*, *peśala* and *dakṣa* (mean a clever person). *Mṛgayu* is known to be *lubdhaka* (hunter). *Cāṇḍāla* (low class man) (is also known as) *divākirti*. (The word) *pustam* (is used) in (the sense of) plastering.

48. A puppet (made of cloth etc.) is *pāñcālikā*. Any young animal (is known as) *varkara*. (The words) *mañjūṣā*, *peṭaka* and *peṭā* (denote a box). (The words) *tulya*, *sādhāraṇa* and *sama* (mean equal or similar). (The word) *pratimā* would (mean) *pratikṛti* (an image or statue). The *brahma* and other classes have been described so far.

1. Cf. the previous verse.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SIXTYSEVEN*

*The class of words dependent on the substantives
for their genders*

Fire-god said :

1. Listen to me ! I shall describe the genders of the substantives in general. (The words) *sukṛti*, *puṇyavān* and *dhanya* (denote a fortunate person). (A generous person is denoted by the words *mahecccha* and *mahāśaya*).

2. (The words) *pravīṇa*, *nīṇa*, *abhiyāna*, *viyāna*, *niṣṇāta* and *sikṣita*¹ (a proficient person) (are synonyms). (A very liberal person is denoted by the words) *vadānya*, *sthūlalakṣya*, *dānaśauṇḍa* and *bahuprada*.

3. The words *kṛti*,² *kṛtajñā*³ and *kuśala* (mean a clever person). (The word) *āsakta* (means one drawn towards something). (The words) *udyukta* and *utsuka* (mean being drawn towards something by one's own desire). (The words) *ibhya*, *ādhyā* and *parivṛḍha* (denote a rich man). *Adhṛbhūh*, *nāyaka* and *adhipa* (mean a master).

4. (A person endowed with fortune is denoted by the words) *lakṣmivān*, *lakṣmaṇa* and *śrīla*. (The words) *svatantra*, *apāvṛta* and *svairi* (denote an independent person). *Khalapū* would (mean) *bahukara* (a sweeper). (The words) *dirghasūtra* and *cirakriya* (denote a lazy person).

5. *Jālma* and *asamikṣyakāri* (mean a person acting without discriminating good and bad). One who is slow in doing things is known as *kuṇṭha*. (One who is proficient in doing things is) *karmaśūtra* or *karmaṭha*. (The words) *bhakṣaka*, *ghasmara* and *admara* (denote a gluttonous person).

6. *Lolupa* (denotes a person having ardent desire). (The words) *gardhana* and *grdhnuh* (denote a greedy person). (A modest person is denoted by the words) *vinīta* and *prasrita*. (The

*This chapter summarises *Amara*, *kāṇḍa* III, *paṅktis* 2030 ff.

1. Other words having the same meaning have been wrongly put in the next verse in the *Purāṇa*.

2. These words should be read with those in verse 2.

3. This word means a grateful person. Probably a mistake for *kṛtamukha*. Cf. *Amara*, *paṅkti*, 2033.

words) *dhṛṣṇuk* and *viyāta* (are synonyms of) *dhṛṣṭa* (immodest). *Nibhṛta*¹ and *pratibhānvita* (denote a person having imagination).

7. (The word) *adhira* (means a person afflicted by fear, hunger, thirst etc.). (A cowardly or timid person is denoted by the words) *bhtruka* and *bhiru*. (The words) *vandāru* and *abhivā-daka* (denote a polite or respectful person). (The words) *bhūṣṇu*, *bhaviṣṇu* and *bhavitā* (mean a person desiring to become rich). A knower (is denoted by the words) *vidura* and *vinduka*.

8-9a. (The words) *matta*, *śauṇḍa*, *utkaṣa* and *kṣiba* (denote an intoxicated person). *Caṇḍa* (means) *atyantakopana* (extremely short-tempered). *Devadrayaṇ* is a person adoring a deity. A person serving the world is *viśvadrayaṇ*. A companion, especially the husband (is denoted by the word) *sadhryaṇ*. A person serving crookedly (is called) *tiryāṇ*.

9b-10a. (The two words) *vācoyuktiṣaṭu* and *vāgmi* (denote a logician). A garrulous person (is denoted by the word) *vāvadūku* (A person indulging in unrefined talks is denoted by the words) *jalpāka*, *vācāla*, *vācāṣa* and *bahugarhyarāk*.

10b-11. (One who is censured is called) *apadvasta* and *dhikkṛta*. (The words) *kilita* and *saṁyata* (denote a person) bound (with rope etc.). (The words) *ravaṇa*² and *śabdana* (denote a person making sound). (The words) *nāndivādi* and *nāndikara* are synonyms (denoting laudatory singer). (The words) *vyasanārta* and *uparakta* (denote a person afflicted by misfortune)³.

12. (The words) *vihasta* and *vyākula* are synonyms (meaning a person who does not know what to do on account of grief. (The words) *nṛsaṁsa*, *krūra*, *ghātuka* and *pāpa* (mean a person bent on harming others). *Dhūrta* and *vañcaka* (mean a cheat). (The words) *mūrkhā*, *vaidheya* and *vālīṣa* (denote a fool).

13. (A miser is denoted by the words) *kadarya*, *kṛpaṇa* and *kṣudra*. (The words) *mārgaṇa*, *yācaka* and *arṭhi* (mean a beggar). (The word) *ahaṁyu* (means) an egoistic person. A person endowed with good fortune (is called) *subhaṁyuh*.

14-15a. (The words) *kāntam*, *manoramam* and *rucyam* (are used in the sense of a beautiful thing). A thing that is desired

1. *Amara*, *pañkti* 2075 reads *pragalbha*.

2. The *Purāṇa* wrongly reads *caraṇa*.

3. The next two words repeated from verse 10—obviously a mistake.

(is denoted by the words) *hṛdyam* and *abhiṣṭam*. (The words) *asāram* and *phalgu* (mean a worthless thing). (The word) *sūnyam* (means void). (An important thing or person is denoted by the words) *mukhya*, *varya* and *varenya*.¹ (The words) *śreyān*, *śreṣṭha* and *puṣkala* would (mean the outstanding). (The words) *prāgrya*, *agrya*, *agriya* and *agriya* (also mean an important person).

15b-16. (The words) *vaḍram*, *uru* and *viḥulam* (mean wide). (The words) *pinam*, *piva*, *sthūlam* and *pivaram* (mean) stout. (The words) *stoka*, *alpa* and *kṣullaka* (are used in the sense of a little). (A minute thing is denoted by the words) *sūkṣmam*, *ślakṣṇam*, *debhram*, *kṛṣam* and *tanu*. (The words) *mātrā* and *kuṭi* (in the feminine) and *lava* and *kaṇa* (in the masculine) (have the same sense). (The words) *bhūyiṣṭham*, *puruha* and *puru* (mean plenty).

17. (The words) *akhaṇḍam*, *pūrṇam* and *sakalam* (denote the whole). (The words) *upakaṇṭha*, *antika*, *abhita*, *saṁtāpa*, *savidha*² and *abhyāsa* (mean near). (The word) *nediṣṭham* (means) very near.

18. (The word) *daviṣṭham* would (mean) very far. (The words) *nistala* and *vartula* (would mean) circular. (The words) *ucca*, *prāṁṣu*, *unnata* and *udagra* (mean high). (An eternal thing is denoted by the words) *dhruva*, *nitya* and *sanātana*.

19. (The words) *āviddham*, *kuṭilam*, *bhugnam*, *vellitam* and *vakram* (denote the crooked). (An unsteady thing is denoted by the words) *cañcalam* and *taralam*. (The words) *kaṭhoram*, *jaṭharam*³ and *dṛḍham* (mean hard).

20. (The words) *pratyagra*, *abhinava*, *navya*, *navina*, *nūtana* and *nava* (mean fresh or new). (The word) *ekatāna* (means) concentrated on a single object. (The word) *uccaṇḍam* (means) quickly.

21. (The words) *uccāvacam* and *naikabhedam* (mean manifold ways). (The word) *sambādha* (means a narrow way). *Kalilam* (means a difficult path). (The words) *timitam*, *stimitam* and *klinnam* (mean wet). (The word) *abhiyoga* (means) *abhigraha* (an attack).

1. Some of the other words having the same meaning have been given in the *Purāṇa* in the next verse after a break.

2. The ptd. text of the *Purāṇa* reads *sannidha*.

3. Also spelt as *jaṭhram*.

22. (The word) *sphāti* (is used to mean) increase. (The word) *prathā* (is used to denote) fame. (The word) *samāhāra* (means) a collection. (The word) *apahāra* (means) *apacaya* (removal). (The words) *vihāra* and *parikrama* (mean movement on foot).

23. (The words) *pratyūhāra* and *upādānam* (are used in the sense of restraining the sense-organs). (The extraction of extraneous objects from the body is denoted by the words) *nirhāra* and *abhyavakarṣanam*. (The words) *vighna*, *antarāya* and *pratyūha* would (mean an obstacle). (The words) *āsyā*, *āsyānā* and *sthiti* (are used in the sense of a seat).

24. (The words) *sannidhi* and *sannikarṣa* (would mean proximity). (A difficult path is indicated by the words) *saṅkrama* and *durgasañcara*. (The words) *upalambha* and *anubhava* (convey the meaning of experience). (The words) *pratyādeśa* and *nirākṛti* (are used in the sense of rejection).

25. (The words) *parīrambha*, *pariṣvaṅga*, *saṁślesa* and *upagūhanam* (denote embrace). An inference (is that which is gained) by means of *pakṣa* (subject of a syllogism), *hetu* (reason) and the like¹. The words *ḍamara*² and *vīplava* (are used) in (the sense of) frightening an enemy by shouts.

26. The knowledge about an object, that is not perceived, (arising) from the statement is said to be *sābdam*.³ *Upamāna* (*ka*) (comparison) would be the cognition arising from seeing the resemblance in a similar (object).

27. *Arthāpatti* (presumption) would be the knowledge about a different thing which would not exist without (the thing seen) *Abhāva* (non-existence) is the cognition "it is not there" when the counter-correlative is not apprehended on the ground. Thus ends the genders of substantives told by Hari (Viṣṇu) for the sake of knowledge of men.

1. This is not found in *Amara*.

2. The printed text wrongly reads *bhramara*.

3. This and other terms of *Nyāya* given here are not found in *Amara*.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SIXTYEIGHT

Constant dissolution, occasional and total dissolution

Fire-god said :

1-2. The dissolution of beings is of four kinds, such as constant dissolution of all beings (that takes place daily), the dissolution (known as) *Brāhma*, (otherwise known as) *naimittika* (*pralaya*), the *prākṛta pralaya*, occurring at the end of a thousand of four *yuga*¹ periods and the absolute dissolution (of all beings) by the union of all souls in the supreme soul by means of knowledge.

3-5. I shall describe to you the nature of the *naimittika* dissolution that occurs at the end of a *kalpa*² period. When the earth (has become) almost depleted at the end of a thousand of four *yuga* cycles, there would be a severe drought for hundred years. Then (all) the beings would perish. Then (lord) Viṣṇu, the lord of the universe, remaining in the seven rays of the Sun, drinks the waters. The water in the oceans, the earth and the nether world and the like gets dried up.

6-8. Then by the divine power (of lord Viṣṇu), the very same seven rays (of the Sun), nourished by the water, become seven Suns. O Twice-born ! They burn the three worlds completely together with the nether world. (The surface of) the earth would (appear) like the back of a tortoise. Then the terrible fire (of dissolution), a manifestation of (lord) Rudra, burns the nether worlds below in association with the breath of the serpent *Śeṣa*³. Then the all-pervading (fire) burns the (region) from the nether worlds to the surface of the earth and from there to the heaven.

9-11. Then all the three worlds appear like one blazing mass. Then the inhabitants of the two worlds, oppressed by the terrible heat, ascend to the Maharloka and to the Janaloka from

1. The four *yugas*—*krta*, *trētā*, *dvāpara* and *kali* are reckoned as equivalent to 1,728,000, 1,296,000, 864,000 and 432,000 years respectively.

2. One *kalpa* is equivalent to a day of Brahmā consisting of one thousand *yugas*.

3. The serpent having thousand hoods on whose body reclines (lord) Viṣṇu.

Maharloka. After the world is burnt (by the God) (assuming) the form of Rudra, there arise clouds of different shapes together with lightning from the breath of (lord) Hari (Viṣṇu). They rain for a hundred years and put down the fire that has arisen.

12-13. When the water rises upto the region of the seven sages (Great Bear), a hundred storms issue from the breath of (the lord) Viṣṇu and disperse those clouds. Then after having drunk the wind lord Hari lies down on that mass of water, having assumed the form of Brahmā, extolled by sea-dwelling persons who have gained supernatural powers and by sages.

14. (Lord) Madhusūdāna (slayer of demon Madhu; i.e. Viṣṇu) lies down (on that mass of water) resting in the yogic sleep, which is his divine illusory form, contemplating His own form known as Vāsudeva.

15. He then lies down (in sleep) for a *kalpa*¹ (period) and after waking up, in the form of Brahmā, He creates. O Twice-born! Then (the universe) lies in an unmanifest state in the Prakṛti for two *parārdha*²-s.

16-19. One place is ten times the other place when expansion is made from one place. Then the eighteenth place would be said to be *parārdha*. The *prākṛti* dissolution is known to be twice the *parārdha*. O Twice-born! When everything is burnt by contact with fire and on account of drought, (it is *prākṛti* dissolution). The modifications of *mahat* (one of the principles), (get merged into one) losing their separate existence, and get re-absorbed (into *prākṛti*) on account of the will of (lord) Kṛṣṇa. Water first swallows the qualities of earth such as smell and the like. Then earth (divested of) its characteristic of smell tends towards dissolution.

20. Then water having the characteristic of taste remains. It is drunk by light. When it is lost, fire glows on.

21. Then wind swallows light together with its characteristic of colour and form. When fire is lost, strong wind blows on.

22. The characteristic of wind, namely touch, is then consumed by ether. O Twice-born! When wind is also lost, ether remains without any sound.

1. See p. 1028 fn. 1 above.

2. equal to 100,000,000,000,000 years.

23. (The characteristic) of ether is sound. Ether (together with its characteristic) is swallowed by *Bhūtādi* (i.e. *Ahaṅkāra* or Ego Principle in which the element of Tamas dominates). Ether born of Ego and *Bhūtādi* are swallowed by *Mahat* i.e. *Buddhi tattva* (the first evolute of *Prakṛti* in Sāṅkhya) .

24-25. Earth gets merged in water, water in light, light in wind, wind in ether and ether in ego. O Twice-born ! that (ego) (gets merged) in the principle of *mahat* and (the principle of) *mahat* is swallowed by *prakṛti* (nature). The *prakṛti* (consists of two parts) such as manifest and unmanifest. The manifest (part of *prakṛti*) gets merged in the unmanifest.

26. The *purusa* (primordial being) is pure and is one undecaying (entity) . He is also a part of the Supreme Soul. These *prakṛti* and *purusa* get merged in the Supreme Soul. There is no determination such as name, species and the like in that lord of all. (That Supreme Soul) is composed only of existence. He is to be known and (is of the form of) knowledge. (All) other souls (are merged) in (such Supreme Soul) .

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SIXTYNINE

*The description of absolute dissolution
and the process of creation*

Fire-god said :

1. I shall describe absolute dissolution. Absolute dissolution arises from knowledge after having known the sufferings caused by the mind etc. from one's disinclination.

2. The sufferings are of two kinds : physical and mental. The physical sufferings are manifold. O Twice-born ! Listen to me ! I shall describe them.

3-5. The (individual) soul after having discarded the sensual body enters the womb as a result of (the past) deeds. O Twice-born ! this body known as *ātvaḥika* (that is carried forward) is peculiar to men alone. O Twice-born ! when the time for death comes the bodies of men are carried away by the

servants of Yama (God of Death) along the path of Yama. O Sage! this is not the case with the other beings. Such a person would wander in heaven and hell like the *ghaṭayantra*¹.

6-7. O Brahmin ! This is a land of deeds and is known to bear fruits (of one's actions). Yama (God of Death) is the cause of one's birth. He determines the hell (to which one has to go) on account of the deed. Being awaited by them (men), Yama, makes them get their befitting places (dependent) on their (deeds). The beings which have got ethereal (bodies) reach the (befitting) wombs.

8-9a. A man is led by the messengers of Yama and he sees him (Yama). A pious man is honoured by him and a sinner is beaten. Citragupta² informs him the good or bad deed 'done' in (every) house.

9b-12a. (The departed soul) dwells in the *Ātivāhika* (provisional) body and partakes the funeral oblations offered by the relatives. O Knower of virtue ! 'After the funeral is over' (the soul) rejects that *preta* body (attained after death) and ascends to another region from that of the *preta*-s. It dwells (there) experiencing hunger and thirst and partakes the raw offerings (made to it by the relatives). A person does not get release from this newly acquired body without (eating) the funeral oblations. He partakes the ball-offerings there itself.

12b-13a. When the *sapīṇḍikaṇa*³ has been done, a (dead) man discards the *preta* body and gets a sensuous body after one year.

13b-14. Both the bodies are said to be sensuous and designated as inauspicious and auspicious. After having enjoyed by means of the sensuous body, one gets released from the bondage of deeds. Demons devour that body after that.

15. O Twice-born! A person who does sinful deeds, would enjoy (the fruits of good deeds at first) in the heaven. Then he takes a second body of sinners to experience (the fruits of sin).

1. A mechanism for drawing water from a well.

2. One of the assistants of Yama who records the virtuous and vicious deeds of men.

3. The rite performed at the end of one year or on the twelfth day after the death of a person to unite the dead with the departed ancestors.

16. After experiencing the fruits of sin one that has enjoyed heaven, is thereafter born in a pure and prosperous family.

17. A person doing pious deeds having (a little of) sin would first experience (the fruits of) the sin and when that body is dissolved would attain a beautiful body.

18. A person gets freed from hell even if a little of past deed still remains. There is no doubt that he would be born as an animal after getting liberated from hell.

19-20. The soul after having entered the womb dwells in the foetus. It gets hard in the second (month). The limbs (grow) in the third (month). Bones, skin and flesh (are formed) in the fourth (month). Hair grows in the fifth (month). Heart (is formed) in the sixth. The soul feels pain in the seventh.

21. Thus (the child) remains in the womb being covered with the placenta and having hands folded above the head. A eunuch stays in the middle (of the abdomen), a female (child) on the left side and a male (child) on the right side.

22. The child stays in the womb facing the back (of the mother). There is no doubt that it (the child) recognises the person in whose (womb) it stays.

23. It knows fully all the incidents of previous life from birth onwards. A person finds a great darkness and (experiences) suffering.

24. In the seventh month it partakes the food eaten by the mother. It becomes extremely restive in the eighth and ninth months.

25. It suffers when there is coition and physical exercise on the part of the mother. It becomes sick when (the mother is) sick, a moment (of agony) appearing as if lasting for a hundred years.

26. It is tormented by the (past) deeds and makes resolutions : "O Brahman ! After getting out from the womb I will gain knowledge relating to liberation (from this bondage)".

27. Being pressed down by the wind inside (mother's) womb, it gets out through the vagina. It gets afflicted in the first month (after birth) and feels pain when touched with the hand.

28. The auditory organs, minor organs and the state of being separate (are produced) in the body from the ether with

(its attribute of) sound. The process of breathing, movement and the feeling of touch are due to the wind.

29. Personality, sense of seeing, heat, celebrity, biles, intellect, colour, strength, shade, splendour and valour arise in the body from fire.

30. Sweat, the organ of taste, moisture, marrow, taste, blood, semen, urine and phlegm and the like are produced in the body from water.

31-33. The sense of smell, hair, nail, weight and firmness of the bones (are) from earth. The delicate organs, skin, flesh, heart, navel, marrow, ordure, fat, moisture and the upper part of the belly are got from the mother. Veins, arteries and semen are got from the father. Lust, anger, fear, joy, the states of being pious and not pious, form, voice, colour and the discharge of urine and the like are due to one's own 'state'.

34. Ignorance, negligence, idleness, thirst, hunger, infatuation, jealousy, defectiveness, grief, weariness and fear are qualities of *tamas* (temperament).

35. O Great sage ! Lust, anger, valour, desire to do sacrifice, garrulousness, ego and contempt for others are qualities of *rājasa* (temperament).

36. Desire to be righteous, desire for emancipation, extreme devotion to (lord) Kesava (Viṣṇu), compassion and diligence should be termed as arising from *sāttvika* (temperament).

37. A person in whom wind predominates would be fickle, irritable, cowardly, garrulous, yielding to vices of *kālī* (*yuga*) and dreams of flying in the air.

38. A person in whom bile predominates would be prematurely grey-haired, irritable, very learned, fond of battle and one who sees conflagrations in dream.

39. A person in whom phlegm abounds would be a steadfast friend, constantly enthusiastic, having firm limbs, endowed with wealth and one who perceives water and white colour in dream.

40-41. Serum is the life force in the body of beings. Blood (serves as) the anointment. Flesh causes urination and perspiration. Bones make (the body) firm. Marrow would fill up and increase potency. Semen gives potency. *Ojas* (virility) is the sustainer of life.

42. Virility is subtler and lesser yellow than semen and flows in the vicinity of heart. There are six parts of the body, viz, two thighs (legs), two hands, head and belly.

43-45. The six external layers of skin are the epidermis, (the layer) that contains blood, the next one that contains features of grace, the fourth one that bears the sacs (storing fluids), the fifth one that is the seat of abscesses and the sixth one that supports life. There are seven sheaths (namely) that which supports flesh, the second one, blood, that which is the prop for liver and spleen, the next one that holds fat and that which supports bone, that which holds marrow, phlegm and feces, situated in the abdomen. The sixth is that which holds bile and (the next one) that holds semen in the region of that sac.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SEVENTY

The constituent parts of a body

Fire-god said :

1-2. The auditory organ, skin, the two eyes, tongue, nose, intellect, the five elements and their qualities (such as) sound, touch, colour, taste and smell, the anus, the organ of generation, the two hands, the two feet are the embodiments of sky. Their functions are emission, exhilaration, taking, movement and speech and the like.

3. Five among these are organs of action, five are organs of sense. The five great elements are objects of senses having the mind as that which governs.

4. The soul is unmanifest. The principles are twentyfour. The *puruṣa* is the supreme. (The soul exists) just like the fish in the water attached and detached.

5. The qualities *sattva*, *rajas* and *tamas* dwell in the unmanifest (*Prakṛti*). The inner being is the *puruṣa*. It is the Supreme brahman, the cause.

6-7. One who knows this Supreme *puruṣa*, attains the supreme position. There are seven sacs in the body. The first one is the sac of blood. (The other sacs) are those of phlegm, of undigested food and of bile. The fifth one is that of digestion. The receptacles for wind and urine (are the sixth) and seventh. The uterus is the eighth one in women.

8-9. The sac of digestion gets dilated by bile and the vagina by internal fire. The uterus would resemble lotus and expand during the menstrual period. There it holds semen together with blood. O Sage ! semen deposited in the vagina is led to the uterus in course of time.

10. Even during the menstruous period, the vagina would be surrounded by wind, bile and phlegm. It would not get dilated then.

11-12. O Fortunate one ! heart, lungs, liver and spleen are formed in due succession. O Knower of virtue ! spleen and liver of men are formed from the essence of the serum that gets condensed. Lungs (are formed) from the froth of blood.

13. Blood is then converted into bile and it is then known as *tanḍaka*. Heart is formed from the spreading of fat and blood.

14. Intestines of mortals are formed from the spreading of blood and flesh. They should be known as three and a half *vyāma-s*¹ (long) in men.

15. They are three *vyāma-s* (long) in women according to those learned in scriptures. Its rise in passion is said to be from the union of blood and wind.

16. Heart assumes the shape of a lotus from the expansion of phlegm. That cavity hangs down and the soul remains therein.

17. All the feelings which accompany consciousness remain there. Spleen is to its left and liver is on the right.

18-19a. Lungs are on the right side of the (above) lotus. The sense organs are formed from the veins and arterics in the body which carry the phlegm and blood. They are the means to cognise objects.

1. A *vyāma* is a measure of length equal to the space between the tips of the fingers of either hand, when the arms are extended.

19b-20. The orb of the eyes is white. It is a paternal element and it owes its origin to the phlegm. The orb is black arising from wind and it is a maternal element. The entire skin is formed from the bile and it is formed from the father as well as the mother.

21-24. The tongue is formed out of flesh, blood and phlegm. The testes are from the marrow, blood, phlegm and fat. One has to know the ten vital places of life in the body (namely) head, heart, navel, throat, tongue, semen, blood, anus, pelvis and ankles. Sinews are said to be sixteen in the two hands, two feet, including four on the back and the neck. The membranes are sixteen from head to foot in the body. Flesh, sinews, arteries and bones are firmly placed around the wrist and ankles separately.

25. There are six brush (-like formations) in the hands, feet, neck and anus as pointed out by men.

26. There are four thread-like flesh formations in the region of the spinal column. There are ninety muscles, which bind them (in their places).

27-28a. There are seven *śivani*-s (a kind of thin muscles), among which five are on the head, one each in the penis and the tongue. There are sixtythree bones. Together with the minute ones there are sixtyfour in all. The teeth and nails are twenty.

28b-30. Hands, legs and the tips of these are the four places (of bones). Bones are sixty in the fingers, two on the heels, four at the ankles, four at the elbows, the same number on the shanks, two each at the knee, cheek and thighs which arise from the hip and shoulder. One has to know in the same way at the *aksasthāna*, shoulder and hip.

31. There are one at the penis, forty-five on the back, and similar number of bones at the neck, collar bones and cheek.

32. The base of these which are two, have their places at the neck, eye, throat, nose and feet. The ribs together with the palate and lumps of flesh are seventytwo.

33. (There are) two temporal bones. There are four (bones) on the skull and the head. There are seventeen bones on the chest. There are two hundred and ten (bones) of the joints.

34. Among the sixty-eight in the arms sixty-one remain distributed. In the neighbourhood are eighty-three (bones). The sinews are nine hundred.

35. (There are) two hundred and thirty (bones) and seventy in the interior. Six hundred go upwards. (The bones) of the arm have been described.

36. The muscles are five hundred. Forty (among them) go upwards. There are four hundred in the arms and sixty in the interval.

37-39. There will be twenty-five more, ten more on the breast, thirteen in the organ of generation and four in the uterus in the case of women. There are thirty lakh veins in the bodies of men. There are also others numbering nine (thousand) and fifty-six thousand. They carry the (vital) fluid, the moisture and the fat inside the body just as the channels (carry water) to the basins (around plants).

40-43 ◯ Great sage ! There are seventytwo crores of hair. O Twice-born ! Thea *ñjali*¹ measure of marrow, fat, urine, bile and phlegm, feces, blood and fluids are in order one and a half times more than the preceding one respectively. The semen is half *añjali*. The *ojas* is half of that. Wisemen point out that the menstrual fluid (in women) is four times. Knowing that the body is a mass of dirt and impurity, one should discard and (take interest) in the soul.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SEVENTYONE

The description of hells

Fire-god said:

1-2. I will describe to you the path (leading) to *Yama* (i.e. the world of God of Death) which have been pointed out (by the learned). The bodily heat getting intense and diffused by the deranged wind, obstructs the body as well as all the defects. Moreover it breaks the subtle places of life (in the body).

1. A measure of corn.

3-4. The wind excited by cold seeks an aperture (for its movement). The seven apertures are—two eyes, two ears, two nostrils and head. The eighth one is the mouth. Generally the lives of pious men escape through these holes.

5. (The lives) of doers of bad deeds (escape) through the anus and the organ of generation in the lower (region). The lives of yogins get out breaking the head by own will.

6-7. When the time for death has come, when the life force has approached the *apāna*¹, when knowledge has been engulfed by darkness and when the vulnerable spots (in the body) have been surrounded, the life is moved by the wind from the umbilicus. Being affected thus it draws the eight fundamental attributes of vitality (life) within.

8-10. The accomplished beings and celestials witness with their spiritual vision, the exit (of life), the birth and the entry into the uterus. As soon as the life leaves the body it assumes a light body by means of *yoga*. When one is dead, the ether, wind and lustre go upwards from the body, the water and earth (go downwards) (and get merged in their respective elements). The messengers of Yama lead this light body.

11. The path to the place of God of Death is much dreadful. It extends over (a space of) eighty-six thousand (*krośas*). Being led thus, it partakes the food and water given by the kinsmen.

12. After having seen the God of Death, being directed by him on the words of Citragupta (the personal assistant of God of Death), a person is taken to the dreadful hells. A virtuous person is lead to the heaven by auspicious path.

13-14a. I shall describe the hells in which the sinners are placed and the sufferings (therein). There are twenty-eight important hells below the earth at the end of the seventh layer of the region covered by dreadful darkness.

14b-18. Ghorā is the name of the first hell. Sughorā is below that. The others are Atighorā, Mahāghorā, Ghorarūpā, the fifth, the sixth known as Taralatārā, the seventh one Bhayānakā, Bhayotkaṭā, Kālarātrī, Mahācaṇḍā, Caṇḍā, Kolāhalā, the one known as Pracāṇḍā, Padmā, Narakanāyikā, Padmāvati, Bhīṣaṇā, Bhīmā, Karālikā, Vikarālā, Mahāvajrā, Trikoṇā,

1. One of the five winds in the body.

Pañcakoṇikā, Sudīrghā, Vartulā, Saptabhūmā, Subhūmikā and Dīptamāyā. The wicked suffer in these.

19. There are five foremost (divisions) among each one of the twenty-eight hells known as Raurava and others numbering one-hundred and forty.

20-22. Tāmisra, Andhatāmisra, Mahāraurava and Raurava, Asipatravana (forest of sword-like leaves), Lohabhāra, Kālasūtra, Mahānaraka, Sañjivana, Mahāvici, Tapana, Sampratāpana, Saṅghāta, Sakākola, Kuṣāmala, Pūtimṛttika, Lohaśaṅku and Rjīṣa (are the sub-divisions). Śālmali is the main river.

23. One should know that the hells are governed by dreadful looking serpents. They put the sinners in each one of the hells as well as in many of them.

24. Having their faces resembling cats, owls, frogs and vultures etc., they throw the man in caldrons of oil and then light the fire.

25-28 Some (are put) in frying pans, some in copper vessels, some others in iron caldrons and others among sparks of fire. Some are placed on the tip of pointed pikes. Some are pierced in the hell. Some are thrashed with whips. Some are made to eat molten iron. The men are made to consume dust, excreta, blood, phlegm etc. and made to drink hot wine by the messengers of God of Death. The men are again pierced. They are tortured by mechanical devices and (the bodies are) eaten by crows etc. Hot oil is sprinkled over them and the head is pierced repeatedly.

29-30. Wailing aloud 'Oh ! father!', (the men) denounce their (past) deeds. After having reached dreadful hells as a result of censurable great sins, the great sinners are reborn here when the (fruits) of the (past) deeds are exhausted. A killer of a brahmin is born in the womb of a deer, dog, pig and camel.

31. A drunkard (is born in the womb) of a Pukkaśa¹ or Mleccha². A person stealing gold (gets) the state of an insect, worm or locust. A person defiling the bed of his preceptor (attains) the state of a clump of grass.

1. A mixed caste, an offspring of a hunter male and a śūdra woman.

2. A non-Aryan

32. A killer of a brahmin would get consumption. A drunkard (would have) dark brown teeth (a dental disease). One who steals gold (would) have bad nails. A person violating the teacher's bed (would have) a skin disease.

33. A person committing a sin by a particular limb would get that limb affected. A person stealing food would become dyspeptic. A person harming the articulation (of a man) (would be born) dumb.

34. A person stealing grains would have abnormal limbs. A miser (would be born as) having a fetid nose. A person stealing oil would become a bird. An informer would have an offensive breath.

35. A person abducting the wife of another and defiling a brahmin would be born as a *brahmarākṣasa* (a kind of ghost) in an uninhabited forest.

36. A person stealing gems (attains birth) in a low caste. (One who steals) perfumes (would be born) as the female of the muskrat. One who steals leaves, vegetables (would become) a peacock and one who steals grain (would become) a crow.

37-38a. (A person stealing) a domestic animal, milk, vehicle, fruit, honey, flesh, condiment, clothe or lotus and salt (would respectively be born as) a goat, crow, camel, monkey, fly, vulture, *grhakāka* (domestic crow), one afflicted by psoriasis and as cricket.

38b-39. Afflictions in mundane existence are said to be of three varieties namely, *ādhyātmika* (affecting mind and its faculties), *ādhibhautika* (caused by weapons etc.), and *ādhidaivika*, due to the planets, fire and gods. Men should nullify them by knowledge, by atonements, vows, making gifts and worship of (lord) Viṣṇu etc.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SEVENTYTWO

The major and minor religious observances (yama-s and niyama-s)

Fire-god said:

1-2a. I shall describe to you the *yoga* having eight constituents in order to get free from the sufferings due to mundane existence. Knowledge makes Brahman manifest. There, *yoga* is the concentration of mind and the withdrawal of the mind (from all other objects). (It is) the highest (union) of the individual soul and the Supreme Brahman.

2b-3. O Brahmin ! Non-injury, truthfulness, non-stealing, celibacy and rejection of gifts are known to be the five major observances. These together with the minor observances yield enjoyment and emancipation. Purity, contentment, penance, study of one's own scriptures, worship of God are minor observances.

4-5a. Non-injury means not causing injury to the beings. Non-injury is the foremost virtue. Just as the footsteps of the travellers on foot could be contained in the footstep of an elephant, so also all the virtuous acts are said (to be included) in non-injury.

5b-7a. Injury (would) create anxiety, cause suffering, mental and physical pain (spilling of blood), slandering, great obstruction to beneficial thing, opening of vulnerable parts, denial of happiness, obstruction and killing. Thus it is of ten kinds.

7b-8. Truthfulness is defined as speech that would be extremely beneficial to beings. Speak the truth. Speak what is pleasing. But do not speak the truth that is not pleasing. Do not also tell a lie that would be pleasing. This is the eternal virtue.

9-10. Celibacy is the shunning of sexual enjoyment. It is eightfold. Men declare that sexual enjoyment is eightfold such as remembrance, praise, sport, seeing, talking in secret, resolve, endeavours and the final consummation.

11-12a. Celibacy is at the root of action and an action becomes fruitless otherwise. Even the elders in age and wisdom, such as Vasiṣṭha, Candramas, Śukra, the preceptor of gods (Bṛhaspati), and Pitāmaha (Brahmā) were captivated by women.

12b-14a. The three kinds of wine are known as *gaṇḍi* (from molasses), *paiṣṭi* (from flour) and *mādhvi* (from honey). The fourth sort of wine is known as woman by which the world has been deluded. One gets intoxicated just after seeing a woman, but one gets intoxicated by wine only after drinking. Since a woman is like wine by being looked at, one should not look at her.

14b-15a. A person who forcibly takes away another's possession, whatever it may be, would certainly attain the state of lower animals. (Similar would be the result) for eating (stealthily) the butter offered as oblation.

15b-17a. (A mendicant) may accept a loin-cloth as covering, clothing, wallet that prevents cold and a pair of sandals. But one should not covet anything beyond these. Dress etc. are put on (the body) for the sustenance of the body. Body is associated with virtue. Hence it should be protected with care.

17b-18. Purity is said to be twofold—external and internal. External purity is to be maintained by means of earth and water and the internal by cleaning the feelings. One who is pure in both these respects is said to be pure, and not otherwise.

19-20a. Contentment is said to be the feeling of satisfaction with whatever one gets. Penance is the concentration of the mind and senses on a single object. The conquest of senses and mind is said to be the foremost among all virtues. Penance which fulfils all desires is threefold, namely, oral consisting of repetition of sacred formulae etc., mental (consisting of) eschewing desires, and physical (consisting of) the worship of gods etc.

20b-31. The *Vedas* begin with *praṇava* (the syllable *om*) and also end with the *praṇava*. *Praṇava* is the entire collection of words. Hence one has to repeat *praṇava*. (It is composed of) the syllables *a*, *u* and *m*, (the latter) being half a syllabic instant. The three syllabic instants (represent) the three *Vedas*. The three worlds *Bhū* etc. are its qualities. (It also represents) the three states such as waking, dreaming and deep sleep. (It is also equated with) the gods *Brahmā*, *Viṣṇu* and *Maheśvara*. (The divine forms) such as *Pradyumna*, *Śrīvāsudeva* etc. (have all come) duly from the syllable *om*. (The *praṇava*) to which a syllabic instant is not added or that which is bereft of a syllabic

instant or more is not auspicious. One who has learnt the syllable *om* is a sage and none else. The fourth syllabic instant is endowed with the *gāndhāri* (accent) and is indicated on the head. It is the fourth one, the Supreme Brahman, like the lamp in a pot. One has to contemplate always (that Brahman) resting in the lotus of the heart. *Praṇava* is the bow, the (individual) soul is the arrow and Brahman is said to be its target. It should be known with all assiduity and one should become united like the arrow. This single syllable is Brahman. It is the supreme entity. A person who knows this syllable would get what he wishes (to get). The goddess Gâyatrī is its metre. The lord within is known to be its sage. The Supreme Soul is its deity. This application would yield enjoyment and prosperity. 'Bhūḥ, to the soul of fire' is (the formula of) the heart. 'Bhuvah, to the soul of Prajāpati' is (the formula of) the head. 'Svah, to the soul of Sun' is said to be the armour of the tuft. 'Om bhūr bhuvah svah' is the armour. 'To the soul of truth' (is) the weapon. After having placed (lord) Viṣṇu, one should repeat (this formula) for the sake of enjoyment and emancipation.

32-33. One should offer oblations of sesamum and clarified butter etc. One would obtain all things. A person who repeats the syllable twelve thousand times everyday would have the manifestation of the Supreme Brahman (in front of him) in twelve months. By the repetition (of the syllable) one crore times (one would gain perfections) such as *añimā* (subtlety) etc. One would gain the grace of the (goddess of) learning (by repeating this) a lakh times.

34. Sacrificial rites for (lord) Viṣṇu are of three kinds, Vedic, Tāntric and mixed. One should worship (lord) Hari (Viṣṇu), by one of these three methods that is desired.

35. The position which one gains by prostrating flat on the ground like a stick and worshipping (lord Visnu), (he would) not (gain) by means of (performing) hundreds of sacrificial rites.

36. The import of these explained here would become manifest to those great men who have extreme devotion for the god and also for the preceptor as for the god.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SEVENTYTHREE

*Description of āsanas (different physical postures)
and control of breath*

Fire-god said :

1-3a. (The term) *āsana* denotes postures such as the 'lotus'¹ etc. Sitting in that posture one should contemplate the Supreme (Being). After having established oneself firmly in that posture in a pure place which is neither too much raised nor too much lowered, on the skin of an antelope and the *kuśa* (grass), one should concentrate after controlling the mind and the senses. Seated in that posture one should practise *yoga* for the sake of the purification of the self.

3b-6. The body, head and neck should be held erect and firm without movement and one should look at the tip of the nose. One should not look in any other direction. One should protect the testicles and the penis with the heels, and place (the heels) on the thighs, keep the hands across with effort and place the back of the right palm on the left (palm). After raising the face slowly and holding the mouth forward (one should practise the control of breath). *Prāṇa* is the wind in one's body and its *āyāma* is its retention.

7. (Holding and) closing (one of) the nostrils with the finger (exhale and) empty the air from the chest with the other nostril. Because of emptying it is known as *recaka* (exhalation).

8. Fill the inside with external air like a leather bag till it gets fully filled and remains steady. It is known as *pūraka* (filling) because of filling to the full.

9. When one neither lets off the air inside nor inhales the air but remains steady like a completely filled pot, (it is called) *kumbhaka*.

10-11. (Again *prāṇāyāma* is divided into three classes) : *Kanyasa* (the shortest one) is inhaling once for a duration of twelve *mātrā*-s (moments). *Madhyama* (the middle one) is inhaling twice lasting for a duration of twenty-four moments. *Uttama* (the longest) is inhaling thrice lasting for a period of thirty-six

1. See verses 3b ff below.

moments. *Uttamottama* (the foremost one) is that which produces sweat, shivering and stiffness.

12-13. One should not tread on untrodden ground. (By doing so) (one would be liable to get) hiccup, breathing (trouble) etc. When the vital air is conquered there would be little defect in the feces, urine etc. (One would gain) health, quick gait, enthusiasm, clarity of voice, grace in strength and colour and the loss of all defects.

14. That (*prāṇāyāma*) which is not accompanied by, muttering (of prayer, divine name etc.) and contemplation (is known as) not impregnated. That which is accompanied (by muttering of 'om' etc. is known as) impregnated. An impregnated (*prāṇāyāma*) should be practised foremost for the subjugation of the senses.

15. When the senses are conquered along with the acquisition of knowledge and detachment and one has acquired mastery in *prāṇāyāma*, everything else would then become conquered.

16. The senses are really everything (which leads) to heaven or hell. By controlling them or leaving them unbridled (one would go) to heaven or hell.

17-18. The body is said to be like a chariot and the senses (are) its horses. The mind is said to be the charioteer. *Prāṇāyāma* is known to be the whip. With the reins of knowledge and detachment and by getting rid of illusion, the mind attains steadiness by means of *prāṇāyāma* alone.

19. (The practice of) *prāṇāyāma* (gives) the same benefit that would accrue to a person who drinks drops of water through the tip of a *kuśa* (grass) month after month for whole period of one hundred years.

20. *Pratyāhāra* is said to consist in the withdrawal and restraining of the senses which are ordinarily immersed in the ocean of objects.

21. One should pull up the self by one's own effort just as a man sinking in the water (is pulled out). (One should cross) the rapid current of the river of enjoyment of objects by resorting to the tree of knowledge.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SEVENTYFOUR

Contemplation

Fire-god said :

1. The root *dhyat* is known (to be used) in (the sense of) contemplation. A constant meditation on (lord) Viṣṇu without digression of mind is said to be contemplation.

2. Contemplation is said to be that power of the soul equal to the thought of the (Supreme) Brahman by means of one's own will unconditioned by any category.

3. (In other words) contemplation is said to be that thought found to be together with a similar thought resting on an object to be contemplated and which is free from the thought of any other kind.

4. It is said to be contemplation when the mind thinks constantly of a thing that is to be contemplated at any fixed place.

5. A person who discards his body (with his mind) endowed with such contemplation would elevate his family, kinsmen and friends and would become (lord) Hari (Viṣṇu).

6. The position which one attains by contemplating (lord) Hari with faith for a moment or half in this manner, could not be got by (performing) all great sacrificial rites.

7. A person who knows the truth should apply himself to (the practice of) *yoga*, after having known the four (things) such as the contemplator, contemplation, the thing to be contemplated and that which is the benefit of the contemplation.

8-9a. A person would obtain release (from bondage of mundane existence) by practising *yoga* (and would also gain) eight (kinds of) great powers¹. (A person who is) endowed with knowledge and detachment, earnestness, forbearance, devotion to (lord) Viṣṇu and is always enthusiastic is deemed to be the Supreme Soul after such contemplation.

9b.-10a. The Supreme Brahman is both embodied and not embodied. Contemplation is (the constant) thought about that

1. These are the eight miraculous powers such as *apīmā* (becoming minute as an atom) etc.

(lord) Hari. (Lord) Hari, the omniscient and supreme should be known as endowed with parts and without parts.

10b. The benefit of contemplation is the gain of powers such as *aṇimā* (ability to become minute like an atom) and the like (as well as) emancipation.

11-12a. (Lord) Viṣṇu associates (us) with the fruit and hence one should contemplate the Supreme Lord. One should always think of the lord while moving, standing, sleeping, waking, opening and closing the eyes, whether one is clean or not clean.

12b-14a. After having established (lord) Keśava (Viṣṇu) in the mind residing inside the body one should worship Him as seated on the pedestal of one's lotus-like heart, by means of the *yoga* (union) of contemplation. This sacrifice (in the form) of contemplation is supreme, pure and is devoid of all defects. By worshipping thus one gets released (from bondage of existence) and not by external cleanliness and sacrificial rites.

14b. (Because contemplation) is free from the defect of violence, it is the means of purifying the mind.

15-16a. Hence the sacrifice in the form of contemplation is the highest as it yields final beatitude. Hence after having discarded the temporal impure external means such as the sacrificial rite etc., one should intensively practice *yoga*.

16b-17. First of all one should contemplate in the heart the three qualities, unmanifest, free from any modification and endowed with the objects of enjoyment and (the feeling of) pleasure after having covered (the quality) *tama* by means of *rajas* and then *rajas* by means of *sattva*.

18-19a. Then one should first contemplate the three spheres such as black, red and white in order. The Supreme Soul, the twenty fifth principle, that is beyond the limiting adjunct of *sattva* (quality), should be contemplated. After having discarded the impure thing, pure thing should be thought of.

19b-21. A glorious divine lotus exists above the Supreme Being. It measures twelve inches wide. It is pure, blossomed and white. Its stalk is eight finger-breadths (long). It had its origin from the bulbous root of the navel. The eight petals of the lotus should be known as the eight qualities such as *aṇimā*. Its pericarp, filament and stalk are knowledge and detachment.

22. Its root is the *dharma* (characteristic) of (lord) Viṣṇu. Such a lotus should be meditated upon. Its characteristic, namely, knowledge and detachment, is wholly composed of the foremost glory of (lord) Śiva.

23-24a. After having known the lotus posture completely, one would have the end of all miseries. One should meditate on the lord (in the form of) the syllable *Om*, that is spotless, of the size of a thumb and of the form of the wick of a pure lamp.

24b-25a. Otherwise one should contemplate (the lord) as resembling the form of an asterism, as having the form of a cluster of *kadamba* (flowers) and illumined by a cluster of rays.

25b-26a. One should contemplate and repeat the syllable *Om* that is supreme, undecaying (symbolizing) the lord, the principal entity, that transcends the *purusa* and dwells in the lotus (of the heart).

26b-28. (Yogins) want to contemplate on gross things first for making the mind firm. One would be able to get steadiness in (contemplating on) minute things also after gaining firmness (in the above). A stalk ten finger-breadths long is at the root of the navel. A lotus of twelve finger-breadths and having eight petals (is supported) by the stalk. Orbs of sun, moon and fire (are situated) in the pericarp and the filament.

29-32a. (Lord) Viṣṇu having four arms bearing conch, disc, mace and lotus and stationed at the centre of an orb of fire, or (lord) Hari having eight arms bearing a bow, rosary, bracelet, noose and goad etc., and of a golden complexion, white complexion, wearing the *śrivatsa*¹ (mark on the chest), the *kaustubha* (gem), a garland of wild flowers and a gold necklace, and shining with ear-ring (in the shape) of a fish (should be contemplated). (He should also be imagined) as wearing a sparkling gem (studded) crown and silk robes and endowed with all kinds of ornaments. Otherwise (one may contemplate a form) of the size of twelve finger-breadths as one would like.

32b. (One should also repeat the formula) "I am Brahman, light, soul, Vāsudeva (name of Viṣṇu, as manifested in the form of Kṛṣṇa),² the liberated, *Om*".

1. The curling hair on the chest.

33. When one has become tired of contemplation, one may repeat the formula. When one has got tired of repetition one may meditate. (Lord) Viṣṇu gets pleased quickly with a person engaged in the repetition (of a formula), contemplation and the like.

34. The merits of (performing) sacrificial rites are not worth even a sixteenth part of the merits of the rites of repeating (a formula). Diseases, calamities and (evil influences of) planets do not approach a person repeating (a formula). One would get the benefit of devotion, liberation and conquest over death by means of the repetition of a formula.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SEVENTYFIVE

Fixing-up of the mind in the object of contemplation

Fir-god said :

1. *Dhāraṇā* is the fixing-up of the mind firmly on (the object) to be meditated upon. Like *dhyaṇa* (contemplation), it is also twofold according as the object is an embodied or an unembodied form of (lord) Hari.

2. The mind does not get shaken from the object that lies outside. That period for which the mind remains in a state of absorption in a particular place without being distracted (is known as) *dhāraṇā*.

3. *Dhāraṇā* is said to be that period for which the mind remains absorbed (in the contemplation) of god, without deviating from its object.

4. *Dhāraṇā* has a duration of twelve *yāma*¹-s. Twelve *dhāraṇā*-s (are equal to) *dhyaṇa*. It is said to be *samādhi* which consists of twelve (such) *dhyaṇa*-s.

5. If a person practising *dhāraṇā* discards his life, he attains supreme position in the heaven after elevating twenty-one (generations of his) family.

1. One *yāma* is equal to three hours.

6. When a particular part of the body of a *yogin* gets affected by disease, (the *yogin*) should fix up the mind on that particular part as though pervaded by the mind.

7-10. (*Dhāraṇā* is fourfold namely) *āgneyi*, *vāruṇi*, *aiśāni* and *amṛtātmikā* (respectively) belonging to Agni, Varuṇa and Iśāna and (the fourth) of the nature of ambrosia. O Foremost among the twice-born ! (In the *āgneyi*), the *śikhā* (formula of the tuft) of (lord) Viṣṇu ending with *phaṭ* should be repeated. The glorious tip of the spear that is cleaved by the *nāḍi*-s (arteries) should be pierced with that. O Great sage ! The votary should think of all those from the big toe to the skull as surrounded by orbs of rays spread across lower and upper parts (of the body) by excessive lustre. One's own body that has been (conceived mentally as) burnt to ashes should be withdrawn into one's self. O Twice-born ! The cold, phlegm etc. and sin get destroyed thereby.

11-15a. (The *vāruṇi dhāraṇā* is explained now). One should think of the head, neck, *dhīra* (?) and *kāra* (?) (as existing) in the face bent downwards. Then after conceiving the mind as unbroken and concentrated, the entire earth should be thought as being filled with showers of snow produced by glittering spray. (The mind) should be brought down from the *Brahmarandhra*¹ to the *Mūlādhāra*² through the path of *suṣumnā*³ by means of shaking and as remaining in the orb of the full moon should be flooded with nectar-like water (produced) by contact with snow. A votary who is afflicted by sufferings such as hunger, thirst and the like should bear this *vāruṇi (dhāraṇā)* vigilantly for the sake of pleasure.

15b-20. I have described to you the *vāruṇi dhāraṇā*. Listen to me ! (I shall now describe) the *aiśāni dhāraṇā*. One should contemplate the grace of (lord) Viṣṇu, after having nullified the (airs) *prāṇa* and *apāna*⁴ in the lotus, that is verily Brahman, in the sky, until one's thoughts cease. Then one has to repeat the great truth. The lord (should also be contemplated) as pervading

1. An aperture in the crown of the head through which the soul is said to escape after the death of a person.

2. A mystical circle above the organs of generation.

3. One of the arteries in the human body.

4. The printed text wrongly reads *apṛāṇa*.

everything, as half moon, supreme, tranquil, without any semblance and unstained. Until a person knows one's real form through the words of his preceptor the entire unreal world (movable and immovable) appears as real. When that Supreme Principle is realised all the entities from the world to the *brahman*, the knower, the means of knowledge and the things to be known, the shaking of the lotus in the heart by means of contemplation, repetition, offering oblation, worship etc. and everything, (would appear) like the sweet cakes given by the mother. (The whole thing) may also be done with the formula of (lord) Viṣṇu. I shall describe to you the *amṛta-dhāraṇā* (now).

21-22. (In the *amṛta-dhāraṇā* the votary) should contemplate a lotus resembling the full moon held in the clenched hand of the votary. (Then the votary) should contemplate with effort a region of the full-moon having the splendour of a lakh moons filled with the waves (of bliss) of (lord) Śiva as situated on the head. (Then he should think of the same as filling) in the lotus of the heart. (Then the votary) should think of his body at its centre. The votary would become free from distress by means of the *dhāraṇā*-s and the like.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SEVENTYSIX

Deep meditation (samādhi)

Fire-god said :

1. The deep meditation is said to be that contemplation in which the consciousness alone appearing in its spiritual aspect, remains like the ocean of coagulated milk made immobile and ceases to be operative.

2. A *yogin* is said to be in deep meditation if he remains steady in contemplation with the mind deeply absorbed, like fire (kept) in a windless (place).

3-4. He does not hear or smell or see or spit out. Moreover, he does not feel the touch. His mind does not make any

resolve. He does not think and remains like a log of wood without knowing anything. A person who is absorbed in the lord thus is stated to be in deep meditation.

5-10. Just as a lamp remaining in a windless (place) does not shake, this is said to be similar. For a *yogin* who is in deep meditation, contemplating himself as (lord) Viṣṇu, divine portents occur indicating success. The essential ingredient of the ear gets fallen. There would be pain in the teeth and the limbs. The celestials beseech that *yogin* with divine pleasures. The kings (approach) him with gift of land. The rich offer wealth. The *Veda*-s and all other *śāstra*-s become manifest themselves. He gains mastery over the metres as well as poetry in abundance. Excellent medical recipes, medicinal herbs and all sculpture and other arts become known to him. The virgins of the world of Indra and qualities such as imagination (also come to him). (Lord) Viṣṇu gets pleased with one who discards these as grass.

11-12a. (Such a *yogin*) endowed with the wealth of powers such as *aṇimā* (becoming subtle like an atom) etc., after having imparted knowledge to the pupil and after having enjoyed the pleasures as much as desired and after having discarded the body, should abide in his self that is of the form of knowledge, bliss and Brahman.

12b-13. Just as a dirty mirror is not capable of knowing the self (i.e., the reflection of the self), so also the soul experiences pain in the body because it is connected with all (things). A person united with *yoga* does not experience the pain of all.

14. Just as the single *ākāśa* (space) becomes distinct in the pot etc., so also the single soul (remains) in many as the Sun (is reflected) in the reservoirs.

15. The Brahman, sky (ether), air, lustre, water and earth, the materials on earth, these worlds, this soul and the movable and immovable (objects) have all (come) from Him.

16-18a. Just as a potter (makes) a pot by the conjunction of clay, rod and the wheel and just as a person building a house makes a house with grass, earth and wood, so also the soul creates itself (its body) in different wombs making use of the materials (five elements) and combining them. (The

soul) gets fettered by its (past) deeds, faults and ignorance by its own will.

18b-21. The (individual) soul is released (from bondage) by means of knowledge. A *yogin* does not fall sick because of his virtue. Just as a lamp is maintained (to burn) by the combination of the wick, base and oil, (so) (the body) also undergoes changes. The life goes away premature. Like a lamp the soul that is inside the heart, has many rays—white, black, tawny, blue, red, yellow and brown. A person who remains (firm) above all these, pierces the region of the Sun, crosses the world of Brahmā and attains the highest state.

22-23. One reaches the abodes of the celestials by means of the other hundred rays which are situated above. Those rays of different forms which are below have soft lustre. He moves around here by means of them for enjoying (the fruits) of (his past) deeds.

24-25. All the organs of sense, mind, organs of action, ego, the earth etc. (are known as) the *kṣetra* ('field'). The unmanifest soul is said to be the knower of the *kṣetra*. The lord who is in all the beings is existent, non-existent, as well as both existent and non-existent.

26-27a. The intellect has its origin from the unmanifest. Then the ego and the (five elements) sky etc. come into being. They have twenty-one qualities. Sound, touch, colour, taste and smell are their characteristics.

27b-28. That (quality) which rests on a particular thing gets absorbed in that particular thing. *Sattva*, *rajas* and *tamas* are also stated to be its qualities. He wanders like a wheel being possessed by *rajas* and *tamas*.

29. The one who is without a beginning and the first is (said to be) the Supreme Being. That which is knowable by means (of knowledge) and the senses is said to be a modification (of that self).

30. The *Veda*-s, *Purāṇa*-s, learning, *Upaniṣad*-s, verses, aphorisms, expositions and all other words are from Him.

31. Those who perform the *agnihotra*¹ rite for progeny,

1. A short rite invoking Fire-god.

pass through the path of the manes, the *upavithi* and that of (sage) Agastya towards the heaven.

32-35a. Those who are given to charity and are endowed with eight qualities, the eighty-eight thousand sages, who kindle the household fire are born again as the upholders of virtue. They reach the celestial world by the path of the seven sages and the serpents. Only so many sages devoid of all beginnings remain in each one of the places endowed with penance, celibacy, discarding association and learning till all the beings get destroyed.

35b-36a. The study of the *Veda*-s, sacrificial rites, celibacy, penance, restraint, earnestness, fasting and truth are the causes for (gaining) knowledge of the soul.

36b-40a. All those who adhere to truth have to practise profound meditation in this way only. It should be seen, thought about and heard by the twice-born. Those twice-borns who thus find (the truth) by resorting to the forest and meditation and are endowed with truth and extreme earnestness, will become united with pure white lustre in course of time. Then those people reach the celestial world, the Sun, lightning (and attain) the world of Brahmā. They are not reborn here.

40b-42a. Those men, who gain heaven by means of sacrificial rites, penance and gifts, reach the world of manes, the moon, the sky, air, water and earth through smoke, night, dark fortnight and the *dakṣiṇāyana* (the period when the Sun moves towards the south). They are again born here and again return.

42b-44. Those who do not know the two courses of the soul would become a serpent or a cricket, or a worm or an insect. The individual soul would become immortal by contemplating the Brahman resembling a lamp in the heart. Even a householder who accepts wealth acquired in the right way, remaining steady in knowledge about the truth, getting delighted in (seeing) guests, who performs ancestral rites and speaks truth, would get release (from bondage).

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND 'SEVENTYSEVEN

Knowledge of Brahman

Fire-god said :

1. I shall describe the knowledge about Brahman for the sake of getting released from the ignorance of mundane existence. A person gets released (by constantly thinking), "I, this soul, is verily the Supreme Brahman."

2. The body is not the soul because that is perceived like a pot etc. It is known certainly while sleeping and at the time of death that the soul is different from the body.

3. If the body is the soul it should behave like one which does not undergo any change etc. The organs such as the eye and the like are only instruments (of knowledge) and hence are not the soul.

4. The mind and the intellect also are not the soul. They are only instruments like a lamp (for supplying light). The life-breath is also not the soul as (no ?) consciousness manifests during deep sleep.

5-6a. The consciousness is not experienced during waking and dreaming (states) because it is mixed up. Since the life-breath devoid of consciousness is known during deep sleep, the soul is not the same as the organs which belong to the soul (as instruments) (and so are not identical with it).

6b-7. The ego is also not the soul because of its non-constancy like the body. This soul which is distinct from the above-mentioned categories remains in the heart of all (beings). (The self) is the seer and enjoyer of all things like a glowing lamp in the night.

8-10a. A sage should contemplate thus at the time of commencing deep meditation : Sky (came) from Brahman, air from sky, fire from air, water from fire, earth from water and the subtle body from that (earth). The quintuplated forms of the five elements came from the free forms of the five elements. After having meditated upon the gross body, one should think of getting absorbed in Brahman.

10b-13. The elements have been quintuplated and the Virāt (the first creation of Brahman) is known to be their

effect. This gross body is the product of the ignorance of the soul. Wise men know knowledge through the senses as the waking state. The world has attachment for it. These three are not creation. The effect of the elements which are not quintuplated is said to be the *liṅga*. The union of the seventeen (categories) is known as the 'golden egg.' The body is stated to be the subtle mark of the soul.

14. Dream is the recollection of experience occurring in the waking state. The soul also would resemble it. (The soul that has not been fettered) with the universe (is known as) *taijasa*.

15. There is one single cause of the two known as the gross and subtle body. The soul, that is knowledge and possessing lustre, is said to be inferred from that.

16-17. It is not *sat* (existence), not *asat* (non-existence), not *sadasat* (existence as well as non-existence). It is neither composed of components, nor devoid of components. It is neither separated, nor not separated. It is both separated and not separated. It is inexplicable and is the creator of bondage and mundane existence. That single Brahman (is obtained) by means of knowledge and is never obtained by means of actions.

18. (The means of the knowledge of the soul) by all means is to control the senses which are the cause of the bondage of the soul. The place of the intellect is deep sleep. It affects the two.

19. This wise soul is known to be the *praṇava* composed of the three syllables. The syllables *a*, *u* and *m* combined (is the *praṇava*).

20. It is the witness of all things as 'I'. It is of the form of consciousness alone in the waking, dreaming and other states. Ignorance and bondage in mundane existence etc. are not its work.

21. It is eternal, pure, free from bondage, truth, bliss and without a second. I am Brahman. I am Brahman. I am the supreme splendour and the ever free *Om*.

22. I am Brahman, the supreme knowledge—this contemplation destroys the bondage. Brahman is eternal, bliss, truth, knowledge and endless.

23. This soul is the Supreme Brahman. "You are that Brahman." This individual soul is instructed by the preceptor, (to identify himself with Brahman) as "I am Brahman."

24. That Brahman is the Sun. I am that partless being. *Om*. The knower of Brahman gets freedom from the worthless mundane existence. He would become Brahman.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SEVENTYEIGHT

Knowledge of Brahman

Fire-god said :

1. I am Brahman, the Supreme Light devoid of earth, water and fire. I am Brahman, the Supreme Light devoid of wind and sky.

2. I am Brahman, the Supreme Light devoid of the primary undertaking. I am Brahman, the Supreme Light bereft of the first creation and the soul.

3. I am Brahman, the Supreme Effulgence devoid of waking place. I am Brahman, the Supreme Lustre devoid of the feeling of universality.

4. I am Brahman, the Supreme Light devoid of the syllable 'a'. I am Brahman, the Supreme Effulgence devoid of speech, hands and feet.

5. I am Brahman, the Supreme Lustre devoid of anus and penis. I am Brahman, the Supreme Light devoid of ears, skin and eyes.

6. I am Brahman, the Supreme Effulgence bereft of taste and form. I am Brahman, the Supreme Lustre devoid of all smells.

7. I am Brahman, the Supreme Light without tongue and nose. I am Brahman, the Supreme Effulgence bereft of touch and sound.

8. I am Brahman, the Supreme Effulgence bereft of mind and intellect. I am Brahman, the Supreme Lustre devoid of consciousness and ego.

9. I am Brahman, the Supreme Effulgence free from (the vital winds) *prāṇa* and *apāṇa* (in the body). I am Brahman, the Supreme Lustre bereft of (the vital winds) *vyāna* and *udāna* (in the body).

10. I am Brahman, the Supreme Light devoid of (the vital wind) *samāna* (in the body). I am Brahman, the Supreme Effulgence devoid of old age and death.

11. I am Brahman, the Supreme Effulgence bereft of grief and ignorance. I am Brahman, the Supreme Light free from hunger and thirst.

12. I am Brahman, the Supreme Lustre devoid of all modifications of sound. I am Brahman, the Supreme Effulgence bereft of the golden egg.

13. I am Brahman, the Supreme Light devoid of the dreaming state. I am Brahman, the Supreme Effulgence devoid of luminosity etc.

14. I am Brahman, the Supreme Light free from harm etc. I am Brahman, the Supreme Lustre devoid of knowledge relating to an assembly.

15. I am Brahman, the Supreme Lustre bereft of inference. I am Brahman, the Supreme Light devoid of the qualities such as *sattva* (goodness) and the like.

16. I am Brahman, the Supreme Effulgence devoid of the feeling of *sat* and *asat* (existence and non-existence). I am Brahman, the Supreme Light, bereft of all components.

17. I am Brahman, the Supreme Lustre devoid of difference and non-difference. I am Brahman, the Supreme Light devoid of the location of deep sleep.

18. I am Brahman, the Supreme Effulgence free from the feeling of being learned. I am Brahman, the Supreme Light free from the syllables such as 'ma'.

19. I am Brahman, the Supreme Lustre free from the means and objects knowledge. I am Brahman, the Supreme Light free from knowledge and knower.

20. I am Brahman, the Supreme Effulgence devoid of being a witness etc. I am Brahman, the Supreme Light devoid of effect and cause.

21. I am Brahman devoid of body, organs, mind, intellect,

life-breath and ego. I am Brahman, the fourth state that is free from (the states of) waking, dreaming and deep sleep.

22. (I am) eternal, pure, wise and free, truth, bliss and without a second. I am Brahman. (I am) Brahman endowed with knowledge and absolutely free. *Om*. I am Brahman, the Supreme Effulgence, deep meditation and the supreme being that confers emancipation.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND SEVENTYNINE

Knowledge of Brahman again

Fire-god said :

1. (The votary) reaches the region of the gods by (performing) sacrificial rites and the region of *Virāṭ* by (doing) penance. By renouncing actions (one would gain the place) of *Brahmā*. By detachment (one would get) absorbed in nature.

2. Liberation is got by means of knowledge. These are known to be the five courses. Detachment is turning away from the feelings of happiness, torment, grief etc.

3. Renunciation is giving up all actions already performed together with those yet to be performed. (By such means) one would get free from the difference of change beginning with the unmanifest and ending with discrimination.

4. Knowledge is said to arise from knowing (the soul) as different from the animate and inanimate things. The Supreme Soul, the Supreme Lord is the sustainer of all things.

5. He is glorified in the *Veda*-s and the philosophical treatises by the name of (lord) *Viṣṇu*. That lord of the sacrificial rites (known as) *Tajñāpuruṣa* is worshipped by those who are engaged in that.

6. That embodiment of knowledge is perceived by those who have abstained from (doing actions) by means of association with knowledge. That Supreme Being (is referred to) as speech (consisting of the sounds) short, long and protracted etc.

7. O Great sage ! The action that is the means of attaining Him is said to be knowledge. The knowledge is said to be two-fold : that which is explained in the *Āgama*¹-s and (that which is obtained) from discrimination.

8. The Śabdabrahman (Brahman composed of sound) is an embodiment of the *Āgama*-s and the Supreme Brahman is the knowledge arising from discrimination. One should know the two Brahman—the Śabdabrahman and the Supreme Brahman.

9. Learning in the form of the *Veda*-s and the like (is known as) *āparam* not the supreme). The imperishable Brahman is the supreme (learning). This (Brahman) is denoted by the term “*Bhagavān*” (prosperous) in service, worship and other acts. (The letters of the word mean as follows :)

10. The syllable ‘*bha*’ has two senses—*bhartā* (protector) and *sambhartā* (one who collects or hoards). O Great sage ! The letter ‘*ga*’ (means) the leader, the conveyer and the creator.

11. The word ‘*bhaga*’ (which is the combination of the letters *bha* and *ga*) means the six : the entire wealth, valour, fame, fortune, knowledge and detachment.

12. All the things exist in (lord) Viṣṇu. That Supreme Spirit is threefold. In the same way (the word) *Bhagavān* (is used) in the case of (lord) Hari and elsewhere as a courtesy.

13. He knows the creation, destruction, the coming and going of the beings, true knowledge and nescience and hence is designated ‘*Bhagavān*’.

14. The term ‘*Bhagavān*’ connotes knowledge, power, supreme opulence, strength and splendour in entirety without the bad qualities fit to be avoided.

15-16a. In olden time, Khāṇḍikya Keśidhvaja imparted to (King) Janaka², the *yoga* (as follows) : The seed of the origin through ignorance is twofold : the notion of self in things which are not the self and the notion that self and body are identical.

16b-20. The soul enshrined in the body made of five

1. The sacred texts explaining the nature of Śiva or Viṣṇu and the methods of worshipping them.

2. The famous king of Mithilā; known for his knowledge; became an anchorite in later days.

elements and engulfed in illusion and darkness entertains the bad thought 'I am this'. In the same way a person (entertains the thought) in the sons, grandsons etc. and their progeny. The learned (entertain) similar notion with respect to the physical bodies of others. A man does work for the welfare of all the bodies (men). But a person (begins to think) that those bodies are different; it becomes a cause for the bondage. This spotless soul is verily of the form of liberation and knowledge. Impiety of the form of painful experience belongs to the *prakṛti* and not to the soul. Just as water cannot be united with fire and a union is brought about by means of the intervening vessel, (pain and illusion though they do not belong to the soul, appear as though associated with the soul).

21. O Great sage ! The sounds such as 'ka' etc. (are said to be) the result of its action. In the same way, the soul uniting with *prakṛti*, is endowed with the feeling of the self.

22. (The self seems) to enjoy all the bodily attributes. But it is different from them and it is without any modification. The contact (of the mind) with the things is for bondage and one should withdraw his mind from the things of the senses.

23. After having withdrawn it from the things, one should think of (lord) Hari, the one identical with Brahman. O Sage ! It leads a person meditating on Brahman to gain the state of Brahman.

24-25a. After due thought (one should strive) by means of one's own effort. (The attraction of Brahman) would be like the magnet (drawing) the iron. It is said to be *yoga* which is the union of the distinct mental path with Brahman dependent on one's effort.

25b-27a. (The mind) steady in a state of deep meditation, attains the Supreme Brahman. By means of self-control, by withholding the senses from the objects, conquering the winds by doing retention of breath, regulation of breath and subjugating the senses by means of withdrawal of breath, one should make the mind steady in the auspicious repose.

27b-28. Brahman, that is to be resorted to by the mind, is twofold, namely, embodied and not embodied. (The sages) Sanandana and others were endowed with the thought of

being Brahman, while the gods and other created beings (gained elevation) by means of action.

29-32. In the case of the golden egg etc., it is twofold such as due to knowledge and action. The mental activity is said to be threefold. The whole universe is contemplated as Brahman. That knowledge which is of the form of pure existence, beyond the reach of expression, that which does not possess the sense of being different and which could be known by the soul is designated as Brahman. That is the Supreme Form of (lord) Viṣṇu, devoid of form, unborn and indestructible. It is difficult to contemplate at first (the formless). Hence one has to meditate on the embodied form (at first). Such a person would become indistinct from the Supreme Soul by attaining the state of absence of the attitude of possession. (The feeling of) his difference would be due to his ignorance.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY

Knowledge of non-dual Brahman

Fire-god said :

1-5. I shall impart the knowledge of the non-dual Brahman which was expounded by Bharata. He (Bharata) performed penance at Śālagrāma (name of a place) worshipping Vāsudeva (Kṛṣṇa, a manifestation of Viṣṇu) etc. Because of the company of a deer, (the sage) thinking of the deer at the end of his life, became a deer (in the next birth). But because he carried the memories of his past birth even after being born as a deer, (he) discarded his life by means of *yoga* and regained his self. Having attained identity with the non-dual Brahman, he wandered in the world like an inert thing. An attendant of king Sauvīra advised (him) to serve (the king) for wages and led him to the camp. Being prompted by the words of the servant, the wise-man accepted to serve and carried the palanquin in order to destroy (the past deed) of the self. While others (carrying the

palanquin) moved fast, he was lagging behind. Seeing the others moving fast and himself (moving) slow the king said to him :

The king said :

6. Are you tired ? you have borne my palanquin only for a short distance. You seem to be stout. Are you not able to stand the fatigue ?

The brahmin said :

7. I am not stout. I have not borne your palanquin. I am neither tired nor fatigued. O King ! You are a person to be borne.

8-10. The pair of feet rest on the earth, the two shanks on the pair of feet, the two thighs on the pair of shanks, which in turn are the support for the belly. Then the region of the chest, the two arms and the pair of shoulders are resting on the belly. This palanquin is on the shoulder. What has the feeling of 'mine' done here. This body remaining on the palanquin is beheld as yourself. There (the terms) 'you' and 'I' (are worldly conventions). This may be described in another way.

11-14. O King ! I, you and others are being borne by the elements. This conglomeration of *guṇas* ('qualities'), fallen in the stream of *guṇas* goes on. O Ruler of earth ! These 'qualities' of goodness etc. are bound by the (past) deeds. The *karma* (past deed) is acquired by ignorance in all the creations without any exception. The soul is pure, imperishable, calm, devoid of *guṇas* and superior to *prakṛti*. Among all the creations, this alone does not have growth or decay. O King ! Just as it does not have growth, so it does not also have decay. Hence how is it that you have said 'you are stout' !

15-18. This palanquin is resting on the earth, shank, feet, hip, thigh and belly etc. and similarly on the shoulder. Hence (my) feeling is same as yours. O King ! By means of bearing the palanquin (I have become similar) to the other beings. Whether originated from a mountain, other materials or a house or originated from the earth, as the *puruṣa* (soul) is different from the physical causes. How can there be a big burden to be borne by me ? O King ! With what material the palanquin has been made, the other worldly things have been made with the

same material. In this respect, yourself, myself and all others have been made similar.

19. After having heard these words, the king held his feet, beseeched him to forgive (and said) : "Be pleased. Lay off this palanquin and speak to me who is listening to you. Who are you? For what reason have you come here ?"

The brahmin said :

20-21. Listen to me. It is not at all possible to tell you who I am. Everywhere the act of coming is for the sake of enjoying (the fruits of past deeds). Every being reaches a place etc. to enjoy the pleasure or pain arising from (the past) pious or impious (deeds) resting on place etc.

The king said :

22. O Brahmin ! How is it not possible to say that I am that person who is here. O Twice-born ! It is not wrong (to apply) this word 'I' to mean the self.

The brahmin said :

23-28. It is not wrong to use the word 'I' to denote the self. But it is fallacious to think and say that a thing that is not the self is the self. When there is a single soul enshrined in all the bodies, it is meaningless to ask who you are and who I am. O King ! You, this palanquin, these palanquin bearers going in front, and this world of yours are not said to be existence. Wood (the material for making the palanquin) is got from a tree. O King ! Is this palanquin on which you are placed designated as a tree or as wood ? A sensible man does not say that the great king is seated on a tree. So also (seeing) you on a log of wood, all do not say that you are on a palanquin. (In reality) the palanquin is a combination of wood in a particular design. O Excellent king ! Look at the palanquin in its distinctive feature.

29. A man, a woman, cow, horse, elephant, bird, tree should be known as worldly convention to denote the bodies due to the effect of (the past) deeds.

30. O King ! the tongue, teeth, lips and palate say 'I'.

They are not 'I' because all these are means of making an utterance.

31. For what reasons does speech itself says 'I' ? Even then it is false and not proper to say speech is not I.

32. O King ! because (limbs such as) the head, anus etc. of men are different from the body, how can I denote them as 'I'?

33. O Excellent king ! Only if something different from me exists, it is possible to say 'This is I and that is another'.

34. In fact, there is no difference such as immobile, animal, tree and different bodies etc. These are all the effects of past deeds.

35. O King ! A person (designated) as a king and those (designated) as the soldiers of the king, that and other appellations are not real.

36. You are a king to the world, a son to (your) father, a foe to an enemy, husband to (your) wife, father of a son. O King ! How shall I call you?

37. O Lord of the earth ! Are you this head? Do not the head and belly belong to you? Are not the feet etc. yourself? Or do they not belong to you?

38. You are different from all the constituent parts. O King ! Think seriously as to who you are.

After having heard that, the king said to that anchorite brahmin (who was a manifestation of lord) Hari (as follows) :

The king said :

39. O Twice-born ! Once I endeavoured to ask sage Kapila (to explain to me) what was beneficial (to a man). You are a part of that sage Kapila. You are giver of knowledge on earth for my sake. (Release) the wave of knowledge from the ocean (of knowledge). Impart to me whatever is beneficial to me.

The brahmin said :

40-44. You are again asking (me) what is beneficial. You are not asking about the reality. O King ! All those things which are beneficial are unreal. After having propitiated the gods, (men) desire for abundant wealth, desire for sons and for kingdom. O King ! What is the benefit? The wise (hold) that the communion with the Supreme Being is the only good. Acts such

as the (performance of) sacrificial rites (would not confer this union). One would not get wealth (by such union). The union of the self with the Supreme Being is said to be the foremost thing. The (Supreme) Soul, which is one, is all-pervading, even, pure, without characteristics, superior to nature, devoid of birth, growth etc., omnipresent and undecaying. It is wholly of the form of supreme knowledge and that lord is not associated with qualities, kinds etc.

45-47. O King ! Listen to me ! I shall describe to you the dialogue between Nidāgha and Ṛtu¹. Ṛtu was the son of Brahmā and was a wiseman. Nidāgha, the son of Pulastya, was his disciple. After gaining knowledge from him, (Nidāgha) came to the city and was living there. Once Ṛtu, while walking along the banks of (river) Devikā, thought of him. After one thousand celestial years had passed, (Ṛtu) had gone to see Nidāgha. After doing Vaiśvadeva² (worship) Nidāgha took food and asked him "You have eaten. Have you been satisfied? Is that satisfaction eternal?"

Ṛtu said:

48-55. O Brahmin ! A person feeling hungry would get satisfied after eating food. I had no hunger. Why do you ask me about getting satisfied? O Twice-born ! Hunger and thirst are said to be the properties of the body and hence do not belong to me. Because you have asked me I shall say that I am always satisfied since I am the (Supreme) Spirit, omnipresent and all-pervasive like the sky. Hence I am the inner self of all the beings. How then can I be restricted to this? I neither go, nor come, nor am confined to a particular place. You are not different from me, nor am I different from yourself. Just as a mud house is strengthened by plastering with mud, so also this body made of earthly (element) (is held fast) by infinitesimal particles of earthly (materials). O Twice-born ! I am Ṛtu, your preceptor, come to impart to you wisdom. I have come here and I shall go now as soon as you know the highest truth. You know that there is only one and there is no difference in the entire

1. The text consistently reads Ṛtu; probably a mistake for Rbhu.

2. A daily rite to please all gods performed before taking food.

universe. (All the things) are the manifestation of the Supreme Being known as Vāsudeva (name of Kṛṣṇa, manifestation of Viṣṇu).

Ṛtu went again to that city after one thousand years. He said to Nidāgha staying at a lonely place on the outskirts of the city, "Why do you stay at a lonely place?"

Nidāgha said:

56. O Brahmin! There is a strong rumour that the king would go round (the city) to see the beauty of the city. Hence I am staying here.

Ṛtu said:

57-60. Who is a king here and who are the other subjects? O Excellent Twice-born! Tell me this. You are conversant (with these)! O Foremost among twice-borns!"

(Nidāgha said): "He is the king who rides that elephant in rut rising from the peak of the mountain and others are (those) moving around him. O Brahman! That which is under is the elephant and one who is above is the king." Ṛtu asked (again): "Who is the elephant and who is the king?"

Nidāgha said (the same thing again). Ṛtu made Nidāgha to lie crawling on fours and rode him (and said), "I am above like the king and you are below like the elephant."

61-62. Ṛtu said to Nidāgha, "How shall I name you then?" Being told thus Nidāgha prostrated and said, "You are certainly my preceptor. My mind has not been (made free from the dualistic bias by anyone else)". Ṛtu said to Nidāgha, "I had come here to impart to (you) knowledge relating to Brahman. I have shown to you the highest truth, verily the essence, that is one without a second."

The Brahmin said :

63-65. Nidāgha also became converted to non-dualism by the counsel (of Ṛtu). He then perceived all beings without any difference in his own self. He attained liberation by means of knowledge. You will also similarly obtain liberation. You and I and all other beings are (lord) Viṣṇu from whom all has come. Just as the single sky is perceived variedly as yellow, blue etc.,

so also the single soul (is perceived) as separate on account of erroneous perception.

Fire-god said:

66. The king gained liberation by means of the knowledge imparted by Bharata. Contemplate that the knowledge of Brahman is the enemy of the tree of ignorance of mundane existence.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND EIGHTYONE

The essence of the Bhagavadgītā

Fire-god said:

1. I shall describe the essence of the (*Bhagavad*) *gītā*, that is foremost among all the *gītā*-s and which Kṛṣṇa imparted to Arjuna in olden days and which yields enjoyment and emancipation.

The Lord said:

2. One should not feel grief-stricken by the thought that the life is extinct or not extinct. The soul within the body is birthless. The soul neither gets old nor dies. It cannot be differentiated. Hence one should discard (the feeling of) grief etc.

3-5a. Brooding on the objects (of senses), man gets attachment for them. From attachment (arises) desire, then (comes) anger and delusion (proceeds) from anger. Confused memory (arises) from delusion and one gets ruined on account of the confusion. Association with bad elements is destroyed by means of association with good elements. The desire for gaining liberation destroys the desire (to enjoy pleasures). By discarding desire one gets firm on his own self. He is said to be a man of steady wisdom.

5b-7a. That which is night to all beings, in that the disciplined man wakes; that in which all beings wake, is night to the sage cognizing (the soul). There is nothing to be done by

him who feels happy in his (own) soul. For him there is no object to acquire by doing (an action) ; nor is there any (loss) by not doing (an action).

7b-8a. O Mighty-armed ! The knower of the truth relating to the nature of *guṇas* and action knows that *guṇas* (as senses) merely abide with the *guṇas* (as objects) and does not get entangled.

8b-9a. By the raft in the form of knowledge one goes beyond all pain. O Arjuna ! The fire of knowledge burns all the deeds to ashes.

9b-10a. One who dedicates his deeds to Brahman discarding all attachment, is not stained by sins just as a lotus by water.

10b-12a. A person united to *yoga* would perceive himself in others and others in his self and would view all as equal. A person fallen from *yoga* would be born in the house of prosperous and pious persons. O Son ! A person doing auspicious things does not suffer.

12b-13a. Verily this divine illusion of mine, consisting of the qualities, is difficult to surmount. Only those who resort to me cross over this illusion.

13b-14a. O Foremost among the Bharatas ! Four types of men worship, namely, a man in distress, a man seeking knowledge, a man seeking wealth and a man imbued with wisdom. (Among them) the wiseman (is) ever steadfast.

14b-18. The imperishable is the Supreme Brahman. Its dwelling in the individual body is said to be *adhyātman*. The offering which causes the origin of beings is called *karma*. The perishable nature is *adhibhūta*. The *puruṣa* (the being) is *adhidāivata*. I alone am the *adhiyajña* here in this body, O Best among the embodied ! Whoever, at the time of death, remembers me alone, attains oneness with my state without any doubt. A man would attain the same state which he thinks of at the end after discarding the body. Fixing the life-energy in the middle of the eye-brows (a person) reaches me uttering the one-syllabled 'Om', the Brahman, and then discarding the life, (and knowing that) (the things) beginning with Brahmā and ending with a tuft of grass are all my magnificence.

19. All glorious and noble beings are known to be a part

of Myself. One who knows that the universe is a manifestation of me, gets released.

20. One who knows the body as the field is said to be *kṣetrajña* (knower of the field). The knowledge about the field and the knower of the field is deemed by Me (lord) as knowledge.

21-22. The great elements, egoism, intellect, unmanifest (principle), the ten (organs of) senses, one (mind) and the five objects of senses, desire, hatred, pleasure, pain, the aggregate, consciousness and firmness—all these have been described briefly as the *kṣetra* (field) with its modifications.

23-27. Humility, modesty, non-injury, forbearance, uprightness, serving the preceptor, purity, steadfastness, self-control, not having desire for the objects of senses, absence of egoism, cognizing the evil in birth, death, old age, sickness and pain, non-attachment, non-identification (of the self) with son, wife, home and the like, constant equanimity towards desirable and undesirable happenings, exclusive unswerving devotion to Me (god), resorting to solitary places, distaste for an assembly of men, constancy in knowledge about self, viewing things in accordance with the knowledge of truth—these are declared as knowledge. Ignorance is the opposite of these.

28. I shall describe that which has to be known, by knowing which one enjoys immortality. The Supreme Brahman is without a beginning. It is said to be neither existence, nor non-existence¹.

29-31. With hands and feet everywhere, with eyes, heads and mouths everywhere and with ears everywhere²—(He) remains enveloping all. Shining by the functions of all the senses, (He) is without all the senses. (Although) unattached, (He) is the supporter of all (beings). (Although) devoid of qualities, (He) is the person experiencing them. He is outside and within (all) the beings. He is movable as well as immovable. He is incomprehensible because of his subtlety. He is far and near.

1. The textual [†]reading is wrong. It has been corrected as in BG XIII.12.

2. The textual reading has been corrected on the basis of BG XIII.13.

32-33. He is undivided and yet He seems to be existing in beings as divided. He should be known as the supporter of beings. He devours and is mighty (generator). The light of all lights, He is said to be beyond darkness. (He is) the knowledge, the knowable and the goal of knowledge, remaining in the hearts of all (the beings).

34-35. By means of meditation some behold the self in the self by the self. Others (see the self) by *sāṅkhya-yoga* (deliberation) and yet others by *karma-yoga* (action). Still others, not knowing thus, worship (Him) as they have heard from others. They too cross death quickly by their devotion to what they have heard.

36. Knowledge arises from *sattva* (goodness), greed from *rajas* and error, delusion and ignorance from *tamas*.

37. One who simply stands composed (thinking) that the *guṇas* exist in him and is not shaken (by them) and remains equanimous towards respect and insult, friend and foe, (is said to be) free from *guṇas*.

38. The imperishable *aśvattha* (holy fig tree) is said to be having its roots above and branches below. Its leaves are the *Veda*-s. One who knows it is the knower of the *Veda*-s.

39. There are two (types of) beings in this world, the divine and the demoniacal. Non-injury etc.¹ and forbearance belong to one born for a divine state.

40. Neither purity, nor (right) conduct belong to one born for a demoniacal state. As anger, greed and sex lead to hell, one should reject the three.

41-42. Sacrificial rites, penance and charity are known to be of three varieties due to the (three) qualities, *sattva* etc. The food that augments life, purity, strength, health and pleasure (is known to be) *sāttvika*. The food that is pungent and dry and productive of pain, grief and disease (is) *rājasa*. The food that is impure, rejected, putrid and tasteless (is said to be) *tāmasa*.

43. The sacrificial rite is said to be *sāttvika* if it is performed as laid down without desiring reward. (A sacrifice is) *rājasa*,

1. See BG XVI. 2-3 for other characteristics.

if it is (done) for the sake of gaining a fruit. If it is for vanity it is *tāmasa*.

41. Physical penance is said to be that which is accompanied by faith, sacred formula and the like. Worship of the gods etc. and non-injury etc. are said to be verbal penance.

45. A speech that does not cause excitement, truthfulness, practice of the study of the scriptures of one's own school and sacred repetition (are said to be austerity of speech). Mental (austerity) consists of purity of disposition, silence and self-control¹.

46-47. The *sāttvik* austerity (is done) with no desire (for any fruit), the *rājasa*, with the intention of gaining an object and the *tāmasa* for harming others. The *sāttvika* charity is that which is performed at the right place etc. with a sense of duty. *Rājasa* (charity) is that (performed) with a view to receive in return. It is said to be *tāmasa* (when performed) at a wrong place and insultingly.

48. "Om tat sat (Om, that and real)" has been declared to be the triple designation of Brahman. Sacrificial rites, charity and such other deeds confer enjoyment and emancipation to men.

49. The threefold fruit of action—disagreeable, agreeable and mixed—accrues after death to a person who does not relinquish (karma) but never to those who renounce.

50-51. The *tāmasika* action (arises) from an action associated with delusion, the *rājasa* action from pain, fear etc., and the *sāttvika* from non-desire. These (following) five are the five causes of an action—the body, the agent, the various instruments such as the senses, the different² functions of various sorts and the presiding deity, the fifth.

52-53a. The knowledge that (everything is) one is *sāttvika*. The knowledge that it is separate is *rājasa*. That which is contrary to reality is *tāmasa*. The *sāttvika* action is without any

1. The text has ~~carelessly~~ abridged BG XVII.15-16.

2. The printed text wrongly reads *trividhāḥ* for *vividhāḥ*.

Cf. BG XVIII.14.

desire. The *rājasa* action is with desire. The *tāmasa* (action) is from ignorance.

53b-54. A *sāttvika* agent would be equanimous towards success and failure. A *rājasa* (doer) (would be) deceitful. A *tāmasa* (doer would be) languid. The understanding at the beginning of an action is *sāttviki*. That which is only at the time of an action would be *rājasi*. The contrary (would be) *tāmasi*.

55-56a. The firmness of mind (towards pleasure and pain etc.) would be *sāttviki*. The desire (of the mind) for satisfaction is *rājasi*. Grief etc. is *tāmasi*. There would be pleasure at the beginning from *sattva*. The pleasure that comes at the end is *rājasa*. Pain at the beginning and end is *tāmasa*.

56b-58. All the beings had their origin from that by which this (universe) has been pervaded. One finds success by worshipping (lord) Viṣṇu by one's action. A person who knows the world from *Brahmā* to a tuft of grass as (lord) Viṣṇu by means of his action, mind and speech in all the states gains success always. The devotee of the lord (would) certainly (be) a *bhāṅavata*.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND EIGHTYTWO

The Yamagitā

Fire-god said:

1. I shall describe to you the *Yamagitā* expounded to Naciketas. It would confer enjoyment and emancipation to the pious desiring emancipation who read and listen to this.

Yama said:

2. Alas! man himself being non-eternal, desires for eternal seats, beds, vehicles, clothes, houses etc. on account of ignorance.

3. It has been said by (the sage) Kapila (in olden days) that always having non-attachment for pleasures and viewing one's own self (critically) are most excellent for men.

4. (The sage) Pañcaśikha has said that impartiality to

wards all, attitude of non-possession, not being attached (to worldly pleasures) are most excellent for men.

5. Gaṅgāviṣṇu has declared that a true knowledge (of the miseries) of the stages (of life) beginning with that of embryo and including birth, childhood and old age etc. is most excellent for men.

6. Janaka has stated that remedying the pains such as the *ādhyātmika* (bodily and mental) and the like from the beginning to the end is most excellent for men.

7. Brahmā holds that the most excellent thing for men is to perceive the oneness of the Supreme Being appearing as different (in different beings).

8. Jaigīṣavya has said that the highest good lies in discharging one's duties as laid down in the *Rg*, *Yajur* or *Sāma* (*veda*) without attachment and with a sense that they have to be done.

9. Devala is said to hold the view that the most excellent thing for men would be to abandon all actions for the sake of the happiness of the self.

10. (Sage) Sanaka has declared that the knowledge (gained) from renunciation of desires leads one to Brahman, the supreme place, and that those who entertain desires (do not get) this knowledge.

11. (Lord) Hari has said that the foremost among the excellent is to transform the actions done with attachment into those of non-attachment. This is verily non-action, the Brahman.

12. The elevated person who has gained knowledge does not become different from Brahman, known as (lord) Viṣṇu, the supreme and indestructible.

13. A person would gain by (doing) austerities whatever he mentally desires such as knowledge of Brahman, knowledge of worldly existence, faith in god, good fortune and a beautiful form.

14. There is nothing to be contemplated equal to (lord) Viṣṇu. There is no austerity superior to fasting. There is no fortune equal to health. There is no river equal to the (river) Gaṅgā.

15-16. There is no kinsman other than (lord) Viṣṇu, the lord of the universe. A person who meditates on (lord) Hari

as (existing) below, above, in front and in the body, senses, mind etc. and passes away would become (lord) Hari. That which is the Brahman, from that all the things (have emanated) and in that all the things exist.

17. (Lord) Viṣṇu dwells in the hearts of all in the form of higher and lower, as un-understandable, indefinable and well-established.

18. Some (people) invoke that lord Viṣṇu as the lord of sacrifices. Some (invoke) Him as (lord) Hari, some as (lord) Hara (Śiva) and some others as Brahmā.

19. Some (invoke) Him by the names of Indra etc. and others as Sun, Moon and as the eternal time. People state that the whole earth, from Brahmā to a tuft of grass, is Viṣṇu.

20-21a. A person who has attained (lord) Viṣṇu, the Supreme Brahman, never returns (to worldly existence). A man may acquire such a state by making great gifts such as gold, bathing in sacred waters, meditation, austerities, worship, wealth and listening to sacred texts.

21b-22. Know the soul as traveller, the body as chariot, intellect as charioteer and mind as reins. The senses are said to be horses and the objects the pasture ground for them.

23-24a. People name the soul united with the mind and senses as the enjoyer. He who is not wise and whose mind is not always associated (with the soul), does not reach the Supreme Brahman and is born in the world.

24b-25a. He who is wise and whose mind is united (with the soul) always, attains the place (of Brahman) and is not born in this world again.

25b-26a. A person who has knowledge as the charioteer and mind as the reins, reaches the end of his journey and (gets) the highest region of (lord) Viṣṇu.

26b-28a. The objects (of senses) are higher than the respective organs; the mind is higher than the objects; the intellect is higher than the mind; the self (is higher) than the intellect and (the principle of) *mahat* is higher than the self. The unmanifest is higher than the *mahat*. The *Puruṣa* (the spirit) is higher than the unmanifest. There is nothing higher than the Supreme Spirit. It is the ultimate end and course.

28b-30. This self hidden in all the bodies does not reveal itself. The subtle one is perceived by men having sharp intellect and subtle vision. A wiseman should restrain his speech in the mind, that knowledge in the self, that knowledge in the great self and place it at the end in the self. After having known the union of Brahman and the self by means of moral duties etc., one would become Brahman.

31-32. Non-injury, truthfulness, non-stealing, celibacy, refraining from receiving gifts (are known) as the *yama*-s (moral abstentions) The *nyamas* (observances) (are) five—purity, happiness, austerity, study of the *Veda* (of one's school) and worship of God. The (physical) postures are such as the *padmaka* etc. *Prāṇāyāma* (is) conquest of wind. *Pratyāhāra* is the restraining of the mind in the self.

33. *Dhāraṇā* consists of fixing of the mind on an auspicious object. O Twice-born ! It is said to be the *dhāraṇā* by the wise because the mind is steady.

34. The continuous fixing-up of the mind in the same place is known as *dhyāna* (contemplation). *Samādhi* is the state of (having the attitude) "I am Brahman".

35. Just as the space enclosed by a pitcher becomes one with the sky when the pitcher is destroyed, in the same way the liberated soul becomes Brahman.

36. The individual soul deems itself as Brahman by (means of) knowledge (alone) and not by any other (means). The individual soul gets released from ignorance and its effect and becomes undecaying and immortal.

Fire-god said:

37. O Vasiṣṭha ! I have expounded (to you) the *Yamagītā* which yields enjoyment and emancipation to the readers. The eternal union is stated to be the total occupation of the intellect by Brahman (as outlined) in the philosophical thought.

CHAPTER THREE HUNDRED AND EIGHTYTHREE

The Glorification of the Agnipurāṇa

Fire-god said:

1-4. I have expounded to you the *Āgneyapurāṇa* of the form of Brahman. It with extension and without extension consists of the two *vidyā*¹-s. The learning consists of the *R̥g*, *Yajur*, *Sāma* and *Atharva* (*veda*). Viṣṇu is the creator of the world. Prosody, phonetics, grammar, lexicon, astronomy, etymology, *dharmaśāstra* (treatises on religious duties), *mīmāṃsā* (inquiry), *nyāya* (logic), science of medicine, archery, science of music and science of statecraft are all (known as *parā*) *vidyā*. The other one beyond the *Veda*-s is lord Hari known as *aparā vidyā* (that which has nothing superior to it). Highest knowledge is the supreme undecaying thing.

5-6. One who has the feeling that all the things are (the manifestations of lord) Viṣṇu, is not affected by the *Kali* (era). One would not incur any sin by not performing the great sacrificial rites or not offering the obsequial rites to the manes if he worships (lord) Kṛṣṇa with devotion. One does not get ruined by intensive contemplation of (lord) Viṣṇu, who is the cause of all things.

7. A person whose mind has been drawn towards the objects arising from defects due to other rituals, gets released from sins, even after doing a sin, by contemplating (lord) Govinda (Kṛṣṇa).

8. It is contemplation where there is Govinda. It is a narrative where there is Keśava. That is an action which is devoted to Him. What is the use of others which are repeatedly spoken about.

9. He is not a father who fails to describe this supreme knowledge spoken by me to the son and he is not a preceptor who fails to impart (this) to his pupil.

10. O Twice-born ! One could get a son, wife, wealth, prosperity, friends and other things by wandering in this world, but not this knowledge.

1. explained below.

11. What is the use of son and wife? What (comes out of) friend, land and relatives? Such knowledge is the supreme relative, which liberates a person.

12. There are two courses for the beings—divine and demoniac. Constant devotion to (lord) Viṣṇu is divine and the contrary is demoniac.

13. This, which has been expounded to you, is sacred, healthy, praise-worthy, capable of destroying bad dreams, giving pleasure and satisfaction and liberation to men.

14. In whatever houses transcripts of the *Āgneyapurāṇa* are kept, disturbances never approach them.

15. What is the good of pilgrimages, or making gifts of cows, or sacrificial rites or fasting, when people hear the *Āgneya (purāṇa)* daily?

16. A person who gives a *prastha* (measure) of sesamum or a *māṣa* (weight) of gold, would obtain equal (merit) by listening to one verse of the *Agni (Purāṇa)*.

17. The reading of a chapter of this (*Purāṇa*) is more commendable than making a gift of a cow. A sin done in the course of a day and night by a person is destroyed by his desire to listen to this (*Purāṇa*).

18. (The benefit) that would accrue by making a gift of hundred tawny cows at Puṣkara¹ in (the month of) *Jyēṣṭha* (June-July), that benefit would be obtained by reading the *Āgneyapurāṇa*.

19. The piety of two kinds—being engaged and being withdrawn—does not become equal to this sacred text of *Agnipurāṇa*.

20. O Vasiṣṭha ! A devoted man would get liberated from all sins by either reading the *Agnipurāṇa* daily or listening to it.

21-22. Where there is a copy of the *Agnipurāṇa*, in that house there would not be any difficulty, mishap or fear of theft, or fear of miscarriage of foetus, or possession of children by the spirits. There would not be the fear of the evil spirits and the like, where there is (a copy of) the *Agnipurāṇa*.

23. By listening to this (*purāṇa*), a brahmin would become learned in the *Veda-s*, a *kṣatriya* (would be) a monarch, a *vaiśya* would gain wealth and a *śūdra* would get health.

1. A holy place of pilgrimage in Rajasthan.

24-25. O Brahmin ! A devotee of Viṣṇu, having equanimity would get all his afflictions destroyed by reading or listening to the *Agnipurāṇa*. (Lord) Keśava would destroy all the misfortunes that would be celestial, terrestrial or earthly such as bad dreams, evil incantations and other mishaps (of such a person).

26-28. The reading or listening to the text is more meritorious for a man than performing a sacrificial rite. A person who listens to the sacred *Agnipurāṇa* in the *Hemanta* (early winter) after offering worship with perfumes and flowers would get the benefit of (performing) *Agniṣṭoma* (rite). (A person would get the benefit of performing) the *Puṇḍarikā* (rite) in *Śitīra* (advanced winter), *Aśvamedha* (rite) in the spring, *Vājapeya* (rite) in the summer and *Rājāsūya* in the rainy season. (One would get) the benefit (of making a gift) of thousand cows in the autumn by reading this (*Purāṇa*).

29. O Vasiṣṭha ! He who devoutly recites the *Agnipurāṇa* in front of (lord) Hari, would be deemed as worshipping (lord) Keśava with the rite of knowledge.

30. He who has a book of the *Agnipurāṇa* in his house would be victorious. In whose house the transcribed (*Purāṇa*) is worshipped, (that person) has enjoyment and emancipation on his hand.

31. Thus (lord) Hari (Viṣṇu) has expounded to me in days of yore in the form of the destructive fire at the end of the world. The *Āgneyapurāṇa* consists of two sorts of knowledge. O Vasiṣṭha! You would impart to the devotees these two kinds of knowledge.

Vasiṣṭha said :

32-33a. O Vyāsa ! I have narrated to you the *Āgneyapurāṇa*, consisting of two sorts of knowledge, obtained from (lord) Viṣṇu, the Supreme Brahman, and as expounded to me by Agni (Fire-god) in the presence of the celestials and sages. It makes everything known.

33b-35a. O Vyāsa ! He who reads or listens to or writes or causes to write or causes to listen to or causes to read or worships or carries this *Agnipurāṇa*, known as the Brahman and expounded by Agni (Fire-god) in days of yore, would be liberated from all sins and would attain heaven after obtaining the desires.

35b-36. After having caused the excellent *Purāṇa* to be copied, he who gives (the copies) to brahmins, would attain the world of Brahmā and elevate hundreds of his family. He who reads a verse (from this *Purāṇa*) would become free from the mire of sin.

37-38. Hence, O Vyāsa ! This *Purāṇa* making everything explicit should always be read to the disciples in the company of the sages such as Śuka and others who are desirous of hearing. The *Āgneya*(*purāṇa*) read and contemplated would be auspicious and confer enjoyment and emancipation. Obeisance to that Fire-god who has sung the *Purāṇa*.

Vyāsa said :

39-44a. O Sūta (redactor) : This *Āgneya*(*purāṇa*) which is of the form of *parā* and *aparā vidyā* and the supreme position was sung by (sage) Vasiṣṭha in days of yore and it has been expounded to you by me. The fortunate ones would attain a form difficult to get. Those who meditate upon this *Āgneyapurāṇa*, the Brahman, would reach (lord) Hari. Those who seek knowledge (would get) knowledge. Those who wish for kingdom would obtain kingdom. Those without progeny get children. Those without resort would reach a resort. Those who seek fortune and those who desire for liberation get them. Those who transcribe and those who cause it to be transcribed become sinless and gain fortune. O Sūta ! Think of the form of the *Āgneyapurāṇa* (expounded) by Śuka, Paila and others. There is no doubt that you would gain enjoyment and emancipation. You recite the *Purāṇa* to the disciples and devotees.

Sūta said :

44b-47a. I have heard the *Āgneyapurāṇa* with respect by the favour of Vyāsa. The *Agni* (*purāṇa*) is a manifestation of the Supreme Brahman. You and other sages such as Śaunaka and others had worshipped lord Hari in the Naimiṣa forest. They were steadfast. The *Agnipurāṇa* is spoken by Agni and conforms to the *Vedas*. This (*Purāṇa*) endowed with the two (sorts of) *brahmanvidyā* confers enjoyment and emancipation.

47b-51. There is nothing richer in substance than this. Nothing is a better friend than this. There is no greater work

than this. There is no better course than this. There is no greater treatise than this. There is no greater scripture than this. There is no superior knowledge than this. There is no *smṛti* (textbook of piety) than this. No *āgama* (texts dealing with worship) is superior to this. No knowledge is greater than this. No exposition excels this. There is nothing extremely auspicious excelling this. No philosophic exposition is greater than this. This is the foremost *Purāṇa*. There is no object more difficult to obtain than this on the earth. All the lores have been expounded in this *Purāṇa*.

52. All the manifestations (of lord Viṣṇu) such as the fish and the like, *Gitā*, *Rāmāyaṇa* (epic story of *Rāma*), *Harivaṃśa* (Account of the successors of lord Kṛṣṇa), *Bhārata* (the legend of the patricidal war between the Kauravas and Pāṇḍavas) and fresh creation have been described.

53-55. The *vaiṣṇava āgama* (mode of worship relating to Viṣṇu) such as worship, initiation and installation (of the idol), investiture with the sacred thread, the characteristic of the idols and temples etc. and formulae yielding enjoyment and emancipation, texts dealing with worship relating to Śaivite gods and their substance, (the worship) of the goddess and Sun, different circles, *vāstu* (relating to the ground), different types of formulae and secondary creation of the primordial egg and the like have been sung.

56. The geography of the world with the continents, mountain ranges and rivers and the greatness of the sacred places of pilgrimage such as Gayā, Gaṅgā, Prayāga etc. have been told.

57. The galaxy of stars, astronomy and prognostication for victory in battle have been described. The different periods of Manu and the duties of different classes of men have been explained.

58. Pollutions, purification of things and expiations have been explained. The duties of kings, the making of gifts and different kinds of austerities have been described.

59-60. Disputes, appeasing rites, the application (of the formulae) of the *R̥gveda* etc., the Solar and Lunar dynasties,

archery, medical science, science of music, statecraft, *mīmāṃsā* (inquiry), *nyāya* (logic), the greatness and number of *Purāṇa*-s, prosody and grammar have been explained.

61. Poetics, lexicography, phonetics and rules relating to performance of rites have been described. The casual, natural, and absolute destructions have been explained.

62. *Vedānta* is said to be the knowledge about Brahman and *yoga* as having eight constituents. The eulogy, greatness of the *Purāṇa* and the eighteen lores have been expounded.

63. The *Ṛgveda* etc. (are known to be) the *parāvidyā* (that which has something superior to it) and the *aparāvidyā* (that which has nothing superior to it) is the undecaying Supreme Brahman. The form of Brahman is said to be cosmic and acosmic.

64. This *Purāṇa* (having an extent) of fifteen thousand (verses)¹ is always read by the celestials in the celestial world as having one hundred crore (verses).

65. Fire-god has sung it here after shortening it for the sake of the welfare of the world. O Sages, Śaunaka and others ! You know that all the things (are manifestations of) Brahman.

66. One may listen to, cause to be heard, read, cause to be read, transcribe, cause to be transcribed, worship or sing (its glory).

67-68. The king should take effort to honour the reader of this *Purāṇa*. After having honoured him by (making) gifts of cows, land and gold and the satiating gifts of clothes and ornaments, one would get the fruits of listening ; to (the recitation of) the *Purāṇa*. At the end of (the reading of) the *Purāṇa*, the twice-born must be fed.

69-71. (He who does as above) would become spotless, gain all the riches and attain heaven along with his ancestors. He who gives leaves (paper) for (copying) the book, thread for stitching together the leaves and the cloth for binding would attain heaven. He who gives (the book as a gift) would

1. But this *Purāṇa* here contains about 8000 verses only.

reach the world of Brahmā. He who has the book in his house does not have the fear due to portents. (Such a person) would get enjoyment and emancipation. You all remember the *Āgneyapurāṇa* as a form of the lord. After having been honoured by them (Śaunaka and others) Sūta went away and Śaunaka and others reached (lord) Hari.

INDEX

- Abala, a deity, installation of, 172
 abdhī, refers to a herb, 407
 abdominal disorder, remedy for, 767
 abduction, of captives, punishment for, 681
 ābhāṇaka, a popular saying, 932
 abhāva, explanation of the term, 1027
 abhaya, one of the postures of the hand, 857
 abhayā, one of the Praṇita-mudrās, 857
 Abhijit, an asterism, 385, 388
 abhijit, a muhūrta, division of a day, 371
 Abhikṛti, classical metre based on, 914
 Abhimanyu, son of Arjuna and Subhadrā, 751; birth of, 33
 Abhimanyu, one of the ten sons of Manu and Nāḍvalā, 42
 Abhivyakti, an embellishment of sound and sense, 942
 two divisions of, Śruti and Ākṣepa, 943
 further divisions of; sub-divisions of, 943
 abscess, commendable remedy to ripen, 756
 remedy to open and heal, 756
 remedy for, 767
 type of food commended when one suffers, 756
 abuses, punishment for different kinds of, 675-76
 acala, an array; optionally formed, 635
 ācamana, sipping of water, 69, 69fn.
 ācārya, explanation of the term, 1017
 acceptance, words for, 991
 actions, need for abandoning, 1074
 Acyuta, denoting lord Viṣṇu; propitiation of, 50
 Acyuta, form of Viṣṇu on Mahendra hill, 842
 Acyuta, a sālāgrāma, 125
 Adbhuta, Indra, during the period of ninth Manu, 428
 Adbhutopamā, explanation of, 940
 adhaḥpuṣpā, herb, 406
 ādhaka, a measure, 265
 (agni) ādhāna, a haviryajña, 86
 Adharma, married Himśā, a daughter of Dakṣa, 49
 adhibhūta, explanation of the term, 1069
 adhidaivata, explanation of the term, 1069
 adhikaraṇa, four kinds of; explanation of, 971
 a fifth variety of, 971
 adhiśvara, significance of the term, 1018
 adhiyajña, explanation of the term, 1069
 adhvaryu, priest for Yajurveda, 429
 adhyagni, a division of property of women, 541
 adhyātma, explanation of the term, 1069
 adhyāvāhanika, a division of property of women, 541
 Ādigadādhara, name of Viṣṇu, 334
 Ādigadādhara, on the worship of, 343, 344
 Ādinātha, eight, 412
 Aditi, wife of Kāśyapa, 8, 85
 Aditi, manifested as Devaki, 744
 Aditi, worship of, 274, 317
 Ādityas, (twelve) 45
 images of, 314
 consecration of, 180
 on the worship of, 313
 ride the chariot of Sūrya, 356
 adrṣṭa, fear known as, 119
 Adrṣṭanāma, a form of Rudra, 252
 Adrṣṭarūpa, a form of Rudra, 252
 adytum, measure of, 313
 Agastya, sage, 15, 24
 reason for being called as 'born of pitcher', 536
 mode of offering libation to, 335-7
 should be worshipful, 339
 at Gayā, 341
 agent, five kinds of, 970
 Aghamarṣaṇa, sage of aghamarṣaṇa hymn, 437
 aghamarṣaṇa (śūkta), 53, 437
 efficacy of the repetition of, 482
 Aghāśi, worshipped, 414
 Aghaora, the mantra of the weapons of; six constituents of, 887-91
 collection of formulae of; precedes

- the appeasing rite for Śiva, 891-92
 weapon of; the efficacy of repeating the mantra relating to, 885
 weapon of; as an excellent formula, 892
 aghorāstra, accessory rites relating to, 885
 Aghoramukhi, synonym of Kubjikā, 413
 aging, tonic for, 769
 āgneya, kṛttikā; commended for copulation, 434
 Āgneyakalpa, a kalpa period, 733
 āgneyakṛcchra, expiation of eating sesamum for twelve nights, 483
 āgneyamantras, characteristics of and effects of, 802-3
 Āgneya (Agni) purāṇa, spoken by Agni, 2
 extent of, 733
 consists of two kinds of knowledge, 1079
 as a form of the lord, 1083
 as a form of parā and aparā vidyā, 1080
 as the essence of Vedas, 731
 the greatness of, 731
 greatness of hearing and reading, 491, 492, 1078
 merits of having transcripts of, 1078
 should be copied and given as a gift in Mārgaśīrṣa, 733
 merits of making a copy and giving as a gift, 1079
 merits of meditating on, 1080
 (See also Agnipurāṇa)
 Āgneyi, wife of Ūru, 42
 āgneyi, one of the dhāraṇas; explanation of, 1050
 Agni (fire), synonyms of, 987-8
 Agni, progeny of Dhiṣaṇā of the family of, 43
 Agni, birth of Kumāra to, 44
 and Svāhā, sons of, 49
 direction presided over by, 55
 propitiation of, 176
 worshipped, 51
 image of, 106, 137, 314
 agni (three), herb denoted by, 408
 Agnibāhu, son of King Priyavrata, 322
 Agnibāhu, sage, 428
 Agnidhārā, at Gayā, 344
 Agnidhra, ruler of Jambūdvīpa, 322
 Agnidhṛk, a goddess, 133
 agnihotra, a haviryajña, 86, 466
 included under iṣṭa, 539
 Agnipurāṇa, Vasiṣṭha's request to the Fish to narrate, 3
 extent given as fifteen thousand verses, 1082
 abridgement of that in the, celestial region having one hundred crore verses, 1082
 as a manifestation of Viṣṇu, 731
 as a manifestation of the Supreme Brahman, 1080
 the matters described in, 1081-1082
 is more meritorious than piety, 1078
 nothing greater than, 1080-1
 merits of reciting the, 1079
 the merits of listening to in different seasons, 1078, 1079
 (See also Āgneyapurāṇa)
 Agniṣṭoma, a somasamsthā, 86, 466, 1079
 description of, 64
 worshipped, 79
 Agniṣṭu, a son of Manu and Nadvalā, 42
 Agniṣvāttāḥ, birth of the manes, 49
 prayer to, 336
 Agnivarcaś, a disciple of Lomaharṣaṇa, 730
 Agnivratī, explanation of, 524
 agnyādheya, a haviryajña, 466
 agrahāyani, a sacrifice, 466
 āgrahāyanyeṣṭi, a haviryajña, 466
 āgrayaṇi, a pākayajña, 86
 Ayodhyā, city of, 15
 Ahalyā, was married by Śaradvatā, 750
 Ahankāra, origin of, 40
 āhavanīyapada, at Gayā, 339
 Ahi, a karaṇa (Nāga), 369
 ahi, a variety of serpent; remedy for poison due to, 818
 Ahirbudhnya, born to Sati, 45
 ahisañcāri, an array; a variation of the array bhoga, 634
 Ahināśva, son of Devānika; son of, 738
 Āhuka, son of Punarvasu; son of, 742
 Āhuki, wife of Punarvasu, 742
 Aila, Purūravas; born to Budha, 31
 aindava, a kind of fire, 205
 Aindri, image of, 133
 prayer to, 399
 Airāvata, Indra's elephant made ruler of elephants, 47
 worshipped, 91
 aiśāni, one of the dhāraṇas; explanation of, 1050-1
 Aiśvara, a Pāficārātratantra spoken by Satya, 106

- aja, denotes Brahmā, 49
 Āja, son of Dilipa; son of, 737
 Aja, son of Raghu, 9
 Ajaiikapād, born to Satī, 45
 Ajakāśva, son of Jahnu; son of, 749
 Ajamidha, one of the sons of Brhat, 749
 Ajamidha, had Nilini as wife; son of, 749
 Ajamidha, father of Rkṣa; Dhūmini was the wife of, 750
 ajapā, gāyatri known as; greatness of, 557-8
 Ajāpāla, son of Kāla, 737
 Ajina, son of Havirdhāna and Dhiṣ-
 aṇā, 43
 Ajita, a manifestation of Viṣṇu, 428
 form of Viṣṇu at Viśākhayūpa, 841
 Ajitā, goddess, 375
 ajitā, a stone, 269
 Ājñārūpa, a deity; worship of, 414
 Ājyapāh, class of manes; prayer to, 336
 Akampī, a demon killed by Nila, 22
 ākarṣaṇa, one of the acts, 403
 Ākāśagaṅgā, at Gayā, 341
 Ākāśamātṛs, goddesses, 375
 Ākāśarevati, prayer to goddess, 399
 akhaṇḍadvāṣī, mode of practising the vow of, 514-5
 Ākhyānikī, characteristics of the metre, 910
 Ākhyāyikā, narrative 992
 a division of the prose kāvya; characteristics of, 919
 Akṛśāśva, one of the two sons of Saṁhatāśva, 737
 Akūrā, son of Śvaphalkaka; son of, 744
 the syamantaka was entrusted by Kṛṣṇa to, 743
 praised Kṛṣṇa, 27
 akṣa, herb denoted by, 407
 Akṣa, demon prince, 20
 Akṣarapaṅkti, a variety of Paṅkti; composition of, 904
 Akṣararadā, a goddess, 133
 akṣauhiṇī, a unit of army, 33
 Akṣaya, a year of the Hindu almanac, 405
 Akṣaya, a form of Rudra, 252
 Akṣayā, image of, 138
 Ākṣepa, a division of Abhivyakti; explanation of; also known as Dhvani, 943
 akṣi, herb, 407
 Akṣobhyā, image of, 138
 Alaghu, a sage born to Vasiṣṭha and Urjā, 49
 Alakanandā, a river, 325
 alambuṣā, a vein; carries the wind kṛkara, 556
 ālidha, a posture relating to archery, 133, 645
 alliteration, when conceived as charming, 935
 Amara, a form of Rudra, 253
 amara, an array; reverse of śakata, certain features same as maṇḍala, 635
 Amarakaṇṭaka, 331
 Amariṣa, letter denoting, 418
 Amariṣeśvara, a siddha; worship of, 415
 amāvāsyā, means near 990
 Ambālikā, a daughter of Kāśirāja, 31
 Ambariṣa, son of Nābhāga, 736
 a son of Vaivasvata Manu; son of, 737
 was a devotee of Viṣṇu, 736
 ambariṣa, a hell, 532
 Ambikā, denotes goddess Durgā, 26, 215
 letter denoting, 417
 Ambikā, daughter of Kāśirāja 31,
 Āmbikeya, a boundary mountain, 352
 ambrosia, rise of Dhanvantari with, 6
 Ambuja, one of the bandhas, 936
 Ambujeśvara, a Rudra, 255
 āmikṣā, explanation of, 1017
 Amogha, a female divinity, 51
 Amoghapada, at Gayā, 341
 Āmrātakeśvara, place at Vārāṇasi, 330
 āmṛḍita, one of the yamakas, 935
 amṛta (ambrosia), synonyms of, 987
 amṛtā, one of the Prapñtamudrās, 857
 Amṛtā, a female energy, 136
 Amṛtadhārā, characteristics of the metre, 909
 amṛtāmudrā, 200
 amṛtātmikā, one of the dhāraṇas; explanation of, 1051
 amṛtavidyā, description of, 870
 Amṛsu, one of the twelve Ādityas, 45
 Arīṣumān, son of Asamañjasa; son of, 737
 Āmukha (prologue), explanation of; also called Prastāvanā, 922
 three divisions of, 922
 amulet, protective, 395
 Anādivimāla, one of the gods to be worshipped, 412, 415
 Ānadra, one of the foremost sons of Viduṣa, 747
 Anagha, different reading for Alaghu, 49fn.

Anala, one of the Vasus, 44
 Anala, a boundary mountain, 352
 Anamitra, descendant of Dhṛṣṭa;
 Śini as born from, 743
 Anamitra, son of Nighna; son of, 737
 (wrongly given as son of Anaraṇya)
 Ānanda, a guard of the doors to be
 worshipped, 93
 a deity to be worshipped, 414
 one of the Pāñcarātra tantras, 106
 one of the sons of Medhātithi, 351
 anāṅgatrāyodaśi, on the practice of
 the vow of; for god of love, 515-6
 Ananta, serpent, 50, 55, 63
 image of, 137
 propitiation of, 176
 worshipped, 414
 letter denoting, 418
 Balabhadra was a form of, 37
 a Rudra, 263
 form of Viṣṇu at Saindhava, 842
 name of a śālagrāma, 125, 126
 son of Vitihoṭra; son of, 741
 anantadvādaśi, on the practice of, 513
 Anaraṇya, son of Kalmāṣapāda; son
 of, 737
 Anarka, son of Vatsa; son of, 749
 Ānarta, a son of Śāryāti; Kuśasthali
 as the domain of, 736
 son of Vibhu; son of, 749
 anāśrita, a perfection, 257
 Anasūyā, wife of sage Atri, 8, 15, 49
 anātha, a perfection, 257
 ancestral rites, at Gayā, mode of
 performing, 345-50
 anchorite, duties of, 452
 Āñcita, a division of Vithi, 928
 Andhaka, a demon, reference to his
 attack on Śiva, 746
 killed by Viṣṇu, 745
 one of the sons of Sātvata, 742
 Andhakāraka, a son of Dyutimat 352;
 mountain named after, 352
 Andhakas, a division of Yādavas, 736
 Andhatāmisra, sub-division of a hell,
 1039
 Āndhra, a country, 387
 Āṅga, one of the sons of Ūru and
 Āgneyi, 42
 one of the sons of Bali, 747
 lineage of, 746-7
 son of, 748
 a country, 640
 Āṅgada, son of Vālin, 19, 20, 21
 āṅgamantras, details relating to use
 of, 806
 Āṅgāraka, a planet; worship of, 52
 Āṅgārakeśvara, at Gayā, 343
 Āṅgirā (Āṅgiras), a year of the
 Hindu almanac, 404

Āṅgiras, sage, 41, 42fn, 112
 married two daughters of Dakṣa, 44
 Āṅgiras, progeny of, 49
 Āṅgiras, excellence of progeny of, 45
 a law-giver, 455
 one of the sons of Ūru and Āgneyi,
 42
 āṅgula, a measure, 107, 119, 140, 261
 Anila, one of the Vasus, 44
 animals, words denoting different
 species of, 1012
 life periods of certain, 465
 Aniruddha, a form of Vāsudeva, 62-
 91
 image of, 130
 installation of image of, 172
 worship with the mantra of, 68
 a śālagrāma, 125, 126
 son of Pradyumna, fond of war, 29
 fight with Bāṇa, 30
 father of Vajra, 37
 the Yādavas, Vajra and others as
 sons of, 745
 Aniyamopamī, explanation of, 940
 Añjali, a posture of the hand, 66
 a measure, 1037
 Aṅka, a type of drama, 921
 aṅka, a unit relating to elephant-
 force in the army, 632
 aṅkuśa, one of the postures of the
 hand, 246, 258, 837
 annaprāśana, rite of, 59
 anointment, for the preceptor, mode
 of doing, 74
 disciple, 263-4
 Antardhāna, a son of Prthu; progeny
 of, 43
 Antikā, a divine mother, 412
 Anṛta, born to Adharma and Hirṇyā,
 49
 Anu, one of the sons of Yayāti and
 Sarmisthā, 25, 740
 anudātta, a division of the sound, 917
 anugraha, the eighth creation, 48
 Anugraha, an energy, 112
 anugraha-cakra, a mystic diagram
 conferring grace, 869-70
 Anugrahiśa, letter denoting, 418
 Anuhrāda, one of the sons of Hiranya-
 kaśipu, 46
 anukalpa, that which is inferior to
 mukhya, 1018
 Anumati, one of the sons of Āṅgiras
 and Smṛti, 49
 anumati, a digit less than the full
 moon, 990
 anuprāsa, an embellishment of word,
 932

- anurādhā, an asterism, 360, 361, 363, 381, 382, 387, 388, 400
- Anuṣṭubh, a metre, 562, 902
- tawny coloured; belongs to Gautamagothra, 905
- the number of letters in each pāda of, 903
- Anyasyopamā, explanation of, 941
- Āpa, one of the Vasus, 14
- apādāna, two kinds of, calam and acalam; explanation of, 971
- Apahnuti, concealment of something conveying another sense, 944
- apīna, functions of, 556
- equated with the night, 557
- Aparājita, one of the Rudras, 15
- Aparājītā, a goddess, 375
- a herb, 410
- a stone, 269
- characteristics of the metre, 913
- Aparīṇtikā, characteristics of the metre, 907
- Aparavaktra, characteristics of the metre, 910
- Aparāvidyā, explanation of, 2-3, 1082
- Āpastamba, a law-giver, 455
- Apavāhaka, characteristics of the metre, 914
- Apavatsa, one of the deities to be worshipped, 108, 317
- Āpida, characteristics of the metre, 909
- appetite, loss of, remedy for, 773
- application, that breaks the army of others, 394
- Aprastuta-stotra, explanation of, 943
- apsaras, celestial maiden, 356
- Aptoryāma, a sacrificial rite, 61, 79, 86
- Aquarius—a zodiacal sign, 384, 392
- Ārabhaṭi, one of the modes; abounds in trickery, witchcraft, war etc.; three varieties of, 928
- āranyaka, section of Sāmaveda, 730
- Arbuda, a sacred place, 327
- archers, the units of army needed to protect, 653
- archery, description of the sciences of, 645-7
- five different kinds of, 645
- different postures relating to, 645-7
- instructions relating to the use of bow and arrow, 646-7
- details relating to science of, 647-8
- preceptor in, 645
- time for imparting, 359
- Ardhabhramaṇa, one of the bandhas, 936
- ardhacandraka, an array; formed from divisions of vajra, 634
- Ardhajaleśvara, letter denoting, 419
- Ardhāṁśaka, letter denoting, 418
- Ardhanārīśvara, installation of image of, 172
- ārdra, an asterism, 359, 360, 363, 376, 381, 382, 387, 400
- arghakāṇḍa, section on storing grains, 387
- Ārhaṭa (Jaina), reference to Viṣṇu becoming an, 38
- ari, relating to the letters in the name of the votary, 390, 391, 895
- Aries, a constellation, 378, 384, 385, 392
- Arimejaya, one of the sons of Kuru, 750
- Ariṣṭa, demon killed by Kṛṣṇa, 27
- Ariṣṭā, mother of Gandharvas, 47
- Āriṣṭanemin, married the four daughters of Dakṣa, 44
- progeny of, 45
- Arjuna, born to Kuntī from god Indra, 744
- birth of, 32
- son of, 751
- conquest of Kurus by, 33
- fought on the words of Kṛṣṇa, 34
- commanded the Pāṇḍava forces, 35
- fall of, 37
- Arjuna: See Kārtavīryārjuna
- Arjuna, a tree, 27
- a flower, 529
- Arka denotes Sun; worship of, 215, 316
- arka, denotes a herb, 406
- arka (white), a herb; used in charm, 406
- a flower for worshipping lord Hara, 529
- armoured men, duties of, 613
- armours, different kinds of, 649
- army, the composition of, 621
- words denoting the arrangement of, 1019
- six divisions of, 629
- six other divisions of, 630
- array for a marching, 630
- different kinds of arrangement of, 612
- defects of, 626-7
- number of vulnerable points of an, 633
- the mode of attacking an, 634
- array(s), different kinds of, 612, 633, other kinds of, 635
- five parts of, 612
- seven parts of, 633
- three divisions of, 633

- of army; different types of, 630
the king should never be in, 612
king should arrange the army in an, 632
of other kinds of different shapes, 634
structures may be modified by omitting one or two wings, 634
arrow, excellent kind of, 647
characteristic features of, 639
the materials for making, 639
ārṣa, a type of marriage, 434
ārtha, homa that confers, 53
Arthāntaranyāsa, one of the similarities, 939
explanation of, 941
arthāpatti, explanation of the term, 1027
arthaprakṛti, five divisions of, 922
Arthaśāstra, science of, 3
artisans, words denoting different, 1023
Aruṇa, born to Vinatā, 46
younger brother of Sun, 51
a Pāṇcarātra text, 106
brahmins in Kuśadvīpa, 352
Arundhati, progeny of, 44
Aruṇoda, a lake, 325
arvāgbijas, mantras having more than ten letters and less than twelve, yield result in old age, 802
arvāksrotas, creation known as, 48
Āryā, metre; characteristics of, 906
Ārya, a name of Durgā, 26
Āryāgiti, characteristics of the metre, 906
Āryakas, a class of men in Plakṣadvīpa, 351
Aryaman, one of the Suns, 45, 136
offering made to, 275
requested to accept offering, 336
Asādhāraṇopamā, explanation of, 941
Āśāḍha, an asterism, 382
Āśāḍha, the four asterisms, 385
Āśāḍha, a month, 386
Āśāḍhī, letter denoting, 419
asahya, a modification of the array called daṇḍa, 633
array formed by adding two flanks, 634
Asamañjasa, born to Sagara and Bhānumati by the grace of sage Aurva, son of, 737
Asamañjasa, son of Kambalabarhis, sons of, 743
Asamayikatva, a defect of word, 947
Asambāḍha, characteristics of the metre, 913
asamhata, an array; description of, 633
āsana, explanation of the term, 1044
asaṅghāta, an array; six units taken from and combined (for a battle), 634
Asatpralāpa, a division of Vithi, 928
ascetic, words denoting, 1018
duties of, 452-5
Asi, a river, 330
Asidhanya, one of the sixteen siddhas, 414
asipatravana, a forest in hell, 531
subdivision of a hell, 1039
asitā, a lightning, 45fn.
Āśleṣā, an asterism, 359, 360, 363, 376, 381, 382, 385, 388, 400
Aśoka, grove at Laṅkā, 16
Sītā found by Hanumat at, 19
Aśoka, a minister of King Dasaratha, 11
aśoka, a flower, 529
aśokapūrṇimā, vow on a full-moon day, 518-9
ass and other animals, mantra for the removal of poison due to, 819
assault, explanation of the term, 655
assembly, words signifying member of, 1017
Aṣṭaka, name of Śunahśepa, 749
aṣṭakā, a sacrifice 80, 106
Āstārāpaṅkti, a variety of Pankti; composition of, 904
Aṣṭāvakra, a brahmin, 37
curse on the nymphs made by, 37 fn.
asterisms, letters denoting, 400
words denoting, 989
actions appropriate to, 381
adverse for serving the employer, 360
auspicious for entering a new house, 360
beneficial for undertaking a pilgrimage, 360
causing adversity, 360
causing profit, 360
commendable for marriage, 357
commended for copulation, 134
commended for taking harvest grains inside the house, 361
commended for harvesting grains, 361
diagram of; relating to beginning a journey, 400
down faced, 381
evil 381
favourable for a person to return, 382
favourable for seeing a sovereign, 360
fixed, movable and commendable, 381
for constructing a house, 360

- forbidden for entering the cow-pen, 361
 for hoisting and lowering of banner of Indra, 362
 friendly etc., 362
 good for agriculture, 361
 good for sowing seeds, 361
 good for gathering hay, 360
 good or bad; combinations of, 380-2
 good for taking out the grains, 361
 increasing the heap of grains, 361
 lateral faced, 381
 malignant relating to snake-bite, 808
 new purchases prohibited under certain, 359
 not commended for grazing the cows, 360
 suited for giving or taking or depositing, 360
 to be avoided for wearing new clothes, 359
 vows relating to different, 520
 the names of the presiding deities of, 805
 āsthā, explanation of, 267
 asthma, food for a patient suffering from, 753
 Aṣṭi, name of a metre, 905
 Aṣṭi, daughter of Jarāsandha and wife of Karna, 78
 astrology, essence of 372-74; as the lord Hari, 492
 asūnyaśavana, a vow, 498-99
 āsura, a type of marriage, 435
 asuras, 34, 35, 38
 Aśvalāita, characteristics of the metre, 914
 Aśvamedha, a sacrifice, 23, 36, 86, 327, 330, 474, 1079
 Aśvapada, one of the varieties of Gomūtrikābandha, 937
 aśvattha, tree, 92
 Aśvatthāman, killed the Pāṇḍava soldiers, 35
 survived the Bhārata war, 36
 āśvayujī, a sacrificial rite, 86, 466
 Aśvāyus, a son of Purūravas, 739
 Āśvina, month of, 360
 Aśvini, an asterism, 358, 359, 360, 362, 363, 381, 382, 385, 386, 387, 400
 is of the shape of a horse, 384
 Aśvini Kumāra, birth of Nakula and Sahadeva through, 32
 Aśvins, worship of, 180
 Atala, a nether world, 353
 Ataladevi, goddess to be invoked, 413
 atarūṣabhava, a flower, 529
 Ātharvaṇīṣṛuti (Muṇḍakopaniṣad), 1
 Atharvaṇāyani, a branch of sāma-veda, 730
 Atharvaveda, an Aparāvidyā, 2
 sacred for Soma, 93
 use of the hymns of, 707-710
 hymns to be recited by the follower of, 287
 branches of, 730
 assigned on the palms, 64
 atibalā, a herb, 371, 378
 Aticandikā, a goddess, 132
 Atidhṛti, name of a metre, 905
 metre based on, 914
 atigaṇḍa, an impediment, 383
 Atighorā, a hell, 1038
 Atijagatī, name of a metre, 905
 a metre to be employed in composing a Mahākāvya, 920
 metres belonging to the class of, 913
 Atikāya, demon, 22
 atikrccra, an expiation, 479, 486, 487
 explanation of, 494
 to be observed three fortnights after death, 488
 atilohitā, one of the four kinds of lightning, 45fn.
 atimukta, a flower, 529
 Atimuktaka, one of the siddhas, 414
 Atiraktā, a goddess, 230
 Atirātra, a sacrifice, 42, 64, 79, 86, 466
 Atisakvari, name of a metre, 905
 used in the Mahākāvya, 920
 atisāntapana, an expiation, explanation of, 483
 atisāya (exaggeration), an embellishment of sense, 939
 Atisavokti, explanation of, 941
 Atithi, son of Kuśa; son of, 738
 ātodyam, a kind of musical instrument, 994
 atonements, different kinds of, 474-78, for ascetics, 455
 for minor sins, 474-5
 (See also expiations)
 Ātreya, a Pāncarātra tantra 106
 Ātreya, the infallible composition propounded by, 778
 Atri, sage born from Brahmā, 25, 31, 41 42 fn. 738
 Atri, a law-giver, 455
 progeny of, 31, 49
 Dattātreya as son of, 8
 bowed to by Rāma, 15
 protected the celestials, 746
 attachment, actions done with; to be transformed as those of non-attachment, 1074
 attendants, the king should choose what type of, 619
 Atyagniṣṛoma, a sacrifice, 79, 86, 466
 Atyaṣṭi, name of a metre, 905

- Atyuktā, a metre; number of letters in, 905
 Aucitya, an embellishment of sound and sense
 explanation of, 942
 audārya, a kind of fire, 205
 audgātra, priest for Śāmans, 429
 audumbara, a tree, 92
 auguries, auspicious and inauspicious, 597
 good and bad; known from sounds of animals and birds, 598-600
 Aupacāriki, a division of Abhivyakti, explanation of, 943
 Aupacchanāsaka, characteristics of the metre, 907
 Aūrva, a sage; was pleased by King Sagara, 737
 austerities, the gains of doing, 1074
 āvāhani, a posture made with the hands, 898
 Avalagita, a division of Vithi, 928
 Āvantayas, one of the five branches of Haihayas, 741
 Avanti, a country, 387
 Avantikā, a sacred place, 328, 491
 Avapāta, a variety of Ārabhaṭi, 928
 āvasthya, fire, 339
 avastika-khadga, a type of temple, 315
 Avasyandita, a division of Vithi, 928
 avighnācaturthi, a vow; details relating to, 503
 Avijñāta, son of Anala, a Vasu, 44
 Avimukta, name of Vārāṇasi, 330
 greatness of, 327
 Avispaṣṭatva, a defect of word, 947
 Avyayibhāva (compound), two kinds of; examples of, 975
 Āyā, a deity, 317
 Ayodhyā, city, decoration of, 11
 return of the people to, 13
 Rāma's return to, 23
 greatness of, 328, 491
 destruction of, 387
 āyogava, caste, 430
 duty of, 431
 Āyurveda, science of, 6
 Āyus, son of Viśvagāśva, 736
 Āyus, born from Purūravas, 25, 31
 sons of, 739
 Āyusmat, a son of Hrada, 46
 Babhru, a form of Rudra, 252
 was born from Devavṛdha; glory of; four sons of, 742
 Babhruṣetu, son of Gāndhāra; son of, 747
 Badarikāśrama, a place, 1.
 Bāhu, son of Vṛka; son of, 737
 Bahudāna, a year of the Hindu almanac, 404
 Bāhyāśva, son of Purujāti; progeny of, 749
 Bahūpamā, explanation of, 940
 Bahuputra, married two daughters of Dakṣa, 44
 lightnings, as four daughters of, 45
 Bahrurūpa, one of the Rudras, 41
 Bahrurūpā, a goddess, 230
 Bahuvidha, son of Śundhu; son of, 748
 Bahuvrihi (compound), formation of, 975
 Bāhya, one of the four sons of, 742
 Baka, demon, 32, 32fn
 letter denoting, 419
 a variety of beads belonging to Jyoti class, 894
 Bala, one of the seven sons of Suhotra and Girikā, 750
 balā, a herb, 371, 378, 407
 bālā, a formula consisting of twenty letters, 895
 installation of image denoting, 172
 Balabhadra, denotes Balarāma; progeny of, 29, 30
 a form of Ananta; returned to original place, 37
 merits of worshipping, 343
 Baladeva (Balarāma), married Revati, daughter of Raivata, 736
 Kṛṣṇa entrusted the gem to Akūrā in the presence of, 43
 bālāgra, a measure, 107
 Balāhaka, a boundary mountain, 352
 Balākāśva, son of Ajakāśva; son of, 749
 Balakeśi, image of goddess, 138
 Bālakhilyas, 60000 in number of the size of a thumb; born to Kratu and Sannati, 49
 Balapramathini, a goddess, 51, 201
 Balarāma, one of the sons of Vasudeva and Rohiṇi, 744
 origin of; reasons for being known as Saṅkarṣana, 26fn
 was entrusted to the custody of Nanda, 27
 reached Gomantaka from Mathurā 28
 killed the demon Pralamba, 30, 30fn
 figure of, 130
 assigned and worshipped, 56
 synonyms of, 985
 bālava, a karaṇa, 362, 369fn
 Balavikarīṇi, a goddess, 51, 201
 Bālhika, one of the sons of Śantanu; sons of, 751
 Bali, Indra at the time of eighth Manu, 428
 Bali a demon, the story relating to Viṣṇu's manifestation as a dwarf to

- subdue, 8, 745
 son of Virocana, 8fn;
 reference to subdual of, 82
 father of Bāṇa, 29
 had hundred sons, 46
 to be paid obeisance at Gayā, 341
 son of Sutaṇḍa; sons of, 747
 the name of a temple, 318
Balikā, the spirit possessing the child
 in the twelfth year; symptoms of the
 child possessed by; offering and
 smearing when the child is possessed
 by, 825
Balotkatā, a female deity, 292
Bāṇa, demon, 29, 30
 foremost among the sons of Bali, 46
 worshipped, 414
 symbol denoting a herb, 406, 407,
 408
 a flower, 529
bāṇalinga, 300, 301
bandha, relating to a kind of Yamaka,
 936
bandhas eight kinds of; description
 of, 936
 Anuṣṭubh as a metre for most of
 the, 938
 banks, words signifying, 995
 banner, words denoting, 1020
 erection of, 107-69
 length of, 309
 presiding deities of,
 worship of, 284
barbara, a flower, 529
Barhiṣadaḥ, manes, origin of, 49
 requested to come, 336
Bāskala, sarmhitā given to, 429
 one of the sons of Hrada, 46
bath, ingredients for ceremonial, 717
bathing, six kinds of, 436
 after illness, asterism for, 358
 mantras for, 436-7
 procedure for, 53-54
 to ward off obstacles, 718-19
 known as Maheśvara; promoting
 the victory of a king, 719-22
 benefits of, 764
 merits of; with different materials,
 552
bathing of deities, mode of, 190-195
 different kinds of, 192
 to accomplish one's desires, 716
bathing festival, mode of conducting,
 186-88
battle, worship for success in, 425
 things to be done after gaining vic-
 tory in; merits of endurance of pain
 in; the demerits of deserting a, 614
 battles, success in; means for gaining,
 372
 between celestials and demons; twelve
 in number; details about, 745
battle-axe, different uses of, 651-2
Bauddhas, reference to demons be-
 coming, 38
Baudhāyana (tantra), 106
Bauddhya, Vedas given to, 429
Bava, a karaṇa, 369fn
beads, made of different materials,
 merits of, 899-900
bees and honey-bees, words denoting,
 1013
begging, five kinds of, 453
beings, two kinds of; their characteris-
 tics, 1071
bell, used in worship; greatness of, 900
belly, three-fold division of, 930
betel, time suitable for rite of chewing,
 358
Bevācakra, to find friendship between
 two people, 392
bhadra, a variety of horses, 787
Bhadra, a type of temple, 314
 characteristics of, 318
bhadrā, a stone, 269
Bhadrā, a female divinity, 51
 a river, 325
Bhādra, name of a month, 360
Bhadrabhimā, a goddess, 376
Bhadradeha, one of the sons of Vasu-
 deva and Devaki, was killed by
 Kṛṣṇa, 744
Bhadrakālī, a goddess, 26, 376
Bhadrakaraṇa, a sacred place, 327
Bhadraka, one of the four sons of Śibi,
 747
 characteristics of, 914
bhādrapada, an asterism, 363, 388
Bhadraratha, son of Haryaṅgaka; son
 of, 748
Bhadrāsena, one of the sons of Vasu-
 deva and Devaki, was killed by
 Kṛṣṇa, 744
Bhadrāsena, son of Mahimā; son
 of, 740
Bhadrāśva, son of Rahovādi; ten sons
 of, 325, 748
 country, 322, 325
 Viṣṇu as Hayagriva in, 326
 a mountain, 325
bhadrātithi, certain days of lunar
 fortnight, 362
Bhadravīrāt, characteristics of the
 metre, 910
Bhaga, one of the Ādityas, 45
Bhagavadgītā, essence of, 1068-1073

- bhagavān**, the significance of the term, 1060
- Bhāgavatapurāṇa**, containing explanation of virtues; to be given as a gift in Proṣṭhapadi, 732
- Bhāgīnatha**, son of Dilipa; brought down Ganges from heaven; son of, 737
- Bhairava**, image of, 138, 314
installation of image of, 172
to be contemplated, 404
located on the body, 414
mantra having the word, 411
- Bhairavi**, goddess; mantra sacred to, 404
image of, 135
cloth bearing the figure of, 402
- Bhājamāna**, one of the four sons of Sātvata, 742
four sons of, 742
- Bhājamāna**, one of the sons of Babhru, 742
father of Vidūratha, 743
- Bhāllāta**, (a superhuman being) 108
worship of, 317
- Bhāṇa**, a type of drama, 921
- Bhāṇḍila**, an authority in prosody; given as Tāṇḍin in Chandaḥ Sūtra, 904
- bhangavidyā**, relating to goddess, 395
- Bhāṇi**, a type of drama, 921
- Bhāṇikā**, a type of drama, 921
- Bhānu**, mother of Bhānus, 44
- Bhānumati**, second wife of Sagara, son of, 737
- Bhānuratha**, son of Candragiri; son of, 738
- Bhānus**, progeny of Bhānu, 44
- bhāra**, one of the postures of the hand, 857
- Bharadvāja**, son of Bṛhaspati; was brought to Bharata by Marut gods, performed rituals, 749
saluted by Rāma, 13, 23
saluted by Bharata, 14
- Bharaṇi**, an asterism, 359, 360, 361, 363, 376, 377, 381, 382, 385, 387, 400
- Bharata**, reference to penance at Śālagrāma performed by, 1062
birth of, 10
married Māṇḍavī, 11
Kaikeyi's request to make heir apparent, 12
Daśaratha's words about, 13
brought to Ayodhyā, 14
was urged by Rāma to return to
- revered Rāma after his return from Lankā, 23
- killed three crores sons of Śailūṣa and returned to Rāghava, 24
- Bharata**, born in the race of Pūru, 31
country called Bhārata after, 323
loss of the sons of, 749
- Bhārata**, denotes Mahābhārata, 31
story of, 38
- Bhārata**, country, named after Bharata, 323, 325
Viṣṇu as Kūrma in, 326
- Bhārata**, a mountain, 324
- Bharatāśrama**, at Gayā, 344
- Bhāratavarṣa**, extent of, 350-51
divided into nine parts, 351
- Bhāratas**, the mighty descendants of Bharata, 749
- Bhārati**, one of the modes; formulated by Bharata; characteristics of; four components of, 928
- Bharga**, son of Prataardana, 749
- Bhārgava**, denotes Paraśurāma, manifestation of Viṣṇu, 8
goddess earth addressed as related to, 112
- Bhārgavi**, daughter of Śukra, 112
- Bhāsakarna**, demon, 22
- Bhāsi**, a daughter of Tāmrā, 46
- bhāskara**, signifies a herb, 408
- Bhauma** (Mars), 115
worshipped, 316
- bhauta**, a kind of fire, 205
- bhautiki** (rite), 86
- Bhautya**, fourteenth Manu, 428
- Bhava**, a name of Rudra, 50
a divinity, 292, 412
worship of, 290
- Bhava**, a muhūrta, 371
- Bhāva** (Bhava) a year of Hindu almanac, 404
- bhāva**, change relating to the mind, 995
- Bhāvabhūti**, letter denoting, 418
- bhavana**, a type of temple, 314
- Bhāvavṛtta**, deity of aghamaṛṣaṇa hymn; identified with Viṣṇu, 437
- Bhāveśvara**, letter denoting, 254
- Bhāvins**, a class of people in Puṣkara, 351
- Bhaviṣyapurāṇa**, had its origin from the Sun; narrated by Śiva to Manu; extent of; should be given as a gift in Pausya, 733
- Bhavya**, son of Dhruva, 42
- Bhavya**, ruled Śāka, 322
- Bhavya**, son of Adharma, 49

- Bhayankari, image of, 138
 Bhayotkatā, a hell, 1038
 bhedanī, a mudrā, 857
 Bhelaki, a divinity, 411
 Bhelakhi, sacred syllable known as, 396
 Bhida, letter denoting, 419
 Bhima, born from Vāta, 32, 32fn
 stayed as a cook at Virāṭa, 33
 Yudhiṣṭhira pacified women in the company of, 36
 fall of, 37
 (See also Bhimasena)
 Bhima, one of the sons of Kṛṣṇa and Satyabhāmā, 744
 Bhima, a Rudra, 50
 a guardian deity, 284
 worship of, 290
 propitiation of, 176
 Bhimā, a hell, 1038
 bhīnadvādasi, details relating to the practice of, 512
 Bhīmaratha, son of Jimūta; son of, 742
 Bhīmarathi, a river, flows from Sahya, 351
 Bhīmasena, born of Kuntī from god Vāyu, 755
 son of Pāṇdu and Kuntī; son of; through his wife Hidimbā, had Ghaṭotkaca as the son, 751
 killed Durvodyhana, 35
 Bhīmasena, son of Rkva the second; son of, 751
 Bhīmasena, one of the four sons of Jahnu, 750
 bhīndipāla, uses of, 652
 bhīru, a herb, 378
 Bhīṣana, one of the ten sons of Hṛdika, 743
 Bhīṣaṇā, a hell, 1038
 Bhīṣaṇī, goddess, 375, 417
 Bhīṣaṇu, an evil spirit which possesses the child on the second night after birth; symptoms of the child possessed by; offering to appease; unguent for the child possessed by, 821
 Bhīṣma, son of Śantanu and Gaṅgā, 751
 as ruling the kingdom after Śantanu's death, 31
 killed the soldiers of Pāṇḍavas, 34
 resolve not to fight against eunuchs, 34fn
 Bhīmapaṇcaka, mode of practising the vow of, 534-35
 explanation of, 534fn, 535
 merits of practising, 532
 bhoga, an array; description of, 633
 an array; variations of; five units taken from and combined (for a battle), 634
 modifications of, 635
 Bhogavati, a place, 329, 330
 Bhoja, region of; portent affecting, 387
 Bhoja, one of the siddhas, 414
 Bhojaka, son of Pratikṣetra; son of, 743
 Bhojas, one of the five branches of Haihayas (Yādavas), 736, 741
 bhrāmara, auspiciousness of a stone called, 641
 Bhramaravilasitā, characteristics of the metre, 912
 Bhr̥gu, married Khyāti, daughter of Dakṣa, 48
 progeny of, 49
 a holy spot, 330
 letter denoting, 419
 Bhr̥gutunga, a holy place, 327
 Bhr̥gvānanda, a divinity to be worshipped, 414
 bhr̥ṅga, herb, 407
 Bhr̥ṅga, worship of, 273, 316
 bhr̥ṅgarāja, a flower, 329
 bhr̥ṅgarāja, a herb, 378, 405, 406
 Bhr̥ṅgin, image of, 135
 Bhr̥śa, personified, 316
 worship of, 273
 Bhū, one of the worlds, 79
 bhūdhara, a type of temple, 315
 bhujag, herb symbolised by, 406, 407
 Bhujanga, worshipped, 414
 Bhujangaprayāta, characteristics of the metre, 913
 Bhujangasisusuta, characteristics of the metre, 911
 Bhujangavijrmbhita, characteristics of the metre, 914
 Bhujangeśa, letter denoting, 419
 Bhūloka, (earth) 354
 Bhūmitirtha, a sacred place, 327
 Bhūri, one of the sons of Bāl̥hika, 751
 Bhūrisravas, one of the sons of Bāl̥hika, 751
 bhūsaṇa, a type of temple, 315
 Bhūtasantāpana, a son of Hiraṇyākṣa, 46fn
 bhūtasarga, creation known as, 48
 Bhūtīśa, letter denoting, 418
 Bhūva, one of the worlds, 79
 Bhūva, son of Pratiḥastā, 323
 Bhuvārloka, location of, 354
 bibboka, a kind of gesture, 929
 bijamantras, on the practice of, 804
 bile, remedy for forty diseases due to deranged, 774
 remedy to remove excess of, 773
 bilva, herb, 407

- bilva, flower, 529
 bilvamudrā, a posture with hands, 196
 bimbamudrā, a posture with hands, 196
 Bindukoṭīśa, a sacred place, 414
 bindulā, an outcaste, 463
 birds, and their gaits; words signifying, 1012 - 3
 birth, previous; words denoting, 991
 birth and death, description of the process of, 1031
 black, words denoting, 992
 bladder, remedy to remove stone in, 768
 Blemishes, relating to poetry; seven kinds of—relating to speaker, denoter and denoted; further divisions of, 946
 blindness, excellent remedy for, 778
 blood and semen, discharge of; remedy for, 834
 blue vitriol, auspiciousness of, 641
 Boar, manifestation of Viṣṇu as, 7 ff, 9, 129
 the killing of Hiranyākṣa by, 745
 body, description of the names and formation of constituent parts of, 1034-36
 three functions of; to be paid equal attention, 763
 as the chariot, 1075
 bondage, way to get release from, 464
 bones, words signifying the different, 1015
 in the body, the description of their number, 1036-37
 bow, material for; measure of, 638, 639
 the different characteristics relating to, 639
 made of bamboo as the most excellent one, 639
 excellent kind of, 647
 mantra for worshipping, 639
 bow-men, task of, 613
 bows, should be worshipped before an expedition is begun, 639
 bow-string, material for, 638
 brahma, a flower that pleases lord Hari, 529
 Brahmā, 1, 3 etc.
 born from the navel lotus of Viṣṇu, 9, 735, 738
 self-originated, 40, 40fn
 synonyms of, 986
 as the charioteer of the earth, 746
 stopped the celestial war, 739
 mind-born sons of; divided into two halves, 41
 presiding deity of an element, 271
 image of, 130
 worship of, 274
 worship of golden image of, 498
 worshipped by people of Kuśa, 352
 worshipped by residents of Puṣkara, 353
 brāhma, a type of marriage, 434
 Brahmakesvara, one of the liṅgas at Gayā, 343
 brahmakūrca, expiation of eating handful of fired grain for fifteen days, 483
 Brahmajūṣā, a female divinity, 413
 Brahmāloka, name of Satyaloka, 354
 brahmamandira, a type of temple, 314
 brāhma muhūrta, one should get up in, 436
 brahman, unknowable, 464
 two kinds of, 1, 1060
 identity of soul and Supreme, 34
 as the cause of the world as held by Śaivas etc., 949
 words denoting state of, 1018
 description of the nature of, 1056-7
 knowledge relating to, 1057-9
 brahman, knowledge relating to mystic; expounded by Bharata, 1063-8
 brahmānda, a great gift, 144
 Brahmāndapurāṇa, in which Brahmā describes the greatness of the universe; extent of; should be given as a gift, 734
 version followed, 44fn
 Brahmāni, one of the eight goddesses, 411, 415
 Brahmapada, at Gayā, 339
 brahmaṇṇcaka, mantras known as, 874
 Brahmapurāṇa, one of the eighteen Purāṇas; narrated by Brahmā to Marici; extent of; to be given as a gift on full-moon day in Vaiśākha 732
 as destroying sins, 492
 Brahmasaras, at Gayā, 338
 Brahmasāvarṇi, tenth Manu, 428
 brahmasīlā, relating to linga, 266
 Brahmāstra, weapon, 23, 32
 Brahmatunga, a holy place, 327
 brahmatva, related to Atharvan, 429
 Brahmavaivartapurāṇa, narrated by Sāvarṇi Manu to sage Nārada; extent of; deals with the history of Rathantara and Boar manifestation of lord Viṣṇu; should be given as a gift in Māgha, 733
 Brahmāvarta, a sacred place, 327
 Brahmavetāli, a goddess, 424
 Brahmavidyā, the formula presided over by Brahmā, 895

- Brāhmi, a mother goddess, 139fn
 image of, 133
 brahmin, code of conduct for, 431
 breathing, remedy for trouble in, 830
 Bṛhadaśva, son of Śrāvanta, 736
 Bṛhadbhānu, son of Bṛhatkarman;
 son of, 748
 Bṛhadiṣu, one of the five born from
 Bāhyāśva, 749
 Bṛhadratha, son of Jayadratha; son
 of, 748
 one of the seven sons of Suhotra
 and Girikā; son of, 750
 Brhannalā, Arjuna at Virāṭa as, 33
 Brhaspati, a law-giver, 455
 Brhaspati, a rite to appease the planets
 performed by, 740
 Brhat, son of Suhotra; son of, 749
 Bṛhatcakra, a kind of bandha, 938
 Brhati, a son of Śiṣṭi and Succhāyā, 42
 Brhati, a metre; characteristics of, 902
 is made up of one pāda Jagati and
 three pāda Gāyatri, 903
 black coloured; belongs to Āṅgīrasa
 gotra. ८१८
 sages and gods associated with, 562
 different kinds of, 903-4
 Bṛhatkalpa, a kalpa period, 732
 Bṛhatkarman, son of Bhadraratha; son
 of, 748
 Bṛhatkukṣi, goddess ruling over north,
 138
 Bṛhātmavat, son of Bṛhadbhānu; son
 of, 748
 bride, rules relating to choosing of, 434
 Buddha, manifestation of Viṣṇu as, 38
 figures of, 130
 Budha, story relating to his birth to
 Soma; 739, son of; saluted, 31, 52
 buildings, of different people; parts of;
 words denoting, 1006
 building sites for different castes: cha-
 racteristics of, 642
 worship of different gods in, 642-3
 burst of laughter, word for, 995
- Caidvas, name of the descendants of
 Cidi, 741
 Caitra, month of, 360, 386, 388
 Caitraratha, a forest, 325
 caitri, a sacrifice, 86, 466
 Cakra, a lake, 325
 a type of temple, 315
 a posture, 857
 an array; a variation of maṇḍala,
 635
 one of the bandhas; two kinds of;
 explanation of, 936, 937
 accomplished with the metre, 938
- Śārdūlavikriḍita class of metres, 909
 Cakrābjaka, one of the bandhas; ex-
 planation of, 936, 937
 Cakrapāṇi, form of Viṣṇu at Kāśmira,
 841
 cakrarūpa, efficacy of the herb, 378-9
 Cakriśānātha, a siddha, 415
 Cakṣu, a river, 325
 Cākṣuṣa, the sixth Manu, 427
 the devas in the period of; born
 as sons of Kaśyapa, 45
 Celestial at the time of the 14th
 Manu, 428
 son of Ripu and Brhati, 42
 one of the foremost sons of Viḍuṣa,
 747
 calamities, due to divine agency;
 remedial steps for, 625
 calling, words denoting, 992
 Campa, son of Pṛthulīkṣa; son of, 748
 camūmukha, a modification of the
 array daṇḍa, 633
 Cāmūṇḍa, image of, 314
 Cāmūṇḍī, a mother goddess, 139fn
 request made to, 397, 399
 characteristics of the image of, 134
 worshipped, 412, 415
 invoked, 416
 Cañcalā, a spirit seizing the child in
 the twelfth month: symptoms of
 child seized by, 824
 a monstress seizing the child in
 the fifth year; symptoms of the
 child seized by: offering to ap-
 pease; fumigation and bathing
 when child is seized by, 824
 Cañcalāksikā, characteristics of the
 metre, 912
 Cañcīśva, son of Mukula; had the
 twins, 750
 Cancer, a constellation, 361, 384, 392
 Canda, an attendant of Śiva; wor-
 shipped, 51, 52
 mode of worshipping, 211-12
 carved on the door-frame, 115
 Caṇḍī, a goddess, 132, 375, 424
 a hell, 1038
 Caṇḍāla, a caste, 430
 duties of; rules relating to dress etc.,
 431
 Candanadundubhi, son of Tittiri; son
 of, 742
 Caṇḍanāyikā, a goddess, 132
 Caṇḍarūpā, a goddess, 132
 Caṇḍarūti, a goddess, 132
 Caṇḍavṛṣṭiprapūṭaka, a variety of
 Daṇḍaka; characteristics of, 914-5
 Caṇḍeśvara, a holy spot at Vārāṇasi,
 330

- Caṇḍī, a mother goddess, 139fn
 image of, 132
 (See also Caṇḍikā)
 a herb, 371, 378
 Caṇḍikā, image of, 106, 132, 139
 benefit of establishing, 133
 worshipped, 412
 Caṇḍiśa, placing the image of, 106
 letter denoting, 419
 Caṇḍogrā, a goddess, 132
 Candra, a boundary mountain, 351
 Candrā, image of, 138
 Candrabhāgā, river; rises from the
 Himālaya, 351
 Candrālōka, son of Sahasrāśva; son
 of, 738
 Candramāh, herb denoted by, 406
 Candranāthaka, one of the siddhas, 415
 Candraparvata, son of Tārāpiḍa;
 son of, 738
 Candrapūra, one of the siddhas, 414
 Candrāvali, image of, 138
 Candrāvarṭa, characteristics of the
 metre, 913
 Cāndrāyaṇa, an expiation, 328, 471,
 472, 473, 475, 476, 477, 479, 480,
 481, 487, 488
 explanation of, 494
 to be observed for having done cer-
 tain sins, 489
 destroys sin, 491
 merits of practising, 524
 Cānūra, a wrestler killed by Kṛṣṇa, 28
 cāpa, a posture of the hands, 857
 a modification of the array danda,
 633
 Capalā, characteristics of the metre
 906, 909
 Capricorn, a constellation, 384, 392
 Carakī, a demoness, 317
 worship of, 274, 275, 276
 materials for the worship of, 109
 Carikā, a mother goddess, 139fn
 Carmaṇvati, a sacred place (river),
 327
 carrier, rules relating to, 675
 caru, a sacrificial offering, 58
 Cārudeśna, born to Vasudeva, 744
 Cāruhāsinī, characteristics of the
 metre, 907
 Caruka, a type of temple, 314
 caṣāla, meaning of the word, 1017
 case, that is rejected by another should
 not be taken up, 656
 cases, the employment of the seven,
 960
 casket, words denoting, 1017
 castes, duties of, 429-31
 duties of different, 465-7
 words denoting the fourth, 1023
 Caṭakā, a monstress affecting the
 child in the fourth year; symptoms
 of the child seized by; offering to
 appease; fumigation and bathing
 when the child is affected by, 824
 catarrh, remedy for, 773
 Caṭulādevī, a female divinity, 413
 Caturbāhu, form of Viṣṇu at Piṇḍā-
 raka, 841
 cāturmāsya, a havir-yajña, 86, 466
 the period for observing, 455
 Caturthikā, one of the four acts rela-
 ting to a marriage, 434
 Caturvaktra, letter denoting, 419
 caturvyavasita, one of the yamakas, 935
 catuṣpada, a karaṇa, 363, 369
 Catuṣpatra, a variety of bandha, 937
 cause, words denoting, 991
 word denoting primary, 991
 cavalry, functions of; ground suitable
 for; three infantry soldiers needed
 to fight, 632
 the units needed to protect, 653
 celestial region, asterisms belonging to,
 388
 celestial women, words denoting, 987
 celibacy, eight kinds of, 1041
 censure, words denoting, 993
 centipedes, remedy for poison due to,
 819
 Chala, a division of Vīthi, 928
 Chāndasatva, a defect of work, 947
 Chandovidhāna, science of, 2
 charm, of the shape of the figure of
 Garuda, efficacy of, 811-14
 charms, herbs used in, 405-7
 chariot, ground suitable for; to be
 protected by elephant (men), 632
 chariots, (men on) functions of, 631
 chariot-warriors, work of, 613
 charities, merits of making, 539
 Chāyā, gave birth to Sāvarni, Śani,
 Tapati and Viṣṇi, 735
 an embellishment of word; ex-
 planation of; four kinds of, 932
 Chedani, a goddess, 424
 Chekoktichāyā, explanation of, 932
 chest, five kinds, 930
 chest injury, remedy for, 754
 child, in the womb of mother; de-
 scription of the stages of growth of,
 1032
 period good for first feeding of, 358
 children, of different ages; words
 denoting, 1014
 remedy for cough, vomiting and
 fever of; herbs which would improve
 the speech etc. of, 766
 child's play, word for, 995

- chin, seven actions of, 929
 Cidi, son of Kauṣika; descendants known as Caidyas, 741
 circles, mystic, 375-79
 different kinds of, 870
 Citeyu, one of the ten sons of Bhadrāśva, 748
 cities, provision of places for different people in, 320-21
 vāstu relating to, 320-22
 citra, an embellishment of word, 932
 Citra, a type of temple, 315
 Citrā, an asterism, 359, 360, 361, 363, 381, 385, 387, 400
 characteristics of the metre, 907
 Citrabhānu, a year of the Hindu calendar, 404
 citraduṣkara, a division of objects to be struck by an arrow, 648
 Citragupta, presiding deity of place of worship of planets, 467
 Citrakāvya, definition of; seven kinds of, 935
 Citrakūṭa, name of a place, 841
 a sacred spot, 328
 Rāma's arrival at the mountain of, 13, 14
 Citralekhā, friend of Uśā, daughter of Bāṇa, 30
 Citrāṅga, a form of Rudra, 253
 Citrāṅgada, a Gandharva, 31
 son of Śantanu, 31
 Citrapadā, characteristics of the metre, 911
 Citraratha, ruler of the Gandharvas, 47
 son of Ruṣadgu; son of, 741
 son of Dharmaratha; son of, 748
 Citrasena, son of Raucya Manu, 428
 cloth, words relating to different kinds of, 1016
 cloud, words denoting, 988
 clouds, words denoting row of, 988
 clouds (thunder), words denoting, 988
 club, wielding of, 619
 Coalescence, explanation of, 914
 Colas, origin of, 747
 colic, remedy for, 768, 776
 intestinal, remedy for, 766
 colours, words denoting different, 902
 words denoting mixed, 992
 commander(s), duties of, 630
 instructions for, 633
 comic sentiment, origin of, 923
 four-fold; description of, 931
 compositions, of different kinds such as Gomūtrikā, 936
 compounds, divided as eternal and noneternal; examples of; six kinds of; divided into 28 kinds, 973
 four-fold classification of; on account of prominence of one member, 975-76
 concealing, words denoting, 989
 Conceit, origin of, 923
 conch-shell, a variety of, stated to be auspicious, 641
 conciliation, a political expedient, 627
 two kinds of, 587
 four kinds of, 627-8
 method of employing, 628
 conduct, codes of, 436-39, 463-65
 towards different people, 618
 five kinds of codes of, 465
 conjecture, word for, 991
 conjugations, the important roots belonging to the ten, 982
 conjuring, a political expedient, 627
 consecration, commendable time for, 361
 of the doors of the temple, 164-69
 304-5
 of the idol, 152-55
 of an image, 96ff, 283-84
 of the images of gods, 180-83
 materials used in, 150-51
 mode of doing, 110-113
 of pitches, 149-51
 preliminary, 155-60
 of tanks and ponds, 173-78
 of a temple, 307-8
 of umbrella etc.; mantras for, 725-28
 constellations, the things they denote, 358
 constipation, a decoction that is a remedy for, 775
 consumption, remedy for, 767, 776
 contemplation, of different kinds, 1046-1049
 explanation of the term; benefit of practice of; mode of, 1046
 contextual object, words denoting thought related to, 993
 continents, names of, 323
 extent and description of, 351-3
 contrivance, explanation of, 945
 conventional, a variety of excellence of sense; explanation of, 945
 conversation, words denoting, 993
 word denoting mutual, 993
 cooked rice mixed with milk, words denoting, 1017
 coral, auspiciousness of, 641
 coronation of a king; mode of performing, 566-68
 sacred syllables for, 569-73
 asterism good for, 360
 corrupted word, term denoting, 992
 cough, remedy for, 830
 remedy for five kinds of, 772

- cough and other ailments, remedy for 773
- counsel, five kinds of; the type of persons with whom the king can have, 624-5
- things which would break a secret, 625
- counsels, words denoting chief, 1018
- counter-suit, could be made when, 656
- countries, different kinds of; based on landscape, 758
- country, description of a prosperous, 620
- courses, for beings; two kinds of, 1078
- courtiers, the qualities of and selection of; should be neutral, 656
- cows, of different kinds; words denoting, 1021-22
- elixir for, 801
- excellence of the six items got from, 798
- food that yields more milk from, 801
- fumigation against evil planets for, 801
- a great gift of thousand, 544
- greatness of, 798, 799, 800
- mantras for the protection of, 835
- merits of making gift of different numbers of, 547
- nourishing food for calves of, 801
- propitiatory rites preceding the worship of, 801-2
- the purificatory item got from, 799
- oil that removes biliousness of, 800
- prescription for joining broken bones of, 800
- pain in the ears of, 800
- wounds of, 801
- remedy for deranged phlegm of, 800
- diseases affecting the horns of, 800
- diseases of digestive organs etc. of, 800
- diseases of the flesh of, 800
- dysentery of, 800
- heartaches and stomachache etc. of, 800
- pain in the teeth of, 800
- stiffness of, 800
- swelling of the belly of, 835
- toothache and diseases of mouth and tongue, 800
- creating dissent, one of the means to be employed by the king, 587
- creation, description of, 39-41
- process of, 1030
- primary, 48-50
- secondary, description of, 45-48
- of the world, 39
- cremation, cases when not done, 451
- crystal, a gem; is said to be auspicious, 641
- Cūdākṛti, one of the saṁskāras, 39
- Cūlikā, characteristics of the metre, 907
- curiosity, words signifying, 995
- Cūrṇaka, a division of prose Kāvya, 918
- Cyavana, son of Suhotra, 750
- Cyuta, a kind of Citrakāvya, 935
- definition of, 936
- Cyutadatta, a kind of Citrakāvya, 935
- definition of, 936
- Dadhi, an ocean, 324
- Dadhimaṇḍodaka, ocean, 352
- Dadhimukha, monkey guarding honey-garden, 20
- Dadhimukhya, a class of men at Kuśadvipa, 352
- Dadhivāhana, was born from Aṅga, 748
- Dadhivaktra, a monkey, 21
- Dāhala, a country, 387
- dainandinī, the creation known as, 19
- Daitya, to be worshipped, 317
- daityas, defeated the devas, 38
- Daityasūdana, form of Viṣṇu at Prabhāsa, 841
- Dākinī, a goddess; worshipped, 415
- Dakṣa, born to Pracetas and Mārīṣa, 43
- made the ruler of Prajāpati, 47
- Khyāti and others married the daughters of, 48
- Sati discarded her life on account of wrath of, 50
- one of the guards of the doors; to be worshipped, 93
- letter denoting, 419
- a law-giver, 455
- Dakṣasāvarṇi, ninth Manu, 428
- dakṣiṇāgnipada, at Gayā, 339
- damanaka, investiture of fibres of, 225-26
- Daminah, a class of men at Kuśadvipa, 352 fn
- Dāmodara, a name of Viṣṇu, 65
- form of Viṣṇu at Raivataka, 842
- a Śālagrāma, 125
- Damṣṭrālā, a goddess, 375
- Dānavas, progeny of Danu, 47
- Daṇḍa, one of the three sons of Dhundhumāra, 736
- the name of a temple, 318
- one of the bandhas, 936
- explanation of, 937
- daṇḍa, an array; description of; other arrays which are modifications of

- the array called; characteristics of, 633
 seventeen kinds of arrays could be formed from, 634
 characteristics of arrays which are modifications of, 633
 yugorasya as a variation of, 634
 valaya, an array formed by union of two, 635
 a posture, 857
- Dandahasta**, one of the eight forms of Gaṇapati, 865
- Dandaka**, forest; as excellent, 328
 Rāma's arrival at, 15
 Śāringadhārīn form of Viṣṇu at, 842
 characteristics of, 914
 different varieties of, 15
 dandaka, weapon to be used against danda of the enemy, 634
- Dandī**, an attendant of Sun, 195
- Dandī**, letter denoting, 419
- Dandīn**, tawny-coloured; to be worshipped, 51
 beads belonging to the Savitra class, 391
- Danu**, a demoness; progeny of, 46, 46fn, 47
- Darbha**, one of the sons of Āyus, 739
 darbha, grass, 58, 91, etc.
 darkness, words denoting, 995
 darśa, union of Sun and Moon, 990
 Darśanī, letter denoting, 417
 darśapauruṣamāsa, a haviryajña, 86, 406
- dart**, measurement of, 649
- Daruka**, letter denoting, 419
- daśa**, denotes a herb, 407
- Daśagrīva**, denotes Rāvaṇa, 20
- Daśaratha**, son of Aja, 9
 four sons of, 10, 738
 saw the angry Kaikeyī, 12
 Hanumān's narration of the story of, 19
 praised Rāma for having slain Rāvaṇa, 23
- Daśārha**, another name of Vidūratha, 742
- Daśārṇa**, the seven hunters of, 349
- Daśāsvamedha**, at Gayā, 338
- Dasyus**, a class of men, 38
- Datta**, a kind of Citrakāvya, 935
 definition of, 936
- Dattātṛeva**, manifestation of the Trinity of gods, 8
 form of Viṣṇu, 131
 born to Atri and Anasūyā, 19
- Dattoli**, son of Pulastya and Pṛiti, 49
- dawn**, words denoting, 990
- day**, words denoting, 990
 words denoting past, current and future, 1000
- dead**, recipes which would revive, 772
- death**, the process of, 1037-8
 medicines which would conquer, 779
 medicine that overcomes premature, 778-9
- debt(s)**, definition of, 654
 discharge of; asterism governing, 358
 rules relating to, 659-61
- deceit**, a political expedient, 587, 627
- deeds**, merits of good, 451
 need for performing virtuous, 901
- defect**, of meaning is twofold—general and particular, 947
- Dehadrhti**, propitiation of, 176
- deities**, names and worship of female, 292
 presiding over the asterisms, lunar days etc., 805
 worship of, 896
 presiding over different things, 542
 sacred bathing of, 716-7
- deliberation**, word denoting, 991
- deluge**, words denoting, 990
- demon**, words denoting, 986, 988
- deposit**, definition of the term; rules relating to, 661
- Depth**, explanation of the composition known as 945
- depth**, words denoting different, 996
- desires**, renunciation of; praise of knowledge gained by, 107
- Deva**, form of Viṣṇu at Raivataka, 841
 one of the deities to be located in the body, 414
- Devabhoga**, one of the siddhas, 414
- devadatta**, a life-force, 257
 carried by the vein hūhu, 556
 functions of, 557
- Devadevesa**, form of Viṣṇu on the Sahya mountain, 841
- Devadūti**, a spirit possessing the child in the eleventh year; symptoms of the child possessed by; offering and fumigation when the child is possessed by, 825
- Devahūti**, wife of Kardama; progeny of, 41, 41 fn
- Devaka**, son of Āhukṛ; sons of; daughters of, 742
- Devaki**, one of the daughters of Devaka; married by Vasudeva, 26, 26 fn, 742
 as a manifestation of Aditi, 744
 worshipped by Kṛṣṇa, 28
- Devakṣetra**, son of Devarāta; son of, 742
- Devakūṭa**, a boundary mountain, 325
- Devala**, exposition made by, 1074
 son of Pratyūṣa, 44

- devala, a caste, 430
 Devamidhuṣa, born in the line of
 Dhr̥ṣṭa, 743
 Devānika, son of Sudhanvā; son of,
 738
 Devāntaka, a demon, 22
 Devāpi, one of the sons of Śantanu, 751
 Devarata, one of the sons of Viśvā-
 mitra, 749
 Devārata, son of Karambha; son of,
 742
 Devārha, one of the ten sons of Hṛdika;
 son of, 743
 devas, the battle between asuras and,
 34, 35, 38
 benefit of worship of, 40
 Devavān, son of Rudra Sāvarni Manu,
 428
 son of Devaka, 742
 Devavara, a manifestation of Viṣṇu,
 428
 Devavarninī, first wife of Viśravas,
 24 fn
 Devavratā, 333 (See Dharmavratā)
 Devāvṛdha, one of the four sons of
 Sātвата; son of, 742
 Devāvṛt, mountain, 352
 Devayāni, daughter of Śukra; was
 married by Yayāti, 25, 25fn., 740
 Devi, significance of the term 99†
 Devikā, a river, 526
 a holy place, 327
 Devivrata, explanation of, 525
 Dhairya, son of Jyotismat, 372
 Dhamani, image of; governs the north,
 138
 dhanañjaya, a life-force, 257
 carried by the vein śāṅkhini, 556
 functions of, 557
 Dhanañjaya, a divinity worshipped in
 the east, 316
 dhanishṭhā, an asterism, 359, 360, 361,
 363, 376, 381, 382, 385, 388
 dhanuḥ pakṣa, an array; characteris-
 tics of, 633
 Dhanus, a constellation, 367, 368 fn.
 Dhanvantari, a form of Viṣṇu, 6
 was born from Dirghatamas; son
 of, 749
 science of medicine propounded
 to Susruta by, 751ff
 Dhanya, a class of men in Krauñca-
 dvīpa, 352
 dhanyāka, a herb, 407
 Dhara, one of the Vasus, 44
 dhārāṇā, definition of, 454
 explanation of the term, 1076
 (see also retention)
 dharāṇi, a stone, 269
 Dhārikā, a female deity, 292
 Dhāriṇī, daughter of the manes and
 Svadhā, 49
 dharma, a puruṣārtha protected by
 Viṣṇu, 23
 Vibhiṣana was deep-rooted in, 24
 Bhisma's discourse on, 36
 the homa that bestows, 53
 Dharma, alternate reading for Dhara,
 44fn
 Dharma, married ten daughters of
 Dakṣa, 44
 Dharma, god of virtue, 32, 332
 worshipped, 51
 worship of, 286
 son of Gāndhāra; son of, 747
 dharmadrona, a hymn, 349
 Dharmanetra, son of Haihaya; son of,
 740
 Dharmapāla, a minister of King
 Daśaratha, 11
 Dharmarāja, denotes Yudhiṣṭhira,
 33, 37
 Dharmāranya, a sacred spot at Gavā,
 337
 Dharmaratha, son of Diviratha; son
 of, 748
 dharmas, the origin of heretics devoid
 of Vedic, 38
 Dharmaśāstra, science of, 2
 Dharmaśavarni, eleventh Manu, 428
 Dharmatirtha, a holy place, 327
 Dharmavati, wife of Dharma, 332
 Dharmavratā, daughter of Dharma;
 married by Marici, 332
 Marici's curse on, 333
 Dharmesha, a divinity worshipped,
 108
 Dharmeyu, one of the ten sons of
 Bhadrāśva, 748
 Dharmopamā, explanation of, 940
 Dhārṣṭaka, race of; was from Dhr̥ṣṭa,
 one of the sons of Vaivasvata Manu,
 736
 Dhātā, a form of Rudra, 272
 a year of the Hindu calendar, 404
 Dhātaki, son of Savana, 353
 Dhātr, one of the Ādityas, 45, 136
 worship of, 176
 saluted, 50, 50fn
 adored, 88
 Dhātr, a celestial; son of Bhṛgu and
 Khyāti, 49
 dhātri, herb, 407
 Dhātri, a female deity, 292
 dhattūra, black; herb, 406
 Dhaumakalpa, a kalpa period, 733
 Dhaumya, sage, 33
 Dhāvani, a monstress afflicting the

- child in the sixth year; symptoms of the child afflicted by; offering to appease; fumigation and bathing when the child in afflicted by, 824
- Dhenu, one of the varieties of Gomūtrikā-bandha, 937
- dhenu, a posture of the hand, 196, 205, 208, 273
- Dhenuka, a demon, 27
- Dhenukā, a forest, 314
- Dhenumat, son of Jyotiṣmat, 352
- Dhenupada, at Gayā, 314
- dhenuvrata, mode of practising, 522
- Dhimān, son of Mahāvīrya, 323
- Dhiṣanā, of the family of Agni; progeny of, 43
- Dhr̥ṣṇu, son of Kuhura; son of, 742
- Dhr̥ṣṇa, one of the eight sons of Vaivasvata Manu, 735
- One of the sons of Asamañjas; two wives of, 743
- Dhr̥ṣṭadyumna, son of Drupada; son of, 750
- fate of army headed by, 35
- Dhr̥ṣṭaka, son of Kunti; son of, 742
- Dhr̥ṣṭaketu, son of Dhr̥ṣṭadyumna, 750
- Dhr̥ṣṭokta, one of the sons of Kārtavīrya, 741
- Dhrtaketu, son of Dakṣaśārṇi Manu, 428
- Dhrtarāṣṭra, begot by Kṛṣṇa Dvāpāyana through the wife of Vicitravīryaka, 751
- born to Ambikā, 31
- Pāṇdavas' destruction of the sons of, 34
- resorted to the forest after the war, 36
- beads belonging to Jyoti class, 894
- Dhrti, a form of Hari, 91
- son of Dhr̥ṣṇu; son of, 742
- wife of Nandi, 739
- name of a metre, 905
- Dhrtimān, a son of Purūravas, 739
- Dhruva, son of Uttānapāda and Sunīti, 41
- story of, 41 fn
- as a celestial star, 42
- Dhruva, one of the Vasus, 44
- one of the seven sons of Medhātithi; after whom the country was named, 351
- dhūli, auspiciousness of gem called, 641
- Dhumini, wife of Ajamidha, 750
- Dhūmra, a monkey, 21
- Dhūmrākṣa, a demon killed by Hanumat, 22
- Dhūmravarṇa, a name of the elephant-faced god, 866
- Dhundhu, a demon killed by Kuvalāśva, 736
- Dhundhumāra, name of Kuvalāśva as he killed the demon Dhundhu; the three sons of, 736
- Dhuni, son of Yuyudhāna alias Sātyaki; son of, 743
- dhustura, a flower for worshipping lord Hara, 529
- Dhvanī, alternate reading for Muni, 44fn
- stated as identical with any one of the figures like Ākṣepa, 943, 944
- dhvāṅkṣi, denotes the entry of the Sun in one of the signs, 362
- dhyāna, definition of, 454
- explanation of the term 1076
- diabetes, remedy for, 753
- diamond, a gem, 640
- auspiciousness of and qualities of a good, 641
- diarrhoea, excellent remedies for, 754, 767
- diction, four kinds of, 927
- digestion, remedy that stimulates, 778
- digestive power, remedy to restore, 775
- dik, herb denoted by, 406, 407
- Dilipa, son of Anśumān; son of, 737
- son of Raghu; son of, 737
- Dima, a type of drama, 921
- dipaka, a perfection, 257
- Dipani, letter denoting, 417
- Diptā, a female divinity; worshipped, 51
- Diptamāvā, a hell, 1039
- Diptikāraṇa, a Rudra, 254
- Diptimān, a sage, 428
- Diptimati, a female deity, 292
- direction, words denoting, 988
- Dirghabāhu, son of Āja; son of, 737
- Dirghatamas, son of Kāśi (Kausika?); son of, 749
- disc, uses of, 651
- disciple, qualities of, 804
- anointment of, 263-4
- discussion, word denoting, 991
- diseases, different kinds of, 83
- words denoting different; words denoting persons free from illness, 1014-15
- four kinds of; description of; remedies for; making gifts to get rid of, 757
- mental; hymn on Viṣṇu for, 758
- excessive eating as cause of, 760
- of children; remedies for, 766
- general remedies for all, 769
- for kinds of, due to deranged bile; twenty kinds of, due to deranged phlegm, remedy for eighty kinds of; due to deranged wind, 774

caused by planets, remedy for, 829
 disgust, origin of the sentiment, 923
 sentiment of; is twofold; arises from
 aversion, 932
 dispute, explanation of the matters
 for, 634-55
 dispute, the preliminary procedures
 relating to; before taking up for
 discussion; termed as miscellaneous;
 being annoyed contrary to codes
 is a matter for, 656
 disputes, words denoting discussions
 relating to, 992
 four steps relating to; eighteen kinds
 of and one hundred divisions of;
 should be examined by the king,
 636
 qualifications of witnesses, 661-2
 relating to boundaries; procedures
 for solving, 670-71
 disrespect, words meaning, 995
 dissension, a political expedient, 627
 three kinds of; means of employing,
 628
 as a means to win an enemy, 631
 dissolutions, of four kinds; description
 of, 1028-9
 description of the absolute, 1030
 Diti, wife of Kaśyapa; progeny of, 45
 mother of the demons, 7 fn
 lost her offspring and propitiated
 Kaśyapa, 47
 worship of, 274
 worshipped, 317
 Divaspati, Indra during the period
 of the thirteenth Manu, 428
 Divijāta, a son of Purūravas, 739
 divine edifice, general characteristics
 of, 313-16
 Diviratha, was the next king after
 Dadhivāhana; son of, 748
 Divodāsa, popular name of Hemara-
 tha; son of one of the progeny of
 Cañcāśva, 749
 progeny of, 750
 Divyā, a goddess, 375-376
 Dodhaka, characteristics of the metre,
 912
 dog, remedy for poison due to, 820
 dog-bite, remedy for poison due to, 756
 Dohini, letter denoting, 418
 dramas, names of twentyseven types of;
 two courses of characteristics of;
 means of attaining threefold end
 of life; thirtytwo components of, 921
 explanation of opening in, 922
 dramatic representation, four ways of;
 explanation of, 930
 Drauṇi, (Aśvatthāmā) a sage, 428
 survived the Mahābhārata battle, 36

Draupadi, married by the Pāṇḍavas,
 32, 751
 stayed in the forest with Pāṇḍavas, 33
 Aśvatthāmā's destruction of the
 sons of, 35
 fall of, 37
 Dravarasa, son of Madhu; son of, 742
 Drāviḍi, characteristics of, 934
 Draviṇa, son of Dhara, 44
 dr̥ḍha, a division of objects to be
 struck by an arrow, 648
 dr̥ḍhaka, a modification of the array
 called daṇḍa, 633
 array formed by adding wings
 and flanks, 634
 Dr̥ḍharatha, son of Navaratha; son
 of, 742
 Dr̥dhāśva, one of the three sons of
 Dhundhumāra; the two sons of,
 736
 Dr̥ḍhāyus, a son of Purūravas, 739
 dreams, significance of, 595-6
 recollection of the experience in
 the waking state, 1036
 drinks, not intoxicating, 487
 Drona, conferred weapons on Arjuna,
 32
 Arjuna's apathy to fight on seeing,
 34
 description of the fight of, 35
 Drauṇi as son of, 36
 a boundary mountain, 352
 dropsy, remedy for, 752-3
 Dr̥ṣadvati, wife of Uśinara, 747
 dr̥ṣṭam, fear known as, 1019
 Druhya, one of the three sons of
 Yayāti and Devayāni, 740
 Druhyu, son of Yayāti and Śarmiṣṭhā,
 25
 son of Gāndhāra, 747
 Druma, son of Havya, 352
 drunkenness, remedy for distemper
 due to, 754
 Drupada, son of Pṛsata; son of, 750
 on whose words Śikhandi showered
 arrows on Bhīṣma, 34
 Drona's shower of arrows on, 35
 drupadā, hymn, 437
 drupadāt, a hymn, 562
 Drutamadyā, characteristics of the
 metre, 910
 Drutavilambita, characteristics of the
 metre, 912
 Dugdha, an ocean, 324
 Duḥkha, born to Vedanā, 49
 Duḥśāsana, brother of Duryodhana;
 directed the dice-play, 33
 Dundubhi, demon slain by Vālin, 17,
 17fn
 son of Dyutimat, 352

- a year of the Hindu almanac, 405
 a boundary mountain, 351, 352
 dundubhi, a type of temple, 315
 durdhara, a hell, 532
 Durdama, one of the sons of Vasudeva and Rohiṇi, 744
 durdina, denotes a bad day, 989
 Durgā, the other names of, 26
 day of getting up, 362
 image of, 132
 outlines on cloth of the form of, 402
 worshipped, 50, 52
 investiture of sacred thread for image of, 215
 benefits of propitiating, 404
 Durgasena, son of Bhadrāsena; son of, 740
 durjaya, an array; a modification of the array maṇḍala; has eight army units, 634
 an array; made up of four valayas, 635
 Durjaya, son of Ananta, 741
 Durjayā, image of, 138
 Durmālik, a type of drama, 921
 Durmati, a year of the Hindu almanac, 405
 Durmukha, a year of the Hindu almanac, 405
 Durmukhi, a goddess, 375
 dūrvā, a kind of grass, 94
 Durvāsas, son of Atri and Anasūyā, 49
 curse on celestials by, 5
 Duryodhana, son of Dhṛtarāṣṭra and Gāndhārī, 31
 Karna became a dependent on, 32
 refuses to give half the kingdom, 33
 going for battle at Kurukṣetra, 34
 army of, 35
 seen by Yudhiṣṭhira on the way to heaven, 38
 Dūṣaṇa, demon, 16
 commander of Khara; was killed by Rāma, 16 fn
 Duṣkara, an embellishment of word, 932
 a kind of Yamaka; three kinds of; explanations of, 936
 duṣkara, a division of objects to be struck by an arrow, 648
 Duṣṭacandālikā, a female divinity, 411
 Duṣyanta, son of Marutta; son of, 747
 one of the four sons of Tamsurodha; wife of; son of, 749
 Dūti, a female divinity, 411
 duties, as laid down in the Vedas; excellence of, 1074
 Dvādaśātman, a Śālagrāma, 126
 Dvaipāyanas, Rgveda as the authority for, 730
 Dvairatha, a son of Jyotiṣmat, 352
 Dvandva (compound), two kinds of—
 itaretarayoga and samāhāra; examples of, 975
 dvāpara, a yuga; division of Veda at the end of, 429
 Dvāravati, city founded by Raivata, 736
 a sacred spot, 327
 made as his capital by Kṛṣṇa, 28
 Kṛṣṇa's return to, 743
 Aniruddha brought to Śonitapura by Uṣā from, 30
 salutation to the fortunes of, 50
 repetition of the name of Kṛṣṇa at, 841
 was flooded by ocean, 37
 dvīdvādaśa, denotes the second and twelfth houses, 357
 Dvigu (compound), having a number as the first member, 975
 Dvimidha, one of the three sons of Bṛhat, 749
 Dvimūrdhan, one of the sons of Hiraṇyākṣa, 46
 Dviraṇḍaka, letter denoting, 419
 dvisthūṇa, an array; characteristics of, 633
 Dvīvida, a monkey that accompanied Rāma for the battle at Laṅkā, 21
 killed by Kṛṣṇa as he avenged the death of Naraka, 30, 30 fn
 Dwarf, Viṣṇu's manifestation as; as son of Kaśyapa, and Aditi, 745
 alms sought from Bali by, 8
 obeisance made to, 82, 83
 characteristics of the image of, 129
 dysentery, medicine for, 752
 infantile; remedy for, 766
 remedy for; remedy for long standing, 768
 of acute nature; remedy for, 777
 accompanied by swelling; remedy for, 777
 Dyuti, wife of Vibhāvasu, 738-9
 dyūta, a flower, 529
 Dyutimān, ruled Krauñca, 322
 Dyutimat, a boundary mountain; son of, 352
 ear, pain in; remedy for, 755
 bleeding of; remedy for, 766
 ear-ache, remedy to remove, 777
 ear's extent of, 353
 also parts of, words denoting, 1005-6
 best suited for installation of an image, 267
 a great gift, 544
 merits of and mode of making, 555-6

- saluted, 50
 eclipse, merits of making a gift at the time of, 362
 Ekacakrā, city, Pāṇḍavas stay at, 32, 32 fn
 Ekadamaṣṭra, a name of the elephant-faced god, 190
 ekadaṇḍin, an ascetic, 454
 Ekadanta, one of the eight forms of Gaṇapati, 865
 Ekanetra, a Rudra, 263
 letter denoting, 419
 Ekāṅghri, a guardian deity, 284
 Ekapāda, letter denoting, 419
 Ekarudrākṣa, a Rudra, 263
 Ekavira, mode of worship of Gauri according to, 897
 ekoddiṣṭa, ceremony, 459
 mode of performing, 348
 Elegance, relating to Guṇa; explanation of, 945
 elephant, words denoting things relating to, 1019
 ground suitable for, 632
 elephant (golden) and horse, a great gift, 544
 elephantiasis, remedy for, 768
 elephants, men mounted on; functions of, 631
 needed to protect a chariot, 632
 three cavalry (men) to be employed to fight with, 632
 elephants, characteristics of; treatment of their diseases, 781-83
 having commendable qualities to be possessed, 781
 diseases of the legs of, 782
 remedy for all sorts of disorders of, 782
 remedy for colics of, 783
 constipation of, 781
 dysentery of, 782
 earache of, 782
 fainting of, 781
 the fevers of, 781
 worms in the intestines of, 782
 jaundice of, 781
 the disease known as 'kaṭu' of, 782
 loss of appetite of, 782
 injuries of, 783
 stiffness of neck of, 782
 shivering of, 782
 the enlargement of spleen of, 782
 numbness of trunk of, 782
 removal of excess wind in the bodies of, 781
 propitiatory rites for curing the ailments of, 795-98
 anointment for, 783
 anointment for headache of, 781
 bed for, 783
 excellent collyrium for, 783
 cooling agent for the eyes of, 783
 for sharpening the eyesight of, 783
 dried barley for deranged humours of, 783
 kind of food good for, 783
 incense which makes them victorious in battle, 783
 milk as a drink for emaciation due to rutting in, 783
 nails of; cutting of; should be bathed with oil once in a month, 783
 prescription that increases the strength of, 783
 medicine for drinking in the case of retention of urine of, 782
 excellent drink for wounds of, 782
 elevated thinking, word signifying, 995
 embellishment, of senses; eight kinds of, 939
 of both sound and sense; six varieties of, 942-44
 embellishments, word, meaning and both; of words, nine kinds of; adding beauty to poetry; three kinds of, 932
 embryo, words relating to, 1014
 emerald, a gem, 640
 qualities of a good, 641
 emetic, commended in the case of hemorrhage, 752
 the best, 757
 decoction which would, serve as, 769
 a decoction that serves as a good, 778
 emotions, eight transient, 924-6
 inter-dependent on sentiment, 924
 empire, seven constituents of, 385
 employer, has the option to pay an employee for overtime, 674
 endeavour, the five kinds of, 922
 enemies, three kinds of, 605
 opportune moments to win on the sides of an array; means to win, 631
 enemy, definition of an; ways to conquer an, 627
 in one's own soil or another's soil; means to win, 631
 enmity, five kinds of, 623
 epics, merits of making a gift of, 735
 epilepsy, remedy for long standing, 773
 remedies for, 829
 eṇḍamunḍi herb, 407
 erotic, origin of the sentiment; two-fold; subdivided into two; four-fold divisions of a division of, aids of, 931
 erotic sport, words denoting, 995
 eternally, words denoting, 988

- eunuch, words which are used in the sense of, 1014
- euphonic combinations, examples of, 954-57
- evening, words denoting, 990
- events, preliminary and later; the strength of, 657
- evidences, in a lawsuit, 657
- fine for false, 663
- excellence, adds charm to poetry; exists in two forms, 944
- of word; seven kinds of, 944
- of sense; six varieties of, 945
- of words and sense; six varieties of, 946
- excess, words denoting, 988
- excitant, two kinds of; supportive; the influence of the emotions associated with; the nature of enhancing, 926
- of women are twelve, 927
- exercise, rules relating to doing, 764
- exertion, of the body regarded as gestures of the body, 928
- expedients, six kinds of, 606-8
- the seven political, 627
- expedition, definition of, 607
- instructions relating to military, 594
- propitious periods for undertaking, 604
- expiations, different kinds of; subtle kinds of, 482-3
- different kinds of, 485
- destroying sins, 490
- for association with sinners, 478-82
- for discontinuing the worship of gods, 490-92
- factors to be examined before laying down, 486
- expression, two forms of natural form of, 939
- extraneous matter, detection of, 268, 269
- eye, remedy for all diseases of; whiteness in; remedy for; ointment for external part of, 755
- eye-brow, sevenfold movement of, 929
- eyesight, prescription that strengthens, 778
- face, six kinds of actions of, 929
- fame, words signifying, 993
- fasting, rules relating to and benefits of, 492
- as superior austerity, 1074
- ferry charges, words for, 996
- festivals, celebrations of, 184-86
- feet, manifold action of, 930
- feudatories, duties of, 626
- fever, medicines for, 752
- due to deranged wind; remedy for, 772
- due to deranged wind and bile; remedy for, 772
- due to tumour; remedy for, 774
- fever and other ailments, decoction of herbs for, 772
- fever with other ailments, remedy for, 773, 774
- fevers, remedy for all, 772
- fevers and other ailments, remedy for, 774
- fine arts, sixtyfour varieties of; two divisions of, 926
- finer, different kinds of; for different offences, 589-93, 676-79, 681
- for various offences, 682-3
- fire, as the best sweating agent, 757
- a prescription which would enable one to walk on, 770
- fire, spark of; words denoting, 988
- sphere of; asterisms belonging to, 387
- words denoting flames of, 988
- words denoting submarine, 988
- Fire (god), 60, 215
- mode of installation of, 205-11
- Fish, Viṣṇu's manifestation as, 3 ff., 9, 129
- image of, 116
- fisherman, words denoting, 996
- fistula, remedy for, 775
- anointment for wounds in, ointment which arrests its spread, 767, 768
- flagstaff, material for making; length of, 308
- consecration of, 308-11
- floods, words denoting overflow of, 995
- flowers, eight kinds of gestures referred to as; eight different things as seat etc. referred to as, 530
- words which mean arrangement of, 1017
- food, two parts: one getting secreted and the other getting absorbed, 758
- forest, words which mean, 1006
- formula, for conquering the three worlds, 396-7
- for success in battle, 397-400
- formulae, presided over by different gods, and their characteristics, 895
- having more than five letters fruitful always, 802
- fort, defects of, 626
- fortress, to be built on hills, 620
- forts, construction of, 576-7
- the situation of; the six kinds of, 620
- fragrance, word for; word for attractive, 991

- word denoting object having good, 992
- Friday, for first feeding of a child, 358
- for first shave of a child, 359
- should not enter the cow-pen on, 361
- causes death with certain asterisms, 376
- causes afflictions with certain asterisms, 377
- inauspicious if coincides with second day, 381
- Rāhu rules in the east on, 409
- friend, the three gains got through a, 621
- friends, four kinds of, 621
- friendship, qualities of men with whom king should make; means of acquiring, 621
- fright, origin of the sentiment, 924
- fruits, asterism for eating, 358
- fruits of action, three, 1072
- fumigation, herbs used in, 583-4
- fundamental principles, worship of, 291
- Gabhastika, a name of the Sun, 136
- Gabhastimān, one of the territory, 350
- Gabhastimat, a nether world, 333
- Gadā, a demon killed by Viṣṇu, 334
- gadā (mace), used for acts such as āhata etc., 631
- gadā (mace), methods of using of, 632
- gadā, a posture, 857
- a type of temple, 315
- Gadādhara, form of Viṣṇu at Gayā, 841
- killed Heti and other demons, 334
- merits of worshipping, 337
- Gadāloka, sacred place at Gayā, 340, 341
- Gadāprakṣālana, sacred place, 340
- Gādhi, Indra; was born from Kuśika; son and daughter of, 749
- Gadini, a goddess, 376
- Gagana, a deity assigned on the body, 414
- Gaganānandadeva, worshipped, 414
- Gaganānandanātha, a deity, 413
- gahana, a posture relating to the riding of horses, 787
- gaja, a type of temple, 315
- Gajavakra, an appellation of elephant-faced god, 190, 865
- ṇḍa, a disease; remedy for, 766
- laṇḍa, letter denoting the divinity, 419
- Gālava, a Pāñcarātra tantra, 106
- Germanopamā, explanation of, 941
- Gāmbhīrya, an excellence of word; (see also depth), 944
- gambling, different types, 655
- rules relating to, 675
- evil results of, 627
- Gaṇa, worship of, 197
- obscure to, 51
- Gaṇacchandasa, description of, 905
- Gaṇādhipa, one of the eight forms of Gaṇapati, 190, 865
- Gaṇakriḍa, one of the names of Gaṇeśa, 190
- Gaṇanāyaka, one of the names of Gaṇeśa, 190
- Gaṇapati, elephant-faced god to be worshipped, 190
- different names of, 877
- of the form of praṇava, 412
- mode of worship of, 876-78
- Gaṇapati, eight forms of; worship of, 865-66
- Gaṇas, worshipped, 51
- gaṇas, relating to metres, explanation of, 906
- Gaṇḍa, a division of Vithi, 928
- gaṇḍa, an adverse period, explanation of, 382
- period of, 383
- gaṇḍamālā, a disease, remedy for, 766
- gaṇḍānta, an adverse period, description of, 382
- Gandhamādana, a monkey, 21
- a mountain, 324, 325
- a forest, 325
- Gāndhāra, son of Gaṇḍira, sons of, the descendants of, 747
- Gāndhāras, origin of, 747
- Gāndhāri, one of the wives of Kṛṣṇa, 744
- one of the two wives of Dhṛṣṭa, 743
- wife of Dhṛtarāṣṭra, 31
- accompanied her husband to the forest, 36
- gāndhāri, a vein, carries the wind udāna, functions of, 556
- Gandharva, located in a square for worship, 108
- worshipped, 316
- Gāndharva, the science of, 3
- a territory, 350
- gāndharva, a type of marriage, 435
- Gandharvas, born to Ariṣṭā, 47
- names of, 987
- Citraratha made the ruler of, 47
- Kṛṣṇa married the daughter of, 28
- milking of the cow in the company of, 43
- ride on the chariot of the Sun, 356
- prayer to destroy evil forces of, 84
- gandhaśasyaka, a gem (?), 641
- Gandhavati, spirit possessing the

- child in the seventeenth year, symptoms of the child possessed by, offering to appease, 826
- Gāṇḍīra, son of Varūtha, son of, 747
- Gāṇḍīva the bow got from Fire-god, 32
- Gandhivṛtta, a division of prose kāvya, 918
- Gaṇeśa, other names of, 190, 987
establishment of image of, 116
mode of worshipping, 189-90
obeisance to, 1
- Gaṇeśvara, one of the eight forms of Gaṇapati, 865
- Gaṅgā (Ganges), words denoting celestial, 987
brought down from heavens by Bhagiratha, 737
had Bhiṣma as the son from Śantanu, 31, 751
sacred, 350, 491
excellence of, 1074
greatness of, 328-29
greatness of its confluence with Saravati, 327
greatness of its confluence with Gomati, 328
always meritorious, 436
greatness of land adjacent to, 329, 330
water at the time of eclipse getting the sanctity of, 362
purifies the bather, 331
purifies one by mere remembrance, 355
Viṣṇu to be contemplated at the confluence of the river with the ocean, 841
worship of, 197
adored, 50, 88
worshipped, 51
- Gaṅgādvāra (Haridvāra), not easily accessible, 330
- Gaṅgāvisṇu, exposition made by, 1074
- gañjā, said to be auspicious, 641
- gara, an astral combination (karaṇa), 363, 369fn
- Garbha, one of the five sons of Vitatha, 749
- Garbhādhāna, a rite, 59, 71, 86, 95, 112
- garden, words for, 1006-7
- Gārgya, a Pāñcarātratantra, 106
- gārhapatyapada, at Gayā, 339
- garuḍa, an array, 612
- Garuḍa, born from Vinatā and Kaśyapa 46, 63fn
was made as the chief of the birds, 47
- Kṛṣṇa as riding, 28, 30
installation of the image of, 173
- benefit of worshipping, 343
worshipped, 51 (See also Vainateya)
- Garuḍamaṇḍapa, a shed in a temple, 115
- Garuḍapurāṇa, narrated by lord Viṣṇu in the Tārkaśakalpa, describes the birth of Garuḍa from the Universal Egg, should be given as a gift, 734
- Gāruḍi, name of a herb, efficacy of, 378
- garutmān, a type of temple, 315
- Gāthā, definition of the metre, 915
- Gātra, one of the sons of Vasiṣṭha and Urjā, 49
- Gauḍiyā, a variety of diction, characteristics of, 927
- Gauri (Pārvatī), renounced by Śiva, 6
seen by Uṣā as sporting with Śiva, 29
image of, 139
installation of image of, 172, 302-3
at Gayā, benefit of worship of, 343
to be worshipped, 193
different modes of worship of, 896-99
adored, 1, 51, 52
characteristics of the metre, 913
- gaurinavamivrata, mode of practising, 509-10
- Gautama, a law-giver, 455
- Gavākṣa, a monkey, 21
- Gava, given as one of the sons of Ūru and Āgneyi, but Śibi according to Viṣṇupurāṇa, 42
a demon, legend relating to, 332-35
son of Dhiṣaṇā of the family of Agni, 43
a son of Sudyumna, ruled over all the quarters, 735
one of the five sons of Vitatha, 749
son of Nakta, 323
a monkey, 21
- Gayā, a sacred place, 350, 491
ruled by Gaya (Gayāpuri'), 735
extent of, 334
Brahmā's curse on the brahmins at, 338
mode of pilgrimage to, 335-44
mode of performing śrāddha at, 345-50
Janārdana as ancestors at, 342
merits of performing ancestral rites at, 335
significance and greatness of, 332-35
Gadādhara to be contemplated at, 841
sacredness of image of Brahmā at, 106
- Gayākedāra, at Gayā, obeisance made to 339
- Gayānābhi, at Gayā, one should offer piṇḍa at, 342

- Gayāśiras**, at Gayā, 337, 342
 extent of, 398
- Gāyatri**, a metre, 562
 number of letters in, 902
 the number of letters in a quarter of, 902-3
 white coloured, belongs to Agni-
 veśyagotra, 905
 appropriate time for recital of, 916
 mantra, name of the gods presiding
 over the letters of the colours
 associated with, 560-1
 mode of reciting, the greatness of,
 559-63
 use of, 87, 37fn
 should be recited, 437
 destroys sins when repetition is
 made, 491
 merits of doing oblations with, 561
 explanation of, 563-4
 that is known as *ajapā*, 557-8
 mantra personified as goddess,
 white in complexion, born in
 the Kātyāyani gotra, 561
 letter denoting, 418
- gem**, in the serpents, auspiciousness
 of, 641
- Gemini**, commendable for marriage
 when ruled over by certain asterisms,
 357
 relating to worship of Viṣṇu, 361
 good for agriculture, 361,
 a special designation of, presence
 of Sun in, 362
 time taken by the Sun to cross, 384
 friendly with Sagittarius, 392
- gems**, words denoting 'the place of
 origin of, 996
 eight kinds of, 283
 characteristics of, 640-641
 good characteristics of, 641
 asterisms suitable for wearing, 359
 to be worn by a king, 640
- genealogy**, words which mean, 1017
- germ** (in a play), explanation of, 922
- gestures**, eight kinds of, 530
 twelve kinds of, explanation of
 five of, 928-9
- Ghana**, a Rudra, 254
- Ghanāntasthā**, a female energy, 136
- Ghanāyus**, a son of Purūravasa, 739
- Ghaṇḍā**, a female divinity, 375
- ghaṇṭā**, one of the postures of the hand,
 857
- Ghaṇṭādevi**, a female divinity, 379
- Ghaṇṭākarma**, image of, 135
- Ghaṇṭāli**, an evil spirit which possesses
 a child on the third night after
 birth, 821
 symptoms of the child possessed by,
 offering to appease, unguent for
 the child possessed by, 821
- Ghātakakra**, a mystic diagram to
 know victory etc., 388-9
- Ghaṭotkaca**, son of Bhimasena and
 Hidimbā, 751
- Ghora**, a form of Rudra, 253
 located and worshipped, 292
- ghorā**, signifies the entry of the Sun in
 one of the constellations, 362
- Ghorā**, a female divinity, worshipped,
 375
 located on the left tooth, 417
 a hell, 1038
- Ghorarūpā**, a hell, 1038
- Ghoṣa**, born to Dharma and Lambā,
 44
- Ghrīdikā**, one of the daughters of
 Tāmra, 46
- Ghrta**, son of Dharma, son of, 747
- Ghrteyu**, one of the ten sons of,
 Bhadrāśva, 748
- Ghṛtoda**, an ocean surrounding the
 Kusadvipa, 352
- gift**, a political expedient, three kinds
 of, 627
 five kinds of, 628
 mode of making, 544
 suitability of a person to receive, 541
 injunctions on the recipient of, 542
 to be made to poor and greedy for
 winning them, 629
 efficacy of making a, 463
 becomes futile if made expecting
 return, 541
- gift of a cow**, mode of making and
 merits of, 545-46
 merits of giving cows as, 547
 offering grains as a best, 544
 of earth, merits and mode of making,
 555-6
- gifts**, sixteen great, 544-46
 different kinds of, merits of giving,
 546-52
 proportionate to one's possession, 546
 as a means to be employed by the
 king, 587
 which confer the desired fruits, 552-55
 rules relating to making, 538, 539-43
 certain rules relating to making, 549
 rules relating to accepting, 543
 common procedures in making all,
 543
- the words to be said while making,
 543
 mode of making, for different
 yugas, 543
 greatness of making different kinds
 of, 544

- merits of making, 491, 538, 541, 542
 merits of making different kinds of, 556
 merits of giving on certain days, 550
 meritorious than performing sacrifices, 551
 girdle, time for tying of, 359
 Girikā, queen of Suhotra, propitiated
 Vasiṣṭha and had seven sons, 750
 girikarnikā, flower not to be used in
 worship, 529
 a herb, 371
 girivajra, auspiciousness of, 611
 Gīti, characteristics of the metre, 906
 Gityāryā, characteristics of the metre,
 907
 glance, three-fold, divided into thirty-
 six kinds, 929
 goad, words for, 1019
 Gobhānu, son of Varga, son of, 747
 goblins, worshipped, 50
 remedy for defects due to, 756
 gocarna, (a measure of surface)
 merits of making a gift of, 547
 Godāvarī, flows from Sahya, 351
 Janasthāna on the banks of, 15
 greatness of, 328
 sacredness of, 350
 goddesses, names of different, 120-23
 images of, 132-35, 138-39
 mode of worship of, 23-4
 godhikā, an array, consists of five
 units of army, 634
 God of Death, synonyms of, 988
 gods, forms of, represented by the
 vowels and consonants, 873-74
 worship of different, 273-75, 952-3
 consecration of the images of, 180-83
 merits of worshipping different such
 as Rudra, Viṣṇu etc., 900
 gods and goddesses, comprising the
 part of a mantra relating to Brahmā,
 420
 comprising the part of mantra
 relating to Viṣṇu, 420-21
 comprising the part of mantra
 relating to Śiva, 421-22
 installation of images of, 171-3
 goitre, a remedy to be used as an
 unguent in, 776
 gokarna, a flower, 529
 gokṣurakā, a herb, 407
 Gokula, a place, 27
 Gomantaka, a place, 28
 Gomatī, river, confluence with Gaṅgā
 327, 328
 Gomatividyā, a sacred formula, effi-
 cacy of repeating the, 799
 repeated as an atonement, 475
 gomeda, a gem, said to be auspicious,
 641
 Gomedha, a boundary mountain, 351
 Gomukhi, a spirit possessing the
 child in the third month, symptoms
 of a child possessed by, offering
 to appease, bathing the child
 possessed by, 823
 gomūtrikā, an array, a variation of
 array called bhoga, 634,
 an array, modification of bhoga, 635
 Gomūtrikā, one of the bandhas, two
 kinds of, description of, 936-7
 bandhas, composed in all the metres,
 938
 gonasas, serpents known as, 807
 treatment of poison due to, 818
 good deeds, words denoting, 990
 good people, commendable acts of,
 617-8
 Gopāla, beads belonging to Jyoti
 class, 894
 Gopīśvara, form of Viṣṇu to be con-
 templated on the shore of Sindhu
 ocean, 842
 Gopracāra, at Gayā, 341
 goraksa, a herb, 406
 gosava, a sacrifice, 474
 Goṣṭhī, a type of drama, 921
 gout, of acute nature, an extraction
 of oil of herbs as a remedy for, 775
 remedy for, 755, 767
 Govardhana, a mountain, 841
 govatsadvādasi, mode of practising
 the vow of, 512
 Govinda, a name of Viṣṇu, 65
 characteristics of the form of, 128
 auspicious day for making an image
 of, 215
 saluted by Indra, 27
 govindadvādasi, mode of practising the
 vow of, 512
 govīṣṇamudrā, a posture of the hands,
 196
 govata, definition of the austerity
 termed as, 799
 graceful, a mode, explanation of, 933-4
 graha, herbs denoted by, 406, 407
 grāhaṇi, one of the prāṇita mudrās,
 857
 grāhyakaṇṭhakapāyana, a posture
 relating to riding of horses, 787
 grains eight kinds of, 283
 words denoting, and related things,
 1021
 guidelines for storing and selling,
 386-7
 grāmaṇi, ride the chariot of Sun, 356

- grammatical incorrectness, a defect of word, 947
- Grāmyatva, a defect of word, 947
- Granthika, beads belonging to the Śiva class, 894
- grazing, rules relating to, 671-72
- Gr̥dhreśvara, at Gayā, to be worshipped, 342
- Gr̥dhra-kūṭa, at Gayā, balls of rice to be offered at, 342
- Gr̥dhra-vaṭa, at Gayā, balls of rice to be offered, 342
- green, words denoting, 992
- greying of hair, herbs to be used as sternutatory to arrest, 774
- gr̥harāja, a type of temple, 314
- grief, need to discard, 1068
- group of gods, words denoting, 986
- ground, period within which ownership can be claimed, 657
- Gr̥tsapati, one of the two sons of Kapila, brahmins, warriors and tradesmen as descendants of, 749
- guardian deities, names and worship of, 284
- guḍapāka, a hell, 532
- Gūḍārtha, a defect, 944
- gudavrata, merits of practising, 523
- gudūci, a herb, 371, 407
- Guha, image of, 106
- hunter chief entertained Rāma, 13
- Guhyakubjika, a goddess, 423
- Guhyaśaktini, a female divinity, 416
- Gulma, one of the siddhas, 414
- gumphanā, an embellishment of word, 932
- explanation of, three kinds of, 933
- guṇas, in poetry, the place of, 944 (see also excellence)
- Gupta, a kind of Citrakāvya, definition of, 935
- Gurjara, (region of), 387
- guru, an array, description of, 633
- Gupikā, beads belonging to the Savitra class, 894
- haemoptysis, cause of, 760
- haemorrhage, medicines for, 752
- remedies which arrest, 776-777
- Haihaya, one of the sons of Satajit, son of, 740
- Haihayas, descendants of Tāla-jan̥gha, 741
- hālāhala, poison, 5
- a deadly poison, Viṣṇu's tenth manifestation referred to, as for the conquest of; took the poison from Mahēśvara, 746
- Halāmukhi, characteristics of the metre, 911
- Hallīśaka, a type of drama 921
- Harṇsa, beads belonging to Śikhā class, 894
- harṇsa, a type of temple, 315
- harṇsa bija, mantra, efficacy of locating, 889
- Hamsādhika, a monstress possessing the newly born child on the fifth night, symptoms of child possessed by, unguent for the child possessed by, offering to appease, 821
- Hamsaruta, characteristics of the metre, 911
- Hamsatirtha, at Gayā, 344
- hand, employed in two ways—folded and unfolded, thirteen actions of the folded, twentyfour actions of the unfolded, 930
- Hanūmat, Rāma taken to Sugriva by, 17
- searched the southern direction, 18
- crossed the ocean, 19
- words spoken to Sitā by, 20
- accompanied Rāma to Lankā, 21
- killed Dhūmrākṣa, 22
- bore Lakṣmana to Nikumbhilā, 22
- brought Sitā to Rāma as directed, 23
- figure of, 137
- accomplishes all acts, 379
- Hara, poison retained by Śiva, 5
- one of the eleven forms of Śiva, 45
- made as lord of the goblins, 47
- letter denoting 418 (See Śiva)
- harem, words denoting superintendent of, 1018
- Hari, a manifestation of Viṣṇu, 428
- manifestation in four forms, 10
- form of Viṣṇu on Govardhana, 841
- different forms of, 47
- to be contemplated at Śālagrāma, 841
- cause of creation etc. 39
- showing the feminine form to Śiva, 6
- reference to fight with Śiva, 30
- conferred supreme position on Dhruva, 41
- manifested with four hands before being born as Kṛṣṇa, 26
- day of waking of, 361
- installation of image of, 172
- Kṛṣṇa referred to as, 28, 31, 36
- sages conducting a sacrifice to, 1
- mantra having the name of, 52, 56
- to be contemplated, 37
- should be adored, 61, 67, 68
- remembered, 58
- uttering the name of, 71, 73
- meditation on, 53, 55
- worship of, 75ff
- a female divinity to be invoked, 91

- handrā, a herb, 407
 Haridvāra, a sacred spot, 327
 Harihara, form of Viṣṇu, 131
 Hariṇaplūtā, characteristics of the metre, 910
 Hariṇī, characteristics of the metre, 913
 harīṇī, a nerve, 316
 Harisaila, a boundary mountain, 352
 Hariścandra, son of Satyaratha; son of, 737
 a place at Vārāṇasi, 330
 Harita, a celestial at the time of the 12th Manu, 428
 a country, 352
 haritā, a herb, 372
 Hārīta, a law-giver, 455
 haritaki, a herb, 407
 Havis, one of the sons of Rukmakavaca, 741
 Haviṣya, a sage, 428
 Havya, sons of, 352
 Havyavāha, (fire) to be worshipped, 316
 hay, asterisms good for gathering of, 360
 Haya, one, of the sons of Śatajit, 740
 Hayagrīva, form of Viṣṇu, 326
 image of, 115
 Śālagrāma called, 125
 a demon killed by Viṣṇu, 4
 Hayagrīveśa, prayer to, 82
 Hayinānā, a female divinity; image of, 138
 Hayaśirā, daughter of Vṛṣaparvan, 46
 Hayaśiras, form of Viṣṇu, 131
 Hayaśirsatantra, a Pāñcarātrāgama, 105, 117 fn. (saṃhitā)
 Hayāśya, image of; installation of, 172
 head, thirteen ways of movement of; diseases relating to; sternutatory for, 929
 Harivarṣa, a mountain, 324
 Naiśadha given by Privavrata to, 322
 harsh, a mode; explanation of, 933-4
 Haryaṅgaka, son of Campa; son of, 748
 Haryaśva, one of the two sons of Dṛdhāśva, 736
 son of, 737
 Hasta, an asterism, 357, 358, 359, 360, 361, 363, 381, 382, 385, 387, 400
 haste, words denoting, 988
 hasticchāyā, definition of, 463
 hastijihvā, an occult nerve, 253
 carries the wind vyāna; functions of, 556
 Hastināpura, a city, 37
 Jayanta to be worshipped at, 841
 Hāṭaka, a male divinity worshipped, 310
 hāva, the collective word for behaviour of women, 995
 Havirdhāna, son of Antardhāna and Śikhāṇḍini; sons of, 43
 haviryajña, one of the domestic sacrifices, 7 kinds of, 86, 466
 head, ointment for, 755
 remedy for fall of hair from, 834
 headache, remedy to remove, 777
 health, no fortune equal to, 1074
 heart, location of, 760
 heart, disease, purgatives to be given for, 754
 heat, words denoting excessive and little heat, 990
 heaven, synonyms of, 986
 heaven and earth, interspace between; words denoting, 988
 hell, words denoting, 995
 hells, the names of different, 1038-39
 the nature of different, 530-32
 hemajihva, rite called, 86
 hemākṣa, rite called, 86
 Hemakūṭa, country, 322
 location of, 324
 Hemalamba, a year of the Hindu calendar, 405
 hemāṅga, rite called, 86
 Hemaparvata, mountain, 350
 Hemaratha, son of Ketumān; well known as Divodāsa, 749
 Hemaśaila, a boundary mountain, 352
 hemasūtraka, rite called, 86
 herbs, eight kinds of, 929
 symbolical numbers denoting, 406
 hot and cold, the two kinds of strength of, 762
 tastes and qualities of, three flavours of, 761, 762
 general rule for making a decoction of, 762
 purpose for which used, 406
 used in charms, medicines etc., 405-8
 which give good complexion, 763
 which would subjugate the partner, 833
 which would bring happiness and prosperity to the married couple, 833
 that should be used for getting a son, 834
 heroes, four kinds of; four different kinds of; the three minor companions of, 926
 heroic, origin of the sentiment, 923

- threefold; accomplished by enthusiasm, 931-2
 heroines, different types of, 926
 Heti, a demon, 394
 hetu (cause), an embellishment of senses, 939
 explanation of; produced in two ways, 942
 Hetuka, a guardian deity, 284
 hiccough (hiccup), remedy for, 753, 754, 773, 830
 Hidimbā, wife of Bhimasena, 751
 hill, word denoting; word denoting earth near and above, 996
 Hima, country, 322
 life in, 323
 Himādrī, (Himālaya) 330
 Himalayas, mountain, 37 fn., 351
 Himavān, location of, 324
 Himavat, (Himālaya) 47, 50
 Himsā, wife of Adharma; progeny of, 49
 Hiraṇvat, son of Agnidhra; region given to, 322
 Hiranyā, a female divinity, 230
 Hiraṇyagarbha, denotes Brahmā, 40
 creation made by, 40 fn
 hiraṇyagarbha, a great gift, 544
 Hiraṇyaka, a mountain, 324
 Hiranyakaśipu, a demon; born to Kaśyapa and Diti, 45
 brother of Hiraṇyākṣa, 7, 7 fn.
 performed penance at Śrīparvata, 331
 reference to his destruction of Viṣṇu, 745
 sons of, 26
 becoming embryo in the womb of Devala, 26fn
 the four sons of, 46
 Hiranyākṣa, demon; son of Kaśyapa and Diti, 45
 killed by Viṣṇu in his manifestation as a boar, 7, 7fn, 745
 five sons of, 46
 progeny mixed with that of Danu in the text, 46fn
 hiraṇyākṣa, a rite, 86
 hiraṇyamitra, a rite, 86
 hiraṇyāṅga, a rite, 86
 hiraṇyāṅghri, a rite, 86
 hiraṇyapāṇi, a rite, 86
 Hiraṇyaromaka, son of Parjanya Prajāpati, 48
 hiraṇyāśya, a rite, 86
 hiraṇyavarṇā, a hymn, 436, 562
 hiraṇyavat, a rite, 86
 hole, words signifying, 995
 horses, four varieties of; methods to train, 789
 four different varieties of; such as brahmin etc, 789
 certain kinds of gaits of, 788-89
 auspicious physical features of, 790
 inauspicious features of, 790
 having certain physical features to be avoided, 789-90
 rider should make good the bad qualities in, 785
 management of; treatment of the diseases of, 784-89
 taming of, 788
 means of control, 788
 instructions relating to keeping of vicious, 794
 four political expedients relating to; and appropriate time for using them, 786
 qualities of men expert in handling, 786
 preparatory steps before riding, 785
 asterisms and seasons commendable for first ride on, 784
 seasons forbidden for riding, 784
 ability without instruction to ride on, 784
 names of different postures relating to riding, 787
 instructions relating to riding of, 786-7
 instructions relating to riding in the morning and evening, 786
 places unsuitable for riding on, 784
 should not be whipped soon after mounting, 786
 should not be whipped at improper places, 784
 censure of a person not knowing how to manage a, 786
 praise of a person who knows both the good and bad qualities of, 786
 food for different breeds of, 788
 the food and the quantity of food to be given for, 793-4
 drinks for, 792
 instructions relating to bathing of, 793
 substitute drinks during different seasons for, 793
 consecration and location of gods on the bodies of, 784-5
 characteristics of, treatment of the diseases of, 789-94
 propitiatory rites for curing the ailments of, 794-5
 bitten by flies; remedies for, 788
 a curative for harassing cough of, 791
 emetics for all kinds of diarrhoea of, 791

- an oily emetic that makes comfortable, 791
 remedy for dysentery of, 790-1
 remedy for eye diseases of, 792
 a potion that removes the fatigue of, 791
 remedy for haemoptysis of, 792
 remedies for deranged humours of, 793, 794
 remedy for itching of, 792
 afflicted by fever should first be treated with water, 791
 remedy for pain due to whipping of, 792
 prescription to remove pain in the stomach of, 790
 beneficial remedy for paralysis of the tongue of, 792
 remedy for swelling due to stiff-throat of, 791
 anointment for swollen (limbs) of, 791
 remedy for ulcers of, 792
 remedy for passing of blood in urine of, 791
 remedy for a wound of the tendon or of an ear etc. of, 792
 horse (golden), a great gift, 544
 horse (golden) and chariot, a great gift, 544
 horticulture, science of, 764-5
 hotra, priest for Rks, 429
 house, good time for building, 360
 good asterisms for entering the new, 360
 months good for entering, 360
 householder, duties of, 431-32
 houses, the trees which should be grown around, 643
 Hrada, son of Hrāda, 46
 Hrāda, one of the sons of Hiraṇyakaśipu, 46
 Hirṇkārī, a female divinity, 424
 Hṛlika, son of Bhoja; ten sons of, 743
 Hṛṣikeśa, a form of Viṣṇu, 65
 form of Viṣṇu at Kubjānra, 841
 at Gayā worshipped, 313
 invocation to, 52, 82
 huhu, a vein; carries the wind devadatta, 556
 humility, as cause of statesmanship, 617
 need for practising, 618
 humours, the qualities of the three, 759
 get increased or abated in the different seasons, 759
 characteristics of men having in excess one of the three, 1033
 the nature of people having in excess one kind of, 760
 get increased or abated according to the quality of the food, 759
 as capable of coursing through the entire body, 760
 cause and symptoms of the derangement of different, 760
 the defects due to, 758
 certain practices which would remove each one of the three, 764
 remedies for diseases due to derangement of, 761
 Hunkārā, one of the Yoginis; image of, 138
 Hutaḥavyavāha, one of the sons of Dhara, 44
 Hutākā, one of the Yoginis; image of, 138
 Ibhāsya (Gaṇeśa), worship of the image of, 215
 Icchā, a female divinity, 292
 Idā, a female energy, 136
 idā, a vein; carries the wind prāṇa; functions of, 556
 established on the left side of the body, 557
 idol, conservation of, 152-55
 ignorance, words denoting, 991
 Jhāmṛga, a type of drama, 921
 Iksu, an ocean, 324
 Iksvāku, one of the eight sons of Vaivasvata Manu, 9, 735
 descendants of family of, 738
 Ilā, one of the Yoginis; image of, 138
 Ilā, daughter of Manu; later changed as a male, 735
 Ilāvṛta, Meru given by Aṅgīdhra to, 322
 Ilāvṛta, a mountain, 324
 illusions, different kinds of, 629
 image, consecration of, 283-94
 preliminary, consecration of, 155-6
 image of Śiva, installation of, 294-302
 image of Vāsudeva, installation of, 161-64
 images, renovation of decayed, 1843
 pedestals of, 123
 impartiality, commended, 1073-4
 impure, words denoting, 996
 impurities, five kinds of general, 947
 incantations, description of, 409-11
 of five kinds, 896
 of different kinds; appropriate period for practising, 896
 effects of evil; means of getting relief from, 843-5
 incessant rain, words denoting, 989

- incident, as the body of the drama
two varieties of, 922
- indeclinables, the different meanings
of the various, 996-1000
- Indication, explanation of; five kinds
of, 943
- indifference, a political expedient, 587,
627
explanation of, 629
- indigestion, remedy for, 776
- Indra, synonyms of, 987
the word Parjanya denotes, 40
name of the mansion of, 987
words denoting the club of, 987
name of the chariot of, 987
brought the chariot for Yudhiṣṭhira,
38
name of the charioteer of, 22 fn
Diti's desire to get a vanquisher of,
47 fn
Indrajit as the conqueror of, 24
revived the monkeys, 23
conquest of Kṛṣṇa over, 28
Arjuna's obstruction of rain caused
by, 32
Maruts as allies of, 47
festivities for, 27
day of waking of, 361
restored to status by Rāji, 740
kingdom restored by Viṣṇu to, 745
Viṣṇu worshipped by residents of the
world of, 37
praised the goddess, 26
praise of Śrī made by, 49
- Indra, image of, 137
pervades the limbs, 65
worship of the image of, 215
obedience made to, 1
worshipped, 51, 52, 66
offering made to, 274
herb denoted by, 406
herbs made use of by, denotes the
asterism Pūrvāṣāḍha, 407
- Indradvīpa, one of the territories in
Bhārata, 350
- Indradyumna, son of Tejas, 323
- Indrajit, a demon; Hanūmat searched
the house of, 19
Rāma and Lakṣmaṇa fainted on
account of the weapon used by;
was killed by Lakṣmaṇa, 22
known so on account of the con-
quest of Indra, 24
- Indrāṇi, other names of, 987
image of; worshipped on the mar-
riage day, 435
one of the goddesses, 415
- indrāṇi, a herb, 371
a herb worn on the body for pro-
tection, 378
- Indrapramiti, R̥gveda imparted to, 429
- Indravajrā, characteristics of the
metre, 912
- Indravajra, mixed varieties are for-
med from, 912
- Indravahsā, characteristics of the
metre, 912
- Indu, one of the female energies, 136
- infantry, functions of; ground sui-
table for; to protect each foot of
elephant (men), 632
- infants, recipes for the diseases of,
820-826
- inference, word for, 991
- inflammation, of the glands of the
neck; remedy for, 776
of anus; remedy to remove pain in,
777
- inflections, two kinds of—sup and tin,
957
use of the different, 971-73
- Ṇgudi, a tree, 13
- initiation, mode of performing, 67-74
purificatory, 235-37
that secures nirvāṇa, 257-62
of principles, 262-3
- injury, ten kinds of, 1041
- inquiry, word denoting, 991
- insanity, five causes for, 826
remedy for removal of, 773
- insects, remedy for venom due to all,
819-20
- installation, of the deity, 87ff
- installation, five kinds of, 266
of deities, 116-118
of an image; five divisions of, 147-49
of images presiding over five ele-
ments, 271
of a līṅga, 278-83
suitable period for, 278-9
of the image of Gauri, 302-3
of the image of Śiva, 266-72, 294-
302
of the image of Sun-god, 303-4
of an image of Vāsudeva, 161-64
- instrument, two kinds of—external
and internal, 970-71
- insult, words denoting, 993
- intellect, words denoting; retentive
power of; word for, 991
- interest, rules relating to period of, 673
- intoxication, remedy for removal of,
773
- investiture of, fibres of damanaka, 225-
26
- investiture of sacred thread, for the
deity, 87ff
time for, 359
for all gods, 100-101
for Viṣṇu, 98 ff

- invocation, that routs the enemy, 394-5
 Irā, grass and other things as production of, 46
 Iśa, propitiation of, 176
 worshipped, 316
 iśa, a herb denoted by, 407
 Iśāna, a name denoting Rudra, 50
 worshipped, 51
 a form of Śiva worshipped, 51
 worship of the image of, 116
 Iśāni, worshipped, 317
 iṣṭa, explanation of, 539
 Iśvara, presiding deity of an element, 271
 Iśvara (Śiva), adored, 1
 Iśvara, a year of the Hindu Calendar, 404
 iśvara, a herb denoted by, 406
 iśvari, name of a herb, 378
 itch, dry spreading 755; remedy for, 769
 itihāsa, definition of the term, 992
 Jagati, a metre, 902, 905
 white colour and belongs to Vāsiṣṭha-gotra, 905
 the number of letters in a quarter of, 903
 appropriate time for recital of, 916
 metres belonging to the class of, 912
 Jagatipaṅkti, composition of, 904
 Jagatprabhu, form of Viṣṇu at Vimala, 841-2
 Jaghanacapalā, characteristics of the metre, 906
 Jāhnavi, (river Ganges) crossed by Rāma, 13
 image of, 133
 Jahnu, son of Ajamiḍha and Keśini; son of, 749
 names of the four sons of, 750
 Jaigīśavya, exposition made by, 1074
 Jaimini, disciple of Vyāsa, 429
 Jājali, represents a branch of Atharvaveda, 730
 Jala, an ocean, 324
 Jālabandha, one of the varieties of Gomūtrikā bandha, 937
 Jalada, son of Havya, 352
 Jaladhara, a boundary mountain, 352
 Jālandhara (region of), 387
 Jālandhara, mountain, 412, 414
 Jalaśāyin, form of Viṣṇu at Nandā, 842
 Jalodhdhatagati, characteristics of the metre, 912
 Jamadagni, Viṣṇu's manifestation as Bhārgava, son of, 8, 9
 conquered by Rāma, 11
 Jāmadagnyaka, image of, 115
 Jāmbavat, name of a person who accompanied Rāma, 21
 killed the lion that killed Prasena, 743
 Jāmbavati, daughter of Jāmbavān, 743
 one of the wives of Kṛṣṇa, 744
 birth of Sāmba to Kṛṣṇa and, 29
 Yādavas dressed up Sāmba, son of, 36fn
 Jambha, a demon, 6, 317
 Jambhaka, a demon; offering made to, 109, 275
 Jambū, a river, 324
 jambū, a tree, 324
 jambū, fruit; dvīpa gaining the name on account of, 324
 Jambūdvīpa, one of the seven continents, 323
 given by Priyavrata to Agnidhra, 322
 location of, 324
 an appellation on account of jambū fruits, 324
 extent of, 351
 division of, 322
 jāmitra, the seventh sign of the zodiac, 388
 Janaka, king of Mithilā, 10
 exposition made by, 1074
 Jānaki (Sītā), married by Rāma, 11
 Rāma's search of, 17
 monkeys sent in directions other than the south could not find, 18
 words spoken by Hanūmat to, 19
 Rāma's reaction on seeing the jewel as if he has seen, 20
 Aṅgada's advice to Rāvaṇa to return, 21
 Janaloka, distance of, 37
 Janamejaya, son of Puraṇjaya; son of, 747
 son of Puru, son of, 748
 a descendant of Parikṣit, son of, two other sons of, 750
 Janārdana, epithet of Viṣṇu, 84
 form of Viṣṇu at Kubjāmrā, 841
 at Gayā, 337
 a śālāgrāma, 125
 Janas, one of the worlds; worshipped, 79
 Janasthāna, on the banks of river Godāvari; Rāma's stay at, 15
 janma, one of the tārābalas, 359
 Janmāṣṭami, merits of practising, 506
 Jantu, son of Puruhūta, son of, 742
 son of Somaka, son of, 750
 japā, a flower, benefit of worshipping with, 529
 Japyeśvara, at Vārāṇasī, 330

Jarāsandha, son of Sambhava, son of, 750
 Mathurā was besieged by, 28
 Jārukha, one of the sons of Vasudeva, and Devaki; was killed by Kāṁsa, 744
 Jarā, one of the progeny of Mr̥tyu, 49
 jāta, a posture relating to archery, 646
 posture advocated, 646
 Jātadevā, a spirit possessing the child in the eighth year, symptoms of a child possessed by, offering to appease, bathing and fumigation for child possessed by, 825
 Jaṭādhara, form of Viṣṇu on Ganges, 841
 jatakarma, rite after the birth of a child, 432
 done for purification, 481
 as a Vedic rite, 59
 oblation made for purification with, 71
 a rite to be performed, 86
 Jāṭāyu, a vulture wounded by Rāvaṇa, 16
 told Rāma about Rāvaṇa's abduction of Sitā; death of, 17
 words spoken by Sampātī, brother of, 18
 Jāthara, a boundary mountain, 325, 326
 Jāti, a division of Padya; characteristics of, 919
 jāti, greatness of the herb, 378
 jaundice, remedy for removal of, 767
 javānikā, one of the herbs, 407
 Jaya, a year of the Hindu almanac, 405
 one of the eight forms of Gaṇapati, 865
 form of Viṣṇu at Jayanti, 841
 jaya, a pitcher, 270
 Jayā, one of the female divinities, 51, 375
 one of the wives of Kṛṣṇa, 744
 jayā, a stone, 269
 a nerve, 316
 Jayacakra, a diagram for finding victory; description of, 389-90
 Jayadeva, a muhūrta; deeds to be done in, 371
 Jayadhvaja, one of the sons of Kārtavīrya; was great among Āvantiyas; son of, 741
 Jayadratha, son of Br̥hātmavat; son of, 748
 Jayanta, a male divinity, 107
 worship of, 273

form of Viṣṇu at Hastināpura, 841
 a minister of king Daśaratha, 11
 Jayanti, letter denoting, 417
 image of, 138
 name of a place, 841
 Jayantikā, a female divinity, image of, 138
 Jejovati, a female divinity, 424
 Jimūta, son of Vyoma, son of, 742
 a country, 352
 a variety of Daṇḍaka; formation of, 915
 Jiraka, a herb, 407
 Jiva, denotes Jupiter, worshipped, 52
 Jñānā, a female divinity, 292
 —letter denoting, 418
 Jñānamudrā, a posture made with the hands, 73
 Jñānasāgara, one of the Pāñcarātra āgamas, 106
 Jṛmbhana, a missile, 30
 judges, swerving from codes are punishable, fine for swearing double that of a quarrel, 650
 junctures, the five kinds of, importance of, 922
 Jupiter, words denoting, 989
 image of, 137
 is contemplated as yellow, 828
 chariot of, 356
 distance of Mars and Saturn from, 354
 letter presided over by, 374
 characteristic of a person born in the house of, 392
 period (years) of influence of, 363, 393
 the part of a day presided over by, 381
 a period called mahājyāiṣṭi on the basis of location of, 362
 occupying certain constellations should be avoided for building houses, 360
 not recommended for marriage when set or retrograde or transiting, 357
 not commended for Upanayana when set, 359
 in the tenth house to be avoided, 384
 in the second and seventh houses indicate happiness, 383
 gives success, 377
 justice, its four feet, four places and four means; eight parts of; three sources of; two sorts of statements for; two parties of; two kinds of issues for, 653

- administration of, 653-58
 jvālā, an occult nerve, 316
 jvālāgardabhaka, a disease, 84, 84fn.
 jvālīni, one of the pranīta-mudrās, 877
 Jvara, personified and worshipped, 292
 Jyāmagha, one of the sons of Rukma-kavaca; a hen-pecked husband; names of the wife and son of, 741
 Jyeṣṭha, month of, 360, 362, 386
 Jyeṣṭhā, a female divinity, 71, 201, 292, 374, 412, 413
 an asterism, 358, 360, 361, 362, 363, 381, 382, 385, 388, 400
 jyeṣṭhasāman, a hymn; a pañktipāvana should know, 349
 Jyoti, one of the four kinds of rosary beads; the four divisions of, 891
 characteristics of the metre, 907
 jyotirasa, a gem (?), 611
 Jyotiśa, science of, 316-63
 four lightnings according to, 15fn
 Jyotiśmat, ruled Kusa, 322
 names of the sons of, 352
 Jyotiśmati (Jagati), a metre; composition of, 901
 Jyotiśoma, a sacrifice, 64fn
 Jyotsnā, a female divinity, 292
 Kabandha, a demon killed by Rāma, 17
 Kaca, Śukra's curse on, 25fn
 Kaccha, a region; installation should not be done by men from, 106
 kacchapa, one of the treasures, 111
 Kadamba, a tree, 324
 a flower, 529
 Kadrū, progeny of, 46
 Kaikasi, wife of Viśravas; progeny of, 21, 24fn
 Kaikēya, one of the four sons of Śibi, 74
 Kaikeyī, birth of Bharata to, 10
 was informed about the coronation of Rāma by, 11, 12
 Daśaratha's words to, 13
 reproached by Bharata, 14
 was paid respects by Rāma, 23
 Kailāsa, mountain, 325
 kailāsa, a class of temple; circular shaped, 314
 the temples belonging to the class of 315
 Kāka, beads belonging to Jyoti class, 894
 kākāpāda, an array; consists of four units of army, 634
 Kākaśilā, at Gayā, 341
 Kāki, a daughter of Tāmrā, 46
 Kākini, a female divinity, 415
 Kākoli, a evil spirit which possesses a newly born child on the fourth night, symptoms of the child possessed by; offering to appease; unguent for the child possessed by, 821
 Kakub, a variety of Uṣṇik; the number of letters in each pāda of, 903
 Kakudmat, a boundary mountain, 352
 Kakudmati, composition of the metre, 904
 Kakudmin, an alias of Rāivata, 736
 Kakutstha, born in the line of Ikṣvāku, 9
 from Vikukṣu, 736
 Kalā, a female divinity, 52
 kalā, a measure, 134
 Kāla, death; Drona compared with, 35
 a guardian deity, 284
 son of Dhruva, 41
 son of Dīrghabāhu, 737
 Kālā, a monstress seizing the child in the ninth year; symptoms of child seized by; offering to appease, 825
 kalādhya, one of the kinds of mantras of Siva, 873
 description of, 875
 Kalahansi, a spirit possessing the child in the tenth year; symptoms of the child possessed by; offering to appease; fumigation when the child is affected by, 825
 Kālaka, presiding deity of place of worship of planets, 467
 Kālakī, one of the daughters of Vaiśānara, 46
 Kālākānti, a female divinity, 202
 Kālakarṇi, a female divinity; image of, 138
 Kālānābha, one of the sons of Hiranyākṣa, 46fn
 Kālānala, a divinity; worshipped, 414
 son of Sabhānara; son of, 747
 Kālānjara, mountain; sacredness of, 328, 349
 Kālāpa, division of poetry called, 919
 nature of; employs Kaiśiki vṛtti, 920
 Kālārātri, night of destruction, 13fn
 personified as a divinity; offering made to, 395
 a hell, 1038
 Kalaśa, a type of temple, 315
 Kālasañjñaka, a Rudra, 255
 Kālasūtra, sub-division of a hell, 332, 1039
 Kalavikarini, a female divinity, 51
 Kālavikarīṇī, a goddess, 201
 Kālayavana, a demon, 28, 28fn
 Kālayukti, a year of the Hindu calendar, 405

- Kāleśa**, a liṅga, 343
Kālī, repetition of the name of the goddess, 411
 worshipped, 51, 201
 name of Satyavati, wife of Śantanu, 751
Kālikā, a river; greatness of confluence of, 328
Kālindī, one of the wives of Kṛṣṇa, 744
Kaliṅga, country of; asterisms indicating destruction of, 387
 installation rite should not be done by one born in, 106
 one of the sons of Bali, 747
Kāliya, a serpent subdued by Kṛṣṇa, 27
Kaliyuga, Śiva as presiding over all the regions of, 337
 conduct of the people at the end of, 38
Kalki, Viṣṇu's manifestation as, 38, 39
 figure of, 130
Kalmāśapāda, son of Rṭuparna; son of, 737
Kalpa, science of, 2
Kalpa(s), significance of the term, 1018
 manifestations of Viṣṇu, innumerable in the different, 39, 39fn
 reference to Bāṇa's propitiation of the goddess in the previous, 46
 dissolution at the end of, 3
Kalpalatā, a great gift, 544
Kalpavṛkṣa, a great gift, 544
Kalpavṛkṣavrata, mode of practising the vow of, 522
Kalyāṇa, a form of Rudra, 253
Kāma (god of love), synonyms of, 986
Kāma, Pradyumna identified with, reborn as Pradyumna, 29, 29fn
 one of the siddhas, 414
kāma, one of the puruṣārthas protected by Rāma, 23
 mantra which bestows, 53
Kāmadhenu, divine cow in the possession of Jamadgni, 9
 water on earth identified with, 337
Kāmadhenu, golden, a great gift, 544
Kamālā, a female divinity; worshipped, 413, 414
Kāmāṅgadṛāviṇi, Kubjikā addressed as, 413
Kāmarūpa, augury foreboding destruction of, 387
 installation should not be done by those born in, 106
 a mountain; worshipped, 412, 414
kāmātrayodaśī, see *anāṅgatrayodaśī*
Kambalabarhiṣ, one of the sons of
 Babhru, 742
 son of Devārha; son of, 743
Kambalabarhiṣ, son of Marutta; son of, 741
Karīṣa, the eldest among the sons of Ugrasena, 742
 the destruction of the children of Devaki by, 26, 26fn
 reference to killing of Pralamba, an asura friend of, 30fn
 attempts made to kill Kṛṣṇa by, 27
 Śambara as a companion of, 29fn
 was killed by Kṛṣṇa, 28
Kanaka, son of Durgama; sons of, 740
Kanakā, a female divinity; worshipped, 230
Kanakeśa, at Gayā, 339
Kanakhala, a sacred place; glory of, 327
 location of, 336
kāñcanāra, flower not to be used in worship, 529
Kāñci, installation should not be done by those born in, 106
kāñciyamaka, one of the Yamakas, 935
Kandarpa, god of love; worshipped, 109
Kandarpanātha, a male divinity; worshipped, 415
Kaṇḍu, a sage, 43
Kaṅka, Yudhiṣṭhira disguised as, 33
 a boundary mountain, 352
kaṅkola, given as an offering, 94
Kaṅku, one of the sons of Ugrasena, 742
kānti, a herb, 372
 a nerve, 316
kaṇṭhakāri, herb, 407
Kānti, a form of Hari, 91
 an embellishment of sound and sense; explanation of, 942
Kāntotpidā, characteristics of the metre, 913
Kaṇva, son of Pratiratha; son of, 748
Kāṇvas, a branch of Yajurvedins, 429
Kaṇvāsrama, glory of, 327
Kāṇvī, a branch of Yajurveda, 730
Kanyā, a constellation, 367
 (See also Virgo)
kanyādāna, one of the four acts relating to a marriage, 434
kanyasa, a variety of prāṇāyāma, 1044
Kapālamocana, a sacred place, 328
Kapālin one of the eleven (Rudras), 45
Kapālini, a female divinity; worship of; letter denoting, 417
Kaparda, matted hair of Śiva, 987
Kapardin, benefit of worshipping, 343

- Kapardin**, one of the eleven forms of (Rudra), 45
- Kapila**, form of Viṣṇu on the banks of the eastern ocean, 841
 enunciation made by, 1073
 a class of men in the Śālnaladvipa, 352
 one of the sons of Jyotiṣmat, 372
 one of the three sons of Dhundhumāra, 736
 two sons of, 749
- Kapilā**, a female energy, 136, 424
 at Gayā, 341
 a class of cow; mode of worshipping, 212-14
- kapilā**, one of the lightnings, 47fn
- Kāpila**, a Pāncarātra āgama, 106
- Kapota**, beads belonging to the Śiva class, 894
- Kapotaromā**, son of Dhṛti; son of, 742
- kara**, a measure, 107
- kāraka**, explanation of the term, 970
- Kārakabhraiṣa**, an impurity, 947
- karāla**, a h. l' 532
- Karālī**, a goddess; worshipped, 375, 413, 416, 424
- karālī**, a mudrā, 857
- Karālikā**, a hell, 1038
- Karālin**, a guardian deity, 284
- Karambhaka**, son of Sakunti, son of, 742
- Karaṇa**, a measure of time; correction for, 369, 369fn
- Karandhama**, son of Traiśāni; son of, 747
- Karaṅkini**, image of, 138
- Karatoyā**, a river, 328
- karavīra**, a flower, 529
- Karaviraka**, one of the sons of Kanaka, 740
- Kardama**, Prajāpati, father of Śaṅkhaṇḍ, 47
 two daughters of, 41, 41fn
- Kramapādika** given in Agnipurāṇa instead of, 40fn
- Kardamālā**, at Gayā, 342
- Karka**, a serpent; image of, 137
- Karkari**, a water jar, 68
- Karkaśṅgi**, an array; consists of three units of army, 634
- Karkaṭaka**, a constellation 367, 368
 (See also Cancer)
- karkaṭi**, a herb, 406
 a flower; not to be used for Śiva, 529
- karketana**, a gem, 641
- Karkoṭaka**, one of the eight chief serpents, 415
 the number of heads of, 807
- Karmadhāraya** (compound), seven kinds of; examples of, 974-75
- Karṇa**, born of Kunti; became a dependent of Duryodhana, 32
 aided Duryodhana in his dice play, 33
 killed the warriors of Pāṇḍavas and was killed by Arjuna, 35
 son of Visvajit; son of, 748
 a type of drama, 921
- Karṇāditya**, at Gayā; worshipped, 339
- Karṇamoṭani**, goddess; incantation of, 375
- Karṇāṭi**, characteristics of, 934
- karṇavedha**, time for, 559
- karṇikāra**, a flower, 529
- karṣa**, a measure, 408
- kārṣika**, a weight, 209
- Kārtavīryārjuna**, son of Kṛtavīrya
 greatness of, 740, 741
 had thousand arms and was valorous, 8
 the names of five foremost among hundred sons of, 741
 Jamadagni killed by the sons of, 9
- Kārtuka**, benefit of purchasing grains in the month of, 386
- Kārtikavrata**, for Viṣṇu; mode of practising, 522-3
- Kārtukeva**, name of Kumāra, as he was son of Kṛtikā, 44
 benefit of offering homa to, 339
 benefit of worshipping, 343
- Karūṣa**, one of the eight sons of Vaivasvata Manu, 735
- Kārūṣas**, were born from Karūṣa; were of warrior caste, 736
- kāsa**, a flower, 529
- Kaseru**, one of the nine territories, 350
 an advice to stay at, 330
- Paundraka** as the ruler of, 28fn
- Kāsi**, a sacred place, 491, 841
- Kāśirāja**, Sutanu as daughter of, 28fn
- Ambikā** and **Ambālikā** as daughters of, 31
- kaśmala**, a hell, 532
- Kāsmira**, name of a region, 387, 841
 installation not to be done by those born in, 106
- Kaśatva**, a defect of a word, 947
- Kaśyapa**, a sage, son of Marici, 9, 735
 married thirteen daughters of Dakṣa, 44
 father of Sun, 735
 progeny of (through Diti), 7fn, 45
- Rudras** as sons of Śurabhi and, 44fn
- Danu's** propitiation of for offspring, 47
- Garuḍa** born to Vinatā and, 63fn
- Pulomā** and **Kālakā** as wives of, 46
- earth** given by Paraśurāma to, 9

- goddess earth addressed as related to, 112
 Viṣṇu's manifestation as a dwarf as a son of Aditi and, 745
 manifested as Vasudeva, 744
 his view relating to a metre, 913
 Kathā, a division of the prose kāvya; characteristics of, 919
 Kathānikā, a division of the prose kāvya; definition of, 919
 Kaṭhi, a branch of Yajurveda, 730
 Kathodghāta, a division of Āmukha; explanation of, 922
 Katimukha, one of the sons of Viśvāmitra, 749
 Kaṭiśa, letter denoting, 418
 kaṭukandā, a herb, 372
 Kātyāyana, sage, 345
 śrāddha rite as narrated by a law-giver, 455
 kaulava, a karaṇa, 362, 369fn
 Kauleśa, a male divinity, 413
 Kauli, prayer made to goddess, 413
 Kauliśanātha, a male divinity, 413
 Kaumāra, the ninth creation known as, 48
 Kaumārī, a mother goddess, 139fn, 411, 415
 prayed, 379, 399
 image of, 133
 Kaumodaki, a mace, 128
 kaumudavratā, mode of practising and merits of, 524, 537
 to be practised in the bright fortnight of āśvayujī, 537
 Kauntali, characteristics of, 934
 Kaunti, characteristics of, 934
 Kauravas, origin of, 31
 Kauśalyā, Rāma's birth from Daśaratha and, 10
 was informed by Rāma about the coronation, 11
 bowed to by Rāma before leaving for the forest, 13
 Daśaratha's narration of the past curse on him to, 14
 was saluted by Rāma after returning from the forest, 23
 one of the wives of Kṛṣṇa, 744
 Kauśika, one of the sons of Vidarbha; son of, 741
 one of the two sons of Kapila, 749
 Kauśiki, one of the modes, 928
 Kaustubha, gem, 6, 51, 55, 63, 99
 Kauthuma, a branch of Sāmaveda, 730
 Kautsa, sage for the hymn *citram devānām*, 563
 Kāverī, a river; greatness of, 328
 installation should not be done by those born in the region near, 106
 river, confluence with Narmadā, 331
 Kavi, one of the sons of Manu and Naḍvalā, 42
 Kāvya, a type of drama, 921
 kāvya, definition of; three kinds of; definition of prose; three divisions of, 918
 five divisions of prose, 919
 Kedāra, one of the holy places, 330
 a liṅga; benefit of worshipping, 343
 Keralas, origin of, 747
 Kesarācala, group of mountains, 325, 325fn
 have abodes of gods, 326
 Keśari, a monkey that accompanied Rāma to Laṅkā, 21
 a boundary mountain, 352
 Keśava, a name of Viṣṇu, 65
 characteristics of the form of, 127
 killed the demon Hayagrīva, 4
 form of Viṣṇu at Mathurā, 841
 Keśi, a demon in the form of a horse; killed by Kṛṣṇa, 27
 Keśini, wife of Ajamidha, 749
 Ketaki, a flower, 529
 not to be used for worshipping Śiva, 530
 Ketu, form of, 137
 the form that is to be contemplated, 828
 chariot of, 356
 worshipped, 52
 Ketumāla, a mountain, 325
 a country, 325
 Viṣṇu as Varāha in, 326
 Western countries given by Agnidhra to, 322
 Ketumān, son of Dhanvantari; son of, 749
 Ketumat, son of Rajas; was made the protector of waters, 48
 Khadga, a male divinity; worshipped, 414
 khaḍga, a posture, 857
 Khaḍgadeva, one of the siddhas, 414
 Khaḍgeśa, letter denoting, 419
 khadira, a tree, 407
 khalikāra, a posture of the horse, 787
 khamalaṅkrta, one of the kinds of mantras of Śiva, 873
 description of, 875
 Khaṇḍakathā, a division of prose kāvya; contained in the Kathā in the catuṣpadī, 919
 Khāṇḍava a forest, 32
 Khāṇḍikya, a king of Mithilā, 1060

- Khañja**, characteristics of the metre, 911
- Khara**, demon brother of Śūrpanakhā; ruled Janasthāna, 15, 15fn
a year of the Hindu calendar, 405
- Khasā**, Yakṣas and demons born from, 47
- khātaka**, an array formed by modification of daṇḍa, 634
- Khaṭi**, a place worthy to be seen, 640
- Khaṭṭara**, a place worthy to be seen, 640
- khavṛkṣa**, a type of temple, 315
- Khecarā**, a goddess, 424
- Khecari**, a goddess, 424
- Khinkhini**, a female divinity to be worshipped, 412
- Khyāti**, one of the sons of Ūru and Āgneyū, 42
a daughter of Dakṣa; married Bhṛgu, 48
progeny of, 49
- Kicaka**, brother-in-law of Virāṭa; was killed by Bhīmasena, 33, 33fn
- kilakiñcra**, a kind of gesture, 929
- killer**, definition of, 485
- killing**, definition of, 485
words denoting, 1017
- Kimpurusa**, Hemakūṭa was given by Agnidhra to, 322
characteristics of the region called, 323
country; no misery in, 326
a mountain, 324
- kinsuka** a flower, 529
- Kindama**, a sage; cursed Pāṇdu, 32fn
- king**, words denoting, 991
mode of performing the coronation of, 566-68
should be endowed with modesty, 617
the qualities of, 619
the seven qualities of, 683
code of righteous conduct for, 588
vices of, 627
vices which should be avoided by a, 626
aggregate of six things to be given up by, 617
compared to the sun, moon etc., 588
strategies to be employed by, 606-7
the six expedients used by, 607-8
general duties of, 579-81, 584-6
duties of, 619, 621-22
daily duties of, 608-9
duties in the harem, 581-82
should protect himself and the kingdom, 622
should protect the people, 674
means of protecting, 577
guidelines for employing men of good conduct and ability by, 573-5
to make treaties with whom, 623
twelve circles of friends and enemies relating to, 605, 622
details relating to payment of share of gains to, 674
the four obligatory acts of; relating to wealth, 617
should worship those who carry banners and weapons, 639
when should a battle be begun by, 623-624
the sixteen kinds of war to be avoided by a, 623
rites preceding the march of, 609-12
kingdom, the seven constituents of, 600, 618
sovereignty as the most important means for, 619
kings, rites to be performed in a year by, 722-25
kinnaras, synonyms of, 988
image of, 137
Kintughna, a karana, 363, 369
Kirti, a female energy; worshipped, 90
wife of Jayanta, 739
Kirtimūṇi, one of the sons of Vasudeva and Devaki; killed by Kaiśa, 744
Kiskindhā, Sugriva made ruler of, 17, 18
a place; form of Viṣṇu to be worshipped at, 811
kitchen, words related to, 1021
knots, on the sacred thread, names of; number of, 216
knowledge, word for, 991
relating to science; word for, 991
relating to unreality of world; words for, 991
doubtful; words referring to, 991
false; words denoting, 991
conclusive; words for, 991
two kinds of—parā and aparā, 2
the foremost, 455
relating to Brahman: the greatness of, 1059
the different virtues considered as, 1070
state of persons who had gained, 1074
as means for realizing the identity of soul and Brahman, 1076
merits of gaining, 1077
Kodra, a boundary mountain, 352
Kolāhala, a demon; was subdued by Viṣṇu in his eleventh manifestation, 745, 746
Kolāhalā, a hell, 1038
Kolas, origin of, 747

Kolbagiri, a sacred place, 328
 Komalatva (softness), an excellence of sense, 945
 Koṅkaṇa, installation not to be done by people born in, 106
 augury indicating the destruction of, 387
 Kośa, contains elegant verses of great poets, 920-21
 two divisions of, 921
 Kosala, installation should not be done by people born in, 106
 augury indicating the destruction of, 387
 Kotacakra, mode of drawing etc. 385-6
 koṭihoma, mantras and materials for; mode of performing; merits of performing, 426
 Koṭiśa, at Koṭitirtha; worshipped, 341
 worshipped, 414
 Koṭitirtha, a sacred spot, 327, 330
 Koṭitirtha, at Gayā, 341
 offering to be made at, 341
 Krakaca, a hell, 532
 Krama, a form of Rudra, 252
 Kramapādika, son of Pulaha and Kramā, 49
 Krānti, a female divinity, 91
 Kratha, one of the sons of Vidarbha; son of, 741
 Krathana, a monkey that accompanied Rāma to Laṅkā, 21
 Kratu, a sage; a mind-born son of Brahmā, 41, 42fn
 Bālakhilyas were born from, 40
 one of the sons of Ūru and Āgneyi, 42
 Krauñca, a continent, 323
 given to Dyutimān by Priyavrata, 322
 rulers of; ocean around, 352
 a mountain, 352
 Krauñcapādā, characteristics of the metre, 914
 Krauñcapāda, at Gayā, 342
 Krauṣṭuki, an authority in prosody, 903
 kṛcchra, an expiation; explanation of, 482
 an atonement for eating food from certain people, 471
 for officiating as priest for degraded person, 479
 for mendicants, 481
 period of observance for kings and others, 486
 to be observed at the six-monthly rite, 488
 to be observed for having committed sins, 489

as a means of testing one's strength, 539
 kṛcchra cāndrāyaṇa, an expiation, 477
 kṛcchra sāntāpana, an expiation, 477
 kṛcchrātukṛcchra, an expiation, 479
 explanation of, 482, 799
 Kriyā, a female divinity, 292, 424
 Kriyābhramśa, an impurity, 947
 Kriyāsakti, letter denoting, 418
 kṛkara, a life-force carried by the vein alambuṣā, 556
 functions of, 557
 Kṛmi, one of the four sons of Bhajamāna, 742
 wife of Uśinara, 747
 son of Kṛmi and Uśinara, 747
 Kṛmila, one of the five kings born from Būhyāśva, 749
 Krodha, born from Mṛtyu, 49
 Krodhā, animals were born from, 46
 Krodhana, a year of the Hindu Calendar, 405
 Krodhanā, image of, 138
 Krodhiśa, letter signifying, 419
 Kroṣṭu, one of the sons of Yadu, 740
 the race of; in whose race Lord Hari himself was born, 741
 son of, 741
 Kṛpa, one of those who survived in the (Bhārata) battle, 36
 one of the pairs born from Satyadhṛk, 750
 Kṛpanā, image of, 138
 Kṛpi, one of the pairs born from Satyadhṛk, 750
 Kṛśāśva, the celestial weapons as the progeny of, 45
 Kṛṣeyu, one of the ten sons of Bhadrāśva, 748
 Kṛṣṇa, manifestation of Viṣṇu as, 25-31
 appeared for the destruction of demons, 745
 born to Vasudeva and Devaki to remove oppression on the earth, 26, 744
 entrusted to Nanda by Vasudeva, 27
 reference to Pralamba approaching, 30fn
 came to Gomantaka from Mathurā, 28
 destruction of Kālayavana by, 28fn
 story relating to Aṣṭāvakra's blessings on the nymphs to become wives of, 37fn
 some names among the sixteen thousand wives of, 744
 married Satyabhāmā, 743
 the genealogy of, 25, 29, 744

- killed Śatadhanu and recovered the gem and entrusted to Akrūra, 743
 recovered the syamantaka gem from Jāmbavān and married Jāmbavati, son of, 743, 744
 exoneration of, 743
 story relating to Aniruddha, grandson of, 30
 story of Bhārata, describing the greatness of, 31
 became the charioteer of Arjuna, 32
 birth of a son to Subhadrā, sister of, 33
 encouraged Arjuna to fight, 34
 survived the Mahābhārata war, 36
 in whose absence the chariot etc. of the Pāṇḍavas were lost, 37
 the mark on the chest of, 51
 letters denoting, 63
 name of the conch of, 63
 form of Viṣṇu, 841
 name to be repeated at Dvārakā, one of those assigned on the body in worship, 414
- Kṛṣṇa, one of the six sons of Dhīṣṇā, 43
 Kṛṣṇa, one of the sons of Kārtavīrya, 741
 Kṛṣṇa, a class of men in the Śālnala Dvīpa, 352
 Kṛṣṇā, one of the female divinities invoked, 230
 Kṛṣṇā, a flower, 529
 Kṛṣṇa Dvaipāyana, begetting sons through the wife of Vicitravīryaka, 751
 Kṛṣṇāṣṭamī, mode of practising the vow of, 507-8
 Kṛṣṇaveṇī, a river; flows from Sahya, 351
 Kṛta, an attendant of Śiva, 201
 Kṛtāgni, one of the sons of Kanaka, 740
 Kṛtāmālā, river; flows from Malaya, 351
 story relating to Manu's libation at, 3
 kṛtāmāla, a herb, 407
 kṛtājñali, a herb, 406
 Kṛtānta, god of death; worshipped, 316
 Kṛtaujas, one of the sons of Kanaka, 740
 Kṛtavarmā, one of the ten sons of Hṛdika, 743
 Kṛtavarman, one of those who survived after the Bhārata war, 36
 Kṛtavīrya, one of the sons of Kanaka; son of, 740
 Kṛtavrata, a disciple of Lomahaṇṣa, 730
- Kṛtayuga, repeats in a cyclic order, 39
 worshipped, 50
 creation of Manu relating to, 323
 Kṛteyu, one of the ten sons of Bhadrāśva, 748
 Kṛti, son of Lomapāda, 741
 name of a metre, 905
 classical metres based on, 914
 kṛts, the primary affixes added to verbs, 985-6
 Kṛttikā, asterism; belongs to the sphere of fire, 387
 an asterism; mother of Kārttikeya, 44
 commended for first feeding of the child, 358
 commendable for sowing seed, 361
 occurring on a Saturday as auspicious, 377
 not to wear new clothes on, 359
 misery caused by Sun's presence in, 363
 categorised as evil, 381
 located in the east in kṛtacakra, 385
 located in the third column in the diagram to find period for journey, 400
 Kṛttivāsa, image of, 138-9
 Krūra, letter denoting, 419
 Kṣamā, wife of Pulaha; progeny of, 49
 image of, 135
 Kṣamī, an energy, 292
 kṣapaṇaka (mantra), description of, 875
 Kṣāra, an ocean, 351
 kṣāra, a medicine, 407
 kṣatriya, synonyms of, 1018
 kṣava, one of the kinds of mantras of Śiva, 873
 Kṣayā, image of, 132
 Kṣema, one of the sons of Medhātithi, 351
 kṣema, one of the tīrābalas, 359
 Kṣemā, image of, 138
 Kṣemaka, son of Anarka; son of, 749
 Kṣemakīrī, a goddess, 424
 Kṣemaṅkari, image of, 135
 Kṣemiyā, a name of Durgā, 26
 kṣetra, things denoted by the term, 1070
 kṣetrajña, meaning of the term, 1070
 Kṣetraka, son of Svāhya, 743
 Kṣīrābdhi, ocean around Śākadvīpa, 352
 kṣīrī, a herb, 371
 kṣīra, an ocean, 351
 Kṣobhaṇī, a goddess, 424
 Kṣudra, a Rudra, 254
 Kubera, lord of wealth; son of Viśravaśa, 24

- synonyms of, 988
 was made king of kings, 47
 image of, 137
 propitiation of, 176
 worshipped, 51
 kubjaka, a flower, 529
 Kubjāmra, a sacred place, 327
 greatness of Hṛṣikeśa to be con-
 templated at, 841
 Kubjikā, goddess, 411ff
 mode of worship of, preliminaries
 for worship of, 412
 mode of worship of, 413
 mode of contemplation of, 416
 worship of the sandals of, 415
 a charm in a cloth may have the
 outlines of, 402
 Kuḍamala, sub-division of a hell, 1039
 Kuhū, a son of Aṅgiras and Smṛti, 49
 wife of Haviṣmān, 739
 kuhū, denotes the moon a digit less
 on the new moon day, 990
 an occult nerve, 257
 Kuhura, one of the sons of Babhru;
 son of, 742
 Kuksi, a daughter of Kardama and
 Devahūti, 41
 kukṣi, a modification of the array
 daṇḍa, 633
 Kulaka, division of poetry called, 919
 has many couplets, 920
 Kulatā, a female divinity; mode of
 worship of, 412
 Kulavāgīśi, goddess Kubjikā addressed
 as, 413
 Kuleśvari, female divinity; contem-
 plated, 404
 Kulika, one of the eight chief ser-
 pents; the number of heads of, 807
 presides over the junctions of
 periods; duration of the rule of,
 808
 assigned on the ears in the worship
 of Kubjikā, 415
 Kumāra, denotes Skanda born of Agni
 in a clump of reeds, 44
 Kumāra, son of Havya, 352
 Kumāra, river; rises from Śuktimat, 351
 Kumārakoṭi, a sacred place; great-
 ness of, 327
 Kumāralalitā, characteristics of the
 metre, 911
 kumārī, a herb, 406
 Kumbha, a demon; Hanūmat searched
 for Sītā in the house of, 19
 killed by Rāma, 22
 Kumbha, a constellation; correction
 for, 367
 victory or death indicated by, 377
 Kumbha, name of a pitcher, 270
 Kumbha, a posture made with the
 hands, 187, 899
 Kumbhaka, a variety of prāṇāyāma;
 reason for its name as, 557
 Kumbhakarna, a demon; Hanūmat
 searched for Sītā in the house of, 19
 was always sleeping, 24
 battle of; killed by Rāma, 22
 Kumbhakarni, a spirit afflicting the
 child in the ninth month; symptoms
 of child affected by; offering to
 appease, 823
 Kumbhāṇḍa, a minister of Bāna, 30
 Kunuda, worshipped, 51
 Kumuda, a divinity assigned on the
 body, 414
 Kumuda, a deity presiding over the
 banner, 148
 worshipped, 284
 Kumuda, a gate-keeper; adored, 93
 Kunuda, a boundary mountain, 352
 kumuda, one of the treasures, 111
 Kumudākṣa, a deity presiding over
 the banner, 148
 worshipped, 284
 Kuṇḍalakṣmi, goddess Lakṣmi at the
 middle of sacrificial pit, 95
 kuṇḍalini, nature and location of, 558
 Kundi, a goddess, 133
 Kuni, a son of Manu and Nadvalā,
 42 fn
 Kunti, son of Kratha, 741
 son of, 742
 Kuntī, wife of Pāndu, 744
 sons of, 751
 birth of Yudhiṣṭhira, Karṇa and
 others to, 32
 went to the forest after the Bhārata
 war, 36
 Kuraṅgeśa, one of the siddhas; wor-
 shipped, 415
 kūrcha, used for worship, 94
 Kūrma, form of Viṣṇu, 326
 saluted, 50
 śālagrāma representing, 125
 kūrma, a life-force carried by the
 vein Yaśā, 556
 functions of, 557
 a posture, 55
 Kūrmacakra, to find the victory etc.,
 description of, 370
 Kūrmaka, letter denoting, 419
 Kūrmapurāṇa, narrated in connection
 with the story of Indradyumna;
 narrated by tortoise form of lord
 Viṣṇu; extent of; should be given
 as a gift, 734
 Kuru, name of a king, 322
 born in the family of Aila Purūravas,
 31

- son of Saṁvarāṇa; migrated from Prayāga and founded kingdom of Kurukṣetra; the four sons of, 750
- Kuru, a country on the western part, 322, 351
- Kuru, Uttara, a mountain, location of, 324
- Kuru, Uttara, a country; river Bhadrā passes through, 325
- Kurukṣetra, one of the sacred places, 491
five pits made by Paraśurāma at, 9
armies of Pāṇḍavas and Kauravas met at, 34
greatness of, 350
greatness of even the dust particles of, 327
liberation conferred by stay at, 335
certain men and species of beings born as brahmins at, 349
auspiciousness of image of Brahmā at the centre of, 106
Vāmana form of Viṣṇu worshipped at, 841
- Kurus (Kauravas), enmity between Pāṇḍavas and, 32
- Kurus, recognised the Pāṇḍavas in the Virāṭa, 33
description of the battle between Pāṇḍavas and, 34
- Kurus, a class of men in Plaksadvipa, 351
- Kurus, country; location of, 325
Viṣṇu as Matsya in, 326
- Kuruvinda, nature of rubies got from, 641
- Kuśa, born to Sitā in the hermitage of Vālmiki, 24
born in the family (of Raghu) as son of Rāma; son of, 738
- Kuśa, one of the seven sons of Suhotra and Girikā, 750
- Kuśa, a continent, 323
given by Priyavrata to Jyotiṣmān, 323
rulers of, 352
- kuśa (grass), Vena was killed by the sages, with, 42, 42fn
the name Prācinabarhis associated with, 43
used in worship, 58, 67, 68, 94, 95
- Kuśa, a flower, 529
- Kuśāgra, born from Bṛhadratha; son of, 750
- Kuśāla, country ruled by a son of Dyutimat, 352
- Kuśāla, one of the siddhas, 414
- Kuśasthali, as the domain of Ānarta; kingdom of; got by Raivata, 796
- Kuśāśaya, a boundary mountain, 352
- Kuśika, son of Balakāśva; son of, 749
- Kuśottara, son of Havya, 352
- Kūsmāṇḍa, an attendant of Śiva; image of, 135
worship of, 310
- kūsmāṇḍa, a flower, 529
not to be used in worship, 330
- kuṣṭha, a herb, 372
- Kusumamālā, letter denoting, 418
- Kusumavicitrā, characteristics of the metre, 912
- Kusumitalatāvellitā, characteristics of the metre, 914
- kuṭaja, a flower; not to be used in worship, 529
not to be used for Śiva, 529
- Kuṭika, beads belonging to the Savitra class, 894
- Kuṭila, beads belonging to Śikhā class, 894
- Kuṭṭāla, a hell, 531
- Kuvalāśva, son of Bṛhadāśva; got the name Dhundhumāra, 736
- Kuvalayāpīḍa, a demon, 27
- lagna, denotes the rise of a constellation, 989
- laguda, uses of, 652
- lajjūlukā, a herb, 406
- lakṣahoma, mode of performing, 425-6
- Lakṣmaṇa, born to Sumitrā, 10
married Urmilā, 11
accompanied Rāma to the forest, 13
cut the nose of Śūrpaṇakhā, 15
Sitā's words to; Rāma's words to, 16
comforted Rāma, 17
Hanūmat recounting Sitā the story of Rāma and, 17
killed Indrajit, 22
reference to killing of the demons by, 24
- Lakṣmaṇā, one of the wives of Kṛṣṇa, 744
- Lakṣmī, consort of Nārāyaṇa (Viṣṇu), 19, 738
synonyms of, 986
origin and greatness of, 6
characteristics of the image of, 131, 133
characteristics of certain forms of Viṣṇu in the company of, 131
installation of image of, 169-70
worship, 51, 52, 197
mode of worship of, 19, 849-51
- lakṣmi, a nerve, 316
- Lakṣminārāyaṇa, a śālagrāma, 125
- Laktā, image of, 198
- Lalanā, a spirit seizing the child in

- the fifth month; symptoms of the child seized by; offering to appease, 823
- Lālasā, image of, 133
- Lalita, characteristics of the metre, 909
- lalita, a kind of gesture, 929
- Lalitā, another name of Gauri, 133
- characteristics of the image of, 139
- Lalitā, daughter of king of Vidarbha, 526
- Lālitya, an excellence of word 944
(See also smoothness)
- Lambā, wife of Dharma; progeny of, 44
- Lambaka, a division of prose kāvyas, 919
- Lambakuṣi, a name of Gaṇeśa, 190
- Lambana, a son of Jyotiṣmat, 352
- Lambodara, one of the eight forms of Gaṇapati, 865
- Lambodari, letter denoting, 417
- Lāṅgali, letter denoting, 419
- language, explanation of abusive, 655
- Lankā, Śūrpaṇakhā's arrival at;
Sītā carried by Rāvaṇa to 16
Sampātī's words about Sītā's presence at, 19
Hanūmān's search for Sītā at, 19
burning of city of, 20
Vibhiṣaṇa anointed as ruler of, 21
entrusted by Rāma to Vibhiṣaṇa, 23
goddess addressed as builder of bridge to, 379
- lapis lazuli, a gem, 640
- qualities of excellent variety of, 641
- Lāṭas, the names of towns given to, 315
- Lāṭiyā, a variety of diction; characteristics of, 927
- Lauhītya, a sacred place, 328
- Lava, born in the family (of Raghus) as son of Rāma, 738
born to Sītā in the hermitage of Vālmiki, 24
- Lavali, characteristics of the metre, 909
- Lavaṇa, an ocean, 324
- Lavaṇa, a demon killed by Śatrugṇa, 24
- law codes, stronger than sciences of wealth, 657
procedure if there is conflict between two, 657
- laws, code of, 455-7
- laws, code of criminal, 588-93
- law-suit, rests on the witnesses, 654
as protecting the four institutions of life, 654
as encompassing four persons, 654
the four items accomplished by means of, 654
eight accessories of, 654
the three causes for, 654
- two other causes of; the six things associated with each one of the two, 654
- the three evidences in, 657
- laya, explanation of, 994
- Layā, image of, 138
- layers, of the skin; description of, 1034
- lead, auspiciousness of, 641
- leg, diseases of; remedy for, 769
- Leo, a fixed sign; acts of fixed nature to be done in, 384
the time taken by the Sun to cross, 384
- rite to determine the sex of the child to be done in, 357
- building of a house to be avoided when Jupiter is in, 360
- the day of getting up of Indra when Sun is in, 361
- banner of Indra to be lowered in, 362
- friendly with Gemini as also Libra, 392
- leprosy, remedy for, 753, 767, 773-4, 779
- letters, are either sixtythree or sixty-four; classification of, 915
origin of, 916
division into five groups on the basis of place of articulation etc., 916
places of articulation of, 916, 917
merits or demerits of sticking to or shifting the places of articulation of, 916
instructions in using the, 916, 917
in the name of a votary; the four-fold classification of, effects of, 895
in the name, as aid to prognostication, 409
indicating victory and prosperity, 376
group of; denoting the planets, 378
- libation, mode of offering, 535-37
merits of offering, 450-51
- liberation, words denoting, 991
got by means of knowledge, 1059
- Libra, a constellation commendable for marriage when Sun is in, 357
known as the waking day of Hari if Sun is in, 361
time taken by Sun to traverse, 384
friendly with Aries, 392
- lightning, words denoting, 989
- Likhita, a law-giver, 455
- likhyā, a measure, 107
- Lilā, image of, 138
- lily, words denoting, 996
- limbs, words denoting the different, 1015

- eight kinds of; associated with exertion, 929
- līṅga(s), different varieties, dimensions, of, 141-145
- movable variety, mode of fixing, 301-302
- classified into groups of; on the basis of doorway etc., 142
- description of, 143
- made of earth; merits of worshipping, 142, 901
- movable, 321
- characteristics of, 139-41
- measurement of eyes proportionate to, 288
- mode of installation of, 172, 278-82, 295, 296, 297, 960
- rites relating to installation of, 289-90
- old or broken; repair of, 311-13
- mode of worshipping, 299
- benefits of worshipping different, 142, 900
- contemplation of; as in one's own body, etc.
- līṅga, a posture made with the hands, 218, 229, 297, 898
- Līṅgapurāṇa, in the Āgneya-kalpa; extent of, 733
- contains description of virtues by lord Śiva in the form of fiery līṅga, 733
- merits of making a gift in Phālguna, 733
- Lion, manifestation of Viṣṇu, 9
- lip, lower; six actions of, 929
- līptā, a measure of time, 370
- loan, rates of interest relating to, 658
- loan-bond, rules relating to writing of, 663-4
- lodhra, a herb, 372
- logical reasoning, word for, 991
- Loha, name of a demon, 639
- cut by lord Viṣṇu, 639-40
- Loha, a hell, 532
- Lohabhāra, subdivision of a hell, 1039
- Lohaśāṅku, subdivision of a hell, 1039
- Lohita, a divinity; letter denoting, 419
- Lohita, a country known by the name of a son of Vapuṣmān, 352
- Lokabhāvana, form of Viṣṇu at Nepāla, 841
- Lokākula, a place; Ripuhara to be worshipped at, 841
- Lokāloka, a peak; extension of, 333
- lokana, a posture relating to riding horses, 787
- lokotticchāyā, that which follows the proverb, 932
- Lolupā, a female divinity; image of, 138
- Lomahaṣaṇa, got the Vedic lore from Vyāsa; disciples of, 730
- Lomapāda, one of the sons of Vidarbha; son of, 741
- Lomapāda, son of Satyaratha; son of, 748
- long life, a mixture that would give, 756
- prescription to get, 777
- lotus, words denoting different kinds of, 996
- words denoting the root of a, 996
- worship of gods in, 79fn
- efficacy of worshipping with, 529
- merits of worshipping lord Hari with, 529
- diagram of; for daily worship etc., 880
- Lunar race, description of, 738-40
- lunar days, the names of the presiding deities of, 805
- lustre, words denoting, 989, 990
- lute, words denoting different kinds of, 994
- machine, uses of, 652
- madanadvādaśī, mode of practising the vow of, 512
- Mādhava, a name of Viṣṇu, 65
- characteristics of the form of, 128
- Mādhavi, characteristics of, 934
- Madhu, Viṣṇu as the killer of the demon, 65
- Madhu, son of Devakṣetra; son of, 742
- Madhuhara, a name of Viṣṇu, 65
- madhuparka, offered at the time of worship, 55
- madhurā vṛtti, explanation of, 933
- madhu ṛks, recitation of; as a pañkti-pāvana, 349
- Mādhurya (tranquility) an excellence of sense, 945
- Madhusūdana, Viṣṇu as the destroyer of demon Madhu, 746
- form of Viṣṇu on Mandara, 841
- to be contemplated everywhere, 842
- Madhusravas, at Gayā, piṇḍa to be offered at, 344
- Madhvā, a metre: number of letters in, 905
- Madhyadeśa, location of, 331
- Madhya Jyotis, composition of the metre, 904
- Mādhvakaṣhi, a branch of Yajurveda, 736
- madhyama, a variety of prāṇāyāma, 1044
- Mādhyandinī, a branch of Yajurveda, 730

- Mādri**, one of the wives of Kṛṣṇa, 744
Mādri, one of the two wives of Dhṛṣṭa; progeny of, 743
Mādrī, other wife of Pāṇḍu, 32, 744
 progeny of, 751
 death of Pāṇḍu while having union with, 32
Maga, a class of men at Śākadvīpa, 352
Magadha, a class of men at the Śākadvīpa, 352
Māgadha, a forest; the name *Vaikuṇṭha* to be repeated at, 842
māgadha (s), a caste, origin of, 42, 430
 duty of, 43
Maghā, an asterism known as down-faced, 381
 comprises the sphere of wind, 387
 comprises the sphere of fire, 387
 effect of Sun's transit in, 363
 harvest of grains to be done in, 361
 auspicious for administering medicine, 358
 known as blunted; its effect relating to journey, 382
 not commendable for attending on the employer, 360
 not commended for wearing new clothes, 359
 affliction caused by its occurrence on a Tuesday, 376
 fatality indicated by its conjunction with Saturday and full moon, 377
Māgha, a month; a commendable day for first shave in, 359
 benefit of purchasing food grains in, 387
 inauspicious for first entry into a house, 360
Mahābāhu, one of the sons of Hiraṇyākṣa, 46fn
Mahābhadra, a lake in the Jambūdvīpa, 325
Mahābhairava, obeisance to, 379
Mahābhārata, story of, 34ff
 mode of honouring a person reciting, 734
 mode of making gifts after the recitation of, 734
mahābhūtaghaṭa, a great gift, 544
Mahābja, a serpent; image of, 137
Mahābodhi, tree at Gayā; merits of worshipping, 338
Mahābrhati, constitution of; another name of, 904
Mahācaṇḍā, a hell, 1038
Mahācapālā, characteristics of the metre, 906
Mahādeva, a form of Rudra, 50
 favour extended to Sati by, 45
 worship of, 290
Mahāghorā, a hell, 1038
Mahājvālā, a hell, 532
mahājyaisthi, the presence of Jupiter and Moon in the asterism *Jyēṣṭhā*, 362
Mahākāla, image of, 135
 letter denoting, 419
 to be worshipped, 51, 197, 283
Mahākālī, a female energy; colour of, 136
 letter denoting, 417
 contemplation on, 413
mahākālī, a medicinal plant, 378
Mahākāvya, characteristics of poetry called, 919-20
Mahākoṭi, at Gayā; piṇḍa to be offered at, 342
Mahākoṭi, a goddess, 375
Mahākrūrā, a yogini; image of, 138
Mahākṣobhakāriṇī, Kumbhikā addressed as, 413
Mahālakṣmī, characteristic features of the form of, 134
 worshipped, 52, 415
 benefit of the worship of, 343
Mahālaya, a holy spot at Vārāṇasi, 330
Mahāmanas, son of Mahāśāla; son of, 747
Mahāmāri, goddess; image of, 401
 a formula affecting enemies; description of, 401-2
Mahāmāyā, cloth containing the figure of, 402
Mahāmoha, one of the gods to be located and worshipped, 292
mahāmudrā, a posture with the hands, 200
Mahānābha, one of the sons of Hiraṇyākṣa, 46fn
Mahānadi, river at Gayā; bathing in, 341
 Phalgutirtha on, 337
Mahānanā, image of, 138
Mahānanta, worshipped, 414
Mahānaraka, sub-division of a hell, 1039
mahānila, a kind of sapphire, 640
Mahānta, son of Dhīmān, 323
Mahāpadma (Mahāmbuja), one of the eight chief serpents; the number of heads of, 807
 forms the eyebrows of the goddess, 415
mahāpadma, a type of temple, 315
 a treasure, 111, 269
mahāparāka, an expiation; explanation of 494

- Mahāpārśva**, a demon killed by Rāma, 22
Mahāpuṣṭipravardhanā, a goddess staying in a particular circle, 376
Mahāramyas, images of, 135
Mahāraurava, sub-division of a hell, 531, 1039
Maharloka, distance of, 354
 worshipped, 79
Mahāsāla, son of Janamejaya; son of, 747
mahāsāntapana, an expiation, explanation of, 482, 494, 799
Mahāsena, letter denoting, 419
Mahat, origin of, 40, 48
Mahātala, a nether world, 353
Mahātāmisraka, a hell, 531
Mahātāmra, a hell, 532
Mahāvajrā, a hell, 1038
Mahāvici, sub-division of a hell, 531, 1039
Mahāvīrya, a form of Rudra, 253
Mahāvīrya, son of Virāt, 323
Mahāvita, son of Savana, 353
Mahāyoga, form of Viṣṇu at Kāśī, 841
 form of Viṣṇu at Śālagrāma, 841
Mahendra, a name of the elephant-faced god, 190, 861
Mahendra, lord Indra; worship of 176
 offering of gems made to, 273
Mahendra, mountain in Bhāratavarṣa, 350
 rivers originating from, 351
 Paraśurāma's final stay at, 9
Mahendrā, a female energy; to be worshipped, 91
Māhendra, hill the name of Acyuta to be repeated at, 482
Mahendraka, a divinity worshipped, 414
Māhendra, one of the eight goddesses, 412
Maheśvara, worship of, 290
 Kṛṣṇa's conquest of the fever related to, 30
Māheśvari (Māheśī), one of the eight goddesses, 139fn, 399, 411, 415
Mahidhara, offering made to, 109
Mahimā, son of Sanihana; son of, 740
Mahimān, son of Janamejaya, 750
Mahipāla, beads belonging to the Siva class, 894
Mahiṣa, a boundary mountain, 352
Mahodara, one of the forms of Gaṇapati, 190, 865
Mahodara, a demon killed by Rāma, 22
mahodari, denotes the entry of the Sun in one of the signs, 362
Maināka, a mountain; rise of, 19
Mainda, a monkey; accompanied Rāma to Laṅkā, 21
 whose brother Dvidida was killed by Balarāma, 30fn
Maithila, denotes King Janaka, 16
Maitra, a muhūrta; deeds to be done in, 371
Maitra=Anurādhā
Maitrāyaṇi, a branch of Yajurveda, 730
Maitreya, priest of king of Sauvira, 526
Maitreya, son of Divodāsa; son of, 750
Maitriśī, one of the goddesses, 413
Makara, a constellation; correction for 367
 (See also Capricorn)
makara, a treasure, 111, 269
makara, an array; a variation of the array called bhoga, 634
Makarākṣa, a demon killed by Rāma, 22
Mālā, characteristics of the metre, 913
mālāmantras, have more than twenty letters; yield results in youth, 802
 on the practice of, 804
mālati, a flower, 529
Malaya, mountain, 350, 351
Malayagiri, as a sacred place, 328
māliyamaka, one of the yamakas, 935
Mālini, characteristics of the metre, 913
Mālinīmantra, rite relating to, 418-9
mallikā a herb, 371, 378
 a flower, 529
Mālopanā, explanation of, 940
Mālvavat, mountain, 325
 Rāma's stay on, 18
manahsilā, used as an unguent, 372
Mānasa, a manifestation of Viṣṇu, 428
Mānasa, one of the sons of Vapuṣmat; denotes also the country ruled by him, 352
Mānasa, as an excellent place, 330
Mānasa, a boundary mountain, 353
Mānasa, a lake, 325, 349
Manasya, son of Mahānta, 323
Manasyu, son of Prācinavān; son of, 748
Mānava, a missile, 10
Mānavakṛīḍitaka, characteristics of the metre, 911
manda, a variety of horses, 789
mandā, a name of the entry of the Sun in one of the signs, 362
Mandaga, a class of men in the Śākadvīpa, 352
Manikini, river; as excellent, 328
 Rāma's stay on the banks of, 14
mandākinī, a name of the entry of the Sun in one of the signs, 362
Mandākrāntā, characteristics of the metre, 913-4

maṇḍala, an array; description of, 633
 an array; two units taken from
 and combined (for a battle), 634
 an array; modifications of, 634
 some variations of, 635
 certain features of amara same as,
 635
 maṇḍala, a posture relating to archery,
 645
 maṇḍala, baked flour, 108
 maṇḍaleśvara, meaning of the word,
 1018
 maṇḍali, a class of serpents based on
 excess of the humour, 807
 Mandara, a boundary mountain, 324,
 352
 made as the churning rod to churn
 the ocean, 5, 745
 the name Madhusūdana to be
 repeated at, 841
 mandara, a type of temple, 314
 mandāra, a flower; used in the wor-
 ship of Viṣṇu, 99
 used in the worship of Śiva, 101, 529
 Māṇḍavi, married by Bharata, 11
 Mandehāḥ, a class of men in the
 Kuśadvipa, 352fn
 Māṇḍhātṛ, son of Yuvanāśva; sons of,
 737
 father of Mucukunda, 28fn
 mandira, a type of temple, 314
 Maṅgalā, benefit of worshipping the
 goddess, 343
 maṅgalā, a stone, 269
 Maṅgūṇanikarā, characteristics of
 the metre, 913
 maṇika, a class of temple; oval-sha-
 ped; the temples belonging to the
 class of, 315
 Maṇivaka, son of Havya, 352
 Mañjari, characteristics of the metre,
 909
 mañjiṣṭhā, used for making an
 unguent, 372
 Mañjūṣa, a hell, 532
 Man-lion, form of Viṣṇu, 129
 Manmatha, a year of the Hindu
 calendar, 405
 Manoharā, wife of Dhara; sons of, 44
 Manojava, different reading for Puro-
 java, 44fn
 Manomani, a female divinity; wor-
 shipped, 51
 Manonmana, a form of Rudra, 253
 Manonmani, a goddess; an envoy of
 goddess Tvaritā, 424
 Manonuga, one of the sons of
 Dyutimat, 352
 manoramā, a nerve, 316
 manorathadvādasi, mode of practi-

sing the vow of, 512
 Mantharā, an attendant of Kaikeyi, 11
 words of, 12
 Mantra, a form of Rudra, 253
 mantra, eight-syllabled, 53, 56
 known as ari; destructive nature of,
 803
 which accomplishes all the desires,
 830
 for conquest of evil influences of
 pauṣṇa, 835
 propitiation of the letters compos-
 ing a; benefit accruing from,
 835-836
 of five syllables sacred to Śiva;
 mode of worship with, 837-40
 mantras, forming base of all mantras,
 373
 different kinds of, 265-66, 358, 416-
 19, 832-35
 their nomenclature, 802-806
 narration of different kinds of;
 effects of, 872-3
 for worship; description of, 50
 collection of; the five parts of, 830
 of different kinds; application of,
 863-64
 classification as āgneya and saumya,
 802
 should begin with praṇava, 805
 the six accessory acts relating to,
 403-4
 instructions relating to repetition
 of, 805
 to be repeated facing east or looking
 downwards, 805
 means of acquiring perfection in and
 the efficacy of, 804
 whose letters are governed by
 baneful asterisms to be avoided,
 803
 number of repetitions of; inversely
 proportional with the number of
 letters in, 804
 sleeping and waking states relating
 to, 803
 method to find the auspiciousness
 of, 265
 which remove the baneful influences
 of planets, 826-30
 eight kinds of benevolent, 874
 for making offering to the spirits, 826
 relating to six kinds of acts such as
 paralysing, 871-2
 that would stupefy the three worlds,
 845-9
 three parts of; relating to the three
 gods, 420
 relating to worship of different gods,
 864-65

- of Śiva; different kinds of, 873-75
relative merits of different methods
of repetition of, 805
- Manu, the term denoting the period
of, 39fn
- Svāyambhuva as the first, 41fn
creation of, 322-23
born to Cākṣuṣa and Puṣkariṇi;
progeny of, 42
- Vaiṣvata; born to Sun and
Sañjñā, 735
words spoken to the Fish by, 4
- a law-giver, 455
- herb denoted by the term, 406, 407
- Manus, names of different, 427-9
reign in a day of Brahmā, 429
periods of different, 427-9
names of Indra and the sages during
the periods of, 427-9
- Manvantaras, periods of Manu, 39fn
manifestations of Viṣṇu innumera-
ble in, 39
- Mārgaśīrṣa, month; increased return
of certain good articles in, 386
- marica, a herb, 407
- Mārica, a demon; tupefied by Rāma's
missile, 10
words spoken to Rāvaṇa by, 16
imitated the voice of Rāma and
cried aloud, 16fn
- Marici, a sage; mind-born son of
Brahmā, 9, 41, 42fn, 735
Kaśyapa born from, 9
had Pauruṣamāsa through Sambhūti,
49
worship of, 108, 274, 275, 317
- Māriśi, daughter of Kaṇḍu and
Pramlocā; offered by Soma to
Pracetā, 43
- mark, words denoting, 989
- Mārkaṇḍeya, born to Mṛkaṇḍu and
Vedaśrī, 49
imparted knowledge to Vajra, 30
- Mārkaṇḍeyapurāṇa, contains discus-
sion on righteousness; extent of, 732
to be given as a gift in Kārttika, 732
- Mārkaṇḍeyaśvara, at Gayā; wor-
shipped, 342
- marriage(s), four kinds of acts relating
to, 434
rules relating to, 434-36
eight kinds of, 434-5
time for performing, 357
commendable constellations and
planets for, 435
asterisms commendable for, 435
prohibited periods for performance
of, 435
- Mars, distance of, 354
chariot of, 356
- period (years) of influence of, 363,
393
- presides over a part of day, 381
- letter presided over by, 374
- the effect of occupying the second
house by, 383
- confers good in the (tenth house),
384
- indicates defeat if battle is begun
when it leaves its asterism, 386
- bad luck indicated by, 400
- causes riot, 377
- the days which are to be avoided
if associated with, 410
- is for victory, 389
- nature of person born in the house
of, 392
- image of, 137
- the form of that is to be contem-
plated, 828
- Mārtaṇḍa (Sun), the day for the in-
stallation of, 87
- Marut, Maruts came into being from,
44
- Māruta, Wind-god; worship of, 274
- Māruti (Hanumat), crossing of the
ocean by, 19
words spoken to Rāvaṇa by, 20
Rāma and Lakṣmaṇa were made
secure when the mountain was
brought by 22
attacked Rāvaṇa, 23
- Maruts, were born from Marut, 44
Vāsava was made the chief of, 47
brought Bharadvāja to Bharata, 749
- Marutta, son of Titikṣu; son of, 741
- son of Karandhama; son of, 747
- maruvaka, leaves, 529
- masi, oil of, 372
- māsika, ceremony; parāk. to be obser-
ved at the time of, 488
- massaging, method of; benefits of,
763-4
- Mātali, charioteer of Indra, 22, 22fn
- Mataṅga, at Gayā, 338, 343
- Matāṅgāśrama at Gayā, 337
- Matāṅgavāpi, at Goyā, 337
- Matāṅgeśā, at Gayā; worshipped, 337
- Mathurā, Lavaṇa killed by Śatrughna
at, 24
- Kṛṣṇa rode a chariot and reached, 27
- Kṛṣṇa came to Gomantaka leaving,
28
- Keśava to be worshipped at, 841
- Matuṇāśa, one of the ten sons of
Bhadrāśva; the three sons of, 748
- Mātrāsamaka, characteristics of the
metre, 907
- mātrkā-mantras, denote the monosyl-
labic words; deities governing, 952

- Matsya**, form of Viṣṇu, 326
 —name of a śālagrāma, 125
Matsyakālī, one of the seven sons of Suhotra and Girikā, 750
Matsya-purāṇa, narrated by lord Viṣṇu in the form of a fish to Manu, 4, 734
 should be given as a gift at the time of the equinox, 734
Mattā, characteristics of the metre, 912
Mattākrīḍā, characteristics of the metre, 914
Mattamayūṛi, characteristics of the metre, 915
Mattoktichāyā, explanation of, 932
mature, a mode; explanation of, 933, 934
Maturity, explanation of, 945
Maukulyas, were descendants of Mukula, 750
Māyā, a female energy, 292, 417
 —wife of Bhaya, 49
māyā (mantra), denotes certain group of letters, 888
 no divisions in, 895
Māyāvati, Rati born as; maid of Sāmbara; married Pradyumna, 29, 29fn
Mayūrasāriṇi, characteristics of the metre, 912
mayūrasīkhā, a herb, 406
Māyāvin, son of Dundubhi, 17fn
means, seven kinds of, 387
measures, table of, 1022
Medhā, a female divinity; worshipped, 52
 —one of the sons of Priyavrata, 322
Medhātithi, ruled Plakṣa, 322
 names of the sons of, 322, 351
 son of Kaṇva, 748
medicine, asterism good for taking, 358
 dosage of; the factors to be noted in deciding, 762
medicines, falling under six heads and accomplishing two kinds of effects, 770
 conferring longevity and curing diseases, 778-80
meditation, on Brahman; mode of practising, 1055-6
Meghanāda, was born from Rāvaṇa, 24
Meghanādā, image of, 138
Meghapālaka, one of the seven sons of Nahuṣa, 740
memory, herb for improving, 773
men, different classes of, words denoting, 1013
 having different deformities or abnormalities; words for, 1014
 mounted on elephants, work of, 613
Menā, a daughter of the manes and Svadhā, 49
mental change, word denoting, 995
Meru, mountain; extent of, 324
 —is in the shape of a lotus, 325
 —a region, 322
 Rṣabha was born to Nābhi through, 323
meru, a type of temple, 314
Mercury (a planet), distance of, 354
 chariot of, 356
 period (years) of influence of, 363, 393
 presides over a part of day, 381
 the form that is to be contemplated of, 137, 828
 gives realisation of desire, 377
 letter presided over by, 374
 characteristics of a person born in the house of, 392
 good for truce, 389
 occupying second house confers good, 383
 beneficial in the twelfth, 384
 indicates defeat in battle begun when it is leaving its asterism, 386
merudāna, ten kinds of, mode of making, 544-5
 twelve varieties of, 553-5
 mode of offering (goddess), 554
Mesa, a constellation; letter denoting, 419
 correction for, 367
 causes victory if full and death otherwise, 377
 good and bad effects of planets in, 383
meṣaśṛṅgi, a herb, 406
messenger, qualification of; three types of, 625
metals and chemicals, words denoting, 1022-3
metres, Vedic; rules relating to, 902
 having different numbers of pādas, 903
 of other kinds formed from Utkṛti, 905
 the gotras of; the deities of, 905
 colours of different, 905
 classical, 905
 the three divisions of, 908
 characteristics of equal, 908
 calculating the number of half-equal 908
 on the calculation of the number of unequal, 908
 classical, based on Vedic metre Abhikṛti, 914

- based on Atikṛti, 914
 based on Kṛti, 914
 classical; based on Prakṛti, 914
 classical; based on Vedic metre
 Saṅkṛti, 914
 classical; based on the Vedic metre
 Utkṛti, 914
 classical; based on Vedic metre
 Vikṛti, 914
 tabular representation of, 915
 to be employed in a Mahākāvya,
 920
 midnight, words denoting, 990
 military expedition, instructions relat-
 ing to, 594
 Mīmāṃsā, science of, 2
 Mīna, correction for 367
 (See also Capricorn)
 letter denoting, 419
 mind, words denoting, 991
 mind, two divisions of exertions of;
 one of them relating to men divided
 further into eight, 927
 as the reins, 1075
 minerals, eight kinds of, 283
 minister, words denoting, 1018
 ministers, qualities of, 619
 how the king should examine the
 worthiness of, 619-20
 defects of, 626
 mire, words denoting, 995
 miscarriage, in women; remedy for
 arresting, 777
 miseries, true knowledge about; com-
 mended, 1074
 Mithuna, a constellation; correction
 for 367
 (See also Gemini)
 Mitra, one of the twelve Ādityas; son
 of Kaśyapa, 45
 as one of the names of Sun, 136
 —a divinity to be worshipped, 317
 worship of, 274
 —one of the Ādināthas, 412
 mitra, one of the tārūbalas, 359
 Mitradevi, one of the daughters of
 Devaka; married by Vasudeva,
 742
 mitram, explanation of, 1019
 Mitravinda, one of the wives of Kṛṣṇa,
 744
 Mitrayu, a disciple of Lomahaṇṣaṇa,
 730
 mocaka, a perfection, 257
 Modāki, son of Havya, 352
 mode, fourfold; uneven in the actions
 of a drama, 928
 modes (vṛtti), five kinds of; produced
 by repetition of a single letter, 933
 Mohā, an energy, 292
 mohalatā, a herb, 406
 mohini, a herb, used for subjugation,
 372
 Mohopamā, explanation of, 940
 mokṣa, one of the puruṣārthas, 53
 mokṣaṇi, one of the prāṇitamudrās,
 857
 Monday, rite of chewing betel leaf to
 be done on, 358
 first shave commended on, 359
 one should not do agriculture on,
 361
 inauspicious nature of eleventh day
 falling on, 381
 month, lunar, solar and astral, 495
 Moon, only one in the world, 376
 synonyms of, 989
 orb of; words denoting, 989
 lustre of; words denoting, 989
 sixteenth digit of; words denoting,
 989
 distance of, 354
 period (years) of, 363
 influence of, 393
 periods over a part of a day, 381
 form of, 137
 appeases defeat, 377
 benefits caused by different positions
 of, 383, 384
 death caused by investiture of thread
 when Moon has set, 359
 its presence in asterism jveṣṭhā
 known as mahājyaiṣṭhi, 362
 when holes are noticed in the disc of,
 387
 eclipse of the head known by the
 presence of, 388
 characteristic of a person born in the
 house of, 392
 ceremonies to be done when it is
 pure, 362
 moon-stone, a gem, 441
 moral observance, five kinds of, 454
 mortgage, rules relating to different
 types of, 660-1
 moṭana, a posture relating to riding
 horses, 787
 mountains, words denoting, 1006
 mṛdaṅga, synonym for; different kinds
 of, 994
 Mṛdava, a division of Vithi, 928
 Mṛga, a divinity; worshipped, 108,
 316, 317
 mṛga, variety of horses, 789
 Mṛgaśū, one of the fixed asterisms,
 381
 comprises the sphere of wind, 387
 location in a diagram, 385
 located in the second column in
 a diagram, 400

- an asterism; good for discharging debt, 338
 commendable to begin the construction of a house, 360
 good for harvesting grains, 361
 good for taking harvested grains inside the house, 361
 mahājyaiṣṭhi caused by, 362
 effect of Sun's transit in, 363
 commended for all acts, 381
 Mṛgavyādhā, one of the eleven forms of Rudra, 45
 Mrkaṇḍu, son of Vidhātṛ; son of, 49
 Mrtyu, father of Sunithā, 42fn
 —born to Bhaya and Māyā, 49
 —an energy, 292
 mrtyu, one of the groups of letters, 390
 to be rejected in all undertakings, 391
 Mrtyuñjaya, a form of Śiva; mode of worship of, 899
 worshipped, 374
 mrtyuñjaya, a formula known as; description of, 395
 Mucukunda, son of Māndhātṛ, 28, 737
 obtained a boon of long sleep, 28fn
 mudgara, uses of, 632
 mudrā(s), posture of the hands for worship, 53
 different kinds—formation of, 66-67
 for worship of Sun, 196
 —an embellishment of word, 932
 explanation of, 932
 Mudrāspṛṣṭa, one of the siddhas, 414
 Muhūrtā, Muhūrtas were born from, 44
 Muhūrtas, born from Muhūrtā, 44
 muhūrtas, different names of, 371
 Mukhamaṇḍi, a female force, 84
 Mukhapūrvikā, characteristics of the metre, 906
 mukhavyāvartana, an action of the horse while moving, 788
 Mukhya, a divinity worshipped, 317
 offering made to, 274
 mukhya, denotes first injunction, 1018
 Mukhyā, a division of Abhivyakti, 943
 Mukhyaka, one of the sons of Bali, 747
 mukhyasarga, the fourth creation, 48
 Mukṭaka, division of poetry called, 919
 consists of single verses, 920
 describes different incidents, 920
 Mukṭakṣī, a mistress possessing the newly born child on the seventh night, 822
 symptoms of child possessed by, 822
 material for fumigation when possessed by, 822
 unguent for the child afflicted by, 822
 Mukula, one of the five born from Bāhyāśva, 749
 Cañcāśva as son of, 750
 whose descendants were known as Maukulyas and were brahmins, 750
 Mukuṭā, the female spirit possessing the child two months old; symptoms of the child possessed by, 822
 offering and fumigation to appease, 823
 Mūla, an asterism; belongs to the watery region, 388
 marriage is commendable in, 357
 discharge of debt to be done in, 358
 commendable for beginning the construction of a house, 360
 good for doing agriculture, 361
 good for harvest of grains, 361
 commended for all acts, 381
 one of the blunted asterisms, 382
 misery caused by Sun's transit in, 363
 has face downward, 381
 location in koṭacakra for forecast, 385
 occupies the first column in a diagram, 400
 mūlagaurivrata, for Goddess Lakṣmi, 500-2
 mūlakṛcchra, an expiation, 483
 mūlamantra, bathing of the deity done with, 53
 mundane existence, three kinds of afflictions in, 1040
 Muṇḍapṛṣṭha, at Gayā, 336-7, 338
 worshipped, 342
 Muṇḍikā, a spirit possessing the child in the fifteenth year; symptoms of the child possessed by, 825
 Muni, the nymphs were born from, 47
 one of the sons of Dyutimat, 352
 one of the sons of Āpa, 44
 muni, herb denoted by the word, 406, 407
 munipuṣpa, a flower, 529
 muñja, a lake in Jambūdvīpa, 325
 Muñjakeśa, represents a branch of Atharvaveda, 730
 Muñjavaṭa, an excellent spot, 328
 Muraja, one of the bandhas; explanation of, 936
 murder, without witness; precautionary steps for passing judgement, 676
 musali, a herb, 371, 378
 musical instruments, four kinds of, 994
 words denoting different, 994

- mustard, used in a paste to give success against enemy, 372
- Muṣṭika, a wrestler killed by Kṛṣṇa, 28
- muṣṭimudrā, a posture of hands used in worship, 96
- mystical diagrams of different kinds; for worship, 879-83
- mystic syllables, used in consecration, 111
- Nabha, son of Nala; son of, 738
- Nābhāga, one of the eight sons of Vaivasvata Manu, 735
had two sons who were vaiśyas and became brahmins later, 736
- son of Bhagiratha; son of, 737
- Nābhi, was given country Hina by his father Agnidhra, 322
- Rṣabha born to Meru and, 323
- Nāciketa, fire; merits of worshipping thrice a day, 349
- nāḍi-s, the three being present in the goddess, 374
(See also veins)
- Nadvalā, wife of Manu; ten sons of, 42
- Naga, a hill at Gayā; excellence of, 337
- Nāga, image of, 106
investiture of sacred thread for; to be done, 215
- nāga, a vital wind, 253
a life-force carried by the vein prthā, 556
functions of, 557
- Nāgadvīpa, one of the nine territories, 350
- nāgāḥ, herb denoted by the word, 406
- nāgakarṇa, a flower, 529
- Nāgānanda, sandals of; should be worshipped, 414
- Nāgapāśa, weapon used by Indrajit to bind Hanūmat, 20
- nāgapuṣpa, used as an unguent to control others, 372
- Nāgas, Vāsuki was made the ruler of, 47
- Nāgāstra, weapon used by Indrajit, 22
(See also Nāgapāśa)
- Nāgavithi, was born from Yāmi, 44
- Nāgeśvari, location of the letter represented by, 417
- Nāgigāyatri, the number of letters in the three feet of, 903
- Nāgnajiti, one of the wives of Kṛṣṇa, 744
- Nagodbheda, greatness of the sacred place of, 327
- Nahūṣa, son of Āyū, 25, 31
one of the sons of Āyus; seven sons of, 739
- Naigameya, brother of Kumāra, 44
- Naimiṣa, Śaunaka and other sages at, 1
a sacred place, 491
merits of, 328
- naimittika, one of the three kinds of creation, 48
ceremony should be done, 98
- Naimittiki, a division of Abhivyakti, 943
- Nairṛta, propitiation of, 176
worshipped, 51
- Naiśadha, a country, 322
- naiṣṭhika brahmacāri, should stay with the preceptor till death, 433
- Nakṣatra-Yoga, constants, 365-6
- Nakta, son of Pṛthu and father of Gaya, 323
- Nakula, born to Mādri and Pāṇdu, 744, 751
son of 751
fell on the way of the march, 37
born through Aśvinikumāra, 32
- Nakuliśa, letter denoting, 419
- Nala, a monkey; building of a bridge in the ocean by, 21
accompanied Rāma to Laṅkā, 21
—son of Nisadha; son of, 738
—a year of the Hindu calendar, 405
- Nalā, a goddess, 424
- Nalakūbara, son of Kubera, 90
- Nālikā, a division of Vithi, 928
- Nāmā, location of the letter denoting, 417
- nāmadvādaśi, merits of practising the vow of, 512
- nāmakaraṇa, one of the Vedic rites to be performed, 59
- namaskāra, use of the term, 403
- name, words denoting, 992
- Nanda, a cowherd chief; Balarāma and Kṛṣṇa left in the custody of, 27
- nanda, one of the treasures, 111
- Nandā, a place; Jalaśāyin to be worshipped at, 842
- nandā, name of a stone, 269
—a nerve, 316
- nandaka, description of the sword called, 639
- Nandana, a guard of the door; to be worshipped, 93
—a year of the Hindu Calendar, 405
—a forest, 325
- Nandarūpa, worshipped, 414
- naṣaptami, a vow; details relating to, 105
- Nandī(n), conquered by Tārṅśya, 30
worship of, 197, 283
to be worshipped, 51
- Nandigrāma, Bharata's return to, 15
Rāma's arrival at, 23
- nandika, a type of temple, 314

- Nandin, a muhūrta; deeds to be done in, 371
- Nandiśa, image of, 135
- nandivardhana, a type of temple, 314
- Nara, son of Gaya, 323
- son of Uśinara and Narā, 747
- Narā, wife of Uśinara, 747
- Naracakra, to find failure etc., 389
- Nārada, story of Rāmāyaṇa described by Vālmiki to, 9
- Vālmiki's composition of Rāmāyaṇa after hearing from, 25
- Kṛṣṇa's action after hearing from, 30
- methods of worship of Viṣṇu as told by, 50
- a boundary mountain, 351
- Nāradiya, a Pāñcarātra āgama, 106
- Nāradiyapurāṇa, narrated by Nārada; extent of; to be given as a gift in Āśvina, 732
- Naraka, demon; Kṛṣṇa as killer of, 28
- the story relating to Dvidiva, friend of, 30 in
- called Rauraka, Vedanā as wife of, 49
- Narakanāyikā, a hell, 1038
- Nara-Nārāyaṇa, prayer to cleanse the votary, 85
- Narāntaka, a demon killed by Rāma, 22
- Narasimha, man-lion form of Viṣṇu to kill Hiraṇyakaśipu, 7
- basic syllables of; used for consecration, 67
- obedience made to, 62*
- an image of, 130
- benefit of worshipping, 343
- outlines of; on a cloth, 402
- (See also Nrsimha)
- Nārasimha, a Pāñcarātra āgama, 106
- Nārāyaṇa, one of the names of Viṣṇu, 65
- the reason for being called as, 40
- image of, 130
- characteristics of the form of, 128
- basic syllable ending with, 67, 68
- mantra used in religious rite, 53
- obedience made to, 62
- benefit of worshipping, 343
- syllable of; for food offering, 68
- Śālagrāma denoting, 125
- Nārāyaṇīyaka, a Pāñcarātra āgama, 106
- Nārāyaṇī, location of the letters denoting, 416
- Nariṣyanta, one of the eight sons of Vaivasvata Manu, 735
- Narmadā, wife of Purukutsa, 737
- Narmadā, (river) flows from Vindhya, 351
- greatness of, 327, 331, 350
- purifies by mere sight, 331
- Śrīyaḥ pati to be contemplated on, 842
- nasal diseases, beneficial remedy for, 755
- Nāṭaka, a type of drama, 921
- Nāṭhaka, one of those worshipped, 414
- Nāṭikā, a type of drama, 921
- Nāṭyarāsaka, a type of drama, 921
- Nāṭyeśa (Śiva), image of, 314
- Navamālīni, characteristics of the metre, 913
- Navaratha, son of Bhimaratha; son of, 742
- navasrāddha, the rites after the death of a person, 488
- Navavyūha, a śālagrāma, 126
- navavyūhārcaṇa, for Viṣṇu, 527-28
- nayana, herb denoted by the word, 406
- neck, nine actions of, 929
- Nepāla, a place, 841
- nerves, names of the ten, 316
- nether world, words denoting, 595
- nether worlds, extent of; names of, 353
- netra, a herb, 407
- a measure, 124
- nevā, another name of Asāmayikatva, 947
- Nict, composition of the metre, 904
- nidhana, one of the tārābalas, 359
- Nidhṛti, son of Dhṛṣṭaka; son of, 742
- night, words denoting, 990
- endowed with darkness; word denoting, 990
- with moonlight; word denoting, 990
- Nighna, son of Anarāyaṇa; son of, 737
- son of Anamitra; sons of, 743
- Nikṛti, daughter of Adharma and Himsā, 49
- Nikumbilā, a place where Indrajit was doing homo, 22
- Nikumbha, a demon killed by Rāma, 22
- son of Haryaśva; son of, 737
- Nila, a monkey; accompanied Rāma to Laṅkā, 21
- killed Akampana and Prahasta, 22
- Nila (Nilācala), mountain; was given by Agnidhra to Ramya, 322
- a varṣa-parvata on the north, 324
- as a boundary, 325
- Nilakanṭha (Śiva), reason for being called so, 5
- Nilāmbarā, a female energy; colour of, 136
- Nilāñjika, one of the sons of Yadu, 740
- nimba, herb, 407
- flower not to be used in worship, 530

- Nimi, one of the four sons of, 742
 nipa, a flower, 529
 Nirāhārā, a spirit possessing the child in the seventh month; symptoms of the child seized by; offering to appease, 823
 Nirañjanākāra, a Rudra, 254
 Nirmoha, a sage, 428
 Nirṛti, image of, 137
 Nirucchvāsa, a hell, 531
 nirūdhapaśubandhaka, a haviryajña, 466
 Nirukta (etymology), science of, 2
 niśā, a herb; used to make an unguent, 372
 Nisadha, mountain; location of, 324, 325, 326
 son of Atithi; son of, 738
 Niśānītha, worship of the sandals of, 414
 Niśātha, son of Balarāma and Revati, 29
 Nīścara, a sage at the time of the eleventh Manu, 428
 Nīścara, explanation of, 940
 Nīścira, at Gayā, 342
 niṣkala, one of the kinds of mantras of Śiva, 873
 description of, 875
 Niskampā, a goddess, 376
 Niskubha, salutations made to, 52
 Nissvara, different reading for Nīścara, 428fn
 Niṣṭhā, an energy, 292
 Niṣthurā, a goddess staying in the circle of smell, 376
 name uttered in worship of Śiva, 202
 Niṣumbha, a demon; gained favour from Brahmā and was later killed by the goddess, 26 fn
 Nitala, a nether world, 353
 nitva, one of the three kinds of creation, 48
 explanation of, 49
 nivātakavaca, a term denoting the progeny of Prahrāda, 46
 niyama, relating to a kind of yamaka, 936
 explanation of the term, 1017
 niyamas, five kinds of, 1076
 Niyamopamā, explanation of, 940
 nominal bases, examples of forms after inflection of, 960-66
 primary; formation of, 980-81
 non-attachment, for pleasures; commended, 1074
 noose, materials for the thread of, 649
 method of using, 649
 eleven ways of manipulating a, 651
 five ways of casting a, 651
 nose, bleeding of; remedy for, 766
 six actions of, 929
 nouns, inflections in, 957
 Nrga, son of Uśinara and Nrgā, 747
 Nrgā, queen of Uśinara, 747
 Nṛsiṃha, image of, 115
 mantra for the worship of, 117
 (See also Narasiṃha)
 śālagrāma designated as, 125
 Nṛhari, installation of the image of, 179
 Nyagrodha, one of the sons of Ugrasena, 742
 Nyankusārini, a metre; composition of; different name of, 903
 nyāsa, in the worship, 90
 Nyāya, science of, 3

 Oath, when prescribed, 657
 objects, seven kinds of, 970
 as the pasture ground, 1075
 oblation, mode of doing, 92ff, 467
 observances, different kinds of, 1041
 Oceans, surrounding the continents, 324
 a great gift of (seven) 544
 Oḍhra, region of; Puruṣottama to be worshipped at, 842
 Oḍiśa, an Ādinātha, 412
 offences, of different kinds, fine for, 676-79, 681
 offering to god, mode of making, 107-110
 officiating priest, injunctions for, 680
 oil, as an excellent diuretic, 757
 old age, remedies to rejuvenate in, 769-70
 Om, syllable of; consecration to be done with, 58
 oblation begun with, 59
 as the first term in the different formulae, 62
 repeated with different formulae, 72
 omens, known from birds, 600-603
 ordeals, five kinds of divine, 664
 instituted for great offences, 664
 of five kinds instituted for different persons, 664
 procedure relating to, 664-6
 ornaments, of different kinds; words denoting, 1016
 oysters, word for, 996

 Paścaturūrdhvam, characteristics of, 909
 pādādi-yamaka, one of the yamakas, 935
 pādakṛcchra, an expiation, 483

- to be observed at the annual ceremony, 488
- Pādākulaka**, characteristics of the metre, 907
- Pādanīcṛt**, a variety of Gāyatri, 903
- pādāntayamaka**, one of the yamakas, 935
- Padapaṅkti**, a variety of Paṅkti; composition of, 904
- Padma**, a deity; located on the body, 414
- one of the eight chief serpents; the number of heads of, 807
- forms the eyebrow of the goddess, 415
- image of, 17
- beads belonging to Śikhā class, 894
- padma**, an array; a variation of maṇḍala, 635
- a type of temple, 315
- a treasure, 88, 111, 269
- padma(m)**, a posture made with the hands, 196, 857, 898
- Padmā**, a hell, 1038
- padmaka**, a posture of sitting, 454, 1076
- (See also **padmāsana**)
- padmahastaka**, measure, 107
- Padmanābha**, one of the names of Viṣṇu, 65
- Padmapurāṇa**, extent of; to be given as a gift in Jyēṣṭha, 732
- padmāsana**, a posture of sitting, 70
- (See also **padmaka**)
- Padmāvati**, a hell, 1038
- Padmini**, a goddess; invoked, 112
- padmini**, a treasure, 111
- Padya**, definition of; two divisions of, 919
- (See also **poetry**)
- Paila**, disciple of Vyāsa, 429
- paid respect to Vyāsa, 1
- son of Ruṣadratha; son of, 747
- pains, such as ādhyātmika; need for remedying, 1074
- Paippalāda**, disciples of Sumantu, 429
- paśāca**, a type of marriage, 435
- pāka** (ripeness), an excellence of word and sense; explanation of; four kinds of, 946
- Pākayajña**, a domestic sacrifice, 475
- Pākayajñas**, the seven kinds of, 86
- pakṣa**, the herb denoted by the word, 406
- pakṣiṇī**, night with preceding and succeeding days, 390
- pala**, a measure, 408
- a measure of time, 370
- Pālita**, one of the sons of Pṛthu, 43
- pallava**, explanation of, 403
- Pampā lake**, Rāma's arrival and stay at, 17
- Panasa**, a monkey; accompanied Rāma to Laṅkā, 21
- Paṇava**, characteristics of the metre, 912
- Pañcabrahman**, six formulae; accessories to, 890-891
- one of the forms of; worshipped, 51
- pañcabhadra**, remedies known as, 772
- pañcadhanus**, son of Śrījaya; son of, 750
- pañcagavya** (five things got from a cow), efficacy of taking, 488
- as a purificatory for stealing, 489
- Pāñcājana**, a demon conquered by Kṛṣṇa, 28
- Pāñcājanya**, letters for the worship of, 63
- Pañcaka**, one of the seven sons of Nahuṣa, 740
- Pañcakoṇikā**, a hell, 1039
- Pāñcāla**, a country, 351
- the visit of the Pāṇḍavas to, 32
- Pāñcālas**, killed by Aśvatthāman, 35
- the five kings known as, 749
- Pāñcālī**, a variety of diction; characteristics of, 927
- pañcāmṛta**, offered in the course of worship, 98
- Pañcāṅga** (Almanac), 364-69
- Pañcāntaka**, letter denoting, 419
- Pañcarātra**, the names of the different texts of, 105
- reference to *simhavidyā* in one of the, 117fn
- Pañcasikha**, exposition made by, 1073-4
- pañcatiktaka**, remedy known as, 774
- Pañcavaṭi**, on the banks of river Godāvari, Rāma's stay at, 15
- Pāṇḍavas**, collective term for the sons of Pāṇḍu, 751
- taken as the instrumental cause for Viṣṇu's manifestation, 31, 37
- escape from the lac house, 32
- stay at Ekacakra, 32fn
- were recognised by the Kurus after the death of Kicaka, 33
- Śikhaṇḍi became commander of the, 34
- Aśvatthāmā's destruction of the sleeping army of, 35
- the five; as the survivors of the battle, 36
- worshipped lord Viṣṇu, 335
- ascendancy to heaven of, 36-38
- Pāṇḍu**, begot by Kṛṣṇa Dvaipāyana through the wife of Vicitravirya; son of, 31, 751
- married Kunti; sons of, 32, 744
- Mādrī was the other wife of, 744

- story relating to curse of sage
 Kindama on, 32fn
 Pāṇḍulīlā, at Gayā; food to be offered at, 344
 Pāṇḍyas, origin of, 747
 pāṇikacchapikā, a posture, 198
 Paṅkajā, a spirit seizing the child in the sixth month; symptoms of the child possessed by; offering to appease, 823
 Paṅkti, a metre, 562, 902
 composition of, 904
 blue coloured; belongs to Bhārgava gotra, 905
 paṅktipāvanas, explanation of the term, 349, 464
 Pāpa, a demon to be worshipped, 317
 Pāpaghna, one of the sons of Rukmakavaca, 741
 Pāpamokṣa, at Gayā; one should bathe at, 342
 Pāpini, the name of an evil spirit which possesses the child on the first day after birth; symptoms of the child possessed by, 820
 offering to appease; unguent for the child possessed by, 821
 Parā, a goddess, dwelling in the essence, 375
 Pāra, a celestial at the time of the ninth Manu, 428
 parāka, an expiation; explanation of, 483, 494
 destroys sin, 491
 for purification, 479
 to be done at māsika after death, 488
 parama, a ray of the Sun, 195
 Paramī, a goddess; worshipped, 413
 letter denoting, 417
 Paramākṣara, a form of Rudra, 252
 paramamitra, one of the tūrābalas, 359
 Paramānandadeva, worshipped, 414
 paramāṇu, a measure, 107
 Parameṣṭhi, son of Indradyumna, 323
 Parameṣṭhi, śālagrāma called, 125
 Parameṣuka, one of the foremost sons of Viṣṇu, 747
 parārdha, explanation of the term, 1029
 Parāśara, a law-giver, 455
 Parasparopamā, explanation of, 940
 Paraśurāma, manifestation of Viṣṇu, 8
 son of Jamadagni, 9
 narration of duties of castes to, 429
 Parāvidyā, as superior knowledge, 3
 explanation of the term, 1082
 Pāribhāṣikā, a division of Abhivyakti, 943
 parigha, a period of obstacle; all under-
 takings to be avoided in, 383
 Pārijāta, divine tree, 6, 28
 Parikathā, a division of prose kāvya; has the combined characteristics of Kathā and Ākhyāyikā, 919
 Parikṣit, one of the sons of Kuru, 750
 Janamejaya as a descendant of, 750
 son of Abhimanyu, 751
 embryo saved in the womb of
 . Uttarā was born as, 36
 was established in the kingdom by
 Yudhiṣṭhira, 37
 Pāriplavaṅgaka, a variation of the array bhoga, 634
 Paritāpa, a hell, 532
 Pāriyātra, mountain, 326, 350, 351
 Parjanya (Indra), created by
 Prajāpati, 40
 worshipped, 107
 one of the different names of Sun, 136
 Parjanya Prajāpati, Hiranyaromaka as son of, 48
 parpaṭa, a herb, 467
 pārṣṇigrāha, explanation of the term, 1019
 Pārtha (Arjuna), words spoken by
 Kṛṣṇa to, 34
 obsequies of Yādavas performed by, 37
 pārthi, a rite to be performed, 86
 Pārthiva, a year of the Hindu calendar, 405
 parvan, the period between first and fifteenth lunar day, 990
 pārvaṇaśrāddha, a domestic sacrifice, 86, 466
 Pārvaṭi, synonyms of, 7
 was, seen sporting with Śiva by
 Uśā, 29
 worshipped, 50, 51
 Parvābandha, division of poetry called, 919
 Paryāyokta, saying in a different way, 944
 pāśa, a posture of the hands, 857
 passive, examples for the formation of, 983
 pasture land, location of; extent of, 672
 paśubandha, one of the haviryajñas, 86
 Paśupati, Rudra was called as, 50
 worship of, 290
 we join of; appeasing rite employing the mantra of, 885-87
 pāṭala, a flower, 529
 Pātāla, a nether world, 353
 Pāṭalikā, characteristics of the metre, 907

- path, words having the sense of, 1006
 path of action, two kinds of, 453
 pāthā, a herb, 410
 pathos, origin of the sentiment, 924
 three kinds of, 931
 Pathyā, a variety of the Āryā metre;
 number of gaṇas in, 906
 characteristics of the metre, 908
 Pathyāpañkti, composition of, 904
 Pathyāvakra, characteristics of the
 metre, 908
 patrakṛcchra, an expiation, 483
 paṭṭiśa, uses of, 652
 paunarnavā, a herb, 407
 Pauṇḍraka, conquered by Kṛṣṇa, 28
 story relating to, 28fn
 Paurṇamāsa, son of Marici and Sam-
 bhūti, 49
 Pauṣa, month of; auspicious to enter
 a house in, 360
 Pauṣkara, a Pāñcarātra āgama, 106
 pauṣṇa, explanation of the period
 known as, 835
 Pāvaka, son of Agni and Svāhā, 49
 was made the king of Vasus, 47
 Pavamāna, son of Agni and Svāhā, 49
 pāvamāni, a hymn, 562
 pāvanti, a flower, 529
 pavilions, building of different kinds
 of, 178-80, 318
 pavitra, of darbha grass, 58
 Payoṣṇī or Payoṣṇikā, a river that
 flows from Sahya, 351
 as a bestower of fruits, 328
 payovrata, mode of practising, 522
 pearl(s), a kind of gem, 640
 from oysters are pure, 641
 other excellent kinds of, 641
 pedestal, characteristics of, 146
 pedestals of images, characteristics of,
 123-24
 peel of thunder, words denoting, 989
 percussion instruments, different kinds
 of, 994
 perfections, eight kinds of, 257
 perfumes, mode of preparation of;
 eight acts in, 582-3
 periods of the day, good or bad, 383-4
 phalacaturdaśī, on the practice of, 517
 phalakṛcchra, an expiation, 483
 Phalgucandī, at Gayā; obeisance paid
 to, 343
 Phālguna, benefit of purchasing per-
 fumes in the month of, 387
 —denotes Arjuna; fallen on the way
 of march, 37
 Phālguni, an asterism known as
 blunted, 382
 (Pūrva) phālguni, as asterism; loca-
 tion in Kṛtācakra, 385
 Phalgutirtha, at Gayā; merits of
 bathing at, 337
 Gayāsiras has been made the hermi-
 tage at, 338
 Phalgviśa, at Gayā; obeisance made to,
 343
 phaṇi, a class of serpents based on
 excess of one humour, 807
 —herb denoted by the word, 406
 Phaṇirāhu, a method to find the
 results of a battle, 380
 Phaṇirāhu, the effect of its position
 in various directions, 409
 phaṇiśvara, diagram of, 400
 phat, use of the term, 403
 Phaṭkāri, a goddess, 424
 a monstress possessing the newly
 born child on the sixth night;
 symptoms of child possessed by;
 offering to appease, 821
 unguent for child possessed by,
 822
 Phetkāri, letter denoting goddess, 418
 phlegm, remedy for the removal of
 excess of, 775
 remedy for twenty kinds of disea-
 ses due to deranged, 774
 phlegm and wind, a purgative for
 deranged, 775
 phonetics, description of, 915-17
 physician, fine for giving wrong medi-
 cal treatment, 679
 physiognomy of men, indications of,
 635-7
 piety, two kinds of; not equal to
 Agnipurāṇa, 1078
 piles, beneficial remedies for, 754
 remedy for, 767, 776
 pilgrimage, benefits of, 326
 Pilipiccha, a demon, 317
 Pilipiṇja, a demon; appeasing off-
 ering to, 109
 offering made to, 275
 pilu, auspiciousness of, 641
 Pināka, bow of Śiva, 987
 piṇḍa (?), auspiciousness of a gem
 called, 641
 Pindāraka, a great place, 327
 Caturbāhu to be worshipped at, 841
 Piṅgākṣi, image of, 138
 Piṅgala, an attendant of Sun, 136,
 195
 —a divinity; to be worshipped, 414
 —a year of the Hindu calendar, 405
 Piṅgalā, afflicting the child in the
 fourth month; symptoms of the child
 afflicted by, 823
 piṅgalā, a vein; carries the wind apāna,
 functions of, 556

- is established on the right side of the body, 557
- Piṅgalācakra, description of, 377
- Pināki, a divinity worshipped, 414
letter denoting, 419
- Pipilikā, a goddess, 376
- Pipilikāmadhyamā, composition of the metre, 904
- pippala, a tree, 324
- Pippalāda, represents a branch of Atharvaveda, 730
- pippali, a herb, 407
- Pisāci, image of, 138
- Pisces, the time taken by the Sun to transit, 384
the rite to determine the sex of a child to be done in, 357
the first feeding of the child to be done in, 358
friendly with Virgo, 392
- Pisitāsā, image of, 138
- Pitā, a class of men at Śālmala, 352
- pitā, name of a lightning, 45fn
- pitchers, of different kinds; words denoting, 1019
consecration of, 149-51
worship of different, 277
- Pitr̥s, worship of 317
- pits, in the dry bed of rivers; words for, 996
- place and time, the role of, 923
- plaintiff, to be examined first, 657
- Plakṣa, a continent, 323
about the people of, 351
given by Priyavrata to Medhātithi, 322
the rulers of and the oceans surrounding, 351
- plakṣa, a tree, 47, 92
- planets, metals for making images of, 461
propitiatory rite for, 461-2
offerings for, 462
mantras for propitiating, 462
three kinds of propitiation of, 467
propitiatory rite for, 467-70
benefits of propitiation of, 469-70
effect of presence in nativity sign, 393
character of an infant known from, 392-3
good or bad depending on the positions of, 383-4
symptoms of those possessed by evil influences of, 827
- plants, medicinal, 378
of different kinds; words which mean, 1008-12
- Plava, a year of the Hindu calendar, 405
- pleasure, proceeds from conceit, 923
- ploughman, injunctions for, 680
- ploughs (five), a great gift, 544
- poet, the five items to be indicated by, 922
creator with reference to poetry, 924
- poetic convention, definition of, two kinds of; further divisions of, 949
- poetry, different kinds of, 919
the nature of matter treated in, 920
- poison(s), words denoting, 995
two kinds of, 811
the three pungents which as a drink or unguent or collyrium would remove, 817-18
use of white pepper and śirisa flower against, 818
of different kinds; remedy for, 818-9
remedy for removal of all, 773
of different kinds; effective remedy for, 756
the different remedies against, 577-818
due to an ass etc; mantra for the removal of, 819
due to gonasa and other snakes; treatment of, 818-20
due to a scorpion; remedy for, 819
due to a spider etc.; remedy for, 819
remedial mantra for the removal of, 817-18
mantra to be recited to destroy the vegetable, 820
due to a dog; remedy for, 820
due to sixteen kinds of rats; remedy for, 819
twenty ways of treatment for, 819
- polestar, location etc of, 355
- Svargaloka as *ly:* between the Sun and, 354
- pollution, instances when there is no, 443
periods for different kinds of, 444-50
different kinds of, 444-50
- pollution and purification, 440-44
- portents, relating to images, 711
foreboding the death of the king, 712-3
appeasing rites for 710-713
worship of gods to destroy the effects of, 713-16
- possession, desire for; referred to as due to ignorance, 1073
- Prabhā, one of the wives of the Sun, 7
—wife of Sagara; bore sixty sons, 737
—wife of Prabhākara, 739
- Prabhākara, a son of Jyotiṣmat, 352
- prabandha, imaginary story, 992
- prabhanjana, a vital wind, 253

Prabhāsa, a sacred place, 350

Daityasūdana to be contemplated at, 841

Hari (as Kṛṣṇa) discarded his body at, 37

greatness of, 327, 491

—at Gayā; merits of offering pinda at the pretakuṇḍa at, 342

—one of the eight Vasus, 44

Prabhāseṣa, at Gayā; obeisance to be made to, 342

Prabhāta, born to Sun and Prabhā, 735

Prabhava, a F. idra, 254

—a guard, 93

—a year of the Hindu calendar, 404

—a type of temple, 314

Prabhāvatī, a female divinity; worshipped, 52

Prabodhani, a female energy; invoked, 136

Prabhu, a form of Rudra, 252

Pracaṇḍa, a male divinity; figure carved on the door-frame, 115

Pracaṇḍā, a goddess, 132

—a hell, 1038

Pracaṇḍogrā, image of, 138

Pracetas, (lord of waters) worship of, 273

—name of the sons of Prācinabarhis, 43

—son of Vidusa; names of foremost among hundred sons of, 747

Prācinabarhis, son of Dhīṣaṇā; sons of, 43

Prācinavān, son of Janamejaya; son of, 748

Pracitā, a variety of Dandaka, 915

Prācyavṛtti, characteristics of the metre, 907

pradara, a modification of the array called daṇḍa, 633

—a disease of women; remedy for, 777

pradāraka, an array; formed by two wings to danda, 634

Pradhāna, a son of Dyutimat, 352

Pradhānam, significance of, 991

pradoṣa, period preceding night, 990

prādvivāka, meaning of the word, 1018

Pradyumna, one of the sons of Kṛṣṇa and Rukmiṇī, 744

son of; wife of, 745

story relating to, 29, 29fn

accompanied Kṛṣṇa, 30

image of, 130

worship of; formulae relating to, 62

worship with the basic syllable of, 68

worshipped, 91

a śālagrāma, characteristics of, 123

marks of six discs on, 125

Praghāsa, a demon killed by Rāma, 22

Paharaṇakalitā, characteristics of the metre, 913

Paharṣaṇī, a female energy, 136

Paharṣiṇī, characteristics of the metre, 913

Pahasana, a type of drama, 921

a component of the mode Bhārati; ridicules the ascetics and the like, 928

Prahasta, a demon killed by Nila, 22

Praheḷikā, a kind of citrakāvya; definition of, 935

Prahl(r)āda, son of Hiranyakaśipu; story of, 7fn

a devotee of Viṣṇu, 46

made the king by Viṣṇu, 47, 745

story relating to Bali, grandson of, 8fn

a Pāñcarātra āgama, 106

Prajāpati, creation of time etc. by, 40

sage for the vyāhrtis (of Gāyatri), 562

name of a metre; number of letters in, 902

Prajāpati (Prajotpatti), a year of the Hindu calendar, 404

Prajāpatis, Dakṣa made the king of, 47

prājāpatva, an expiation; eating food once a day for three days, 483

explanation of, 494

for having eaten garlic etc., 472

for doing an act of an outcaste, 476

for the fourth class for purification, 479

for having caused the death of a cow, 487

for having taken urine, excreta etc., 488

for drinking wine and eating flesh, 488

destroys sin, 491

merits of practising, 524

a rite performed before becoming an ascetic, 452

a type of marriage, 434-5

beads belonging to the Śiva class, 894

Prakarana, a type of drama, 921

Prakṛṇaka, a division of Kośa, 921

prākṛtasarga, explanation of, 48

prakṛti, relating to a state of being, 991

Prakṛti, Viṣṇu's entry into, 39

classical metres based on, 914

Pralamba, a demon killed by Balarāma, 30

story relating to, 30 fn

- Pralayāntikā, image of, 138
 Pramāṇi, characteristics of the metre, 908
 Pramardini, a female energy, 136
 Pramāthi, a year of the Hindu Calendar, 404
 Pramitākṣarā, characteristics of the metre, 913
 Pramlocā, mother of Māriṣā, 43
 Pramoda, a year of the Hindu calendar, 404
 Pramodaka, one of the two sons of Dṛdhāśva, 736
 Prāiṇṣu, one of the eight sons of Vaivasvata Manu, 735
 prāṇa, a life force carried by the vein idā; functions of, 556
 equated with the day, 557
 Prāṇa, a son of Dhara and Manoharā, 44
 —son of Dhātṛ, 49
 pranava, explanation of the significance and greatness of, 1042-3
 the first syllable, 559
 precedes all the mystic syllables, 52
 a formula; no divisions in, 895
 equated with the soul, 1056
 Gaṇapati as representing, 412
 equated with lord Śiva, 374
 used for consecrating a child, 60
 used in worship, 415
 repeated, 63
 destroys sins, 491
 prāṇavāhini, a nerve, 316
 prāṇāyāma, two kinds of, 454, 557
 meaning of the term, 1076
 (agarbha) three kinds of, 454
 (sagarbha) three kinds of, 454
 different varieties of; merits of practising, 1014
 as an atonement, 455
 as dispelling sins, 487
 prāṇitā, a vessel, 58, 94
 five mudrās known as, 857
 shown in worship, 857, 869
 Prapañcā, image of, 138
 Prapitāmaha, a liṅga, 343
 Prāpti, one of the two wives of Kariṣa, 28
 prāsa, a weapon that is cast off, 645
 Prasāda (lucidity), an excellence of word and sense; explanation of, 946
 prāsāda, significance of the mantra known as; three kinds of, 558
 description, 874
 with parts and without parts, 874-75
 no division in, 895
 Prasānta, a form of Rudra, 252
 prāsara, a kind of citrakāvya; definition of, 935
 Prasastatā (praiseworthiness), an excellence of word and sense; explanation of, 946
 Prasasti, an embellishment of sound and sense; explanation of; two kinds, 942
 Prasenaka, son of Nighna; was killed by a lion, 743
 Prasiddhavināla, one of the vimalas 412
 Prastāra, son of Pratihartā, 323
 Prastārapaṅkti, a variety of Paṅkti, composition of, 904
 Prastāvanā, another name of Āmukha, 922
 —a component of the mode Bhārati, 928
 prastha, a measure, 95, 1078
 Prasthāna, a type of drama, 921
 Pratardana, son of Divodāsa; two sons of, 749
 Prathamā, a goddess, 375
 Pratihāra, son of, 323
 Pratihartā, son of Pratihāra; sons of, 323
 Pratikṣetra, son of Śami; son of, 743
 pratiloma, relating to caste, 430
 Pratipa, son of Bhīmasena; son of, 751
 prātipadika, explanation of the term, 959
 Pratiratha, one of the three sons of Matināra; son of, 748
 pratistha, a modification of the array danda; characteristics of, 633
 Pratiṣṭhā, a metre; number of letters in, 905
 Pratiṣṭhā (gāyatri), characteristic of, 903
 Pratiṣṭhāna, a place; described as the mule of Brahmā, 329
 got by Sudyumna; given to Purūravas, 735
 Prativindhya, son of Yudhishtira and Draupadi, 751
 Pratoda, a hell, 532
 Pratyagraha, one of the seven sons of Suhotra and Girikā, 750
 pratyāhāra, explanation of the term, 1045
 significance of the word, 1076
 to be done only by those who repeat mantras, 454
 pratyāhāras, the fourteen notations in grammar; explanation of, 953
 pratyauḍha, a posture relating to archery, 645
 Pratyāpiḍa, characteristics of the metre, 909
 pratyari, one of the tārābalas, 359

- Pratyūṣa, one of the Vasus; father of Devala, 44
 Praudhi (maturity), an excellence of sense, 945
 Pravira, one of the four sons of Tanisurodha, 749
 Pravytata, characteristics of the metre, 907
 a division of Āmukha; explanation of, 922
 Prayāga, a sacred place, 350
 greatness of, 328, 329-30
 destroys sins, 491
 Rāma's arrival at, 13
 Bharata's visit to, 14
 Prayoga, a deity; location of, 414
 Prayogāśaya, a division of Āmukha; explanation of, 922
 preceptor, characteristics of, 804
 should be respected, 618
 preceptors, word denoting persons having same, 1017
 Premokti, a variety of Prāsasti, 942
 Preṅkhana, a type of drama, 921
 present time, words signifying, 1015
 presiding deities of elements, location and worship of, 290-91
 presiding deity, worship of, 316-19
 presiding deity of a ground, mode of worshipping, 272-6
 Pretaśilā, at Gayā; merits of offering pinḍa at, 342
 pride, words denoting, 995
 priests, associated with different Vedas; words denoting, 1017
 priests, officiating, words denoting, 1017
 principles, initiation in, 262-3
 Priti, mother of Dattoli, 49
 worshipped, 90
 priyā, a nerve, 316
 priyaṅgu, a herb, 372
 Priyavrata, son of Svāyambhuva Manu and Satarūpā, 41
 sons of; performed penance and attained god, 322
 prokṣaṇi, a vessel, 58, 95
 properties, division of, procedure relating to, 666-70
 of a dead man; rules relating to payment to heirs, 680
 property, code of law relating to disputes about, 657-8
 enjoyment and possession as valid relating to, 657-8
 rules relating to sale of, 672
 mortgaged; disputes relating to, 657
 stolen; rules relating to, 672-73
 of women; six kinds of, 541
 prosody, rules of, 901-2
 relating to Vedic metres, 902
 prostration, merits of, 1043
 prṣadājya, explanation of the word, 1017
 Prṣadhra, one of the eight sons of Vaivasvata Manu, 735
 became a sūdra on account of killing the cow of his preceptor, 736
 Prṣata, son of Jantu; son of, 750
 Prthā, denotes Kunti; accompanied Dhṛtarāṣṭra and Gāndhārī to the forest, 36
 prthā, a vein; carries the wind nāga, 556
 Prthu, son of Vena, 42
 Prthu, installed as the ruler, 47
 two righteous sons of, 43
 —son of Vibhu, 323
 —son of Suyodhana, 736
 Prthudarbha, one of the four sons of Śibi, 747
 Prthulākṣa, son of Lomapāda; son of, 748
 Prthurukmaka, one of the sons of Rukmakavaca, 741
 Prthusena, son of Vṛṣasena, 748
 Prthuśrava, foremost among the sons of Śasabindu; son of, 741
 prthividhara, a type of temple, 315
 Prthvi, characteristics of the metre, 913
 Prthividhara, a god; worshipped, 317
 prthvisamānā, mantra, 442
 public service, qualities of those in, 674
 pukkasa, a caste, 430
 pulaka, a gem, 641
 Pulaha, a sage; a mind-born son of Brahmā, 41, 41fn;
 sons of, 49
 father of Viśravas, 24
 Pulastya, a sage; a mind-born son of Brahmā, 41, 41fn
 father of Dattoli, 49
 pulmonary consumption, commendable food during, 753
 Pulomā, a daughter of Vaiśvānara, 46
 Puloman, son of Danu and father of Śaci, 46
 purnsavana, one of the rites, 59
 the time for performing, 86, 95
 punarnavā, a herb; used as an unguent, 372
 Punaruktatā (tautology), an impurity, 947
 two kinds of, 948
 sub-divisions of, 948
 Punarvasu, an asterism; has the face lateral, 381

- comprises the sphere of wind, 387
 its location in Kotacakra, 385
 commended for all acts, 381
 commendable for imparting archery, 359
 commendable for taking harvested grains inside the house, 361
 misery caused by the transit of Sun in 363
 should not enter the cow-pen in, 361
 —son of Candana-dundubhi; wife and son of, 742
Puṇḍarika, a deity presiding over the banner, 148
 worship of, 284
 —a rite, 1079
 —son of Nabha; son of, 738
 —mountain, 352
 —a measure, 551
Puṇḍarikākṣa, form of Viṣṇu at Puṣkara, 841
 —a formula known as, 55
Puṇḍra, one of the sons of Bali, 747
 punishment, one of the means to be employed by the king, 587
 a political expedient, 627
 two kinds of, 606
 three kinds of, 628
 two different kinds of, 628
 for abuses; varies according to the order of castes, 676
 pupil, obligation to the preceptor, 673
 nine-fold function of 929
pūraka, a variety of prāṇāyāma; reason for its name as, 557
purāṇa, defined as having five characteristics, 992
Purāṇas, eighteen in number, 2, 730
 as a form of Hari, 492
 as an Aparāvidyā, 2
 the names of eleven Rudras in, 456n
 merits of making a gift of, 735
Purañjaya, son of Sṛñjaya; son of, 747
Purastā, one of the three sons of Matināra, 748
Purastād Br̥hati, composition of, 903
Purastād Jyotiḥ, composition of, 904
 pure, word denoting, 996
 things which are, 440
 purgative, the herb that is the best, 757
 decoction of herbs to be given as, 769
 a decoction to be given as, 775
 greasy barley water as; a different combination known as nārāca as, 778
 purification for different pollutions, 441
 for travellers for eating food, 480
 mode of, 82 ff
 of the principle of establishment, 248-52
 of the principle of peace, 254-57
 of remnant materials, 480
 of scriptural knowledge, 252-54
 of things, 439-40
 purificatory rites, their number and names, 85ff
 forty-eight names of, 466
 purity, two kinds—external and internal, 1042
Pūrṇa, a mountain, 414
pūrṇa, a pitcher, 270
pūrṇā, a stone, 269
Pūrnagiri, a mountain, 412
pūrṇimā, fifteenth day of lunar fortnight, 990
 letter denoting, 417
Purojava, son of Anila, 44
Purovasu, son of Bābhruśetu, 747
pūrtadharma, explanation of, 539
Pūru, one of the sons of Manu and Nāḍvalā, 42
 —one of the sons of Yayāti, and Devayāni, 25, 31, 740
 Janamejaya was born to, 748
 one of the founders of a dynasty, 740
 lineage of, 748-51
Puruhūta, son of Dravaraśa; son of, 742
Purujāti, was born from Śānti; son of, 749
Purukutsa, son of Māndhātṛ; wife of; sons of, 737
Purumidha, one of the three sons of Br̥hat, 749
Purūravas, born to Budha and Ilā, 735, 739
 born from Soma; father of Āyu, 25
 enjoyed the company of Urvaśi, 739
 practised Yoga and reached the world of Gandharvas; eight sons of, 739
 divided one fire into three, 739
Puruṣa, form of Viṣṇu at Puruṣaṇḍa, 811
Puruṣa (soul), Viṣṇu's entry in, 39
Puruṣasūkta, hymn; offering of water made with, 437
 repetition of; as remover of sins, 482
Puruṣaṇḍa, a place; the name of Puruṣa to be repeated at, 841
Puruṣottama, form of Viṣṇu in the region of Oḍhra, 842
 —a śālagrāma, 126
Puruṣottama (Puri), a sacred place, 491

- merits of doing Śrāddha at, 350
 Pūrvabhādrapadā, an asterism; belongs to the sphere of fire, 387
 location in koṭacakra, 385
 represented by letters, 400
 associated with increase of grain, 361
 causing death, 377
 Pūrvaphālguni, an asterism; belongs to the sphere of fire, 387
 location of letters representing, 400
 commendable for doing agriculture, 361
 associated with increase of grains, 361
 profitable, 376
 misery caused by, 363
 Pūrvas, the three asterisms; associated with increase of grains, 361
 medicine to be administered in, 358
 commended for copulation, 434
 adversity caused by purchase of goods in, 359
 an employer should not be attended to in, 360
 Pūrvāśāḍha, an asterism; belongs to the watery region, 388
 location of letter representing, 400
 commendable for sowing seeds, 361
 associated with increase of grains, 361
 misery caused by transit of Sun in, 363
 affliction caused by, 377
 pūṣā, an occult nerve, 253
 Pūṣan, one of the Ādityas; as son of Kāśyapa, 45
 to be worshipped, 316
 worshipped with fried grains, 108
 Puskala, a class of men in Krauñcadvīpa, 352
 Puškara, narration of duties of castes, by, 429
 —a continent given to Savana, by Priyavrata, 322, 323
 ruler of, 353
 —a holy spot, 327
 Puṇḍarikākṣa to be contemplated at, 841
 destroys sins, 491
 benefit of making a gift at, 1078
 —son of Bharata, 24
 —a class of men in Krauñcadvīpa, 352
 Puṣkarīṇi, at Gayā; balls of rice to be offered at, 342
 —daughter of Virana Prajāpati; wife of Cākṣuṣa, 42
 Puṣpadanta, door keeper, 108
 worship of, 273, 317
 puṣpanandaka, a pitcher, 270
 Puṣpaka, chariot, 23
 —a class of temple, 314
 rectangle-shaped, 314
 nine temples belonging to the class of, 314
 puṣpakṛcchra, an expiation; explanation of, 483
 Puṣpavat, a boundary mountain, 352
 Puṣpitāgrā, characteristics of the metre, 911
 to be employed in a Mahākāvya, 920
 Puṣpotkatā, wife of Viśravaś, 24
 Puṣṭi, wife of Dhātā, 739
 worshipped, 91
 Puṣṭi, nourishment; worshipped, 31
 Puṣṭiharā, a goddess, 376
 Puṣṭikā, a female divinity; worshipped, 52
 Puṣya, month; profit gained by purchase of perfume in, 387
 —asterism; belongs to the sphere of fire, 387
 has a firm look, 382
 located in koṭacakra, 387
 location of the letter representing, 400
 benefit of wearing a herb in, 410
 rite to determine the sex to be performed in, 377
 karnavedha to be done in, 379
 good for eating new fruits and food, 358
 commended for all acts, 381
 misery caused by transit of Sun in, 363
 Puṭa, characteristics of the metre, 912
 Pūtanā, a demoness; sent by Kaiṁsa to kill Kṛṣṇa, 27
 Pūtanā, exercises her influence during the day, 826
 letter denoting, 417
 holds sway over the north-east, 138
 symptoms of a child possessed by, 822
 a monster taking possession of the child that is one month old, 822
 material for the child possessed by, 822
 material for fumigation when possessed by, 822
 offering for seven days to appease, 822
 prayer to boyhood form of Viṣṇu to destroy evil forces like, 84
 worshipped by offering meat etc., 109
 offering of meat etc. to, 274

- to be worshipped, 317
 Pūtimṛttika, sub-division of a hell, 1039
 Pūtivaktra, a hell, 532
 putrañjiva, a herb, 406
- Qualitative, a kind of Abhiyakti, 943
 qualities, eight kinds of, 466
 characteristics associated with the three, 1033
 needed for gaining fortune, 617
 query, words standing for, 993
- Rāga (tint), an excellence of word and sense; explanation of, 946
 Rāghava, words spoken by after hearing Daśaratha's words, 11
 Hanūmat's words to Sitā to show, 20
 Aṅgada's words to Rāvaṇa to return Sitā to, 21
 Bharata's visit to, 24
 the words of praise spoken by the sages to, 24
 form of Viṣṇu at Citrakūṭa, 811 (See also Rāma)
- Raghu, son of Kakutstha, 9
 —son of Anamitra; son of, 737
 —one of the sons of Yadu, 740
 Rāgini, image of, 138
 Rahovādi, son of Saṁyāti; son of, 748
 Rāhu, words denoting, 989
 born to Sindhikā and Vipracitti, 45
 drinking of the nectar in the guise of the Moon by, 6
 form of, 137
 chariot of, 356
 period (years) of influence of, 363, 393
 presides over one-sixteenth part of day, 381
 description of its rule on a day, 409
 two kinds of eclipses caused by, 388
 head denoted by the asterism occupied by, 380
 worshipped, 52
 contemplated as resembling charcoal, 828
 merits of making a gift when the Sun is eclipsed by, 362
 predictions based on the position of, 410
 in tenth house confers good, 384
 good or bad luck indicated by, 400
 fright caused by the aspect of, 378
 fatality indicated by, 389
 indicates misery by presence in the seventh house, 383
- Rāhucakra, procedure for writing, 370-71
 description of, 377-78
 Raivata, one of the eleven forms of Rudra, 45
 —the fifth Manu, 427
 —son of Reva; known as Kakudmin; an account of; performed penance on the Sumeru Mountain and reached lord Viṣṇu; founded Dvāravati (Dvārakā), 736
 —a boundary mountain, 352
 Raivataka, a place; Deva worshipped at, 841
 Dāmodara worshipped at, 842
 Raja, son of Vasiṣṭha and Urjā, 49
 —son of Viraja and father of Satyajit, 323
 Rājagrha, a place; merits of, 328
 rājamaya, auspicious nature of the gem called, 641
 rajani, a herb; used as an unguent, 372
 rājapaṭṭa, an inferior kind of diamond; said to be auspicious, 611
 Rajas, father of Ketumat, 48
 Rājasa, a form of god; letter denoting, 419
 rājasi, denotes the entry of the Sun in a sign, 362
 Rājasūya, a sacrifice, 33, 42, 1079
 Rājeyas, name of the one hundred sons of Rājī, 739
 Rājī, one of the sons of Āyus; hundred sons of, 739
 got a boon from lord Viṣṇu and killed the demons, 739-40
 whose sons usurped the kingdom of Indra, 740
 Rājī, salutations made to, 52
 rājula, a class of serpents, 807
 Rājīrī, daughter of Rājāta; one of the wives of the Sun, 7
 Rākā, a son of Aṅgiras and Smṛti, 49
 rākā, the full moon is called, 990
 Rākini, a goddess, worshipped, 415
 Rakṣa (Nairṛta), worshipped, 51
 Rākṣasa, a year of the Hindu calendar, 405
 rākṣasa, a type of marriage, 435
 Rākṣasi, a spirit afflicting the child in the eleventh month: symptoms of the child afflicted by, 824
 image of, 138
 Raktā, invoked in worship, 230
 Raktacandrikā, invoked as the eyes in the worship of Kubjīkā, 411
 Rakṣa, a year of the Hindu calendar, 405
 Raktākṣi, image of, 138
 Rāma, manifestation of Viṣṇu as, 9-25
 foremost of Raghus, 738

- eldest son of Daśaratha, 738
 birth of, 10
 married Sitā, 11
 conquest of Paraśurāma by, 11
 proposal for coronation of, 11
 Kaikeyi's request to send him to forest, 12
 Daśaratha's words to, 13
 Bharata's meeting with; arrival at Daṇḍaka, 15
 Khara, Dūṣaṇa and other demons killed by, 16
 lamented and searched for Sitā, 17
 befriended Sugriva, 17
 was assured by Sugriva of help to get back Sitā, 18
 Sugriva's meeting with, 18
 signet ring of, 18
 Hanūmat recounting the story of, 19
 crossing the ocean by, 21
 fainting of, 22
 killing of Rāvaṇa by, 23, 738
 rescue of Sitā etc. by, 23
 ruled at Ayodhyā, 738
 image of, 115, 129
 to be contemplated on every mountain, 482
 salutations made to, 82
 benefit of worshipping, 343
 ethics narrated by, 617-18
 Rāma (Paraśurāma), 9
 Rāma, See Balarāma
 Ramaṇa, a son of Dhara and Manoharā, 44
 Rāmatirtha, at Gayā; balls of rice to be offered to, 342
 Rāmāyaṇa, story of, 9
 composed by Vālmiki after hearing from Nārada, 25
 Rambha, a monkey; accompanied Rāma to Laṅkā, 21
 Rambhā, as a form of Gauri, 133
 Rāmeśa, a liṅga at Gayā; benefits of worshipping, 343
 Ramya, Nilācala given by Agnidhra to, 322
 Ramyā, characteristics of the metre, 912
 Ramyaka, a mountain, 324
 Raṇāśva, one of the two sons of Samhataśva; son of, 737
 randhra, herb denoted by, 407
 range of things, words denoting, 988
 Rāṅgūlānanda, to be worshipped, 414
 rañjani, a flower, 529
 rasāḥ, herb denoted by, 406
 Rāsaka, a type of drama, 921
 Rāṣṭrapāla, one of the sons of Ugrasena, 742
 Rāṣṭravardhana, a minister of King Daśaratha, 11
 rathāṇu, a measure, 107
 Rathoddhata, characteristics of the metre, 912
 Rati, invoked, 91
 propitiation of, 176
 reborn as Māyāvati, story of, 29, 29fn
 ratnadhenu, a great gift, 544
 Ratnasundari, worshipped in the worship of Kubjikā, 412
 rats, poisons due to sixteen kinds; remedy for, 819
 Raucya, thirteenth Manu, 428
 Raudra (Raudri), a year of Hindu calendar, 405
 —a muhūrta; deeds to be done in, 371
 Raudraka, propitiation of, 176
 Raudri, a female energy, 51
 one of three forms of Ūmā, 374
 a comparison of goddess Tvaritā, 424
 as an old goddess, 412
 characteristics of, 375
 worshipped, 51, 201, 413
 to be worshipped, 412
 Raurava, had a son Duḥkha through Vedanā, 49
 Raurava, a hell, 531
 sub-division of hells, 1039
 Rāvaṇa, Viṣṇu's manifestation to kill, 10
 son of Viśravas and Kaikasi, 24
 the king of Laṅkā, 15fn
 Śūrpaṇakhā's visit to; abduction of Sitā by, 16
 requesting Sitā to marry him, 19
 reference to Jāṭāyu wounded by, 18
 battle with Rāma and fall of, 23
 search for Sitā by Hanūmat in the house of, 19
 Hanūmat's words to and anger of, 20
 was intent on killing Aṅgada, 21
 Kumbhakarna's words to, 22
 killed by Rāma, 738
 —a muhūrta; deeds to be done in, 371
 Ravi, as a name of the Sun, 136
 —herb denoted by, 406
 recipes, which would revive dead, 772
 reconditeness, a defect of word; five kinds of, 947
 red, words denoting different shades of, 902
 regal power, three kinds of, 629
 rejoice, words denoting, 990
 relatives, words denoting different kinds of, 1014
 religious observance, words denoting, 1017

- remedies, five groups of; the characteristics of, 763
 renovation of decayed images, 184
 Renukhaya, one of the sons of Śatajit, 740
 Renukā, Bhārgava as son of, 8
 renunciation, explanation of the term, 1059
 greatness of, 161
 repetition, word meaning, 993
 of a word; two kinds of, 935
 compounded, 935
 of a sentence, 935
 reply, words signifying, 993
 respiration, nine actions of, 929
 retention, explanation of the term, 1049
 four kinds of; explanation of, 1050
 Reva, Raivata alias Kakudmin was the eldest among the hundred sons of, 736
 Revā, a river; greatness of, 328
 Revanta, son of Sun and Rājñi, 735
 Revanta, merits of worshipping, 343
 Revati, a *śrī*, 1. force, 81
 image of, 138
 goddess invoked, 399
 worshipped in the wind-circle, 375
 —daughter of Raivata; given in marriage to Baladeva, 736
 wife of Balabhadra; sons of, 29
 beloved of lord Viṣṇu, 746
 —an asterism; has its face lateral, 381
 belongs to the watery region, 388
 location in koṭacakra, 385
 location in a diagram, 400
 marriage commendable in, 357
 profit caused by things bought in, 360
 sowing seeds gains fortune in, 361
 new fruits and food to be eaten in, 358
 wearing of gems commendable in, 359
 misery caused by Sun's transit in, 363
 reward, for soldiers after victory; proportionate to the task accomplished, 632
 R̥gveda, authority for the Dvaidhānyas, 730
 hymns to be recited by the followers of, 287
 two divisions of, 730
 number of hymns of the brāhmaṇas of, 730
 application of the mantras of, 683-695
 as a manifestation of lord Viṣṇu, 356
 as an Aparāvidyā, 2
 saluted, 50
 assigned on the hand, 64
 ornament for Indra, 93
 R̥gvedā, a Yogini; image of, 138
 rheumatic pain, in general and in the hip; remedy for, 775
 rheumatic patients, commendable medicines for, 774
 rheumatism, remedy for, 775
 righteousness, ten characteristics of, 454
 riktā days, good for commencement of study, 359
 Ripa, one of the sons of Śiṣṭi and Succhāyā, 42
 Ripu, had the son Cākṣusa through Br̥hati, 42
 Ripuhara, form of Viṣṇu at Lokākula, 841
 Ripuñjaya, form of Viṣṇu at Virajā, 841
 —one of the sons of Śiṣṭi and Succhāyā, 42
 rite, strengthening, 410-11
 rites, different kinds of, 379
 R̥jīṣa, sub-division of a hell, 1039
 R̥k, hymns; creation of, 40
 R̥kṣa, born to Ajamidha and Dhūmini; son of, 750
 R̥kṣa (the second), son of Vidūratha; son of, 750, 751
 r̥kṣanāyaka, a type of temple, 315
 R̥kseyu, one of the ten sons of Bhadrāśva, 748
 R̥namokṣa, at Gayā; merits of bathing in, 342
 rocanā, a herb, 372
 rocika, a perfection, 257
 Rodani, a monstress affecting the child on the tenth day after birth; symptoms of the child possessed by; offering and fumigation to appease; the unguent to besmear on the child possessed by, 822
 —a monstress seizing the child in the third year; symptoms of the child seized by; offering to appease; fumigation when the child is seized by, 824
 rodhaka, explanation of, 403
 rodhamudrā, 308
 Rohiṇi, one of the fixed asterisms, 381
 one of the blunted asterisms, 382
 location in koṭacakra, 385
 location of the letter denoting, 400
 reason for unusual commotion in, 388
 a combination caused by the presence of Sun in, 362

- new fruits and food should be taken in, 358
 commendable for marriage, 357
 commended for copulation, 434
 good for the first feeding of the child, 358
 good for commencing construction of a house, 360
 not good for entering the cow-pen, 361
 misery caused by Sun's presence in, 363
 wife of Vasudeva; the birth of Balarāma to, 26, 26fn., 744
 Rohitāśv., son of Hariścandra; son of, 737
 roots, paste of; to make the woman deliver the child comfortably, 834
 rosary, the presiding deity of the thread of, 899
 rosary heads, four different kinds of; each subdivided into four; benefits of wearing and using for counting, 894
 row, words which mean, 1007
 royal fan, characteristics of, 638
 royal priest, qualities of, 619
 Rṣabha, a constellation; correction for, 367
 (See also Taurus)
 —son of Nābhi and Meru, 323
 —son of Svāhya; son of, 743
 Rṣabha (hills), as a sacred place, 328
 Rṣabhagajavilasitam, characteristics of the metre, 913
 Rṣi, region known as, 640
 Rṣyamūka, mountain; kingdom restored to Sugriva by Rāma at, 17-18
 Rtadhāmā, Indra during the period of the 12th Manu, 428
 rtavaḥ, herb denoted by, 406
 Rtu, story relating to his disciple Nidāgha, 1066f
 rtu, herb denoted by, 408
 Rtuparṇa, son of Śrutāyu; son of, 737
 rtvijāḥ, rtvik, herb denoted by, 406
 ruby, a gem, 640
 characteristics of, 641
 said to be auspicious, 641
 rucaka, a herb, 407
 Rucirā, characteristics of the metre, 913
 rudantikā, a herb, 406
 rudhirākṣa, said to be auspicious, 641
 Rudhīrodgāri, a year of the Hindu calendar, 405
 Rudra, creation of, 40
 as a son of Satī, 45
 being known so because of birth from wailing Brahmā, 49
 protection sought by, 30
 herb denoted by, 406, 407
 the five constituents of worship of, 814-15
 the sage, metre and deity for the hymns for, 815-16
 the order of recitation of different hymns of, 815
 presiding deity of an element, 271
 worship of, 274, 290
 denoting Śiva as destructive fire; as a form of Viṣṇu, 2
 the feminine form of Viṣṇu seen by, 6
 Rudracāmuṇḍā, a goddess of dancing; image of, 134
 Rudracaṇḍā, a goddess; worshipped, 132
 Rudracarcikā, a goddess, image of, 134
 rudrahina, a pavilion relating to the presiding deity, 318
 rudrajaṭā, a herb, 406
 rudrākṣa, excellence of, 900
 Rudrapāda, at Gayā; merits of touching, 338
 Rudrasaṅgrāhi, a goddess; image of, 138
 Rudras, as a creation of the sages, 41
 names of eight, 263
 eleven names of, 44, 44fn., 45fn.
 fourteen names of, 254-55
 25 different forms of, 252-3
 names of different, 249
 numerous, 45
 consecration of, 180
 Rudra, a siddha, 414
 Rudreśa, a liṅga, 343
 Rudra Sāvarni, the twelfth Manu, 428
 Rukmakavaca, son of Kambalahar-hisa; foremost among fifty sons of, 741
 Rukmavati, characteristics of the metre, 912
 Rukmeṣu, one of the sons of Rukmakavaca, 741
 Rukmikuṇḍa, at Gayā, 341
 Rukmini, one of the wives of Kṛṣṇa, 28, 744
 birth of Pradyumna to, 29
 had many forms together with Kṛṣṇa, 31
 Rūṣakarni, a goddess; image of, 138
 Rumā, entrusted to Sugriva by Rāma, 17
 Rūpaka, explanation of; when it may be called Upamā, 941
 Rūpakam, one of the similarities, 939
 Rūpavardhana, a form of Rudra, 252
 Ruru, a demon; slayer of, 399
 Ruṣadgu, son of Svāhā; son of, 741

- Ruṣadratha, son of Titikṣu; son of, 747
 Śabdabheda, a weapon, 14
 Śabdabrahman, one of the two brah-
 mans; explanation of the term, 1060
 Śabdaka, one of those worshipped in
 the worship of Kubjikā, 414
 Śābdam, explanation of the term, 1027
 Śabhānara, one of the foremost sons
 of Viduṣa; son of, 747
 Śaci, daughter of Puloman, 46
 śacyāga, one of the four acts relating
 to a marriage, 434
 sacred formulas, conferring prosperity
 and having medicinal effect; des-
 cription of, 770-72
 sacred spots, greatness of, 326-8
 sacred thread, made of different
 material for the different castes, 433
 investiture of, 221-24
 mode of investiture of, 215-21
 knots on, 216
 sacrifices, seven domestic, 466
 sacrificial ground, words denoting,
 1017
 sacrificial pit, mode of constructing,
 56-61
 sacrificial rites, of three kinds, 1043
 classified as sāttvika, rājasa and
 tāmasa, 1071-72
 Sadāśiva, presiding deity of an ele-
 ment, 271
 identified with letter kṣa, 254
 worshipped in the worship of
 Kubjikā, 414
 Sadāśivā, a goddess worshipped in the
 worship of Tvaritā, 424
 sadaṣṭaka, position of planets, 357
 sādḥaka, one of the tārābalas, 359
 Sārlhani, letter denoting, 417
 sādḥya, relating to letter in worship,
 391, 391, 403
 relating to the letters in the name
 of the votary, 895
 Sādhyā, Sādhyās were born to, 44
 sādhyamantras, become fruitful by
 repetitions, worship etc, 803
 Sādhyas, born to Sādhyā, 44
 consecration of the images of, 180
 sadobhaya, a pavilion, 318
 śādrīyam (similarity), an embellish-
 ment of senses, 939
 Sadyojāta, letter denoting, 418
 saffron, used as an unguent, 372
 Sagara, son of Bāhu; two wives of;
 sons of; whose sons were burnt by
 sage Kapila, 737
 sages, general term for, 1018
 names of the seven prominent
 referred to as Citraśikhaṇḍin,
 989
 Sagittarius, the time taken by the
 Sun to traverse, 384
 friendly with Gemini, 392
 Sahadeva, son of Somadatta; son of,
 750
 —son of Jarāsandha; son of, 750
 —born to Mādri and Pāṇḍu, 744, 751
 born through the grace of Aśvini-
 kumāra, 32
 fell on the way of march, 37
 son of, 751
 sahadeva, a herb, 372
 sahadevi, a herb used as an unguent,
 372
 offers good protection, 378
 used in a charm, 405-6
 sāhasa, denotes fine; three kinds of,
 588-89
 Sahasrajit, eldest son of Yadu, 740
 Sahasrāṁśa, a name of the Sun, 136
 Sahasrāśva, son of Ahināśva; son of,
 738
 Saḥiṣṇu, one of the sons of Pulaha and
 Kṣamā, 49
 Sahokti, one of the similarities, 939
 explanation of, 941
 Sahya, mountain, 350
 rivers flowing from, 351
 Devadeveśa to be worshipped, 842
 Sahyādri, a sacred mountain, 328
 śaila, herb denoted by, 406, 407, 408
 Śailuṣa, a Gandharva; sons of, 24
 Saimhikeyas, Rāhu and others; pro-
 geny of Simhikā, 45
 Saindhava, a forest, 842
 saindhava, a herb, 407
 Sairandhri, Dṛupadī as, 33
 Saitava, an authority in prosody, 913
 Śāka, one of the seven continents, 323
 given by Priyavrata to Bhavya, 322
 rulers of, 352
 about the people of, 351
 sakala, one of the kinds of mantras
 of Śiva, 83
 Śāka, son of Nariṣyanta, one of the
 sons of Vaivasvata Manu, 736
 śakaṭa, an array; a variation of the
 array called bhoga, 634
 an array of the shape of a cart, 635
 Śākha, younger brother of Kumāra, 44
 image of, 134
 Śākini, a goddess; to be worshipped,
 415
 Śākini-s, image of, 135
 Śakra (Indra), was given the worlds
 by Viṣṇu, 8
 abandoning of the festivity of, 27
 birth of Arjuna by the grace of, 32
 Maruts as the allies of, 47
 praised Lakṣmi, 49

- salutation made to the face of, 51
 worshipped, 316
 one of the twelve Ādityas, 45
- Śakrajit (Indrajit), 20
- śākta, a method of locating mantras, 416
- Śakti, a guardian deity, 50
 salutation made to, 52
 worshipped, 284
- śakti, a posture of the hands, 857
- Śaktidikṣā, initiation to be performed, 73
- śakuna, an astral combination, 363
- Śakuni, a son of Hiraṇyākṣa, 46, 46fn
 —assisted by Yudhishthira in dice play, 33
 —an impeding force; prayer to Kṛṣṇa to destroy, 84
 —karaṇa on fourteenth day of dark fortnight, 369
- Śakuntalā, wife of Duṣyanta, 749
- Śakunti, son of Dṛḍharatha; son of, 742
- Śakvari, name of a metre, 905
 Mahākāvya should be composed in the metre, 920
- Śala, one of the sons of Bālīhika, 751
- Śālagrāma, a sacred place, 370, 491
 Mahāyoga to be contemplated at, 841
 Hari to be contemplated at, 841
 resorted to by Rṣabha, 323
 merits of, 328
- śālagrāma, characteristics of, 124-126
 three kinds of worship of, 126
 mode of worshipping, 126
- śālāgrha, a type of temple, 314
- Śālihotra, science of horses expounded by, 789
- Śālini, characteristics of the metre, 912
- Śālmala, a continent, 323
 given by Priyavrata to Vapuṣmān, 322
 extent of and rulers of, 352
- Śālmala, a hell, 532
- Śālmali, main river in the hell, 1039
- śālmaliya, flower not to be used in worship, 529
- Śalya, fought for a day and was killed by Yudhiṣṭhira, 35
- samādhi, definition of, 454
 explanation of, 943, 1076
 explanation of the mode of practising, 1051
 benefits of practising, 1052
- samam (evenness), an embellishment of sense, 939
- Sāman, hymns; creation of, 40
- samāna, a life-force carried by the vein suṣumnā; functions of, 556
- Samāni, characteristics of the metre, 908
- samapada, relating to archery, 645
- samasaptaka, position of planets, happiness indicated by, 357
- Samāsokti, brevity of expression, 943
- Samasyā, a puzzle, 992
 a kind of Citrakāvya, 935
 definition of, 936
- Samavakāra, a type of drama, 921
- samāvarta, a rite to be performed, 95
- Sāmaveda, as an Aparāvidyā, 2
 two branches of, 730
 division of, 429
 three kinds of songs of, 730
 extent of, 730
 hymns to be recited by a follower of, 287
 use of the hymns of, 704-7
 the śrisūkta of, 710
 sacred for water god, 93
- Samaya, a Rudra, 254
- Samayavimala, to be worshipped, 412, 415
- Samayikatvam (conventional), an excellence of sense, 945
- Sāmba, son of Jāmbavati from Kṛṣṇa, 29, 744
 curse of the sages on, 36fn
- Śambara, a son of Hiraṇyākṣa, 46
 —demon; Daśaratha's battle with, 12fn
 —a companion of Kāṁsa, 29
 —story relating to, 29fn
- Śambarā, image of, 138
- Sāmbhava, one of the guards of door; worshipped, 93
 son of Ūrja; son of, 750
- Śāmbhava, a method of locating mantras, 416
- sambhavāyaniya, details relating to the vow of, 520-1
- Śāmbhu, denotes Śiva; reference to Kāma made bodiless by, 29
 Sati born again and becoming wife of, 50
 investiture of sacred thread for, 215
 one of the Rudras, 45, 252
 —wife of Dhruva and mother of Śiṣṭi and Bhavya, 42
- Sambhūta, son of Purukutsa; son of, 737
- Sambhūti, wife of Marici; progeny of, 49
- Samhana, son of Dharmanetra; son of, 740
- Samhāri, a goddess, 375

- saṁhāramudrā, 198, 211, 212, 237, 238, 239
 Saṁhārikā, letter denoting, 417
 Saṁhāriṇimudrā, 236
 Saṁhatāśva, son of Nikumbha; two sons of, 737
 Śamī, one of the five sons of Śoṇāśva; son of, 743
 Samjñā, daughter of Tvaṣṭr; one of the wives of the Sun; gave birth to Vaivasvata Manu and the Āsvins, 735
 sampat, one of the tārābalas, 359
 Sampāti, eagle brother of Jaṭāyu; words spoken to the monkeys by, 18
 words spoken to Hanūmat and others by, 19
 sampradāna (giving), three kinds of; explanation of, 971
 samprāptidvādaśī, on the practice of, 513
 Sampratāpana, sub-division of a hell, 1039
 sampuṭa, relating to a mantra, 403
 Samrāt, daughter of Kardama and Devahūti, 41
 saṁsargayamaka (samudga?), one of the Yamakas, 935
 Saṁsayopamā, explanation of, 940
 Samuccayopamā, explanation of, 940
 Samudra, father of Savarṇā, 43
 samudra, a treasure, 269
 Samvāraṇa, son of Rkṣa; son of, 750
 Saṁvarta, a law-giver, 455
 Saṁvarta, one of those worshipped in the worship of Kubjikā, 414
 letter denoting, 419
 Saṁvidhāna (contrivance), an excellence of sense, 945
 Saṁvāti, son of Bahuvridha; son of, 748
 Saṁvogavināla, one of the Vimalas; worshipped, 412
 saṁyuktahalapaṅkti, name of a gift, 747
 Sanaka, a sage; dwells in Janaloka, 354
 expositions made by, 1074
 Sanatkumāra, creation of, 40, 48
 Kumāra identified with, 44
 sand, word for, 995
 sandal, red; as an unquent, 372
 sandhyā, a flower, 529
 Sandhyāvata, as an excellent place, 330
 Śāṇḍilya, a Pāñcarātrāgama, 106
 Śāṇḍipani, guru of Kṛṣṇa, 28
 Saṁghāta, sub-division of a hell, 1039
 saṁgraha, collection of stories, 992
 saṁgrahaṇa, a posture relating to riding horses, 787
 Śani, worshipped 52,
 Śanicakra, to find victory; drawing of, 370
 saṁjaya, a modification of the array daṇḍa, 633
 Saṁjivana, sub-division of a hell, 1039
 Saṁjivani, letter denoting, 417
 Saṁkalpa, progeny of, 44
 Śankara (Śiva), fight between Hari and, 30
 installation of image of, 172
 worshipped in the worship of Kubjikā, 414
 Śankari, image of, 133
 Saṁkarsaṇa, denotes Balarāma, 26 fn
 as a form of Viṣṇu, 62
 installation of image of, 172
 as a deity presiding over the banner, 148
 worship with the basic syllable of, 68
 worshipped, 91
 —a śālagrama, 124, 125
 Śaṁkha, a law-giver, 455
 —a serpent, image of, 137
 śaṁkha, a type of temple, 315
 —a treasure, 88, 111, 269
 —one of the postures of the hand, 857
 Śaṁkhadvāra, a place, 841
 Śaṁkhakūṭa, group of mountains, 325, 325fn
 Śaṁkhapād, son of Kardama Prajāpati; made ruler of the south, 47
 Śaṁkhapāla, one of the eight chief serpents; the number of heads of, 807
 Śaṁkhin, form of Viṣṇu at Śaṁkhadvāra, 841
 śaṁkhini, an occult name, 257
 carries the wind dhanāñjaya, 556
 Śaṁkhyā, creation according to, 39fn
 saṁkirṇa, a variety of horses, 789
 Śaṁkṛti, classical metres based on, 914
 Śaṁksepa, an embellishment of sound and sense; explanation of, 942
 Śaṁksiptaka, a variety of Ārabhaṭi, 928
 Śaṁku, one of the sons of Ugrasena, 742
 Śaṁkukarna, worship of, 284
 Śaṁkumari, gāvatrī, composition of the metre, 904
 Śaṁkurārya, one of the sons of Danu, 46
 Śaṁkusūrah, different reading for Śaṁkurārya, 46fn
 Sannateyu, one of the ten sons of Bhadrāśva, 748

Sannati, wife of Kratu; progeny of, 49
 Śānta, a son of Āpa, 44
 śāntā, a nerve, 316
 Śāntabhaya, a son of Medhātithi, 351
 Śāntanu, born in the race of Bharata
 son of Pratipa; 31
 sons of; through Gaṅgā and Kālī
 (Satyavati), 751
 śāntapana, an expiation; explanation
 of, 482, 494
 for having stolen things, 476
 for having drunk polluted water,
 480, 487
 Santati, different reading for Sannati,
 49fn
 Śānti, Indra at the time of the 10th
 Manu, 428
 —a female energy; worshipped, 91
 —born to Ajamiṇḍha and Nīlini, 749
 sapinḍikaraṇa, rite; mode of per-
 forming, 348-9
 to be performed for women, 442, 460
 sapphire, a gem, 640
 qualities of a good, 641
 sapta, herb denoted by, 407
 Saptabhūmā, a hell, 1039
 Saptarātra, religious texts, 105
 Saptārcis, worship of, 285
 śara, a posture of the hands, 857
 a flower, 529
 sāra, a ray of the Sun, 195
 Sārā, image of, 138
 Śarabha, a monkey that accompanied
 Rāma to Laṅkā, 21
 Śarabhaṅga, sage saluted by Rāma, 15
 entered the fire in the presence
 of Rāma, 15fn
 Śarabhaṭa, a muhūrta; deeds to be
 done in, 371
 Śaradvata, married Ahlayā, and had a
 son, 750
 Śaradvipa, future birth of cakravākas
 in, 349
 Śāraṇa, one of the sons of Vasudeva
 and Rohiṇi, 744
 śarapūṅkhikā, a herb, 410
 Śarasiruha, a variety of bandha, 937
 Śarasvatakālpa, a kalpa period, 732
 śarasvatavrata, mode of practising, 524
 Sarasvati (goddess), saluted, 1
 the term used in a formula, 52
 image of, 131, 133
 worship of, 197
 benefit of worshipping, 343
 —river, 327
 confluence of Ganges with, 327
 Sarasvatī, river at Gayā, 344
 Śārāṭha, beads belonging to the Savitra
 class, 804
 Sarayū, a river, Daśaratha's funeral

rites done on the banks of, 14
 Śarirā, letter denoting, 417
 Śarmiṣṭhā, daughter of Vṛṣaparvan,
 25, 46, 740
 was the second wife of Yayāti, 25,
 740
 story relating to Devayāni's curse
 on, 25fn
 Śārṅga, worshipped, 52, 88
 Śārṅgadhārin, form of Viṣṇu at
 Daṇḍaka, 842
 Sarpa, a form of Rudra, 45
 sarpa, a constellation; adversity caused
 by purchase of things in, 359
 sarpacāri, array; modification of
 bhoga, 635
 sarpākṣi, used as an unguent, 372
 sarpāśya, a modification of the array
 daṇḍa, 633
 Sarpis, an ocean, 324
 sarpya, herb denoted by, 407
 Śarva, a name of Rudra, 50
 worship of, 290
 sārvaḥma, significance of the word,
 1018
 Sarvabhavadbhava, a form of Rudra,
 252
 Sarvabhūtaḍamanī, a female energy;
 worshipped, 51
 Sarvadā (Śārvari), a year of the
 Hindu calendar, 405
 Sarvadhātī, a year of the Hindu
 calendar, 405
 Sarvajit, a year of the Hindu calendar,
 405
 Sarvajñā, image of, 138
 Sarvajñavimala, one of the Vimalas,
 412
 worshipped, 415
 Śārvakāmada, letter denoting, 419
 Sarvakarmā, son of Kalmāṣapāda; son
 of, 737
 Sarvanetra, a deity presiding over the
 banner, 145
 worship of, 284
 Sarvapāpahara, form of Viṣṇu on
 Vindhya mountain, 842
 Sarvatobhadra, a mystical diagram,
 879-80
 worship of Hari in, 75fn
 —a type of temple, 314
 —one of the bandhas; description of;
 936
 three kinds of, 937
 —an array, 612, 630
 modification of maṇḍala, 634
 has opening on all sides, 634
 formation optional, 635
 Sarvatomukhi, an energy, established,
 304

- worshipped, 51
 Sarvatraga, son of Dharmasāvarni Manu, 428
 Śaryāti, one of the eight sons of Vaivasvata Manu, 735, 736
 two sons of, 736
 —one of the seven sons of Nahuṣa, 746
 Śaśabindu, son of Citraratha; a great monarch; a devotee of lord Viṣṇu; had ten thousand sons, 741
 śaśi, herb denoted by, 406
 Śaśiva, a form of Rudra, 252
 Śaṣṭhā, worshipped, 412
 Śaṣṭhi, one of the Ādināthas, 412
 Śatabhiṣak, a movable asterism, 381
 a blunted asterism, 382
 an asterism; profit caused by purchase in, 360
 for increasing the grains, 361
 misery caused by Sun's transition, 363
 location of letter representing, 400
 Śatadhanu, was killed by Kṛṣṇa, 743
 Śatadhanvā, one of the ten sons of Hṛdika, 743
 Śatadyumna, a son of Manu and Naḍvalā, 42
 Śataḥpankti, a variety of Paṅkti, 904
 Śatajit, one of the sons of Yadu; three sons of, 740
 śatanūli, a herb, 407
 Śatānanda, a sage, 10
 son of Śaradvata and Ahalyā, 750
 son of, 750
 Śatānika, son of Nakula and Draupadi, 751
 śatapušpi, a herb, 407
 Śatarūpā, two sons of, 41
 Śataśṛiṅga, hermitage of, 32
 Śātātapa, a law-giver, 455
 Śatatārā, an asterism; located in Koṭācakra, 385
 śatāvāri, a herb, 371
 Śatāyus, a son of Purūravas, 739
 Sati, gave up her life; born as daughter of Himavān, 50
 —a nerve, 316
 —an excellence of word, 944
 Śatobhrati, name of Mahābhrati according to Bhaṇḍila, 904
 Satrajit, son of Nighna; got the Syamantaka from Sun god; Syamantaka gem returned by Kṛṣṇa to; was killed by Śatadhanu, 743
 śatru, explanation of, 1019
 Śatrughna, birth of, 10
 married Śrutakirti, 11
 was brought to the city along with Bharata, 14
 killed Lavaṇa, 24
 Śatrujit, one of the five sons of Śoṇāśva, 743
 Saṭṭaka, a type of drama, 921
 sāttvika, one of the qualities, 48
 Saturday, tripuṣkara caused by, 362
 prosperity caused by Kṛitika occurring on, 377
 inauspiciousness of seventh day on, 381
 rule of Rāhu lies at south-east on, 409
 Saturn, distance of, 354
 chariot of, 356
 period (years) of influence of, 363, 393
 presides over a part of day, 381
 diagram of, 409
 the letter presided over by, 374
 image of, 137
 contemplated as dark, 828
 confers good in sixth place, 383
 brings good in tenth place, 384
 victory indicated by, 393
 begets defeat, 377
 fatality indicated by, 389
 bad luck indicated by, 400
 Sātvara, son of Jantu; four sons of; a good Yādava king, 742
 Sātva, one of the modes, 928
 Satya, a manifestation of Viṣṇu, 428
 —Aśvara, an āgama, spoken by, 106
 —one of the sons of Priyavrata, 322
 —a world; worshipped, 79
 —personified; worshipped, 316
 Satyā, one of the wives of Kṛṣṇa, 744
 Satyabhāmā, daughter of Satrajit; married by Kṛṣṇa, 743, 744
 was devoted to Kṛṣṇa, 744
 return of Kṛṣṇa in the company of, 28
 Satyadevi, one of the daughters of Devaka; married by Vasudeva, 742
 Satyadhṛk, son of Śatānanda; progeny of, 750
 Satyahita, son of Vṛṣabha; son of, 750
 Satyajit, son of Raja, 323
 Satyaka, son of Śini, 743
 Satyaketu, son of Sukumāra, 749
 Sātyaki, son of Satyaka; also known as Yuyudhāna, 743
 survived the Bhārata war, 36
 Satyaloka, distance of; residents of, 354
 Satyānanda, sandals of; worshipped, 414
 Satyaratha, son of Satyavrata; son of, 737
 son of Citraratha; son of, 748
 Satyavāk, one of the sons of Manu and Naḍvalā, 42

- Satyavat, different reading for Satyavāk, 42fn
- Satyavati, daughter of Gādhi, 749
- wife of Śantanu, 31
- had Vicitravīryaka as a son, 751
- Satyavrata, son of Taruṇa; son of, 797
- Saubhadra, denotes Abhimanyu
- Saubhāgya (loveliness), an excellence of word and sense; explanation of, 946
- Saubhāgyā, image of, 133
- saubhāgyavrata, details relating to, 502-3
- Saukumārya, an excellence of word, 944
- Saumitrī Lakṣmaṇa, Sitā's words to, 16
- Saumya, a blunted asterism, 382
- a territory, 350
- (north) Hiranyaromaka made as regent of, 48
- a muhūrta; deeds to be done in, 371
- Saumyā, a goddess accomplishing a charm, 375
- characteristics of the metre, 907
- saumyamāntas, characteristics of and effects of, 802-3
- got by inversion of the letters of āgneyamāntas, 803
- Śaunaka, at the forest of Naimiṣa, 1
- represents a branch of Atharvaveda, 730
- a Pāñcarātrāgama, 106
- Śaundikeyas, one of the five branches of Haihayas, 741
- Saurabha, characteristics of the metre, 909
- Śaūri, form of Viṣṇu at Utpala, 842
- sautrāmani, 1 havir-yajña, 86, 466
- Sauvira, a king; an account of knowledge imparted by Bharata to, 1062ff
- Sauvira, country; Viṣṇu temple built by king of, 526
- Savana, a sage, 428
- one of the sons of Vasiṣṭha and Urjā, 49
- son of Priyavrata, 322
- ruled Puṣkara, 353
- sons of, 353
- Savarṇā, daughter of Samudra; progeny of, 43
- Savarṇi, the eighth Manu; son of Sūrya and Chāyā, 428
- a disciple of Lomaharṣana, 790
- Savitṛ, one of the twelve Ādityas, 45, 136
- worshipped, 317
- red flowers for worship of, 108
- Śavitṛ, worship of, 274
- Sāvitra, one of the four kinds of rosary beads; the four divisions of, 894
- a muhūrta; deeds to be done in, 371
- Sāvitrī, letter denoting, 418
- located for worship, 317
- worship of, 274
- name of a new-moon day conferring benefits, 519
- sāvitrīmantra, as purifying from sin, 479
- Scorpio, time taken by the Sun to transit, 384
- friendly with other constellations, 392
- scorpion, remedy for poison due to, 819
- scorpion-bite, remedy for, 756
- seasons, two divisions of; the different tastes getting increased in, 759
- seat of a king, characteristics of, 638
- self, the subtle nature of, 1076
- self, golden image of; merits of giving as gift of, 548
- selling, words denoting, 1022
- senility, remedy which arrests, 756
- sense(s), compared to an elephant, 617
- as the horses, 1075
- embellishment of, 939
- description of, 42
- sentence, definition of, 992
- that is well-constructed; word for, 993
- sentiments, importance of; interdependent on emotion, 924
- the names of, 994
- words denoting different, 994-5
- exhibited by moods; origin of, 923-4
- four self-developed ones, 924
- serpent, words standing for, 995
- serpent bites, four kinds of, 808
- at certain places described as inauspicious, 808-9
- auspicious and inauspicious sounds and objects seen relating to, 809
- description of auspicious-inauspicious type of messengers conveying news about, 809
- the poison due to; the way in which spreads, 810
- the treatment with mystic formulae for, 811, 814
- serpents, the different species of, 807
- seven factors such as the nature etc. of, 807
- the names of eight chief; classified into groups, 807
- three classes of, 807
- having hoods bear different signs, 807
- four divisions of, 807

- the names of the different teeth of, 807
 details relating to impregnation, laying of eggs etc. by, 807-8
 seven among the eight preside over the days of the week, 808
 servant, words denoting, 1019
 the qualities marking the king's, 621
 servants, of the king, code of conduct for, 575-6
 the qualities of, 620-21
 Śeṣa, one of the eight chief serpents
 the number of heads of, 807
 born from Kadrū, 46
 Viṣṇu as, 373
 the word Ananta denoting, 63fn
 worship of, 273, 317
 worshipped, 108
 śeṣa, an array; marked by rows of elephants, 634
 Sevācakra, indicating gain or loss, 390-91
 Sevyā, name of the wife of Jyāmagha, 741
 sheaths description of the seven, 1034
 shellac, as an unguent, 372
 shyness, words denoting, 995
 Śibi, a son of Hrada, 46
 different reading for Gaya, 42fn
 the four sons of, 747
 Śībikāśeṣma, a type of temple, 314
 sickness, a general remedy to remove, 769
 siddha, letters falling into the group of, 390
 relating to the letters in the name of the votary, 895
 as fruitful, 391
 Siddha (vimala), worshipped, 415
 Siddhacāmundā, image of, 135
 siddhacatuṣka, four siddhas, 115
 Siddhakoṭīśvara, worshipped, 414
 siddhamantras, become fruitful by mere repetition, 803
 Siddhartha, a minister of King Daśa-ratha, 11
 —a year of the Hindu calendar, 405
 siddhārtha, a herb, 407
 siddhas, names of, 414
 Siddhāśrama, a place; Rāma's stay at, 10
 Siddhayogeśvari, image of, 135
 Siddheśvara, a liṅga, 342
 sides, five actions of, 930
 Śikhā, a goddess, 417
 —one of the four kinds of rosary beads; the four divisions of, 894
 —characteristics of the metre, 907, 911
 śikhā, a herb, 372
 Śikhaṇḍi, son of Drupada, 34fn
 fought on the side of the Pāṇḍavas, 34
 Śikhaṇḍin, a Rudra, 263
 Śikhaṇḍini, later transformed to a male form, 34fn
 wife of Antardhāna, 43
 Śikharīṇi, characteristics of the metre, 913
 Śikhi, letter denoting, 419
 Śikhivāhini, a goddess; location of the letter denoting, 417
 Śikhivāsa, group of mountains, 325, 325fn
 Śikṣā (phonetics), science of, 2
 Śilpaka, a type of drama, 921
 simantnonayana, a rite, 59, 86, 95
 Sīrṁha, a constellation; correction for 367
 (See also Leo)
 simha-homa, performance of, 118
 simhakarma, a position relating to archery, 648
 simhavidyā, ceremony known as, 117
 Sīmḥikā, a demoness, daughter of Kaśyapa and Diti, 45
 killed by Hanūmat, 19
 Sīmḥonnatā, the name of Vasanta-tilaka according to sage Kaśyapa, 913
 similarity, explanation of; is four-fold, 939
 Śimṣapā, tree in the Aśoka grove, 19
 Śi (Śā)ṁśapāyana, a disciple of Lomahaṛṣaṇa, 730
 sin, words denoting, 990
 sins, major types, 471-74
 the consequential births for different, 1030-40
 hymn which destroys, 483-5
 Sindhu, region of, indication of the destruction of the inhabitants of, 387
 —ocean; name of Īpīśvara to be repeated at, 842
 —a river, 24
 as yielding all fruits, 327
 Sindhudvipa, sage for the hymn āpo hi śtṥā, 362
 —son of Ambariṣa; son of, 737
 sindhu-vāraka, a herb, 407
 Śini, one of the sons of Babhru, 742
 —descendant of Dīkṣita; 743
 Śini, was born from Anamitra; son of, 743
 Sinivāli, wife of Kardama, 738-9
 —a son of Aṅgiras and Smṛti, 49
 sinivāli, the new-moon day if the moon is perceived, 981
 sinivāli, caturdaśī, 360
 śiphā, a herb, 407
 śirīṣa, flower not to be used in worship, 529

- Śifira, a son of Dhara, 44
 one of the sons of Medhātithi, 351
 Śiṣṭi, son of Dhruva and Śambhu;
 son of, 42
 śisucāndrāyaṇa, an expiation; ex-
 planation of, 482
 śisuka (śisucāndrāyaṇa), an expiation
 for eating certain things, 488
 Śisuvaktrā, image of, 138
 Sitā, daughter of Janaka, 10
 wife of Rāma, 738
 Rāma was asked to observe vows
 along with, 11
 crossed the river Jāhnavi, 13
 Śūrpaṇakā's words to Rāvaṇa
 relating to, 15
 abduction of, 16
 search ordered by Sugriva for, 18
 Jaṭāyu gave his life for, 18
 seen by Hanūmat, 19
 crest-jewel given to Hanūmat by,
 20
 Vibhiṣaṇa's advice to Rāvaṇa, 21
 Kumbhakarna's words to Rāvaṇa
 relating to, 22
 Rāvaṇa's intention to kill, 22
 brought back after purification, 23
 birth of Kuśa and Lava to, 24
 rule of son of Sita, 25
 merit of worshipping, 343
 —a river, 325
 śitakṛcchra, an expiation; explanation
 of, 482, 799
 Sitāmbha, a lake, 325
 Śītoda, a lake, 325
 Śiva, synonyms of, 986-7
 a form of Rudra, 252, 254
 Viṣṇu as the refuge of, 746
 name of attendants of, 987
 Bāṇa considered as a son of; words
 spoken to Bāṇa by, 29
 words spoken by Viṣṇu to, 30
 image of; meditation on, 202
 installation of image of, 172
 mode of worshipping, 197-204,
 837-40
 worship of, 274
 a sacred formula of, 837
 eight kinds of mantras of, 873
 appeasing rite for, 891-94
 to be contemplated at every quad-
 rangle, 842
 a deity located in the body, 414
 —herb denoted by, 406
 —a son of Medhātithi, 351
 —the name of a temple, 318
 —one of four kinds of rosary beads;
 the four divisions of, 894
 śiva, one of the kinds of mantras of
 Śiva, 873
 Śivā, worshipped, 51
 location of the letter representing,
 417
 śivākhyā, a pavilion, 318
 śivarātrivratā, description of, 517-8
 śivāśraya, a pavilion, 318
 Śivottama, a Rudra, 263
 Skanda, synonyms of, 987
 conquered by Tārṅgīya and others,
 30
 obeisance made to, 1
 worshipped, 51
 image of, 134, 314
 placing of the image of, 116
 worship of the image of, 215
 offering made to, 274, 275
 Skāṇḍapurāṇa, narrated by lord
 Skanda; on the virtues of Tatpuruṣa-
 kalpa; extent of; should be given
 as a gift, 733
 skandaśaṣṭhi, a vow; details relating to,
 504
 Skandavikāṭa a demon, 317
 Skandhogrivi (Brhati), name of Nvan-
 kūśārini according to Krauṣṭiki, 903
 skin, defects of; remedy for, 767
 sky, words denoting, 988
 slave, rules relating to making free a,
 673
 Śleṣa, a variety of guṇa relating to
 word, 944
 (See also coalescence)
 sling, uses of, 652
 Ślokāyani, represents a branch of
 Atharvaveda, 730
 Smara, worship of the image of, 215
 smoothness, explanation of, 945
 smṛti, collection of texts relating to
 religious duties, 992
 Smṛti, wife of Aṅgiras, 49
 snake-bite, remedy for, 756
 (See also serpent bite)
 snātaka, denotes a person who had the
 ceremonial bath, 1018
 Snehāḥ, a class of men at Kuśadvipa,
 352fn
 snow, words denoting, 989
 snuhi, a herb, 406
 society, everyone should strive for
 the welfare of, 674
 ṣoḍaśa, herb denoted by, 407
 Ṣoḍaśi, a somaśarṇsthā, 64, 79, 86, 466
 Ṣoḍhānyāsa, three kinds of, 416
 soft, a mode; explanation of, 933, 934
 Softness, explanation of, 945
 Śoka, born from Mr̥tyu, 49
 solar race, description of the genealogy
 of, 735-38
 solar region, worshipped, 50
 soldiers, methods of fight by; to be

- rewarded suitably after the victory, 632
- Soma, born from Brahmā, 25
 given as born from Atri, 31, 738
 born to Atri and Anasūyā, 49
 married 27 daughters of Dakṣa, 44
 performance of Rājasūya by, 738
 the supremacy gained by, 739
 the wives of the celestials, and sages
 deserted their husbands and
 served, 738-39
 seduced Tārā, wife of Bṛhaspati,
 739
 the king of planet; words spoken
 to progenitors by, 43
 worship of, 274
 worshipped, 52
 requested to come, 336
- one of the eight Vasus; father of
 Varcā, 44
- Somadatta, son of Pañcadhanus; son
 of, 750
- one of the sons of Bālhika, 751
- one of the sons of Śantanu, 751
- Somaka, a boundary mountain, 351
 son of Śahadeva; son of, 750
- Somakuṇḍa, at Gayā, 341
- Somanātha, a līṅga, 343
 greatness of, 327
- Somapa, son of Maitreya, 750
- somasamsthās, the seven kinds of, 466
 thousands of, 86
- Someśa, letter denoting, 419
 worshipped, 100
- Śoṇā, a river, 841
 as excellent, 328
- Śoṇāśva, one of the two sons of Śūra;
 sons of, 743
- Śoṇitapura, city, 29
- Sopamā, worshipped, 412
- sore-mouth, remedy for, 768
- soul, words denoting, 991
 that is liberated becoming one
 with Brahman explained, 1076
 as the traveller, 1075
- sound, words standing for ordinary,
 993
- sounds, three divisions of, 917
 words denoting different kinds of,
 993-4
- spear, uses of, 651
- speech, twelve kinds of exertions of,
 927
 preceded by weeping; words denot-
 ing, 993
 words denoting, 992
 words signifying beginning of, 992
- spheres, different kinds of, 387-8
- spḥuraṇa, denoting a division of time,
 370
- spiders, remedy for poison due to,
 756, 819
- spies, characteristics of, 625
- (evil) spirits, possessing the newly
 born child from the first day on-
 wards; the names of different, 820-26
- spiritual initiation, removing bondage,
 238-43
 for emancipation, 243-48
 four kinds of, 227
 mode of, 226-35
- spittoon, words denoting, 1017
- spleen, enlargement of; remedy for,
 752, 767, 769
- splendidence (Ojas), abundance of
 compounds, 945
- spy, words denoting, 1019
- śrāddha, mode of performing, 457-61
 merits of doing on different day,
 349, 350
- Śrāddhadeva, the seventh Manu, 427-
 8
- Sragdharā, characteristics of the metre,
 914
- Sragviṇi, characteristics of the metre,
 913
- Śrama, a son of Āpa, 44
- śrauti (rite), to be performed, 86
- Śravaṇa, an asterism having firm look,
 382
 the rite to determine the sex of
 the child to be done in, 357
 auspicious for administering medi-
 cine, 358
 new fruits and food to be eaten in,
 358
 good for gathering hay, 360
 money is deposited or articles taken
 back in, 360
 not commendable for tonsure and
 other rites, 359
 cow-pen should not be entered in,
 361
 misery caused by Sun's transit in,
 363
 located in Koṭācakra, 385
 located in a diagram, 400
- Śrāvana, benefit of oil purchased in
 the month of, 386
- śravanadvādaśi, rules relating to the
 practice of, 513-14
- śrāvāṇi, a sacrifice, 86, 466
- Śrāvanta, son of Yuvanāśva; had
 Śrāvantikā as capital, 736
- Śrāvantikā, a city in the east; was the
 capital of Śrāvanta, 736
- Śrī, became the consort of Viṣṇu, 49
 located on the body, 414
 hymn in praise of, 615-16
 mentioned as a form of Hari, 91

- worshipped, 1, 51, 52, 63
 Śricandrādevī, a goddess, 413
 Śridaṇḍi, a spirit possessing the child on the eighth night after birth; symptoms of child possessed by; offering to appease; materials for fumigation and besmearing when the child is possessed by, 822
 Śridevī, one of the daughters of Devaka; married by Vasudeva, 742
 Śridhara, a name of Viṣṇu, 65
 contained in a formula, 32
 image of, 115
 name of a śālagrāma, 125
 Śrigadita, a type of drama, 921
 Śrijaya, a type of temple, 315
 characteristics of the temples of the class of, 318
 Śrikanṭha, a Rudra, 263
 letter denoting, 418
 —a type of temple, 315
 Śrikanṭhanātha, worshipped, 413, 414
 śrikṛcchra, an expiation, 483
 Śrimahākāla, worshipped, 414
 Śrimukha, a year of the Hindu calendar, 404
 Śripārvata, one of the eight holy spots, 330
 as sacred, 328, 350
 significance and greatness of, 331
 Śripraśna, a Pāṇcarātrāgama, 106
 Śrisamayakotīśa, worshipped, 414
 Śrivatsa, worshipped, 51, 52, 55, 63
 —a type of temple, 314
 842
 Śriyaḥpati, form of Viṣṇu on Narmadā, 842
 Śrīgaberapura, a 'place; Rāma's arrival at, 13
 Bharata's visit to, 14
 as an excellent spot, 328
 śrīgātaka, an array; formation optional, 635
 Śrīṅgi, a varṣapārvata, 324
 Śrījaya, son of Kālānala; son of, 747
 —one of the five born from Bāhyāśva, 749
 son of, 750
 Śrṣṭi, a minister of King Daśaratha, 11
 sruka, a ladle, 58
 Śrutadevī, one of the daughters of Devaka; married by Vasudeva, 742
 Śrutakarmaka, son of Udāpi, 750
 Śrutakīrti, son of Arjuna and Draupadī, 751
 —married by Śatrughna, 11
 Śrutasena, one of the four sons of Jahnu, 750
 —son of Bhīmasena and Draupadī, 751
 Śrutavarmā, son of Sahadeva and Draupadī, 751
 Śrutāyu, son of Sindhudvīpa; son of, 737
 —son of Bhānuratha, 738
 Śruti, a division of Abhivyakti, 943
 sruva, a ladle, 58
 sthāli, a vessel, 94
 sthālipāka, a rite, 86fn
 Sthāṇḍileyu, one of the ten sons of Bhadrāśva, 748
 Sthānu, letter denoting, 418
 sthāpana, explanation of, 267
 sthāpanimudrā, a posture of the hand, 202
 Sthirā, a goddess, 376
 sthītaśthāpana, explanation of, 267
 sthūnākarma, a modification of the array daṇḍa, 633
 sthūnāpakṣa, an array; characteristics of, 633
 stone slabs (in temples), mode of placing 276-7
 strategem, one of the means to be employed by a king, 587
 strength, prescription for gaining, 777
 student, duties of, 432-33
 study, commencement of; time for, 359
 conclusion of; time for rite relating to, 359
 Stuti, a variety of Praśasti, 942
 Śubha, one of the siddhas, 414
 subhadra, a pitcher, 270
 Subhadrā, daughter of Vasudeva, 744
 wife of Arjuna, 751
 birth of Abhimanyu to, 33
 as a goddess, 376
 merit of worshipping, 343
 subhadrā, a nerve, 316
 Subhadrikā, a goddess, 376
 subhagā, a herb, 372
 Śubhakṛt, a year of the Hindu calendar, 405
 Subhūmikā, a hell, 1039
 subjects, five sources of dangers for, 622
 substantives, the inflections of the seven cases of, 957
 two kinds of—ending in vowels and ending in consonants; again divided into three, 957
 examples for the two varieties, 957-58
 in the feminine; examples for, 958-59
 example for those in the neuter, 959
 in the feminine; examples of finished forms of, 966-68

- in the neuter; examples of finished forms of, 968-70
different kinds of, 1024-7
success, the marks of, 625
Succāyā, wife of Śiṣṭi, 42
Śuci, born from Agni and Svāhā, 49
—a daughter of Tāmra, 46
—different reading for Kavi, 42fn
—Indra at the time of the 14th Manu, 428
sūci, a kind of arrangement of the army, 630
—a modification of the array *daṇḍa*, 633
sūcivyūha, an array, 612
Sudarśaṣṭra, one of the sons of Asamaus-
jas, 743
Sudarśana, the disc of lord Viṣṇu, 827
—installation of, 179
—worshipped, 63, 84
—a śālagrāma, 125
Sudarśanā, a herb, 378
Śuddhavarāḍāśabha, characteristics of metre, 910
Śuddhavarāḍā, characteristics of the metre, 911-2
Śuddhodana, Viṣṇu's manifestation as son of, 38
Sudhanu, one of the sons of Kuru, 750
Sudhanvā, son of Sambhūta; son of, 737
—son of Puṇḍarika; son of, 738
—son of Satyahita; son of, 750
—one of the sons of Kuru; son of, 750
Sudhanvaka, son of Akṛūra, 744
Sudhanvan, water-god known as, 93
—became the regent of the east, 47
Sudharmā, name of the council of gods, 987
Sudirghā, a hell, 1039
Sudyumna, a son of Manu and Nāḍvalā, 42
—name of Ilā after she changed sex, 735
—the three sons of, 735
sufferings, two kinds of; explanation of, 1030
sugandha, a flower that pleases lord Hari, 529
sugatidvādaśī, on the practice of, 513
Sughorā, a hell, 1038
Sugriva, Rāma advised by Jaṭāyu to meet; met by Rāma, 17
—Lakṣmaṇa's words to, 18
—reference to his becoming a friend of Rāma, 19
—consoled Rāma, 21
—accompanied Rāma to Lankā, 21
—cut the nose of Kumbhakarṇa, 22
—reference to Dvividā, counsellor of, 30fn
—as a door-keeper, 108
—worship of, 273, 317
Sugrivā, a daughter of Tāmra, 46
Sumitrā, saluted by Rāma, 23
Suhotra, one of the five sons of Vitatha, 749
Suhotra, son of Sudhanvā; son of; seven other sons of, 750
—Girikā was the queen of, 750
Suhotraka, name of Atharvaveda, 93
Śuka, paying respects to Vyāsa, 1
Sukalā, a goddess, 413
Sukanya, a son of Śaryāti, 736
Sukarmā, a part of Sāmaveda given to, 429
Suketu, one of the five sons of Vitatha, 749
Sukha, a celestial, 428
sukha, a ray of the Sun, 195
Sukhodaya, a son of Medhātithi, 351
Śukla, a year of the Hindu calendar, 404
Śukra, preceptor of the demons, 8, 41fn, 740
—story relating to Devayāni, daughter of, 25fn
—daughter of; invoked, 112
—planet worshipped, 52
—a son of Dhiṣaṇā, 43
—a sage; son of Vasiṣṭha and Urjā, 49
śukra, an array; description of, 633
Śukradevikā, letter denoting, 418
Suksetra, son of Brahmasāvarni Manu, 428
—the name of a temple, 318
Sūkṣma, a Rudra, 255, 263
Sūkmā, a female divinity, worshipped, 51
śukti, a weight, 209
Śuktimat, a mountain, 350, 351
Sukumāra, son of Havya, 352
Sukumāraka, son of Anarta; son of, 749
Sukumārikā, spirit exercising her influence the whole year, 826
Śūli, the name of a temple, 318
Śūlin, worship of the image of, 215
Sumālin, father of Kaikaśi, 24fn
Sumanā, a boundary mountain, 351
Sumanas, a son of Agneyi, 42
Sumanta, one of the four sons of Tanusurodha, 749
Sumantra, a minister of King Dīratha, 11
—left back by Rāma, 13
Sumantu, a disciple of Vyāsa; a part of Sāmaveda given to; divided Atharvaveda, 429

- represents a branch of Atharvaveda, 730
- sumatadvādaśī, mode of practising the vow of, 513
- Sumati, a disciple of Lomahaṣaṇa, 730
- son of Bharata, 323
- Śumbha, a demon; killed by the goddess Durgā, 26, 26fn
- Sumeru, a mountain where Raivata performed penance, 736
- Sumitra, born to Gāndhāri and Dhṛṣṭa, 743
- Sumitrā, birth of Śatrughna to, 10
- Sumukha, a deity presiding over the banner, 145
- worship of, 284
- Sumukhi, consort of Skanda; image of, 134
- a goddess worshipped, 375
- Sumuṣṭika, one of the sons of Ugrasena, 742
- Sun, synonyms of, 989
- only one, 376
- as a manifestation of Viṣṇu, 356
- born from Marici, 9
- born from Kaśyapa, 735
- three wives of, 735
- (planet) distance of, 354
- the extent of the chariots of; the horses etc. of, 355
- celestials who ride the chariot of, 355
- words denoting the lustre of, 990
- words denoting halo around, 989
- words denoting the ray of the, 989-90
- image of, 136
- contemplating the form of, 827
- mantras for, 425
- mode of worshipping, 195-97
- mode of worship of, 830-32
- worshipped by people of Śakadvīpa, 352
- worship of, 51
- worship of the weapons of, 32
- eclipse of, 388
- period (years) of influence of, 363
- presides over a part of a day, 381
- effect of stay in one's birth-star, 363
- effect of stay in certain asterisms, 363
- effects of transit in some karaṇas, 363
- way to find strength of, 380
- no influence on war, 377
- qualities of a person indicated by, 392
- consecration to be done in a particular position of, 361
- benefit of transit in some karaṇas, 362
- gains indicated by, 384
- gains of position etc. indicated by, 393
- marriage not commendable in particular position of, 357
- adverse effect of entry in certain astral combinations, 362-3
- death caused by the position in Aries, 378
- misery indicated by, 383
- epidemics indicated by certain things in the disc of, 387
- fatality indicated by its presence in an asterism, 389
- bad luck indicated by, 400
- Sun, Viṣṇu made as the lord of, 47
- Śunaḥśeṇa, also known as Aṣṭaka; was the other son of Viśvāmītra, 749
- Sunāman, one of the sons of Ugrasena, 742
- sunanda, a pitcher, 270
- Sunday, rite for determining the sex of the child to be done on, 357
- rite of chewing betel leaf to be done on, 358
- first shave of a child commended on, 359
- profit caused by purchase made on, 360
- excavation of a tank etc. to be avoided on, 360
- cows should not be grazed on, 361
- a special combination caused by, 362
- inauspiciousness of twelfth day occurring on, 381
- the rule of Rāhu on, 409
- Sundhu, son of Vitamaya; son of, 748
- Sunithā, daughter of Mṛtyu; wife of Aṅga, 42
- Suniti, wife of Uttānapāda, 41
- sun-stone, a gem, 641
- sunṭhi, a herb, 407
- sūnya, one of the kinds of mantras of Śiva, 873
- description of, 875
- Supārśva, a mountain, 324, 325
- supernatural events, relating to the three worlds, 711
- Suprabha, a form of Rudra, 252
- a country, 352
- Suprabhā, a mountain in the south, 18
- a goddess; worshipped, 230
- daughter of Svabhānu, 46
- suprabhā, a nerve, 316
- Suprasiddhā, image of, 138
- supraṭiṣṭha, a modification of the array daṇḍa; characteristics contrary to, 633

- Supraṭiṣṭhā, number of letters in the metre 905
- Supraṭiṣṭhita, a deity presiding over the banner, 145
worship of, 284
- Supreme Being, praise of perception of one's oneness with, 1074
- Supreme Brahman, nature of 923, 1070-1
identified with knowledge, 1060
declared as the thing to be known, 1070
- Supreme spirit, as the highest, 1075
water known as nārāḥ because of its creation by, 40
- Surā, an ocean, 324
- surā, explanation of, 487
- Śūrā, one of the sons of Kārtavīrya, 741
—son of Vidūratha; son of, 743
Vasudeva and others born to, 744
- Surabhi, birth of eleven Rudras to Kāśyapa and, 44, 44fn
cows, buffaloes were born from, 46
—divine cow, worshipped, 213
- suracāndrāyaṇa, an expiation; explanation of, 482
- Suranātha, sandal of; worshipped, 414
- Surāpi, one of the daughters of Devaka; married by Vasudeva, 742
- Surasā, mother of the serpents, 46
- Śūrasena, one of the sons of Kārtavīrya, 741
- Suratha, son of Janamejaya; son of, 750
—one of the four sons of Jahnu, 750
- surety, for a loan; details relating to, 660
- Suroda, an ocean, 352
- Śūrpaṇakhā, a demoness 15
sister of Rivaṇa, 15fn, 24
- Śūrpāraka, a place, 640
an excellent place, 328
- Suruci, wife of Uttanapāda; birth of Uttama from, 41
- Sūrya, a name of the Sun, 136
herb denoted by, 406
installation of image of, 172
- Suśabdatā, Gāmbhīrya called by some as, 945
- Suśeṇa, a monkey that accompanied Rāma to Laṅkā, 21
- Susenaka, first child of Vasudeva and Devakī, 744
- Suśeṇaka, a guard of the doors; worshipped, 93
- susiddha, relating to the letters in the name of the votary, 390, 391, 803, 895
- Suśilā, one of the wives of Kṛṣṇa, 744
- Śuṣkarevati, a goddess, 375
- Suśmināḥ, a class of men at Kuśādvīpa, 352fn
- Suśruta, compositions declared as conferring boons by, 778
- Susthīrā, a goddess; worshipped, 412
- Suśumnā, as a female energy, 136
—at Gayā; piṇḍa to be offered at, 342
- suśumnā, an artery, 54
carries the wind samāna; functions of, 556
is established in the middle of the body, 557
- sūta, as an interlocutor, 42
a caste; origin of, 430
duty of, 431
- Sutala, a nether world, 8, 353
- Sutanu, daughter of Kāśīrāja and wife of Vasudeva, 28fn
- Sutanū, one of the sons of Ugrasena, 742
- Sutapā, clan of celestials in the period of the 8th Manu, 428
—son of Paila; son of, 747
- Sutapāḥ, a sage; son of Vasiṣṭha and Urjā, 49
- Sutikṣṇa, a sage; paid respect by Rāma, 15, 15fn
- Sutrāmaṇa, a celestial, 428
- Suvadanā, characteristics of the metre, 914
- Suvarṇa, an excellent place, 327
- Suvāsa, one of the sons of Asamaujas, 743
- Suvēla, mountains; Laṅkā seen by Rāma from, 21
- Suvrata, son of Uśīnara and Dṛṣadvati, 747
- Suyajñaka, son of Pṛṣṭara; son of, 741
- Suvodhana, son of Kakutṣtha, 736
denotes Duryodhana, 33, 35
- Svadhā, mother of Menā and Dhārīṇi, 49
- Svadhṛti, propitiation of, 176
- Svādūdaka, ocean around Puṣkara, 353
- Svāgatā, characteristics of the metre, 912
- Svāhā, wife of Agni; sons of, 49
—son of Vṛjīnivān; son of, 741
- Svāhva, son of Yugandhara; was invincible; sons of, 743
- Śvā, śalka(ka), son of Rṣabha; 743
son of, 744
- Svarāt, composition of the metre, 904
- Svarbhānu, mother of Suprabhā, 46
—a year of the Hindu calendar, 405

- Svargadvāra, at Gayā, 341
 Svargaloka, location of, 354
 Svargānanda, worshipped, 414
 Svargativrata, on the eighth lunar day, anecdote etc. relating to, 308-9
 svarita, a division of sound, 917
 svarjit, a sacrifice, 474
 Svārociṣa, the second Manu, 427
 Svarodayacakra, success in battle known from, 370, 375
 svarūpam (natural form), one of the kinds of embellishment of sense, 939
 Svaśiva, a Rudra, 254
 svastika, a type of temple, 315
 a posture relating to archery, 646
 Svāti, a movable asterism, 381
 has a firm look, 382
 comprises the sphere of wind, 387
 commendable for marriage, 357
 good for administering medicine, 358
 archery to be imparted in, 359
 commendable for construction of a house, 360
 one should do agriculture in, 361
 banner of Indra to be hoisted in, 362
 an employer should not be attended upon on, 360
 one should not enter the cow-pen in, 361
 misery caused by Sun's presence in, 363
 location in the Koṭacakra, 385
 located in a diagram, 400
 Svayambhū, denotes Brahmā, 40, 40fn
 Svāyambhuva, the first Manu; progeny of, 427
 genealogy of, 41, 41fn, 41-45
 method of worship of Viṣṇu as done by, 50
 —a Pāñcarātrāgama, 106
 Svayamjātas, one of the five branches of Haihayas, 741
 svayamvara, of Draupadi, 32
 Śveta, letter denoting, 419
 —a country, 352
 —a parvata, 324
 —a muhūrta; deeds to be done in, 371
 Śveta kalpa, a kalpa period, 732
 śvetārka, a herb, 371
 Śvetavarṣa, country, 322
 Śvetavāhana, one of the two sons of Śūra, 743
 sweet, a mode; explanation, 933
 swelling, herbal remedy for 753-4
 decoction of herbs which removes, 769
 remedy for, 776
 sword, a weapon, fifty inches long as the excellent one; 645
 commendable qualities of; certain rules relating to the use of; certain colours as not auspicious; the characteristics of, 640
 mode of wearing, 649
 thirtytwo kinds of employment of, 651
 uses of, 652
 Śyāma, a boundary mountain, 352
 śyāmāka, a grain used in worship, 94
 śyena, a modification of the array daṇḍa, 633
 Śyeni, a daughter of Tāmra, 46
 —characteristics of the metre, 912
 syllables, use of different kinds of, 378
 taddhita, bases, rules governing the formation of, 976-79
 tagara, a flower, 529
 —a herb, 372
 taijasa, evolution of, 40
 Tailapāka, a hell, 531
 taitila, a karaṇa, 362, 369fn
 Taittiriya, a branch of Yajurveda, 730
 Taksa, son of Bharata, 24
 Taksa (ka), one of the eight chief serpents; the number of heads of, 807
 born from Kadrū, 46
 made as the king of serpents, 47
 image of, 137
 Kubjikā worshipped having, 415
 tāla, an unguent, 372
 a measure, 119 etc.
 explanation of the term, 994
 Tālajāgha, son of Jayadhvajā; the five branches of Haihayas formed by the sons of, 741
 Tālajāghikā, image of, 138
 Tālavana, made secure by Kṛṣṇa, 27
 tamāla, a flower, 529
 Tamasā river, Rāma's halt on the banks of, 13
 Tāmasa, the fourth Manu, 427
 tāmasa, evolution of, 40, 40fn
 eighth creation having the quality of, 48
 Tami, an energy, 292
 Tāmisraka, a hell, 531, 1039
 Tāmra, daughters of, 46
 Tāmravarṇa, a territory, 330
 Tāmsurodha, one of the three sons of Matināra, 748
 four sons of, 749
 tāṇḍavam, synonyms of, 994
 Tandrinātha, worshipped, 414
 tank, excavation of; good day for 360, tanks, asterisms good for construction of, 765

- tanks and ponds, consecration of, 173-78
 tanmātras, creation of, 48, 48fn
 tantras, application as per, 62
 Tanumadhya, characteristics of the metre, 911
 Tapanā, a name of the Sun, 136
 —sub-division of a hell, 1039
 Tāpani, image of, 138
 Tapas, a world; worshipped, 79
 —a sage, 428
 Tāpasi, a spirit seizing the child in the tenth month; symptoms of the child seized by, 823
 offering to appease, 823-4
 Tapasvin, a son of Manu and Nāḍvalā, 42
 Tāpi, a river, flows from Sahya, 351
 merits of, 328
 Tapoloka, distance of, 354
 (See also Tapas)
 Taptakreṣha, an expiation; explanation of, 482, 799
 to be practised for eating food during pollution, 471
 for having eaten offering intended for the dead, 172
 to be practised for certain pollution, 480
 to be observed for having caused death, 487
 Tāra, a monkey; accompanied Rāma to Lanka, 21
 Tārā, entrusted with Sugriva, 17
 —wife of Brhaspati; seduced by Soma; restored to Brhaspati; was found pregnant and was directed to shed the child, 739
 —letter denoting, 418
 image of, 138
 tārābala, indication to find, 359
 Tārācakra, indicating friendship; description of, 391
 Tārakāmaya, battle involving the celestials on account of Soma, 739
 Viṣṇu's role in, 745
 Taralā, image of, 138
 Taralatārā, a hell, 1038
 Tārāṇa, a year of the Hindu calendar, 405
 Tārāpiḍa, son of Candrālōka; son of, 738
 Tārṅśya, eagle chief, 22
 Nandi and others conquered by, 30
 as destroyer of enemies etc, 394
 worshipped, 52
 —a Pāñcarātrāgama, 106
 Tārṅśyacakra, description of, 394
 Taraṇa, son of Tridhanvā; son of, 737
 taruṇi, milk of; used as an unguent, 372
 tastes, the different; as having originated from moon and fire, 761
 Tata, characteristics of the metre, 912
 Tātākā, a demoness; killed by Rāma, 10
 Tatpuruṣa (compound), eight kinds of; examples of, 973-74
 Taurus, a fixed sign, 384
 agriculture to be done in, 361
 a special combination caused by, 362
 has enmity with Scorpio, 392
 tauryatrikam, a collective term, 994
 teeth, measure to strengthen, 755
 Tejas, born from Sumati, 323
 temples, preparing the ground for, 105-107
 construction of, 113-115
 benefits of constructing, 101-105, 901
 merits of causing the construction of, 551
 divisions based on installation of deities, 267
 measurement of the stone slabs for, 269
 common features of, 318
 five classes of, 314
 names of; containing rooms facing different directions, 318
 the location of different chambers in, 318-19
 location in cities, 321
 to be protected by the king, 377
 tenses and moods, grammatical connotation for, 981-2
 formation of; examples for, 982-4
 termination, for the verbs, 981
 terror, sentiment of; accomplishing factor of, 932
 thief, apprehension of, 681
 thigh, stiffness of; ~~rem.~~ v for, 754
 thirst, pills to remove, 54
 herbs which remove, 768
 remedy for removal of, 773
 throat-affections, remedy for, 768
 Thursday, profitable nature of, 376
 chewing of betel leaf to be done on, 358
 karmavedha to be done on, 359
 agriculture to be done on, 361
 inauspiciousness of sixth day falling on, 381
 Rāhu lies at the south on, 409
 tiladvāḍaṣi, details relating to the practice and merits of, 512, 513
 tilaka a flower, 529
 time, ords denoting, 990
 words denoting different periods of time, 1000
 reckoning, 364
 timira, a flower, 529

- tiryaksrotas, explanation of, 48
 Tiṣya, class of men at Krauñcadvipa, 352
 tithayaḥ, herb denoted by, 406
 Tithi, commencing point of and correction for, 367
 further correction for, 368
 herb denoted by, 408
 Tithiśa, letter denoting, 418
 Titikṣu, son of Uśanas; son of, 741
 —was born from Uśinara; son of, 747
 tiṭṭibha(?), auspiciousness of a gem called, 641
 Tittiri, son of Kapotaramā; son of, 742
 tomara (iron club), used for striking the eyes etc, 651
 tongue, defects in; remedy for, 766
 tonsure, time for, 359
 to be done according to family custom, 432
 toothache, remedy for, 766
 topaz, a gem, 641
 tortoise, form taken by Viṣṇu, 5ff, 129
 Tṛṭaka, characteristics of the metre, 912
 town, and suburbs and parts of words signifying, 1006
 toxic matter, from head; eliminator for, 757
 toyakṛcchra, an expiation, explanation of, 483
 trader, percentage of profit allowed for, 679
 rules relating to, 679-80
 Trailokyākaraṇī, Kubjikā addressed as, 413
 Trailokyamohana, a Pāñcarātrāgama, 105-6
 Traisāni, son of Gobhānu; son of, 747
 Tranquility, explanation of, 945
 transactions, when considered as invalid, 658
 Trasadasyu, son of Purukutsa, 737
 —son of Janamejaya, 750
 trasareṇu, a measure, 107
 treasures, words denoting, 988
 to be confiscated by the king if concealed, 657
 treasury, defects of, 626
 should always be with the king, 632
 term denoting person in charge of, 1018
 treaties, sixteen kinds of, 622
 those with whom one should make, 622
 treatment, to be begun on a good day; the factors to be examined before giving, 758
 treaty, defined as making peace, 607
 trees, and parts of, different categories of, words which stand for, 1007-8
 mode of planting, 188-89
 the directions good for planting; the asterisms auspicious for, 764
 planting and nurturing; planting and watering of; to be planted in such a way as to be fed by rivers etc; the minimum distance between, 643
 method to make them bear more fruits, 765
 bearing fruits; protection of, 644
 Tretā, an attendant of Śiva, 201
 Tretāyuga, creation relating to, 323
 tri, herb denoted by, 407
 tridaṇḍin, an ascetic, 414
 Tridaśa, a Rudra, 255
 tridaśa, herb denoted by, 406
 Tridaśeśvara, a Rudra, 254
 Tridhanvā, son of Sudhanvā; son of, 737
 Trikoṇa, a hell, 1038
 trikona, marriage of girls not to be done in, 357
 Trikūṭa, group of mountains, 19, 325, 325fn
 Trimata, a division of Vithi, 928
 Trimūrta, a Rudra, 263
 Trimūrti, letter denoting, 418
 trine, prosperity in married life indicated by, 357
 Tripurā, the names of gods and goddesses to be worshipped in the worship of, 866-8
 mode of worship of goddess, 866
 salutation made to, 52
 Tripuraghaṇa, a guardian deity, 284
 worshipped, 343
 tripuskara, combination called, 362, 382
 trirātravrata, for lord Viṣṇu; mode and merits of practising, 522
 Trisāmā, a river; originating from Mahendra, 351
 Trisīras, a demon 16
 commander of Khara, was killed by Rāma, 16fn, 22
 Triṣṭubh, a metre, 562, 902
 the number of letters in a quarter of, 903
 red coloured; belongs to Kauśikagotra, 905
 appropriate time for the recital of, 916
 a metre to be employed in a Mahākāvya, 920
 Trisūla, the name of a temple, 318
 trisūla, a posture, 857
 trisūparṇa, a ṛk, 349

- Tritayajvara, located in connection with consecration, 292
 Trivikrama, a form of Viṣṇu, 65, 82
 form of Viṣṇu on Yamunā, 841
 —name of a śālagrāma; characteristics of, 125
 triviṣṭapa, a class of temple; octagonal shaped, 314
 temples belonging to the class of, 315
 Troṭaka, a type of drama, 921
 Tṛṣṇā, born from Mrtyu, 49
 truth, words denoting, 993
 trust, definition of, 654
 Tryambaka, a form of Rudra, 45
 Tuesday, writing a formula for subjugation on, 358
 gain indicated, 376
 unfavourable for marriage, 357
 to be avoided for commencing first study, 359
 to be avoided for the excavation of a tank, 360
 inauspiciousness of sixth day occurring on, 381
 a special combination caused by, 362
 Rāhu lies at the south-east on, 409
 Tulā, a constellation; correction for 367
 (See also Libra)
 tulāpuruṣa, a great gift, 544
 Tumburu, image of, 133
 tumours, in the abdomen; remedy for the destruction of, 776
 Tuṅgabhadra, a river, 328
 Tūrṇanāthaka, worshipped, 413
 Turvasu, one of the sons of Yayāti and Devayāni, 25, 740
 father of Varga, 747
 Tuṣita, the names of Devas in the Cākṣuṣa manvantara, 45
 Tuṣṭi, a female divinity; invoked, 91
 worshipped, 52
 Tvaritā, goddess; mode of worship of, 423-4, 852-54
 mantras relating to the worship of, 424, 868-69
 spell relating to, 854-57
 secret mantra relating to, 424
 location of the basic mantras of, and worship of, 858-861
 companions of, 424
 addressed, 52
 Tvarita mantra, benefit of knowing, 863
 Tvaṣṭā, son of Manasya, 323
 Tvaṣṭi, one of the Rudras, 45
 —one of the Ādityas, 45, 136
 twilights, words denoting the three, 990
 Uccaiḥśravas, was made the ruler of horses, 47
 to be adored, 51
 ucchvāsa, a division of time, 370
 —a division of the prose kāvyas, 919
 uchvāsana, an action relating to the riding on horses, 788
 udāna, a life-force carried by the vein gāndhāri, 556
 functions of, 557
 Udāpi, son of Sahadeva; son of, 750
 Udāratā, an excellence of word, 944
 (See also splendidity)
 Udāratā, (elegance) an excellence of sense, 945
 Udārka, son of Nidhrti; son of, 742
 udārka, explanation of the term, 1019
 udāsina, significance of the term, 1019
 udātta, a division of sound, 917
 Udaṇa, a boundary mountain, 352
 udbhava, one of the seven sons of Nahusa, 740
 udbhavamudrā, 204, 236, 237, 246, 247, 248, 255, 258, 259, 260, 286
 Udbhida, a son of Jyotiṣmat, 352
 Uddharinī, the name of Vasantatilaka according to Saitava, 913
 Uddiyāna, a mountain, 412, 414
 Udgatā, characteristics of the metre, 909
 Udgātaka, a division of Vithi, 928
 Udgitha, son of Pratihartā, 323
 Udicyaṣṭi, characteristics of the metre, 907
udu tvaṃ jānu edasam, a hymn, 563
 Ugra, Rudra was variously called as, 50
 propitiation of, 1., 290
 Ugrā, a female deity, 292
 Ugracandā, a goddess, 132
 Ugragandha, a hell, 532
 Ugrasera, a Yādava, 30
 son of Ahuka, 742
 nine sons of; Kāṁsa as the eldest, 742
 —one of the four sons of Jahnu, 750
 ūha, section of Sāmaveda, 730
 Uktā, a metre; number of letters in, 905
 Uktā, a somasamsthā, 79, 86, 466
 uktha, section of Sāmaveda, 730
 ukṭi, an embellishment of word, 932
 explanation of; six kinds of, 933
 ulcers, good remedy for, 768
 Ullāpyaka, a type of drama, 921
 Ulmuka, a son of Balabhadra and Revati, 29

Umā, consort of; propitiated by Bāṇa, 46
 Umākānta, letter denoting, 419
 umāvrata, merits of practising, 525
 umbrella, characteristics of royal, 638
 a brahmin's, characteristics of, 638
 umeśavrata, should be practised by women, 525
 unconsciousness, remedy for removal of, 773
 unguents, for bathing, 372
 Universe, extent of, 353-56
 unmatta, flower not to be used in worship 529
 Upacitrā, characteristics of the metre, 907
 Upacitraka, characteristics of the metre, 910
 Upadānavi, daughter of Vṛṣaparvan, 46
 Upadeva, son of Devaka, 742
 Upagiti, characteristics of the metre, 906
 upākaraṇan, explanation of the term, 1018
 upakrama, explanation of the word, 1017
 upākṛta, denotes an animal killed and sanctified, 1017
 Upamā, explanation of, 939
 two kinds of—compounding or not compounding; further divisions of, 939-40
 eighteen kinds of, 940
 another classification into five kinds, 941
 upamāna, explanation of the term, 1027
 upanayana, to be done in the eighth year for a brahmin, 432
 to be done in the eleventh year for the warrior class, 432
 to be done in the twelfth year for tradesman, 432-3
 should never be done after sixteenth year, 433
 Upaniṣads, adoration with, 99
 Upariṣṭād Bṛhati, composition of, 903
 Upariṣṭājyotiḥ, composition of the metre, 904
 Upasthitā, characteristics of the metre, 912
 Upasthitapracūṭa, characteristics of the metre, 909
 Upendra, requested for protection, 128
 Upendravajrā, characteristics of the metre, 912
 Ūrdhvaśāhu, a son of Vasiṣṭha and

Urjā, 49
 Ūrdhvaśāmi, a perfection, 257
 Ūrdhvaśrāhi, a monstress possessing the newly born child on the ninth day; symptoms of the child possessed by; materials for fumigation and besmearing when the child is possessed by, 822
 ūrdhvāṅga, an array; formed from divisions of vajra, 634
 ūrdhvasrotas, creation of, 48
 urinary ailment, remedy for, 767
 urinary defects, remedy for, 766
 urine, painful discharge of; remedy for, 754, 768
 Ūrja, son of Sudhanvā; son of, 750
 Urjā, wife of Vasiṣṭha, 49
 Urmilā, married by Lakṣmaṇa, 11
 Urobr̥hati (metre), name of Nyan-kusādrinī according to Yāska, 903
 Ursa Major, asterism denoting the seven sages, 354, 355
 Uru, son of Bhautya Manu, 428
 Ūru, sons of, 42
 Urvarūpa, different reading for Kramapādika, 49fn
 Urvaśi, a nymph, 330
 her love for Purūravas, 739
 Usā, daughter of Bāṇa, 29
 accompanied Aniruddha to Dvārakā, 30
 Uśanas, praised Dhruva, 41
 known also as Śukrācārya, 41fn
 —a law-giver, 415
 —son of Suyajñaka; son of, 741
 Uśinara, son of Mahāmanas; wives of; sons of, 747
 Usna, a country ruled by a son of Dyutimat, 352
 Uṣṇik, a metre, 562, 902
 two varieties of;—pura and para; number of letters in the pāda of, 903
 the number of letters in, 903
 has variegated colour; belongs to Kāśyapagotra, 905
 uṣṇisa, a type of temple, 315
 Utkalā, name of a country, 735
 —a son of Sudyumna; ruled over Utkalā, 735
 Utkalikā, a division of prose kāvya, 918
 Utkṛti, number of letters in the metre, 905
 Utkṛti, classical metres based on the Vedic metre, 914
 Utkura, a son of Hiranyākṣa, 46fn
 Utpalā, a whirlpool, 842
 utpala, auspiciousness of a gem called, 641

- utprekṣā (fancy), an embellishment of senses, 939
 explanation of, 941
 utsādana, the syllables used for the act of, 403
 Uttama, the third Manu, 427
 —son of Uttānapāda and Suruci, 41
 —one of the seven sons of Nahuṣa, 740
 uttama, a variety of prāṇāyāma, 1044
 uttamottama, a variety of prāṇāyāma, 1045
 Uttānapāda, sons of, 41
 uttara, a pitcher, 270
 Uttarā, daughter of King Virāṭa; wife of Abhimanyu, 33
 whose embryo survived as Parikṣit, 36
 uttara, the three asterisms known as, 360, 381, 385
 commended for copulation, 434
 Uttarā, an asterism; forms the watery region, 388
 commendable for marriage, 357
 commendable for imparting science of archery, 359
 to enter a (new) house, 360
 to take grains into the house in, 361
 misery caused by Sun's transit in, 363
 Uttarabhādrapada, an asterism; a thing cannot be recovered if it is lost in, 382
 location in a diagram, 400
 Uttaramānasa, at Gayā; bathing at, 336
 one should go to Phalgutirtha after visiting, 337
 Uttarāpatha, region of, 387
 Uttaraphālguni, an asterism; comprises the sphere of wind, 387
 new clothes should not be worn in, 359
 location in Koṭācakra, 385
 located in a diagram, 400
 Arjuna's name related to his birth in, 37fn
 Uttarāśāḍha, as asterism; located in Koṭācakra, 385
 indication of unusual commotion in, 388
 utterance, words signifying contradictory, 993
 word denoting sweet, 993
 words denoting unrefined, 993
 that is meaningless; word denoting, 993
 words denoting good, 993
 words denoting absurd, 993
 word signifying inauspicious, 993
 words denoting harsh, 993
 utthāpana, explanation of, 267
 vacā, a herb, 407
 used as an unguent, 372
 Vaḍavāmukhi, image of, 138
 Vādi, different reading for Pālita, 43fn
 Vāditram, one of the kinds of musical instrument, 994
 Vāgīśvari, goddess of speech; mode of worship of, 878
 invocation of, 246
 Vāgveṇī, a division of Vithi, 928n
 Vahni, adored, 1
 vahni, a herb, 407
 vahnayaḥ, herb denoted by, 406
 Vāhlika, region of, 387
 Vaibhava, a Pāncarātrāgama, 106
 Vaibhṛāja, a forest, 325
 a boundary mountain, 351
 Vaidarbhi, wife of Pradyumna, 745
 —a variety of diction; characteristics of, 927
 Vaidehaka, a caste; duties of, 431
 vaidhṛta, an obstacle; journey or battle to be avoided in, 383
 Vaidya, science of; Viṣṇu as the cause of, 3
 Vaidyuta, a country, 352
 Vajayanta, name of the mansion of Indra, 987
 Vaikārikas, creation of, 40, 40fn
 as the third creation, 48
 Vaikṛtasarga, explanation of, 48
 Vaikuṇṭha, a manifestation of Viṣṇu, 428
 form of Viṣṇu at Māgadha forest, 842
 image installation of, 172
 —abode of Viṣṇu, 82
 —name of a śālagrāma, 25
 Vainateya, letters representing, 63
 weapons of; adored, 66
 Vairāja, a class of temple; square shaped; nine temples belonging to the class of, 314
 Vairāja Prajāpati, father of Sudhavan, 47
 Vairājas, presiding deities of Tapoloka, 354
 Vairohya, son of Ānarta, 736
 Vaiśākha, month of; multiplication of things brought in, 386
 relating to Uśā's dream, 29
 vaiśākha, a posture relating to archery, 64
 advocated, 646
 Vaiśampāyana, disciple of Vyāsa, 429
 a branch of Yajurveda, 730
 vaiṣṇava, the formulae relating to Viṣṇu, 895

Vaiṣṇavapurāṇa, narrated by Parāśara; based on accounts in Varāha-kalpa; merits of making a gift of, 732

Vaiṣṇavi, a mother goddess, 139fn invoked, 399

to be worshipped, 412, 415
vaiṣṇavi, a rite, 86

—denotes asterism śravana

Vaiśravaṇa (Kubera), made as the king of kings, 47
the great fig tree to be contemplated, 842

Vaiśravaṇi, image of Kubera, 116

vaiśvadeva, offering made to all gods, 539

Vaiśvadevi, characteristics of the metre, 913

Vaiśvānara, the two daughters of, 46
vaiśya, words relating to the activities of, 1020-21

Vaitāliya, characteristics of the metre, 906

Vaitāndya, a son of Āpa, 44

Vaitarini, river at Gayā, 342

Vaivasvata Manu, was born from Sun, 9

eight sons of; at Ayodhyā, 735
penance of, 3

Vaivasvata manvantara, devas becoming Ādityas in, 45

Vaivasvati, explanation of, 463

Vājapeya (ka), a somasamsthā, 86, 466
certain practices relating to, 338
benefit of performing, 1079
located on the body, 64
worshipped, 79

Vājasaneyas, a branch of Yajurveda, 429

Vājasaneya Veda, only 15 sections would exist in Kaliyuga, 38

Vajra, son of Aniruddha, 30, 745
was installed in the kingdom, 37
vajra, an adverse period; to be avoided, 383

—a type of temple, 315

—an array; arrangement of army in, 612

to be made when there is fear on the sides, 630

arrays formed from divisions of, 634
vajra (mace), uses of, 652

Vajradeha, a form of Rudra, 252

Vajrakavāṭa, a hell, 532

Vajrākṣa, an array; formation optional, 635

Vajrakubjini, goddess -Kubjikā invoked, 413

vajranāsikā, a line drawn known as, 57

Vajraśastraka, a hell, 532

Vajraśrūṅghalā, a goddess, 410

Vajrasvastika, a type of temple, 315
vajratuṇḍa, a mudrā, 857

Vajriṇi, a goddess located on the face, 416

vākovākya, an embellishment of word, 932

explanation of; two kinds of, 933

Vakratuṇḍa, one of the forms of Gaṇapati, 190, 868

vakula, a flower, 529

Vaktra, characteristics of the metre, 908
a metre to be employed in a Mahākāvya, 920

Vākyārthopamā, explanation of, 941

valabhi, a type of temple, 314

valaya, a type of temple, 315

valaya, a modification of the array
daṇḍa, 633

an array formed by union of two
daṇḍas, 635

durjaya made up of four, 635

Vālin, brother of Sugriva; killed by Rāma, 17

Vālmiki, sage, story of Rāmāyaṇa narrated by Nārada to, 9

composed the Rāmāyaṇa, 25, 738
birth of Kuśa and Lava at the

hermitage of, 24

Vāmā, as female energy; as one of the three forms of Umā, 374

located, 292

worshipped, 51, 201, 413

Vāmadeva, a form of Rudra, 252

Vāmana, a name of Viṣṇu, 65

a manifestation of Viṣṇu, 428

form of Viṣṇu at Kurukṣetra, 841

a deity presiding over the banner, 148

as an excellent place, 328

worship of, 284

merits of worshipping, 343

image of, 115

installation of image of, 172

name of śālagrāma, 125

mountain, 352

Vāmanapurāṇa, narration of story of Viṣṇu relating to Dhaumakalpa in, 733

extent of, 733

should be given as a gift during autumnal equinox, 734

Varṇśapatrapatita, characteristics of the metre, 913

Varṇśapūra, one of the siddhas, 414

Varṇśastha, characteristics of the metre, 912

Vanamāla, form of Viṣṇu at Kiṣkindhā, 841

- Vānaraka, at Gayā, 341
 Vānari, a spirit seizing the child in the sixteenth year, 825
 symptoms of the child seized by 825-6
 offering to appease, 826
 Vānavāsikā, characteristics of the metre, 907, 934
 Vandani, a formation made with fingers, 66
 Vāṅga, one of the sons of Bali, 747
 a place, 640
 Vāṇija, a karaṇa, 369fn
 famine indicated by Sun's transit in, 363
 vaṇik, an astral combination, 363
 Vāṇiśa, letter denoting, 419
 Vapu, a division of Kośa, 921
 Vapuṣmān, ruled Śālmala, 322
 names of sons of, 352
 varada, a posture of the hands, 857
 Varāha, form of Viṣṇu at Vardhamāna, 841
 Viṣṇu resides at Ketumāla as, 326
 saluted, 64
 worshipped, 343
 image of, 113, 131
 śālagrāma denoting, 125
 a posture of the hands, 67
 Varāhakaḥ, a period, 4, 732
 Varāha-purāṇa, narrated by lord Viṣṇu, dealing with the account of boar form; extent of; merits of making a gift of it in Caitra, 733
 Vārāhi, a mother goddess, 139fn
 invoked, 399
 image of, 133
 worshipped, 412, 415
 name of a metre; the number of letters in the pādas of, 903
 vārāhi, a herb, 371, 378
 Varanā, a river at Vārāṇasi, 330
 Varapradā, image of, 138
 Vārāṇasi, location and greatness of, 330-1
 an excellent sacred place, 327, 350
 Vāra-tithi, correction, 365
 Varcā, son of Soma, 41
 Vardhamāna, a variety of metre; the number of letters in each pāda of, 903
 characteristics of, 910
 —name of a place, 841
 Vardhani, a water jar used in worship, 68, 94
 worshipped, 99
 —a type of temple, 315
 Varga, son of Turvasu; son of, 747
 Varṣa, an Ādinātha, 412
 Varṣaketu, son of Kṣemaka; son of, 749
 varṣavratas, vows, relating to rainy season, 525
 Vartulā, a hell, 1039
 Varuṇa, one of the Ādityas, 45
 a name of Sun, 136
 Varuṇa, words denoting, 988
 made as the king of water, 47
 image of, 137
 installation of image of, 173
 consecration of image of, 174-77
 meditation of, 286
 propitiation of, 176, 317
 meditated upon, 89
 temple of, 106
 —a territory, 350
 —a muhūrta; deeds to be done in, 371
 vāruṇa, denotes Śatabhisak, 360
 Vārūṇī, a goddess; origin of, 5
 vārūṇī, one of the dhāraṇas; explanation of, 1050
 Varūtha, son of Duṣyanta; son of, 747
 Vāśa, a deity; worshipped, 414
 vāsaka, a herb, 407
 Vasantatilaka, characteristics of the metre; differently called by others, 913
 Vāsaraka, a sacred place, 330
 vasaṭ, use of the term, 403
 Vāsava, Indra; made the ruler of Maruts, 47
 Vāsava, denotes the asterism Jyēṣṭhā
 vasaṭ, herb denoted by, 406
 Vasiṣṭha, one of the sages; creation of, 41
 an interlocutor, 2, 2
 Daśaratha's request to arrange for Rāma's coronation, 11
 Bharata brought to the city by, 14
 saluted by Rāma, 15, 23
 progeny of; through his wife Urjā, 49
 goddess earth addressed as born of, 112
 as one of the seven asterisms having Dhruva in front, 42fn
 merits of contemplating as a form of god, 842
 one of the sages who protected the celestials in the battle, 746
 hymn addressed to Śiva by, 564-65
 a law-giver, 455
 Vasiṣṭha, a Pāñcarātrāgama, 106
 Vasiṣṭheśa, at Gayā; obeisance and offering of piṇḍa to, 342
 Vāstu, deity worshipped, 50, 51
 Vāstu, relating to cities, 320-22

- Vastūpamā**, explanation of, 940
vāstupūjā, performed by Rāma, 14
Vastūthāpana, a variety of Ārabhaṭi, 928
Vasu, a son of Purūravas, 739
 —wife of Mārica Kaśyapa, 739
Vasus as born from, 44
vasu, merits of use of herb denoted by, 408
Vasudeva, born to Śūra, 744
 a manifestation of Kaśyapa, 744
 wife of; sons of, 744
 other sons of, 744
 birth of Kṛṣṇa to Devaki; wife of, 26
 story relating to, 26, 26fn
 Kṛṣṇa entrusted to Nanda by, 27
 worshipped by Kṛṣṇa, 28
Vāsudeva, as a form of Hari, 91
 the foremost among the Yādavas, 25
Jarāsandha referred to as the des-
 piser of, 28
 as leading the Yādavas, 736
Paundraka ascerting as the real,
 28fn
 seen by Yudhiṣṭhira on the way to
 heaven, 38
 image of, 115, 130
 characteristics of the image of,
 118-23
 installation of an image of, 161-64
 located on the thumbs, 56
 obeisance made to, 1
 worshipped, 50, 71
 refers to Viṣṇu; worshipped by
 Rāma, 23
 characteristics of formulae relating
 to, 62
 recitation of mantra relating to, 53
 use of basic syllable of, 67, 68
 oblations made to, 73
 —a śālagrāma, 124, 125
Vāsuki, one of the eight chief ser-
 pents; the number of heads of, 807
 born from Kadrū, 46
 made the ruler of Nāgas, 47
 was used as the rope while churning
 the ocean, 5, 745
 as a garland on the neck of goddess
 Kubjikā, 415
 —a sacred spot; as being present at
 Prayāga, 330
Vasuloka, Bhīṣma waiting on the bed
 of arrows to reach, 34
vasumati, a nerve, 316
Vasus, a class of semi-divine beings,
 44fn
 born from Vasu, 44
 the names of the eight, 44
Pāvaka made as the king of, 47
 directed Bhīṣma to wait to reach
 Vasuloka, 34
 mode of consecration of, 180
vaṭa, a tree, 92, 324
Vāta, Wind god; birth of Bhima from,
 32
 —the name of a temple, 318
Vaṭeśa, an excellent place, 328
Vātormi, characteristics of the metre,
 912
Vatsa, son of Pratardana; son of, 749
Vatsabhūmi, son of Vatsaka, 749
vatsaka, father of Vatsabhūmi, 749
Vaṭu, a form of Rudra, 252
Vaṭuka, obeisance made to, 414
 a form of Gaṇapati, 412
Vava, an astral combination, 363
Vāyavi, a spirit possessing the child in
 the thirteenth year; symptoms of
 child possessed by; offering to
 appease; bathing and fumigation
 when the child is possessed by, 825
Vāyaviva-purāṇa, narrated by Vāyu
 relating incidents of Śveta kalpa;
 extent of; to be copied and given as
 a gift in Śrāvana, 732
vāvavya, denotes the asterism svāti;
 commended for copulation, 434
vāvavyakrechra, expiation of; eating
 handful of food everyday for a
 month, 483
Vāyu, image of, 106, 137
 propitiation of, 176
 contemplation on, 286
 syllables of; used for purification, 60
 worshipped by inhabitants of Śāl-
 mala, 352
Vāyutīrtha, at Gavā, 341
Vāyuvegā, location of letter denoting
 the goddess, 417
 image of, 138
Veda, efficacy of herb denoted by, 470,
 408
vedāḥ, denotes a herb, 406
Vedanā, sons of, 49
Vedānta, is knowledge about Brahman,
 1082
Vedas, goddess as the source of, 26
 the number of hymns of all, 730
 division of at the end of dvāpara,
 429
 the different recensions of, 730-31
Hayagrīva a demon killed by
 Viṣṇu to rescue, 4
 reference to those who had become
 Bauddhas abandoning, 38
 adored, 50
Vedaśirā, wife of Mrkaṇḍu, 49
Vedhā, a goddess, 292
Vedic study, period for commencing
 and cessation of, 456

- Vegavati, characteristics of the metre, 910
 vehicle, words for, 1019
 veins, convey the ten life-forces, 556-7
 number 72000; the names of ten prominent, 556
 Vena, son of Aṅga and Sunithā, 42
 birth of Aṅga when his right hand was charred, 42fn
 story relating to, 42
 venereal disease, remedy for, 774
 venom, due to all insects; remedy for, 819-20
 due to centipedes; remedy for, 819
 (See also poison)
 Venus, words denoting, 989
 distance of; from Mars, 354
 distance of; from Mercury, 354
 chariot of, 356
 letters presided over by, 374
 period (years) of influence of, 363, 393
 presides over a part of a day, 381
 gives mental happiness, 377
 confers good occupying first house, 383
 confers good occupying the second or third house, 383
 indicates happiness occupying the seventh house, 383
 auspicious occupying the ninth house, 384
 confers gain in the tenth house, 384
 beneficial in the twelfth house, 384
 plenty of wealth etc., in the period of, 393
 marriage not commended when set, 357
 investiture of sacred thread not commended when set, 359
 building of a house should be avoided when set or transition, 360
 defeat indicated by movement from its own asterism, 386
 image of, 137
 contemplated as white, 828
 verbs, three forms of bhāva, karmanī and kartari, 981
 transitive and intransitive; the two other forms of, 981
 primary affixes added to, 985-6
 Vetāla, beads belonging to Śikhā class, 894
 vibhadra, a pitcher, 270
 Vibhava, a year of the Hindu calendar, 404
 vibhāvanā (imagination), an embellishment of senses, 939
 explanation of, 941-2
 Vibhiṣaṇa, a demon; Hanūmat searching the house of, 19
 prevented Rāvaṇa from killing Hanūmat, 20
 anointed as the ruler of Lankā, 21
 was on the side of Rāma, 22
 Lankā entrusted by Rāma to, 23
 became deep-rooted in dharma, 24
 invoked for destroying evil demons, 84
 Vibhu, son of Prastāra, 323
 —son of Varṣaketu; son of, 749
 Vibhūti, a female divinity; worshipped, 51
 vibhūti, a nerve, 316
 Vicitrakeśa, an attendant of Śiva, 201
 Vicitravīrya (ka), son of Śantanu and Kālī (Satyavati), 31, 751
 Ambikā and Ambālikā became wives of; died on account of consumption, 31
 Vidālā, image of, 138
 Viḍālākṣī, consort of Skanda, 134
 vidāṅga, a herb, 407
 Vidarbha, son of Jyāmagha; sons of, 741
 Vidarbha, king of; benefit gained by giving a lamp by the wife of, 526
 vidarbha, explanation and use of the term, 403
 Vidāri, a demoness; worshipped with red lotuses, 109
 word with lotus flowers offered to, 274
 worshipped outside, 317
 viddharkṣa, to be avoided in a marriage, 357
 Vidhātṛ, son of Brahmā, 50fn
 father of Mṛkaṇḍu, 49
 adored, 50, 88
 Vidhātṛī, a female deity, located, 292
 Vidruma, a boundary mountain, 352
 Vidura, begot by Kṛṣṇa Dvaipāyana through the wife of Vicitravīryaka, 751
 was burnt by forest fire, 36
 honoured Kṛṣṇa, 33
 Vidūratha, son of Udarka; also known as Daśārha; son of, 742
 —chief among the charioteers; son of Bhajamāna; son of, 743
 —son of Suratha; son of, 750
 Vidusa, son of Ghṛta; son of, 747
 Vidyā, a goddess; worshipped, 413
 Vidyādhara, image of, 137
 Vidyā'ṣṭāvara, worshipped, 414
 Vidyās, two kinds of—parā and aparā; explanation of, 1077
 Lord Viṣṇu is of the form of two, 491
 Vidyēśvaras, the names of the eight, 875

- Vidyujjīhvā, image of, 138
 Vidyēśas, meditation of, 291
 Vidyūnmālā, characteristics of the metre, 911
 Vidyūtā, a female divinity; worshipped 51
 Vighna, a variety of bandha, 937
 Vighnanāśana, a name of the elephant-faced god, 190, 866
 Vihāṅga, a celestial, 428
 Vijaya, a minister of King Daśaratha, 11
 Vijaya, a year of the Hindu calendar, 405
 —a muhūrta; deeds to be done in, 371
 —a kind of temple, 315
 —a pitcher, 270
 —a modification of the array daṇḍa, 633
 Vijayā, a goddess accomplishing a charm, 375
 —one of the wives of Kṛṣṇa, 744
 —a stone, 269
 Vijayāntikā, image of, 138
 vikalā, correction, 367
 application of, 368
 vikalpa, relating to a kind of yamaka, 936
 Vikarālā, a hell, 1038
 Vikāri, a year of the Hindu calendar, 405
 Vikāṭa, a name of the elephant-faced god, 190, 866
 vikaṭa, a posture relating to archery, 646
 Vikarama, a form of Rudra, 252
 —a year of the Hindu calendar, 404
 vikrāntayamaka one of the yamakas, 935
 Vikriyopamā, explanation of, 940
 Vikṛtā, image of, 138
 Vikṛtānanā, image of, 138
 Vikṛti, a year of the Hindu calendar, 405
 classical metres based on, 914
 Vikukṣi, was born from Ikṣvāku; was a divine ruler, 736
 Vilamba, a year of the Hindu calendar, 405
 vilāsini, used in a paste for subjugation, 372
 Vilepa, a hell, 532
 Vimala, a Rudra, 254
 —a place, 842
 vimala, a ray of the Sun, 195
 Vimalā, a female divinity; image of, 138
 worshipped, 51
 invoked, 111
 form of Viṣṇu to be represented as attended by, 131
 vimalā, a nerve, 316
 Vimalas, five names of, 415
 vimāna, a type of temple, 314
 Vināśana, as meritorious, 327
 Vinatā, a monkey; accompanied Rāma to Lankā, 21
 Vinatā, mother of Aruṇa and Garuḍa, 46
 mother of Garuḍa, 63fn
 Vinatāśva, a son of Sudyumna; ruled over the western part of the earth, 735
 Vināyaka, conquered by Tārksya, 80
 image of, 134
 installation of image of, 172
 mode of worshipping of, 865
 merits of worshipping, 343
 Vināyaka, letter denoting, 417
 Vindhya, a mountain, 350, 842
 Narmadā and other rivers flow from, 351
 Vipāpmā, one of the sons of Āyus, 739
 Viparītākhyānikā, characteristics of the metre, 910
 Viparitopamā, explanation of, 940
 Vipana, a division of Vithi, 928
 vipat, one of the tārābalas, 319
 Vipracitti, married Simhikā, 45
 Vipula, a mountain, 324
 Vipulā, characteristics of the metre, 906, 909
 Vira, one of the four sons of Tamsurodha, 749
 —one of the seven sons of Suhotra and Girikā, 750
 Virabhadra, image of, 135, 139
 Viraja, son of Sāvarni Manu, 428
 Virajā, son of Tvastā, 323
 —a place, 841
 Viraka, one of the four sons of Śibi, 747
 Virakataka, one of the siddhas, 414
 Virāṇa Prajāpati, father of Viriṇi, 42
 Viras, the name of the formulae of Rudra, 895
 Virāsana, a posture, 473, 482
 Virasena, a guard of the door; to be worshipped, 93
 Virāt, son of Nara, 323
 —metre; the number of letters in a quarter of, 903
 composition of the metre, 904
 Virāṭa, country, 33
 king of, 33fn
 drowned in the ocean of arrows of Droṇa, 35
 Virāt gāyatrī, the number of letters in the pāda of, 903
 viravaktra, an array, 630

- Virgo, friendly with Scorpion, 392
 has dual nature, 384
 one should do agriculture in, 361
 goddess Durgā is awakened when
 Sun enters, 362
 time taken by Sun to transit, 384
 Viriṇśas, a class of men in the Plakṣa-
 dvīpa, 351
 Viriṇī, daughter of Virāṇa Prajāpati;
 also known as Puṣkariṇī, 42
 Virocana, son of Prahrāda, 46
 father of Bali, 8fn, 46
 —a mihūrta; deeds to be done in, 371
 virodha (contradiction), an embel-
 lishment of sense, 939
 explanation of, 942
 Virodhi, a year of the Hindu calendar,
 405
 virtues, eight kinds of, 86
 ten kinds of, 493
 of religious students, 617
 Virūpākṣa, a demon; killed by Rāma,
 22
 Virūpākṣī, a goddess dwelling in the
 essence, 370
 Viśākha, younger brother of Kumāra,
 44
 Viśākha identified with Skanda, 134
 Viśākhā, an asterism; belongs to the
 sphere of fire, 387
 down-faced, 381
 known as Tripuṣkara, 382
 grains increased if a formula is
 written and placed in, 361
 an employer should not be attended
 upon in, 360
 misery caused by Sun's transit in,
 363
 assigned in the south-west, 385
 location of, 400
 Viśākhayūpa, a place, 841
 Viśāla, a prince, 339
 —a type of temple, 314
 —a modification of the array daṇḍa,
 633
 Viśālā, at Gayā, 339, 342
 —a nerve, 316
 Viśālākṣī, image of, 138
 Viśandhi, an impurity, 947
 two kinds of, 948
 Viśeṣaka, division of poetry called, 919
 definition of the kāvya known as,
 920
 Viśeṣokti, explanation of, 941
 Viṣkambha, the part of which to be
 avoided, 383
 Viśloka, characteristics of the metre,
 907
 Viṣṇu, synonyms of, 986
 the different names of, 65
 Śrī as the consort of, 49
 Brahmā was born from the navel
 lotus of, 9, 31
 identical with brahman, 355
 as the cause of the universe, 356
 as the refuge of Śiva, 746
 Garuḍa as the vehicle of, 51
 Prācinabarhis conferred status of
 progenitor by, 43
 Dhruva's steadfast devotion to, 41fn
 manifestation as a Fish, 2, 3ff
 killed Hayagrīva, a demon, 4
 tortoise form of, 2, 5ff
 manifestation as a boar, 7ff
 Prahrāda as a staunch devotee of, 46
 the first war assuming the form of
 a man-lion, 745
 manifestation as Rāma, 9ff
 Rāma praised by Indra and others
 as; worshipped by Rāma, 23
 meditative sleep cast on the sons of
 Hiranyakāśipu by, 26
 manifestation as Kṛṣṇa, 25-31
 removed the oppression of the de-
 mons on earth, 36
 Yūdava women referred to as the
 wives of, 37
 manifestation as Buddha, 38
 manifestation as Kalki, 38
 manifestation as Vyāsa and divisions
 of Vedas etc., 730
 kings etc. as manifestations of, 746
 the different manifestations of; and
 the battles in which he partici-
 pated, 745
 manifestations innumerable, 39
 past manifestations of, 428
 greatness of; knowl. of the objects of
 world as manifestations of, 1077
 different forms of, 8
 characteristics of the form of, 128
 characteristics of the different forms
 of, 129-31
 as being present in all the beings,
 1075
 invoked differently by different men,
 1075
 the Purāṇa dealing with the eternal
 form of, 3
 reference to Garuḍa, vehicle of, 30
 presiding deity of an element, 271
 image of, 130
 installation of the image of, 172
 to be meditated, 55, 58
 to be contemplated at the conflu-
 ence of Ganges with the ocean,
 841
 adoration of different forms of, 127-
 29
 propitiation of, 176

- worship of the disc, gem etc., of, 63
 adoration of the weapons of, 66
 reference to Bhiṣma as contemplating on, 35
 assignment of, 69
 purification of fire of and boiling food intended for, 59
 placing on head the hand of, 61
 primordial form dissolved in fire, 73
 mode of worshipping, 30-53
 mode of worshipping in nine compartments, 527-28
 mantra for the seat and image of, 52
 meditati on man-lion form of, 53
 salutations made to, 50, 62
 meditated, 68
 worshipped in a circular altar, 70
 merits of worshipping, 51
 as the greatest kinsman, merits of meditating on, 1074
 greatness of a person who has attained, 1075
 the qualification of a person who attains the place of, 1075
 merits of contemplation on, 1077
 merits of worshipping, 644, 731
 the greatness of, 731
 the greatness of fiftyone names of, 840-42
 hymn on; destroys all sins, 483-5
 a hymn that destroys evil addressed to, 728-29
 śālagrāma representing, 125
 —a name of the Sun, 136
 devas born as one of the Ādityas as, 45
 made as the lord of Suns, 47
 —a law-giver, 455
 Viṣṇudāsaka, one of the sons of Vasudeva and Devaki; was killed by Karna, 744
 viṣṇukrānta, a herb used as a paste, 372
 used as a charm, 406
 Viṣṇumadvrata, explanation of, 525
 Viṣṇupada, at Gayā; merits of doing ancestral rite at, 339
 Viṣṇuvrata, details relating to, 499-500
 Viṣṇuyaśas, father of Kalki, 38
 viśokā, an occult nerve, 316
 viśokadvādaśī, on the practice of, 512
 Viśravaś, son of Pūlastya; wives and progeny of, 24
 Viṣṭi, a karaṇa, explanation of, 369fn
 adverse effect of Sun's entry in, 363
 viṣṭirāhu, description of, 410
 Viśva, tantra spoken by, 106
 Viśvā, mother of Viśvedevas, 44
 viśvacakra, a great gift, 544
 Viśvagāśva, son of Pṛthu, 796
 Viśvajit, son of Brhadratha; son of, 748
 Viśvakarman (celestial architect), was born from Kaśyapa and Prabhā, 44
 made a mace for Viṣṇu, 334
 image of, 137
 the sculptor should be imagined by the priest as, 118
 Viśvaksena, form of Viṣṇu; characteristics of, 131
 to be worshipped, 61
 worshipped, 66, 100
 merits of worshipping, 51
 carving of staff similar to that of, 115
 Viśvāmītra (sage), son of Gādhi; sons of, 749
 respected on account of his glory, 10
 one of those who protected the sages in battle, 746
 Viśvārcā, a female energy placed at the end of a petal; colour of, 136
 Viśvarūpa, one of the Rudras, 45
 form of Viṣṇu; characteristics of the image of, 131
 installation of the image of, 172
 Viśvarūpikā, image of, 138
 Viśvedevas, born to Viśvā and Kaśyapa, 44
 mode of consecration of the image of, 180
 invoked at the time of śrāddha, 346
 one of the siddhas, 414
 Viśveśvara, form of Viṣṇu on river Soṇā, 841
 Vītala, a nether world, 353
 vitality, the things which give, 756
 Vitamaya, son of Manasyu; son of, 748
 Vītānaka, characteristics of the metre, 908
 Vitatha, worshipped, 316
 born to Bharata after performance of rituals by Bharadvāja; five sons of, 749
 Vithi, a type of drama, 921
 thirteen sub-divisions of, 928
 a component of the mode Bhārati, 928
 Vītihoṭra, Ananta was the son of, 741
 Vītihoṭras, one of the five branches of Haihayas, 741
 Vivasvat, one of the Ādityas, 45
 a god to be worshipped, 317
 worship of, 274
 viveka, denotes power to distinguish, 1018
 vomiting, beneficial drinks during, 754
 oil boiled with herbs to be used for bathing to remedy, 774
 vow, of giving a gift of lamp, 525-6

- of fasting; mode of practising and merits of, 533-34
 on the eleventh day; merits of, 532
 rules relating to the practice of, 493, 538
 certain regulations relating to, 497
 ten virtues to be practised during, 493
 eight things which do not vitiate a vow, 496
 resolutions relating to, 496-7
 to be observed on the first lunar day, 497-8
 to be observed on the second lunar day, 498-500
 to be observed on the third lunar day, 500-3
 to be observed on the fourth lunar day, 503
 to be observed on the fifth lunar day for the serpents, 504
 to be observed on the sixth day, 504
 to be observed on the seventh lunar day for the sun, 504-5
 to be observed on the eighth lunar day; for lord Kṛṣṇa, 505-6, 507-8
 to be observed on the ninth lunar day for goddess Durgā, 509-10
 to be observed on the tenth lunar day; merits of, 510-11
 to be practised on the eleventh day for Lord Viṣṇu, 511
 to be practised on the twelfth lunar day, 512-3
 to be practised on the thirteenth lunar day, 513-6
 to be practised on the fourteenth lunar day for lord Śiva, 516-7
 relating to week days, 519-20
 relating to different asterisms, 520-21
 that are practised on certain days, 522-3
 to be performed in different months, 523-4
 relating to different seasons, 524-25
 merits of practising, 591, 538
 expiation for breaking, 496
 Vraja, one of the sons of Dhiṣṇā, 43
 Vrajaś, names of sections of Kośa, 921
 vrata, as a penance, 492-3
 vratabandha, one of the Vedic rites, 59
 vrddha, formulae having upto 300 letters, 895
 Vrddhaka, a fierce force; prayer made for protection from, 84
 Vrddharevati, a terrible force; prayer made for protection from, 84
 Vrddhasarman, one of the sons of Ayus, 739
 Vṛjivān, son of Kroṣṭu; son of, 741
 Vṛka, son of Rohitāśva; son of, 737
 Vṛkala, a son of Śiṣṭi and Succhāyā, 42
 Vṛkatejasa, a son of Śiṣṭi and Succhāyā, 42
 Vṛkodara, denotes Bhimasena, Vṛndāvana, Kṛṣṇa's visit to, 27
 Vṛntā, characteristics of the metre, 912
 Vṛṣa, Indra at the time of the 11th Manu, 428
 Vṛṣa (Viṣa), a year of the Hindu calendar, 404
 Vṛṣabha, son of Kuśāgra; son of, 750
 vṛṣabha, a type of temple, 315
 Vṛṣākapi, one of the Rudras, 45
 Vṛṣaparvan, father of Śarmiṣṭhā, 25, 740
 daughters of, 46
 Vṛṣasena, son of Karna; son of, 748
 Vṛścika, vikala correction for, 367
 (See also Scorpion)
 Vṛṣṇi, one of the four sons of Sātvata, 742
 Vṛṣṇis, a division of Yādavas, 736
 Vṛṣṭi, one of the four sons of, 742
 Vṛtra, a demon, killed by lord Viṣṇu in his ninth manifestation in the form of a foam, 745, 746
 Vṛtreśa, a siddha to be worshipped, 415
 Vṛtta, characteristics of the metre, 914
 Vṛtta, a division of Padya; characteristics of, 919
 Vṛttas, three divisions of, 919
 vṛtti, see modes
 Vyādhi, born from Mrtyu, 49
 vyāghāta, an adverse period to be avoided, 383
 Vyāhāra, a division of Vithi, 928
 vyāhṛtis of gāyatri, name of the sage associated with, 562
 Vyākaraṇa (grammar), as an Aparā-vidyā, 2
 Vyāla, a variety of Daṇḍaka; formation of, 915
 Vyāna, a vital wind, 253
 carried by the vein Hastijihvā, 556
 functions of, 557
 vyantaras, a variety of serpents; have mixed marks born at an unspecified time, 807
 Vyāsa, as a manifestation of lord Viṣṇu, 730
 divided the Vedic hymns and Upaniṣads into recensions, 730
 as an interlocutor, 1
 birth of Dhṛtarāṣṭra from, 31
 consoled Arjuna, 37
 a law-giver, 455
 Vyastasambandhatā, an impurity, 947

- vyatipāta, an obstacle to be avoided, 383
- Vyāyirekopamā, explanation of, 940
- Vyāyoga, a type of drama, 921
- Vyoma, worshipped, 316
- Vyoma, son of Vidūratha; son of, 742
- Vyūhas, the names of the eight, 65
- wages, commensurate with work, 675
- war, when one should begin a, 623
- warriors, the duties of different kinds of, 613
- wasting diseases, food that gives strengt^h in, 754
- water, as . form of Viṣṇu, 173
- words used in the sense of, 995
- word denoting drops of, 989, 995
- asterisms belonging to regions of, 388
- relative merits of bathing in different kinds of, 436
- cold, as the best astrigent, 757
- waves, words denoting, 995
- wealth, words denoting, 1022
- word representing desire for, 995
- three kinds of acquisition of, 541
- should be acquired by rightful means, 617
- period within which one can claim his ownership of, 657
- weapons, of different kinds; words denoting, 1020
- two kinds of— weapons and missiles, 645
- two kinds of— those cast off and those retained, 645
- two divisions of— curved and conceit, 645
- the gradations in the use of, 645
- should be worshipped before an expedition is made, 639
- should be washed before use, 647
- propitiatory rites for, 883-85
- Wednesday, discharge of debt to be made on, 358
- the first shave of a child is commend- ed on, 359
- harvested grains to be taken into the house on, 361
- loss brought by Ārdrā occurring on, 376
- inauspicious nature of third day occurring on, 381
- Rāhu lies at the north on, 409
- week days, the names of the presiding deities of, 805
- weight, different measures of, 588
- welfare, words denoting, 991
- white, words denoting, 992
- white, word denoting little, 992
- wind, words denoting, 988
- sphere of; asterisms belonging to, 387
- that is deranged; remedy for, 756
- remedy for eighty kinds of diseases due to deranged, 774
- remedy for the removal of excess of, 775
- wind and bile, remedy for deranged, 776
- wine, three kinds of; women men- tioned as the fourth, 1042
- winning, different means for, 629
- witnesses, lawsuit depending on, 634
- codes relating to, 656-7
- qualifications and rules relating to, 661-2
- when considered as false, 663
- of the plaintiff should be heard first, 657
- women, words which denote, 1013
- words denoting different, 1014
- words denoting the parts of body of, 1016
- characteristic features of, 637-8
- when allowed to re-marry, 434
- when declared as pure and impure, 463
- three divisions of property of, 541
- results of the defect of association with, 627
- nature of treatment after delivery of, 756
- wonder, origin of the sentiment, 924
- wooden water-carrier, word denoting, 996
- words, having many meaning, 1001-1005
- denoting conjunctural stories, 992
- division of, 918
- repetition of; two kinds of—single letter or many letters, 933
- two kinds of defects of, 947
- denoting celestial region and nether world; synonyms of, 986ff
- of threat; fine relating to, 676
- mono-syllabic; their meaning, 950-52
- world, Brahman as the cause of; Pra- dhāna as the cause of, 949
- worldly events, words denoting, 992
- worms, remedy which destroys, 755, 776
- remedy to remove all, 766
- worship, words denoting, 1017
- words denoting mode of, 1017
- mode of, 54-56
- of deities, mode of, 190-95
- five constituents of, 836
- of Viṣṇu and other gods, 50-53

- relating to forms such as Vāsudeva, 62-66
 in different diagrams of the shape of a lotus, circle etc., 880-83
 of gods in sixtyfour squares, 272ff
 in eightyone squares, 275
 of Hari in Sarvatobhadra, 75-78
 of different gods in a lotus figure, 79-81
 for success in battle, 425
 different flowers used in, 528-29
 withered and broken flowers not to be used in, 529
 merits of, 538
 of gods; expiations for discontinuing, 490-2
 worshippers, of lord; four types of, 1069
 wound, a paste that heals, 775
 healing medicine for, 768
 wounds, a paste for cleaning, 774
 due to affected arteries, 775
 parasites of; juice that destroys, 775
 a decoction for cleaning, 774-5
 wrath, sentiment of; origin of, 923
 three-fold; factors accomplishing, 931
 wrestling, modes of, 652-3
- Yādavas, belong to the race of Yādu, 25
 counted as eighty thousand; were protected by Kṛṣṇa, 745
 rise of innumerable, 31
 Kaiśa's father made ruler of, 28
 Kālayavana, as a foe of, 28fn
 Kṛṣṇa's amusement at Dvārakā with, 30
 destruction of, 36, 37
 legend relating to destruction of, 36fn
 Arjuna's performance of obsequies of, 37
- Yādu, one of the sons of Yayāti and Devayāni, 740
 founder of a dynasty, 740
 Yādavas came in the race of, 25
 five sons of, 740
 one of the seven sons of Suhotra and Girikā, 750
- Yajmāna, explanation of the term; synonyms of, 1017
- Yajñadatta, an ascetic youth killed by Daśaratha, 14
- Yajñavarāha, form taken by Viṣṇu, 7
- Yājñavalkya, as a priest of Kalki, 38
 branches of Yajurveda founded by, 429
 —a law-giver, 455
 Yajur hymns, creation of, 40
- Yajurveda, an Aparāvidyā, 2
 branches of, 730
 division into four of, 429
 division into seven of, 429
 number of hymns of, 730
 auspicious for Yama, 93
 the hymns to be recited by a follower of, 287
 use of the hymns of, 695-704
 the hymns of; which confer fortune, 710
 assigned on the fingers, 64
- Yākinī, a goddess, 415
- Yakṣa, image of, 106
- Yakṣa, born from Khasā, 47
 Kṛṣṇa married the daughter of, 28
 prayer made for protection from, 84
- Yakṣiṇī, a mistress possessing the child in the fourteenth year; symptoms of child possessed by; offering to appease; bathing when the child is possessed by, 825
- Yakṣman, worshipped, 317
- Yama, born to Sun and Samjñā, 735
 also called Dharma; Yudhiṣṭhira as born due to the grace of, 32
 domain enlarged due to Bhārata war, 35
 made the king of manes, 47
 Kṛṣṇa was worshipped by, 28
 image of, 106, 137, 314
 investiture of sacred thread for the image of, 215
 contemplation of, 286
 requested to come, 336
 propitiation of, 176
 worshipped, 51, 55
 praise of, 403-4
 asterism of, 384
 —name of celestials during the period of Svāyambhuvā Manu, 427
 —a law-giver, 455
 —a muhūrta; deeds to be done in, 371
 —denotes daily rites, 1018
- Yamaka, explanation of; two kinds of —contiguous and non-contiguous, 934
 further divisions of, 934
 ten prominent kinds of, 935
- Yāmala, a method of locating mantras, 416
 mode of worship of Gauri according to, 897
- Yamagītā, narration of; consists of exposition made by Kapila and others, 1072-76
- Yamajihva, a guardian deity, 284
 image of, 138
 worship of, 273
- Yamas, description of, 1076

- Yamasūryaka, the name of a temple, 318
- Yāmi, Nāgavithi born from, 44
- Yamunā, the spirit afflicting the child in the eighth month; the symptoms of child seized by, 823
- the spirit possessing the child in the seventh year, 824
- symptoms of the child possessed by, 824-5
- offering to appease, 825
- bathing and fumigation for child possessed by, 825
- born to Rājñi and Sun, 735
- river. Kṛṣṇa's conquest of Kāliya in, 27
- was dragged by Pralamba, 30
- flowing at Prayāga, 329
- region of; indication for the destruction of, 387
- image of, 133
- worship of, 197
- worshipped, 51, 88
- Trivikrama to be contemplated at, 841
- Yāmya, denotes the asterism Bharani, medicine to be administered in, 358
- imparting the science of archery to be done in, 359
- yaśā, a vein; carries the wind Kūrma, 556
- Yāska, an authority on metrics, 903
- Yaśodā, lord Hari as a child taken by Vasudeva to, 26
- in the custody of Nanda, the husband of, 27
- Yaśodharā, one of the daughters of Devaka; married by Vasudeva, 742
- Yaśovati, a nerve, 316
- Yātana, a monstress affecting the child in the second year; symptoms of the child affected by; offering to appease; bathing and other practices for child affected by, 824
- Yathāsankhya (relative enumeration), an excellence of word and sense; explanation of, 946
- Yati, one of the seven sons of Nahuṣa; even as boy contemplated on Viṣṇu and attained him, 740
- explanation of, 911
- yaticāndrāyaṇa, an expiation; explanation of, 482
- yatis, significance of the term, 1018
- Yaugiki, an excellence of word, 944
- yava, a measure, 107, 123, 140
- Yāvadarthatā, an embellishment of sound and sense, 942
- explanation of, 942-3
- Yavamadhyā, composition of the metre, 904
- yavamadhyamā, a measure, 107
- yavamatī, characteristics of the metre, 911
- Yavanas, Kālayavana as the king of, 28fn
- Yavinara, one of the five born from Bāhyāśva, 749
- Yayāti, one of the seven sons of Nahuṣa, 25, 31, 740
- rescued Devayāni and married her, 25fn
- married Devayāni the daughter of Sukra, 740
- married also Śarmiṣṭhā, daughter of Vṛṣaparva, 740
- had two sons through Devayāni and three sons through Śarmiṣṭhā, 740
- years, cycle of; results indicated by names of, 404-5
- yellow, words denoting, 992
- Yoga, one of the five factors in the almanac; correction for, 368, 369
- division of time; good or bad known from names, 371
- and its constituents, explanation of, 1041
- has eight constituents, 1082
- relating to a mantra, 403
- Yoginī, image of, 138
- Yogīśavimala, worshipped, 415
- yogorasya, an array; two wings in the array daṇḍa, 634
- yoni, a posture made with the hands, 95, 898
- Yuddhamuṣṭi, one of the sons of Ugrasena, 742
- Yudhājiti, uncle of Bharata, 11
- born to Mādri and Dhṛṣṭa, 743
- Yudhiṣṭhira, born to Pāṇdu and Kuntī from god Dharmā, 32, 744, 751
- son of, 751
- was defeated by Duryodhana, in dice, 33
- Kṛṣṇa's directive to fight with Duryodhana, 33
- army of, going to Kurukṣetra, 34
- killed Śalya, 35
- became a king after the war, 36
- set on his final journey, 37
- Yuga(s), extent of, 39fn
- creation takes place in every, 45
- salutation made to 50
- herb denoted by, 406
- Yugandhara, son of Dhuni; son of, 743
- Yūka, a measure, 207
- yukti, an embellishment of word, 932
- explanation of; six kinds of, 933

- yurjate mana*, a hymn, 437
yuthi, yūthikā, a herb, 371, 378
yūthikā, a flower, 529
Yuva, a year of the Hindu calendar, 404
Yuvanāśva, son of Āyus, 736
—son of Ranāśva; son of, 737
Yuyudhāna, another name of Sātyaki, 743
Zodiacal signs, movable; fixed and dual; their influence on the days; the time taken by the Sun to traverse, 384